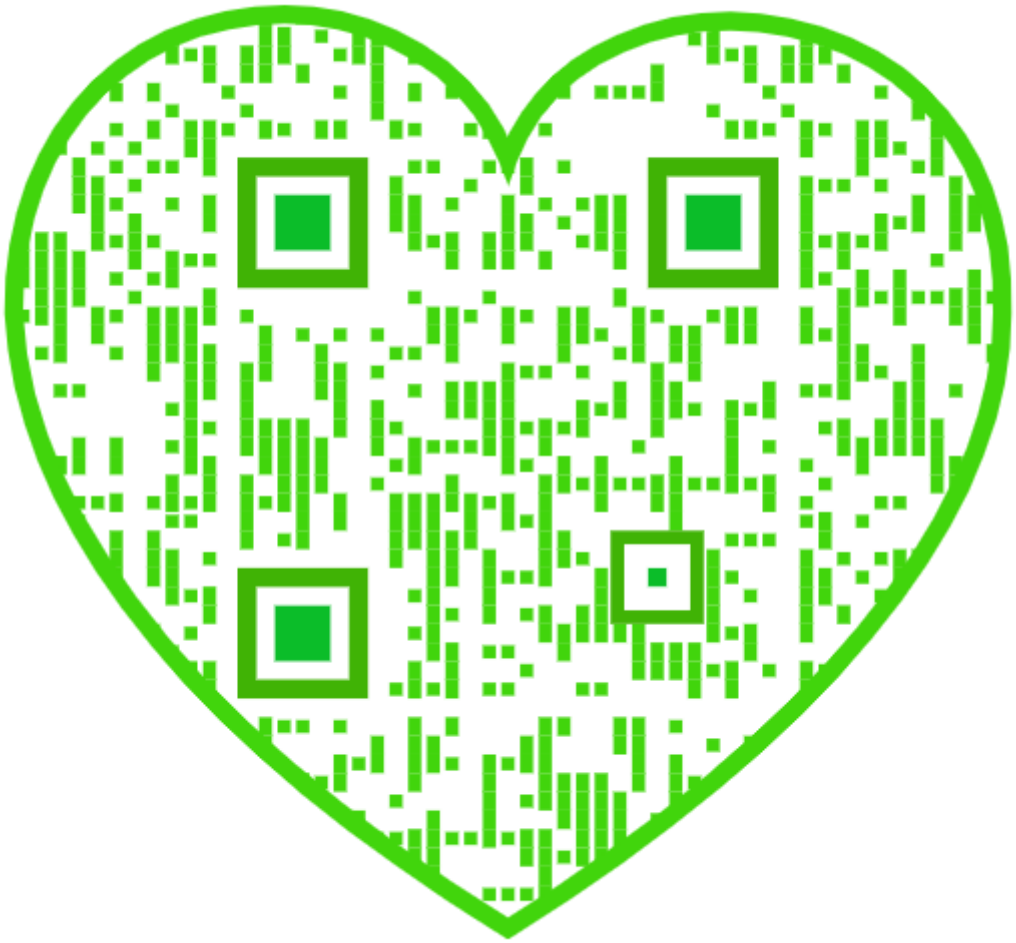
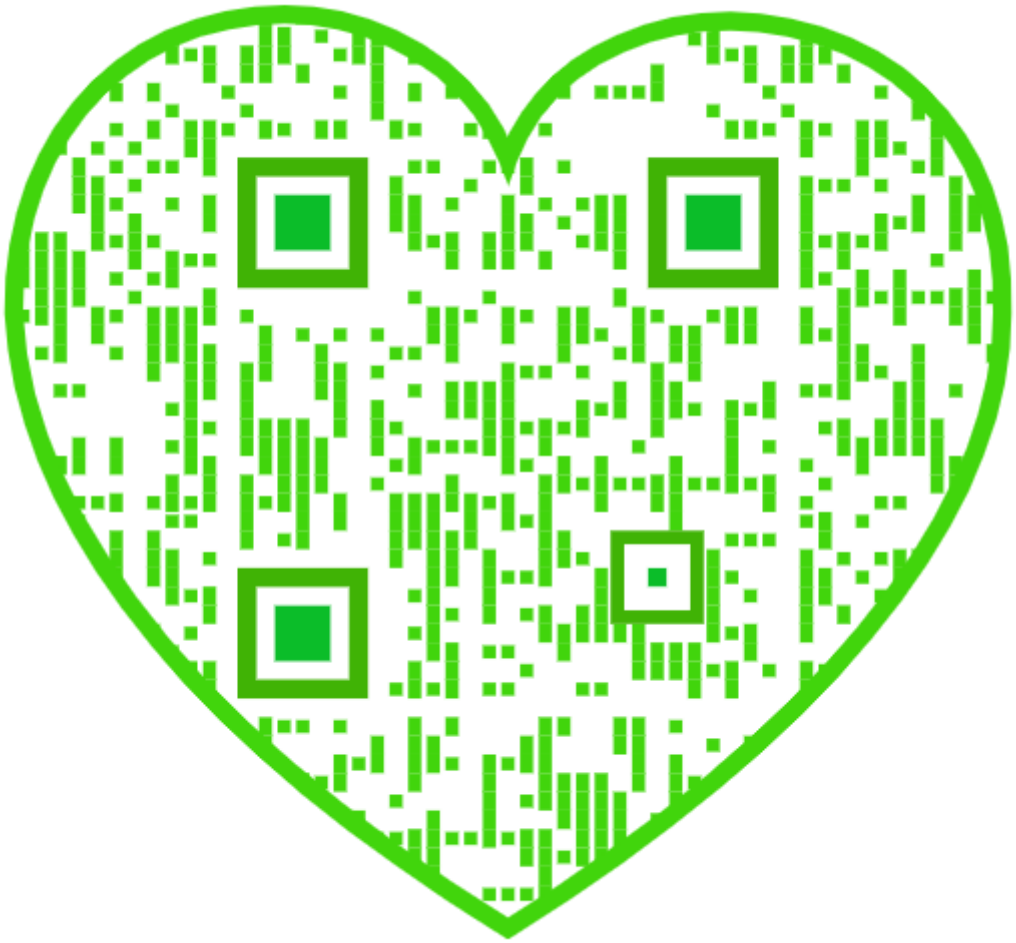
READER





LIBRARY OF CONGRESS.

Chap. E178 Copyright No.

Shelf .A58

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

INDIAN NATIONS
AND
DISCOVERIES.
CANADA
QUEBEC
St. Lawrence R.
Cartier 1534
NEW FRANCE
ACADIA
MAINE
Kennebec R.
Abenakis
L. Champlain
WAMPANOAGS
PLYMOUTH
Narragansetts
Pequods
R. I.
C. Cod
GOSNOLD 1602
Nantucket I.
Elizabeth Is.
Martha's Vine
Long Is.
HUDSON 1609
Chippewas
Sioux
Sacs & Foxes
Menomonies
Winnebagoes
L. MICHIGAN
Ottawas
L. HURON
Georgian Bay
HURON
L. ONTARIO
L. ERIE
Andastes
Miamis
Potawatomies
Eries
IROQUOIS
SENECAS
CAYUGAS
ONONDAGAS
ONEIDAS
MOHAWKS
Hudson R.
DELAWARES
Kickapoos
Illinois
Mississippi R.
Wabash R.
Miami R.
Ohio Riv.
ALGONQUIN
VIRGINIA
POWHATAN
CONFEDERACY
NANTICOKES
Chesapeake B.
JAMESTOWN
James R.
Shawnees
TUSCARORAS
WOCCONS
CATAWBAS
Albemarle Sd.
Roanoke I.
AMIDAS & BARLOW 1584
C. Hatteras
Pamplico Sd.
CAROLINA
COREES
C. Fear
DAKOTAS
Tennessee R.
CHEROKEES
DE SOTO 1541
MOBILIAN
CHICKASAWS
NATCHEZ
Mississippi River
UCHEES
YAMASSEES
Santee R.
DE AYLLON 1520
Port Royal Ent.
Savannah R.
RIBAULT 1562
Altamaha R.
Coweta
CREEKS
Alabama R.
CHOCTAWS
DE SOTO
Mobile B.
Apalachicola R.
ST. AUGUSTINE
St. Johns R.
FLORIDA
Seminoles
DE LEON 1512
NARVAEZ 1528
DE SOTO 1539
Tampa Bay
GULF OF MEXICO
Tortugas Is.
ATLANTIC OCEAN
BAHAMA IS.
COLUMBUS 1492
San Salvador
HAVANA
CUBA
CORTES (11 Vessels) 1519

THE

UNITED STATES READER

EMBRACING

Selections from Eminent American Historians, Orators, Statesmen and Poets,

WITH

EXPLANATORY OBSERVATIONS, NOTES, ETC.

THE WHOLE ARRANGED SO AS TO FORM A

COMPLETE CLASS-MANUAL

OF

United States History,

TO WHICH ARE ADDED A

VOCABULARY OF DIFFICULT WORDS AND A BIOGRAPHICAL INDEX OF AUTHORS.

BY

JOHN J. ANDERSON, A.M.,

Author of a "Grammar School History of the United States," a "Pictorial School History of the United States," a "Manual of General History," a "History of England," "The Historical Reader," etc., etc.

NEW YORK:

MAYNARD, MERRILL, & CO., PUBLISHERS,

43, 45 & 47 EAST TENTH ST.

1895.

59046

ANDERSON'S HISTORICAL SERIES.

A Junior Class History of the United States. Illustrated with hundreds of portraits, views, maps, etc. 306 pages. 16mo.

A New Grammar School History of the United States. Supplemented by maps, engravings, chronological summaries, tabulated analyses, review questions, appendix, etc. 360 pages. 12mo.

A Grammar School History of the United States. Annotated; and illustrated with numerous portraits and views, and with more than forty maps, many of which are colored. 340 pages. 16mo.

A Pictorial School History of the United States. Fully illustrated with maps, portraits, vignettes, etc. 439 pages. 12mo.

A Popular School History of the United States, in which are inserted, as a part of the narrative, selections from the writings of eminent American historians, and other American writers of note. Fully illustrated with maps, colored and plain; portraits, views, etc. 381 pages. 12mo.

A Manual of General History. Illustrated with numerous engravings and with beautifully colored maps showing the changes in the political divisions of the world, and giving the location of important places. 500 pages. 12mo.

A New Manual of General History, with particular attention to Ancient and Modern Civilization. With numerous engravings and colored maps. 685 pages. 12mo. Also, in two parts. Part I. ANCIENT HISTORY: 300 pages. Part II. MODERN HISTORY: 385 pages.

A School History of England. Illustrated with numerous engravings and with colored maps showing the geographical changes in the country at different periods. 378 pages. 12mo.

A Short Course in English History. With numerous engravings and maps. 215 pages. 12mo.

A School History of France. Illustrated with numerous engravings, colored and uncolored maps. 373 pages. 12mo.

A History of Rome. Amply illustrated with maps, plans, and engravings. 554 pages. By R. F. LEIGHTON, Ph.D. (Lips.).

A School History of Greece. In preparation.

Anderson's Bloss's Ancient History. Illustrated with engravings, colored maps, and a chart. 445 pages. 12mo.

The Historical Reader, embracing selections in prose and verse, from standard writers of Ancient and Modern History; with a Vocabulary of Difficult Words, and Biographical and Geographical Indexes. 544 pages. 12mo.

The United States Reader, embracing selections from eminent American historians, orators, statesmen, and poets, with explanatory observations, notes, etc. Arranged so as to form a Class-manual of United States History. Illustrated with colored historical maps. 436 pages. 12mo.

MAYNARD, MERRILL & CO., PUBLISHERS,

43, 45, AND 47 EAST TENTH STREET, NEW YORK.

Copyright, 1872, *by John J. Anderson.*

E178
A5'8

TWO COPIES RECEIVED.

Library of Congress,
Office of the
MAY 15 1900
Register of Copyrights.
a. 12086
May 14, 1900

SECOND COPY.

PREFACE.

THE *general plan* of this work corresponds very nearly with that of the HISTORICAL READER, recently presented to the public; and its object, like that work, is to teach history so as to cultivate, at the same time, the taste of the pupil for historical reading and study, and to afford in connection therewith, appropriate materials for reading-lessons and exercises in elocution.

It is quite often a subject of complaint among intelligent educators, that the materials of most of the reading-books in use supply to so small an extent the means of imparting useful information, or of instilling a taste for the perusal of instructive books. Their desultory character has, without doubt, a tendency to prevent this result.

In the present work, a sufficient variety of composition, it is believed, is supplied to afford every necessary exercise in elocution; while the subject-matter is connected, from beginning to end, not only by notes and observations, but by a *continuous text*, so as to form a succinct narrative of all the great events in our history. It is thus not only a *Reading-Book*, but a complete *History of the United States*.

The selections are chiefly from the most eminent historians

(with few exceptions, *American*); also from the illustrious orators and statesmen who have, by the splendor of their genius and patriotism, shed a peculiar lustre upon our annals. Some of the great events are still further illustrated by choice extracts, chiefly from the most illustrious of the American poets, all having a tendency to infuse into the mind of the youthful student a warm patriotic sentiment, as well as to impress deeply upon his memory the history of the events referred to in these beautiful and spirit-stirring verses.

Nor is it the smallest consideration, that the pupil, by the use of such a compilation as this, of necessity acquires a knowledge of the best writers, and is enabled, after discontinuing its use, or in connection with it, to arrange for himself a proper course of historical reading; since the author has been careful to insert in connection with the pieces the names of their writers, as well as the works from which they have been extracted.

The text of the history is brief and direct, and, in order that the original and selected matter may be at once distinguished, has been printed in smaller type, though, it is believed, sufficiently conspicuous to be easily and conveniently legible. The author has used no *questions*, but has arranged the matter in *brief paragraphs* with prominent headings, indicating at once the events described. This arrangement seemed to be better adapted to the plan of topical study and recitation, which in the author's judgment has, especially in history, very many advantages. The *model of analysis* will supply further aid to teachers in the proper method of conducting recitations.

The *Progressive Maps* which have been inserted, particularly

that illustrating the Territorial Growth of the nation, will be found of great value, not only in teaching the geographical position of the places referred to in the text and selections, but also by presenting the great features of the nation's progress and development at different periods. The *Vocabulary of Difficult Words*, and the *Biographical Index of Authors*, will also be found very useful appendages to a work of this character.

The author submits this work to the impartial examination and trial of his fellow-teachers, confident that it will prove a valuable addition to the ordinary means of teaching history, in bringing the pupil's mind in communion with the masterpieces of so many gifted writers; and that, even where a simple compilation is used, this work will perform an important service as an auxiliary.

NEW YORK, May, 1872.

In issuing a new edition of the United States Reader, the author has been induced to insert, as introductory to the body of the work, a brief exposition of the *Principles of Elocution*, with exercises and illustrative selections, together with references to such pieces in the Reader itself as may be used for still farther illustration and practice. This has been done in compliance with the wishes of many teachers who have experienced a need of more material for direct elocutionary instruction. With this addition, the author feels confident that nothing is wanting to render the work *complete* as a *Reading Book*.

A *List of Authors*, for reference and additional study, has also been added.

NEW YORK, FEBRUARY, 1873.

ALPHABETICAL INDEX OF AUTHORS,

With references to the pages containing selections from each.

	Page
Allen	143
Armstrong	214
Baillie	12
Bancroft	23, 67, 107
Beach	357
Bellows	372
Brodhead	91, 99
Bryant	199
Campbell	53
Clark	343
Clay	281
Cooper	276, 305
De Chastellux	178
Duganne	351
Estvàn	353
Everett	82, 86, 90
Franklin	226
Garden	206
Gillett	294
Grahame	44, 73, 74, 127
Greeley	237, 346
Greene	181
Grimshaw	133
Guizot	241
Hamilton	202, 209, 224
Hawthorne	136
Headley	268, 290
Hemans	51
Hildreth	38, 228
Holmes, A	168
Holmes, O. W	141, 280
Hooper	318
Hopkinson	244
Irving	20, 26, 79, 96, 184, 240
Jackson	315
Jay	224
Jefferson	254
Key	293
Lee	199
Levasseur	308
Lincoln	348, 365
Longfellow	81, 194, 231
Lossing	115
Lyons	326
Mackenzie	264, 310
Mackintosh	236
Mansfield	327, 333
Marshall	248
Mason	246
Maxcy	139
Mirabeau	235
Nott	257
Orne	174
Palfrey	59
Parker	179, 311
Parkman	30, 34, 123
Parton	151, 190, 234, 295
Pierpont	65, 149
Pollard	369
Prescott	17, 27
Putnam	361
Ramsay	196, 220
Randall	166, 252
Read	366
Ripley	323
Robertson	11
Southey	57
Story	373
Sparks	118, 145, 222
Sumner	309
Sweet	341
Timbs	261
Washington	213, 218
Webster, Noah	301
Webster, Daniel	156, 307, 339
Whittier	211, 332, 359, 373
Willis	205
Winthrop	336
Wirt	312

CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION — PRINCIPLES OF ELOCUTION — LIST OF AUTHORS.

SECTION I.—DISCOVERIES AND EXPLORATIONS.

PAGE.

Discovery of America (11); Analysis (11).
First Voyage of Columbus ..... *Baillie.* 12
Landing of Columbus ..... *Robertson.* 14
Other Discoveries and Voyages (17).
Maritime Enterprise in the 15th Century ..... *Prescott.* 17
Character of Columbus ..... *Irving.* 20
Amerigo Vespucci (23); The Cabots (23).
Discovery of Florida ..... *Bancroft.* 23
Expedition of Balboa (2).
Discovery of the Pacific Ocean ..... *Irving.* 26
De Ayllon's Expedition (27); Discovery and Conquest of Mexico (27).
Boldness of Cortez ..... *Prescott.* 27
Expedition of Narvaez (30).
Expedition of De Soto ..... *Parkman.* 30
Explorations by the French (33); Settlement of Florida (33).
Discovery of Lake Champlain ..... *Parkman.* 34
The American Indians ..... *Hildreth.* 38

SECTION II.—COLONIAL HISTORY.

Sir Humphrey Gilbert's Voyage (44); Voyage of Amidas and Barlow (44); First Attempts at Settlement in Virginia (44).
Settlement of Jamestown ..... *Grahame.* 44
Pocahontas ..... *Hemans.* 51
Virginia under the Second Charter (52); Third Charter (52); Dissolution of the Company (53).
The Cultivation and Use of Tobacco ..... *Campbell.* 53
The Navigation Act (55); Bacon's Rebellion (56); Subsequent History (56); MASSACHUSETTS (56); Explorations of New England (56); The Puritans (57); Voyage of the Mayflower (57).
Landing of the Pilgrims ..... *Southey.* 57
Settlement of Plymouth ..... *Palfrey.* 59
The Pilgrim Fathers ..... *Pierpont.* 65
History of Plymouth (66); Massachusetts Bay Colony (66); RHODE ISLAND (67).
Roger Williams and the Settlement of Providence ..... *Bancroft.* 67
Rhode Island Plantation (71); NEW HAMPSHIRE (71); CONNECTICUT (71); Connecticut Colony (71); Saybrook Colony (71); Pequod War (72); New Haven Colony (72); Union of the Colonies (72); The Charter Oak (72).
The New England Confederacy ..... *Grahame.* 73

PAGE.

Eliot's Efforts to convert the Indians.....*Grahame.* 74
Persecution of the Quakers (78); King Philip's War (79).

Death and Character of King Philip.....*Irving.* 79

The Indian Hunter.....*Longfellow.* 81

Coinage in Massachusetts.....*Everett.* 82
Arbitrary Conduct of Charles II. (85); King William's War (85); Salem Witchcraft (86).

Witchcraft in Massachusetts.....*Everett.* 86
Queen Anne's War (89); King George's War (90).

The Pilgrims.....*Everett.* 90
New York (91); Discovery of the Hudson River (91).

Voyage of the Half-Moon.....*Brodhead.* 91
Colonization of the Country (95); Governors of New Netherlands (96).

Character of Peter Stuyvesant.....*Irving.* 96

Conquest of New Netherlands by the English.....*Brodhead.* 99
First English Governor (106); Negro Plot (106); Subsequent History (106); New Jersey (106); Maryland (107); Settlement of St. Mary's (107).

Commencement of Colonization in Maryland.....*Bancroft.* 107
Subsequent History of the Colony (110); Pennsylvania (110); Grant to William Penn (110); Founding of Philadelphia (110); Treatment of the Swedes (110); Subsequent History (111).

Penn's Treaty with the Indians.....*Anon.* 111
Delaware (112); Conquest of the Dutch (112); Subsequent History (113); North and South Carolina (113); Georgia (113); Grant to Oglethorpe (113); War with the Spaniards (114).

SECTION III.—THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR.

Causes of the War (114); Washington's Mission (114).

Incidents of Washington's Journey.....*Lossing.* 115
Events of 1754 (117); Events of 1755 (118); Braddock's Expedition (118).

Defeat of Braddock.....*Sparks.* 118
Other Expeditions of 1755 (121); Events of 1756 (122); Events of 1757 (122); Events of 1758 (122); Events of 1759 (123).

Taking of Quebec and Death of Wolfe.....*Parkman.* 123
Events of 1760, and Close of the War (127).

State of the Colonies in 1765.....*Grahame.* 127

SECTION IV.—THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION.

Causes (133).

The Stamp Act.....*Grimshaw.* 133
Effect of its Passage (135); Other Measures of Taxation (135).

The Boston Massacre.....*Hawthorne.* 136
Tax upon Tea (138); Boston Port Bill (139); First General Congress (139); Minute Men (139).

The First American Congress.....*Marcy.* 139
Events of 1775 (140).

Battle of Lexington.....*O. W. Holmes.* 141

Capture of Ticonderoga.....*Ethan Allen.* 143
Second Continental Congress (145).

PAGE.

Appointment of General Washington.....*Sparks.* 145
Battle of Bunker Hill (149).

Warren's Address.....*Pierpont.* 149
Conduct of Lord Dunmore (150); Invasion of Canada (150).

Montgomery's Attack on Quebec.....*Parton.* 151
Evacuation of Canada (153); Events of 1776 (153); Evacuation of Boston (153); Repulse of the British from Charleston (154); Declaration of Independence (154).

Independence Bell.....*Anon.* 154

Speech of John Adams.....*Webster.* 156

The Declaration of Independence.....*Jefferson.* 160

Debate in Congress on the Declaration.....*Randall.* 166

Reading of the Declaration to the Army.....*Penn. Journal.* 167

Battle of Long Island.....*Holmes.* 168
Retreat of Washington (173); Battle of Trenton (173); Battle of Princeton (174).

Washington at Princeton.....*Miss C. F. Orne.* 174
Arrival of Lafayette (175).

First Anniversary of the Declaration of Independence. *Penn. Jour.* 176
Battle of Brandywine (177); Battle of Germantown (177); Burgoyne's Expedition (177).

Surrender of Burgoyne.....*De Chastellux.* 178

Washington at Valley Forge.....*Theodore Parker.* 179

Life at Valley Forge.....*Geo. W. Greene.* 181
Events of 1778 (184); Evacuation of Philadelphia (184).

Battle of Monmouth.....*Irving.* 184
Attack on Rhode Island (189); Massacre of Wyoming (189); Capture of Savannah (189); Events of 1779 (190); Battle of Chemung (190); Paul Jones's Victory (190).

Paul Jones's Naval Battle.....*Parton.* 190
Repulse of the Americans at Savannah (194).

Pulaski's Banner.....*Longfellow.* 194
Events of 1780 (195); Taking of Charleston (195); Partisan Warfare in the South (195).

Marion's Brigade.....*Ramsay.* 196

Song of Marion's Men.....*Bryant.* 199

Marion, Sumter, and Pickens.....*H. Lee.* 199
Arnold's Treason (201).

Execution of Major Andre.....*Alexander Hamilton.* 202

Andre's Last Request.....*Willis.* 205

Benedict Arnold.....*Garden.* 206
Events of 1781 (207); Mutiny of the Pennsylvania Troops (207); Measures of Relief (208); Battle of the Cowpens (208); Retreat of Morgan and Greene (208); Battle of Guilford Court-House (208); Battle of Hobkirk's Hill (208); Battle of Eutaw Springs (209).

Character of General Greene.....*Hamilton.* 209
Siege of Yorktown, and Surrender of Cornwallis (211).

Yorktown.....*Whittier.* 211
Expedition of Arnold (212); Close of the Revolution (212); Difficulties at the Close of the War (212); Proposal of Colonel Nicola (213).

PAGE.

Washington's Reply to Colonel Nicola..... 213
Newburg Addresses (214).

Address to the Army..... 214

Washington's Address to the Officers of the Army..... 218
Disbandment of the Army (220); Retirement of Washington (220).

Washington Resigning his Commission..... *Ramsay* 220

Eminent Statesmen of the Revolution..... *Sparks.* 222

Mount Vernon..... *Rev. Wm. Jay.* 224
Weakness of the Confederacy (224); Adoption of the Constitution (224).

Insufficiency of the Confederation..... *Hamilton.* 225

Motion for Prayers in the Convention..... *Franklin.* 226
Election of President and Vice-President (228).

SECTION V.—THE NATION.

Inauguration of Washington..... *Hildreth.* 228

The Launching of the Ship..... *Longfellow.* 231
Washington's Administration (233); Additional States (233); Death of Franklin (233).

Last Hours of Dr. Franklin..... *Parton.* 234

Eulogy on Franklin..... *Mirabeau.* 235

Character of Franklin..... *Mackintosh.* 236

Franklin and Washington..... *Greeley.* 237
Harmar's Expedition (238); St. Clair's Expedition (239); Wayne's Expedition (239); Trouble with the French Minister (239); Whiskey Insurrection (239); Jay's Treaty (239).

Washington at Mount Vernon..... *Irving.* 240

The Retirement of Washington..... *Guizot.* 241
John Adams's Administration (244); Trouble with France (244).

Hail, Columbia..... *Hopkinson.* 244
Death of Washington (246).

Tribute to Washington..... *Mason.* 246

Character of Washington..... *Marshall.* 248
Removal of the Capital (251).

The Election of Jefferson..... *Randall.* 252

Advice to the Nation..... *Jefferson.* 254
Admission of Ohio (256); Purchase of Louisiana (256); War with Tripoli (257); Duel between Hamilton and Burr (257).

Eulogy on Hamilton..... *Dr. Nott.* 257
Re-election of Jefferson (260); Burr's Subsequent History (260); Trouble with England (260); Affair of the Chesapeake and Leopard (261); The Embargo Act (261).

Steam Navigation..... *Timbs.* 261

King Cotton..... *Robt. Mackenzie.* 264
Madison's Administration (267); War of 1812 (267); Little Belt and President (267); Battle of Tippecanoe (267); Surrender of Detroit (268).

Battle of Queenstown..... *J. T. Headley.* 268

Capture of the Guerriere by the Constitution..... *Cooper.* 270

PAGE.

Other Naval Victories (289); Career of the Constitution (280).

Old Ironsides.....*O. W. Holmes.* 280

American Privateers (281); Opposition to the War (281).

Necessity of the War of 1812.....*Henry Clay.* 281

Campaign of 1813 (286); Perry's Victory (286); Battle of the Thames (287); Defeat of the Creeks (287); Campaign in Canada (287); Naval Actions (288); Campaign of 1814 (289); Ross's Expedition (290).

Burning of Washington.....*J. T. Headley.* 290

Attack on Baltimore (293).

The Star-Spangled Banner.....*Key.* 293

The Flag of Washington.....*F. W. Gillett.* 294

Surrender of the Essex (295); Seizure of Pensacola (295); Expedition against New Orleans (295).

Battle of New Orleans.....*Parton.* 295

Hartford Convention (300).

Objects of the Hartford Convention.....*Noah Webster.* 301

Treaty of Peace with England (303); War with Algiers (303); Monroe's Administration (304); War with the Seminoles (304); Cession of Florida to the United States (304); New States (305); Missouri Compromise (305).

Death of Commodore Decatur.....*Cooper.* 305

Monroe Doctrine (307); Visit of Lafayette (307).

Address to Lafayette.....*Webster.* 307

Lafayette at Mount Vernon.....*Levasseur.* 308

Death and Character of Lafayette.....*Sumner.* 309

John Quincy Adams's Administration (311).

Death of John Adams.....*Theodore Parker.* 311

Adams and Jefferson.....*Wirt.* 312

The American System (314); Jackson's Administration (314); Black Hawk War (314); Nullification (314).

Proclamation to South Carolina.....*Jackson.* 315

War with the Seminoles (317); Captivity of Osceola (317).

Osceola.....*Lucy Hooper.* 318

Van Buren's Administration (319); Rebellion in Canada (319); Harrison and Tyler's Administration (320); Annexation of Texas (320).

Texas.....*Robt. Mackenzie.* 320

Polk's Administration (322); War with Mexico (322).

Battle of Resaca de la Palma.....*R. S. Ripley.* 323

Taking of Matamoras and Monterey (325).

The Martyr of Monterey.....*Rev. J. G. Lyons.* 326

General Kearney's Expedition (327).

March of Colonel Doniphan.....*Mansfield.* 327

Conquest of California (331); Battle of Buena Vista (332).

The Angels of Buena Vista.....*Whittier.* 332

General Scott's Expedition (333); Occupation of Mexico (333).

American Conquest of Mexico.....*Mansfield.* 333

Treaty of Peace with Mexico (335); Taylor's and Fillmore's Administrations (336); Admission of California (336).

Eulogy on Zachary Taylor.....*R. C. Winthrop.* 336

PAGE.

Eulogy on John C. Calhoun.....*Webster.* 339
Death of Henry Clay (341).

Oratory of Henry Clay.....*S. N. Sweet.* 341
Death of Daniel Webster (343).

Eulogy on Daniel Webster.....*Clark.* 343
Pierce's Administration (344); Civil War in Kansas (345); Buchanan's Administration (345); Brown's Raid (345); Election of Abraham Lincoln (345); Hostilities at Charleston (345); Ordinances of Secession (346).

Inauguration of Abraham Lincoln.....*Greeley.* 346

The Constitution and the People.....*Lincoln.* 348
Capture of Fort Sumter (350); Uprising of the North (350); Conduct of the Slave States (350); Movements of the National Army (350).

Bethel.....*Duganne.* 351
Battle of Bull Run (352); War in Missouri (352); Union Naval Victories (352).

The Merrimac and the Monitor.....*Estvan.* 353

The Last Broadside.....*Eliz. T. P. Beach.* 357
Battle of Shiloh (358); Capture of New Orleans (358); Defeat of McClellan (358); Invasion of Maryland (359).

Barbara Frietchie.....*Whittier.* 359

History of Our Flag.....*Rev. A. P. Putnam.* 361
Battle of Fredericksburg (364); Emancipation Proclamation (364); Battle of Chancellorsville (364); Battle of Gettysburg (364).

National Cemetery at Gettysburg.....*Lincoln.* 365
Capture of Vicksburg, etc. (365); Operations of Grant, Sherman, and Thomas (366); Grant's Campaign in Virginia (366); Operations in the Shenandoah Valley (366).

Sheridan's Ride.....*Read.* 366
Destruction of the Alabama (368); Victory by Admiral Farragut (368); Victories of Sherman (368); Occupation of Richmond (368).

Evacuation of Richmond.....*Pollard.* 369
Assassination of Abraham Lincoln (371).

United States Sanitary Commission.....*H. W. Bellows.* 372
Administrations of Johnson (376); Grant (377).

Chicago.....*Whittier.* 378

Centennial Address.....*W. M. Evarts.* 379

Centennial Hymn.....*Whittier.* 381
Administrations of Hayes (382); Garfield (383); Arthur (383); Cleveland (384); Territorial Growth of the United States (387); Civil Progress of the Nation (390).

The Future of the Republic.....*Story.* 385

Chronological Table..... 397

Vocabulary..... 405

Biographical Index of Authors..... 411

INTRODUCTION.

PRINCIPLES OF ELOCUTION.

Elocution is the oral communication of thought. When the thought has been previously embodied in written composition, elocution becomes *recitation* or *reading*. It is recitation when the composition has been committed to memory, and reading when the composition is delivered from book or manuscript.

The principles of elocution are, therefore, applicable to reading, recitation, public speaking, and conversation. They may be grouped under *articulation, pronunciation, inflection, emphasis, pauses,* and *modulation.*

Articulation is the utterance of the elementary sounds of the language. Distinct articulation is the basis of good elocution.

The *elementary sounds* are the sounds composing syllables and words. They are variously represented by the letters of the alphabet, and may be divided into three classes; namely, *Vocals, Sub-vocals,* and *Aspirates.*

Vocals are complete or *open sounds* expressed by the vowels; *sub-vocals* are sounds modified by the teeth, lips, etc.; *aspirates* are simple emissions of breath, modified like the sub-vocals. Vocals are represented by the vowels; sub-vocals and aspirates, by the consonant letters.

The following is a table of the elementary sounds. [The marks are those used in Webster's Dictionary.]

VOCALS.

	Long.				*Short.*	
1. ā	*as in*	ape	1. ĕ	*as in*	end
2. â	" "	air	2. ă	" "	add
3. ä	" "	arm	3. ȧ	" "	ask

	Long.			*Short.*	
4.	ē	*as in*	eve	4. ĭ	*as in* it
5.	ẽ	" "	earn*	5. ŭ	" " up
6.	ō	" "	oak	(No corresponding short sound.)	
7.	o͝o	" "	do	6. u̇	" " bull
8.	ô	" "	or	7. ŏ	" " ox

Diphthongal.

9.	ī	*as in*	ice	*equivalent to*	ä and ĭ	Pronounced in one sound.
10.	oi	" "	oil	" "	ô " ĭ	
11.	ou	" "	our	" "	ô " o͝o	
12.	ū	" "	use	" "	ĭ " o͝o	

Modifying.

13.	y	*as in*	yet	*equivalent to*	ĭ	*joined to*	et
14.	w	" "	wet	" "	u̇	" "	et

	SUB-VOCALS.					ASPIRATES.		
1.	b	*as in*	bed	*correlative with*	1.	p	*as in*	pet
2.	d	" "	did	" "	2.	t	" "	tin
3.	g̃	" "	gig	" "	3.	k	" "	keg
4.	j	" "	jug	" "	4.	ch	" "	chin
5.	v	" "	vat	" "	5.	f	" "	fat
6.	z	" "	zone	" "	6.	s	" "	sun
7.	th	" "	thine	" "	7.	th	" "	thin
8.	zh	" "	azure	" "	8.	sh	" "	shall

	Liquid Sub-vocals.				*Open.*		
9.	l	*as in*	let	9.	h	*as in*	he
10.	m	" "	man	10.	wh	" "	when
11.	n	" "	noon	(equivalent to ô and h.)			
12.	r	" "	run				
13.	n̨g	" "	song				

The above table shows that there are 14 vocals;—8 simple, 4 diphthongal, and 2 modifying; also that there are 13 sub-vocals, and 10 aspirates, making in all 44 elementary sounds in the language. These sounds are variously represented by single letters, and by diphthongs and triphthongs. Thus in the

* *u* in urn is this sound slightly modified; but not a distinct sound.

word *their*, *ei* is equivalent to *ā*, and in the word *view*, *iew* is equivalent to *ū*.

The following exercises will practice the pupil in articulation and phonic analysis.

I.

Spell the following words by their sounds, and articulate with distinctness.

bought	guard	honor	usury
though	wolf	humble	despiseth
search	would	valiant	scientist
which	sphere	beauty	elysium
judge	laugh	dutiful	oceanic
deign	daunt	fearlessly	omniscient
height	choir	merrily	tournament
sieve	guide	drowsiness	mistiness
posts	texts	treasury	conscientious

II.

Read the following, with particular attention to articulation.

1. Thirst, hunger, and nakedness are ills incident to humanity.

2. The profligate's proneness to play leads him into distress, and is prejudicial to his health and happiness.

3. Whispers of revenge passed silently around among the enraged troops.

4. His false and treacherous friends aimed stealthily to deprive him of his dearly-bought wealth.

5. The merciless blasts, like frightful fiends, howled and moaned, and sent sharp shrill shrieks through the creaking cordage of the laboring vessel.

6. Theophilus Thistle thrust three-and-thirty thistles into the thick of his thumb.

7. Up the high hill he heaves a huge round stone.

8. Thou rather, with thy sharp and sulphurous bolt,
Split'st the unwedgable and gnarled oak,
Than the soft myrtle.

PRONUNCIATION.

The proper *pronunciation* of words depends upon the correct

utterance of the elementary sounds which compose them, and the right placing of the accent.

Pronunciation is to be acquired by the careful imitation of the best speakers, and by a diligent study or consultation of a good standard Dictionary.

The following exercises are designed to call attention to some of the faults which pupils are liable to commit in the utterance of the elementary sounds.

Pronounce.	*Avoid.*	*Pronounce.*	*Avoid.*
judg'ment	judg'munt	sin'gu-lar	sing'lar
mod'est	mod'ist	par-tic'u-lar	par-tic'ler
win'dow	win'der	com-mands'	com-mans'
mis'chiev-ous	mis-chiev'ous	char'ac-ter	char-ac'ter
dū'ti-ful	doo'ti-ful	en'gĭne	in'gīne
cov'et-ous	cov'et-chus	mis'er-a-ble	mis'ser-ble
tre-men'dous	tre-mend'yus	com'pa-ny	comp'ny

INFLECTION.

Inflection is a sliding movement of the voice from a higher to a lower tone, called the *falling inflection*, or from a lower to a higher tone, called the *rising inflection*. The former is generally indicated by the acute accent (′); the latter, by the grave accent (‵); thus, Will you go′? Where have you been‵? Did he say no′, or yes‵?

When the voice rises and falls in enunciating the same word, the two accents are combined, so as to form the wave, or circumflex (∧ or ∨—∩ or ∪); thus, Are *yŏu* a traitor? *Thôu* art the man.

When the voice is sustained in the same tone, without inflection, in enunciating a word or successive words, it is called *monotone*, and is indicated thus (-); as, Thē hēavens dēclāre the glōry of Gōd.

Examples of Inflection.

1. Good morning‵! How do you do‵? Very well‵, I thank‵ you. How do yôu do?
2. Will you take a walk with me to-day′? Yes‵.
3. Will you go to-day′, or to-morrow‵?

4. Are yŏu the person of whom he spoke?
5. Can the lâmb live in safety with the wŏlf?
6. "To arms'! to arms'! to arms'!" they cry.
7. Who knoweth the power of thine anger'? Even according to thy fear', so is thy wrath'.
8. Rōll ōn, thoū deēp and dārk blūe ocēan, rōll!

EMPHASIS.

Emphasis is the prominence given to a particular word or words in a sentence. This prominence may be given by the use of the rising, falling, or wave inflection, by a stress of the voice, a change of pitch, an unusual pause, or other means of drawing the attention to the word to be distinguished.

Emphatic words are generally indicated by italics; sometimes by small or large capitals; as, "*To arms!* To ARMS! TO ARMS!" he cried.

Emphasis is either *absolute* or *antithetic.*

Examples of Absolute Emphasis.

1. The quality of mercy is not *strained'*;
   It droppeth as the gentle *rain'* from *heaven'*
   Upon the place *beneath'*.
2. STRIKE'—till the last armed *foe'* expires,
   STRIKE'—for your *altars'* and your *fires'*.
3. How *pleasant'* the life of a *bird'* must be!
4. *Every'* boy and girl in America has heard of *George Washington'*.
5. *This'*, my lords', is a *perilous'* and *tremendous'* moment.

Examples of Antithetic Emphasis.

1. *Hŏmer* was the greater *gĕnius; Vĭrgil* the better *artĭst.*
2. I come to *bury'* Cæsar, not to *praise'* him.
3. I fear not *death'*, and shall I then fear *thee'?*
4. The *wise'* man is happy when he gains his *own'* approbation; the *fool'* when he gains the applause of *others'*.
5. *Thĕy* follow an *adventurer'* whom they fĕar; wĕ serve a *monarch'* whom we lôve.

6. The king was *dè*throned, and his son *èn*throned.
7. *Beauty'* is like the *flowers of spring'; virtue'* is like the *stars of heaven'*.
8. If thine enemy *hunger'*, give him bread' to eat; if he *thirst'*, give him water' to drink.

PAUSES.

There are frequently pauses required by the sense, but not indicated by any punctuation marks; and sometimes the latter are used when little or no pause is requisite. The judicious use of the pause, both as to place and duration, gives peculiar expressiveness to reading.

The pause not indicated by any point, is called the *rhetorical pause.* Its position in the sentence to be read should be carefully studied. The following are a few general rules:

1. Pause after a subject consisting of several words; as, To practice virtue—is the sure way to gain it.

2. Pause after an emphatic word; as, Be thou a *bruised*—but not a *broken*—reed.

3. There should be a short pause before a relative clause; as, Such were the beautiful auspices—under which Maryland started into being.

4. There should be a short pause before an objective phrase or clause; as, The people of the United States have justly supposed—that this policy was fully settled.

5. Also before or after words placed in contrast; as,

Some place their bliss—in action, some—in ease,
Those—call it pleasure, and contentment—these.

MODULATION.

Modulation is a variation of the tones of the voice, as to *pitch, force, quality,* and *time,* in order to give adequate expression to the sentiments or emotions represented in the composition delivered.

Pitch may be high, low, or middle. It is *high* when the voice rises considerably above the tones of conversation, as in shouting or calling; *low,* when the voice falls below the ordi-

nary conversational tones, as in very solemn discourse; *middle*, in conversation.

Force is the volume or loudness of the voice, in reading or speaking. It may be *loud*, *moderate*, or *gentle*.

Quality has reference to the kind of tone, as *pure*, *orotund*, *guttural*, *aspirate*, and *tremulous*.

Pure tone is clear and smooth; *orotund* is full and resonant; *guttural* is deep and harsh; *aspirate* is low and accompanied by harsh breathing; *tremulous* is plaintive, sorrowful, unsteady.

Time refers to rapidity of movement; it may be *quick*, *moderate*, or *slow*.

Exercises.

I.

[For Inflection.]

1. Hast thou entered into the springs of the sea'? Or hast thou walked in search of the depths'? Have the gates of death been opened unto thee'? Or hast thou seen the doors of the shadow of deáth'?

2. Hast thou entered into the treasures of the snow'? Or hast thou seen the treasures of the hail'? Canst thou bind the sweet influences of Plēiades', or loose the bands of Orion'? Canst thou bring forth Maz'zaroth in his season'? or canst thou guide Arctúrus with his sons'?

3. Canst thou bind the *unicorn* with his band in the furrow'? or will he harrow the valleys after thee'? Wilt thou trust him, because his strength is great'? or wilt thou leave thy labor to him'? Gavest thou the goodly wings unto the peacocks'? or wings and feathers unto the ostrich'?

4. Canst thou draw out Leviathan with a hook'? or his tongue with a cord which thou lettest down'? Canst thou put a hook into his nose'? or bore his jaw through with a thorn'? Wilt thou play' with him as with a bird'? or wilt thou bind' him for thy maidens'? Canst thou fill his skin' with barbed irons'? or his head' with fish-spears'?

5. Wilt thou hunt the prey for the lion'? or fill the appe-

tite of the young lions'? Will the unicorn' be willing to serve thee', or abide by thy crib'? Hast thou an arm like God'? or canst thou thunder' like him'?—*Book of Job.*

For additional exercises turn to the following pieces in the Reader:

1. Yorktown—*Whittier*.....p. 211
2. Independence Bell—verse 3.... 155
3. Speech of John Adams—*Webster*..... 156
4. Warren's Address—*Pierpont*..... 149

II.

[For Emphasis.]

Seems', madam! Nay, it *is**: *I* know not *seems.*
'Tis not alone my inky *cloak*, good mother',
Nor customary *suits* of solemn *black*,
Nor windy suspirations of forced *breath*,
No, nor the *fruitful river* in the *eye*,
Nor the *dejected 'havior* of the *visage*,
Together with all *forms*, *modes*, *shows* of grief,
That can denote *me* truly. *These*, indeed, *seem*,
For they are actions that a man might *play*;
But *I* have that within which passeth *show*,—
These but the *trappings* and the *suits* of woe.

Shakspeare.

A GOOD CONSCIENCE.

What stronger *breastplate* than a *heart untainted?*
Thrice is he armed that hath his quarrel *just*;
And he but *naked*, though locked up in *steel*,
Whose conscience with *injustice* is corrupted.

Shakspeare.

TACT AND TALENT.

Talent is something', but *tact* is everything*. *Talent'* is serious*, sober*, grave', and respectable*; *tact'* is all that*, and more too*. It is not a *sixth sense'*, but it is the life of all the *five**. It is the open eye*, the quick ear*, the judging taste*, the keen smell', and the lively touch*; it is the interpreter of all riddles*, the surmounter of all difficulties', the remover of all obstacles'. It

is useful in all places', and at all times'; it is useful in *solitude'*, for it shows a man his way *into'* the world; it is useful in *society'*, for it shows him his way *through'* the world.

THERE ARE NO DEAD.

There is *no* death! The stars *go down*
To *rise* upon some fairer shore;
And *bright* in Heaven's jeweled crown,
They *shine* for *evermore.*

There is *no* death! The *dust* we tread
Shall *change,* beneath the summer showers
To *golden grain* or *mellow fruit,*
Or *rainbow*-tinted *flowers.*

There is no *death!* An *angel* form
Walks o'er the earth with *silent* tread;
He bears our *best-loved* things *away;*
And *then* we call them—"*dead.*"

Born into that *undying* life,
They *leave* us but to *come again;*
With *joy* we welcome them—the *same,*
Except in *sin* and *pain.*

And ever *near* us, though *unseen,*
The *dear immortal spirits* tread;
For all the boundless universe
Is *life;* there *are no dead.*

J. L. McCreery.

Additional Exercises.

The Pilgrim Fathers..... *Reader*, p. 65
The Stamp Act, (paragraphs 4, 5, 6)..... 134
Speech of John Adams..... 156
Declaration of Independence..... 160
Song of Marion's Men..... 199
Address to the Army..... 214
Mount Vernon..... 224
Character of Lafayette. (paragraphs 3, 4)..... 310
Cemetery at Gettysburg..... 365

III.

[For Modulation.]

MEETING OF FITZ JAMES AND RODERICK DHU.

[This piece requires great variety of tones. The pitch is partly indicated by the italics and capitals.]

"Thy name and purpose'? *Saxon*, STAND!"
"A stranger'."—"What dost thou require'?"
"Rest' and a guide', and food', and fire',
My *life's* beset, my *path* is lost,
The gale has chilled my limbs with frost."
"Art thou a *friend* to *Roderick'?*"—"*No'*."
"*Thou* DAREST *not call thyself a* FOE'?"
"I DARE! *to him and all the band*
He brings to aid his murderous hand."
"Bold wôrds!—but though the beast of *game*
The privilege of *chase* may claim,
Though space and law the *stag* we lend,
Ere hound we slip, or bow we bend,
Who' ever recked *where, how*, or *when*,
The prowling *fox* was trapped and slain'?
Thus treacherous scouts'—yet, sure, *they lie*,
Who say thou camest a secret spy'!"
"*They do, by heaven!* Come *Roderick Dhu*,
And of his clan the BOLDEST two',
And let me but till morning rest,
I write the FALSEHOOD *on their* CREST."
"If, by the blaze, I mark aright,
Thou bearest the belt and spur of knight?"
"Then by these tokens mayest thou know
Each *proud oppressor's* MORTAL FOE."
"Enough', enough'; sit down', and share
A *soldier's* couch, a soldier's *fare*'."

Scott.

THE FIREMAN.

The city slumbers. O'er its mighty walls
Night's dusky mantle soft and silent falls;
Sleep o'er the world slow waves its wand of lead,
And ready torpors wrap each sinking head.
Stilled is the stir of labor and of life;
Hushed is the hum, and tranquilized the strife.

Man is at rest, with all his hopes and fears;
The young forget their sports, the old their cares;
The grave are careless; those who joy or weep,
All rest contented on the arm of sleep.

Sweet is the pillowed rest of beauty now,
And slumber smiles upon her tranquil brow;
Her bright dreams lead her to the moonlit tide,
Her heart's own partner wandering by her side.
'Tis a summer eve; the soft gales scarcely rouse
The low-voiced ripple and the rustling boughs;
And faint and far, some minstrel's melting tone
Breathes to her heart a music like its own.

When, hark! O horror! What a crash is there!
What shriek is that which fills the midnight air?
'Tis "FIRE! FIRE!" She wakes to dream no more!
The hot blast rushes through the blazing door!
The dim smoke eddies round; and hark! that cry!
"HELP! HELP! *Will no one aid? I die—I die!*"
She seeks the casement; shuddering at its height,
She turns again; the fierce flames mock her flight;
Along the crackling stairs they fiercely play,
And roar, exulting, as they seize their prey.
"*Help!* HELP! Will no one come?" She says no more,
But, pale and breathless, sinks upon the floor.

Will no one save thee? Yes, there yet is one
Remains to save when hope itself is gone;
When all have fled—when all but he would fly,
The *fireman* comes to rescue or to die!
He mounts the stair—it wavers 'neath his tread;
He seeks the room—flames flashing round his head;
He bursts the door, he lifts her prostrate frame,
And turns again to brave the raging flame.

The fire-blast smites him with its stifling breath,
The falling timbers menace him with death,
The sinking floors his hurried steps betray,
And ruin crashes round his desperate way;
Hot smoke obscures—ten thousand cinders rise—
Yet still he staggers forward with his prize.
He leaps from burning stair to stair. *On! On!*
Courage! One effort more, and all is won!

The stair is passed—the blazing hall is braved!
Still on! Yet on! Once more! Thank Heaven, she's saved!

R. T. Conrad.

BREAK, BREAK, BREAK.

Break, break, break,
On thy cold gray stones, O Sea!
And I would that my tongue could utter
The thoughts that arise in me.

O, well for the fisherman's boy,
That he shouts with his sister at play!
O, well for the sailor lad,
That he sings in his boat on the bay!

And the stately ships go on,
To their haven under the hill;
But O for the touch of a vanished hand,
And the sound of a voice that is still!

Break, break, break,
At the foot of thy crags, O Sea!
But the tender grace of a day that is dead
Will never come back to me.

Tennyson.

PAUL REVERE'S RIDE.

1. Listen, my children, and you shall hear
Of the midnight ride of Paul Revere,
On the eighteenth of April in Seventy-five;
Hardly a man is now alive
Who remembers that famous day and year.

2. He said to his friend,—"If the British march
By land or sea from the town to-night,
Hang a lantern aloft in the belfry arch
Of the North Church tower, as a signal light,—
One, if by land, and two, if by sea;
And I, on the opposite shore, will be
Ready to ride and spread the alarm
Through every Middlesex village and farm,
For the country-folk to be up, and to arm."

3. Then he said "Good night!" and with muffled oar
Silently rowed to the Charlestown shore,

Just as the moon rose over the bay,
Where, swinging wide at her moorings, lay
The Somerset, British man-of-war:
A phantom ship, with each mast and spar
Across the moon, like a prison bar;
And a huge black hulk, that was magnified
By its own reflection in the tide.

4. Meanwhile, his friend, through alley and street,
Wanders and watches with eager ears,
Till, in the silence around him, he hears
The muster of men at the barrack door,
The sound of arms and the tramp of feet,
And the measured tread of the grenadiers,
Marching down to their boats on the shore.

5. Then he climbed to the tower of the church,
Up the wooden stairs, with stealthy tread,
To the belfry-chamber overhead,
And startled the pigeons from their perch
On the sombre rafters, that round him made
Masses and moving shapes of shade,—
Up the trembling ladder, steep and tall,
To the highest window in the wall,
Where he paused to listen, and look down
A moment on the roofs of the town,
And the moonlight flowing over all.

6. Beneath, in the church-yard, lay the dead,
In their night encampment on the hill,
Wrapped in silence so deep and still
That he could hear, like a sentinel's tread,
The watchful night-wind, as it went
Creeping along from tent to tent,
And seeming to whisper, "All is well!"

7. A moment only he feels the spell
Of the place and the hour, the secret dread
Of the lonely belfry and the dead;
For suddenly all his thoughts are bent
On a shadowy something far away,
Where the river widens to meet the bay,—
A line of black that bends and floats
On the rising tide, like a bridge of boats.

8. Meanwhile, impatient to mount and ride,
Booted and spurred, with a heavy stride,
On the opposite shore walked Paul Revere.
Now he patted his horse's side,
Now gazed at the landscape far and near,
Then, impetuous, stamped the earth,
And turned and tightened his saddle-girth;
But mostly he watched with eager search
The belfry tower of the Old North Church,
As it rose above the graves on the hill,
Lonely, and spectral, and somber, and still.

9. And lo! as he looks, on the belfry's height,
A glimmer, and then a gleam of light!
He springs to the saddle, the bridle he turns,
But lingers and gazes, till full on his sight
A second lamp in the belfry burns!

10. A hurry of hoofs in the village street,
A shape in the moonlight, a bulk in the dark,
And beneath, from the pebbles in passing, a spark
Struck out by a steed flying fearless and fleet:
That was all! And yet, through the gloom and the light,
The fate of the nation was riding that night;
And the spark struck out by that steed in his flight,
Kindled the land into flame with its heat.

11. It was twelve by the village clock
When he crossed the bridge into Medford town;
He heard the crowing of the cock,
And the barking of the farmer's dog,
And felt the damp of the river fog,
That rises after the sun goes down.

12. It was one by the village clock
When he galloped into Lexington.
He saw the gilded weathercock
Swim in the moonlight as he passed,
And the meeting-house windows, blank and bare,
Gazed at him with a spectral glare,
As if they already stood aghast
At the bloody work they would look upon.

13. It was two by the village clock
When he came to the bridge at Concord town.
He heard the bleating of the flock,
And the twitter of birds among the trees,
And felt the breath of the morning breeze
Blowing over the meadows brown.
And one was safe and asleep in his bed,
Who at the bridge would be first to fall,
Who that day would be lying dead,
Pierced by a British musket-ball.

14. You know the rest. In the books you have read
How the British regulars fired and fled,—
How the farmers gave them ball for ball,
From behind each fence and farm-yard wall,
Chasing the red-coats down the lane,
Then crossing the fields to emerge again
Under the trees at the turn of the road,
And only pausing to fire and load.

15. So through the night rode Paul Revere;
And so through the night went his cry of alarm
To every Middlesex village and farm—
A cry of defiance and not of fear—
A voice in the darkness, a knock at the door,
And a word that shall echo forevermore!
For, borne on the night-wind of the Past,
Through all our history, to the last,
In the hour of darkness, and peril, and need,
The people will waken and listen to hear
The hurrying hoof-beats of that steed,
And the midnight message of Paul Revere.

Longfellow.

Additional Exercises.

[To aid the teacher in selecting pieces for practice in the various kinds of modulation and styles of reading.]

Description, blended with Emotion—pp. 12, 57, 65, 81, 141, 154, 174, 211, 231, 293, 326, 332, 351, 359, 366, 378.
Animated or Picturesque Description—pp. 136, 143, 190, 290, 295, 353.
Indignation, Rebuke, or *Denunciation*—pp. 133, 161, 213, 216, 217, 315.
Entreaty, Exhortation, etc—pp. 149, 156, 194, 205, 280, 357.
Eulogy, Pathetic and Declamatory—pp. 79, 235, 246, 257, 309, 318, 336, 339.

LIST OF AUTHORS.

THE following *List of Authors* is inserted for the convenience of teachers and pupils. These works may be consulted for the purpose of obtaining fuller information, in regard to any of the periods of United States history, than is afforded by the Reader.

Robertson's History of America.
Prescott's Conquest of Peru.
" Conquest of Mexico.
" Ferdinand and Isabella.
Irving's Life and Voyages of Columbus.
" Companions of Columbus.
Helps's Spanish Conquest of America.
Bancroft's History of the United States.
Hildreth's " " " "
Grahame's Colonial History of the U. S.
Irving's Philip of Pokanoket.
Parkman's Pioneers of France in the New World.
" Jesuits in North America.
" Conspiracy of Pontiac.
Palfrey's History of New England.
Neal's History of the Puritans.
" History of New England.
Theodore Irving's Conquest of Florida.
Campbell's History of Virginia.
Wright's Memoirs of Oglethorpe.
Stevens's History of Georgia.
McGee's History of the Irish Settlers in N. A.
Brodhead's History of New York.
Irving's Knickerbocker's History of N. Y.
E. Everett's Orations and Addresses.
Marshall's Life of Washington.
Sparks's " "
Ramsay's " "
Irving's " "
Lossing's " "
Lossing's Field Book of the Revolution.
Ethan Allen's History of his Captivity.
Moore's Diary of the Revolution.
Holmes's Annals of America.
De Chastellux' Journal of Travels in N. A.
R. Frothingham's History of the siege of Boston.
R. Frothingham's Rise of the Republic of the U. S.
L. Sabine's Loyalists of the American Revolution.
Greene's Life of General Greene.
Ramsay's History of South Carolina.
H. Lee's Memoirs of the War in the South.
Stone's Life of Brant.
Stone's Border Wars of the American Revolution.
Sparks's American Biography.
Weems's Life of Marion.
Upham's Lectures on Witchcraft.
Sewel's History of the Quakers.
Trumbull's History of Connecticut.
Drake's Indian Biography.
Catlin's Notes on the Indians.
Jefferson's Notes on Virginia.
Wirt's Life of Patrick Henry.
H. S. Randall's Life of Jefferson.
J. C. Hamilton's Life of Hamilton.
Parton's Life of Aaron Burr.
" " " Andrew Jackson.
" " " Benjamin Franklin.
W. V. Wells's Life of Samuel Adams.
C. F. Adams's Life of John Adams.
Goodrich's Lives of the Signers of the Declaration of Independence.
Headley's Life of La Fayette.
Simms's Life of Paul Jones.
Hawthorne's True Stories from History and Biography.
Moultrie's Memoirs of the Revolution.
Graham's Life of General Morgan.
Adams's Life of Madison.
W. C. Rives's Life of Madison.
Waldo's Life of Decatur.
Cooper's Naval History of the U. S.
Lossing's Field-Book of the War of 1812.
Wm. Jay's Life of John Jay.
S. P. Hildreth's Lives of the Early Settlers in Ohio.
Gayarre's History of Louisiana.
Hamilton's Letters and Speeches.
The Federalist.
N. Webster's Sketches of American Policy.
Headley's History of the Second War with England.
Marshall's History of Kentucky.
Thompson's History of Vermont.
Williamson's History of Maine.
Belknap's History of New Hampshire.
Dillon's History of Indiana.
Edwards's History of Illinois.
Sprague's Florida War.
Curtis's Life of Webster.
Webster's Great Orations.
Parker's Historic Americans.
Henry Clay's Speeches.
Ripley's History of the War with Mexico.
Mansfield's History of the Mexican War.
Chase's History of Polk's Administration.
Livermore's Review of the Mexican War.
Greeley's American Conflict.
Moore's Rebellion Record.
Badeau's Military History of General Grant.
Draper's History of the Rebellion.
Estvan's War Pictures from the South.
Stephens's History of the United States.
Mill's History of Minnesota.
Tuthill's History of California.
E. A. Pollard's Southern History of the War.
Lamon's Life of Lincoln.

THE UNITED STATES READER.

SECTION I.

DISCOVERIES AND EXPLORATIONS.

Discovery of America.—Christopher Columbus, the discoverer of America, was born in the city of Genoa (*jen'o-ah*), Italy. At an early age he manifested a fondness for the sea, and the most of his life, previous to its great event, was passed on the waters of the Mediterranean, and the west coast of Africa; and he even made a voyage toward Greenland, passing beyond the island of Iceland.

In those days, when navigation was yet in its infancy, the usual route to India—the country in the southeast part of Asia, with the adjacent islands—was by way of Egypt and the Red Sea, the passage around the southern extremity of Africa being then unknown. Columbus, believing the earth to be round, concluded that by sailing westward he would sooner reach India than by taking this route. This conception he determined to realize, being influenced by the conviction that he was commissioned by Heaven to carry the Gospel to the heathen of unknown lands.

His first application for aid was to the government of Genoa: it was refused. After applying, without success, to the monarchs of England and Portugal, he was assisted by Isabella,* Queen of Spain, and he set sail from Palos (*pah'los*), at the mouth of the river Tinto, in that country, with a fleet of three vessels. The first land which he saw, after a voyage of ten weeks, was one of the Bahama Islands, called by the natives Guanahani (*gwah-nah-hah'ne*), by him San Salvador (*Holy Saviour*), now sometimes known as Cat Island (October, 1492).

☞ [*The pronunciation and meaning of the words marked* (*) *are given in the Vocabulary at the end of the volume.*]

ANALYSIS.

Columbus, his early life—How prompted to the enterprise—His equipment—First land discovered—Date.

* "Queen Isabella was one of the purest spirits that ever ruled over the destinies of a nation. Had she been spared, her benignant vigilance would have prevented many a scene of horror in the colonization of the New World, and might have softened the lot of its native inhabitants. As it is, her fair name will ever shine with celestial radiance in the dawning of its history."—*Irving.*

First Voyage of Columbus.—*Joanna Baillie.*

1. What did the ocean's waste supply
To soothe the mind or please the eye?
The rising morn through dim mist breaking,
The flickered east with purple streaking;
The mid-day cloud through thin air flying,
With deeper blue the blue sea dyeing;
Long ridgy waves their white manes rearing,
And in the broad gleam disappearing;
The broadened, blazing sun declining,
And western waves like fire-floods shining;
The sky's vast dome to darkness given,
And all the glorious host of heaven!

2. Full oft upon the deck—while others slept—
To mark the bearing of each well-known star,
That shone aloft or on the horizon[v] far,
The anxious Chief his lonely vigil kept.
The mournful wind, the hoarse wave breaking near,
The breathing groans of sleep, the plunging lead,
The steersman's call, and his own stilly tread,
Are all the sounds of night that reach his ear.

3. But soon his dauntless soul, which nought could bend,
Nor hope delayed nor adverse fate subdue,—
With a more threatening danger must contend
Than storm or wave—a fierce and angry crew!
"Dearly," say they, "may we those visions rue
Which lured us from our native land,—
A wretched, lost, devoted band,
Led on by hope's delusive gleam,
The victims of a madman's dream!
Nor gold shall e'er be ours, nor fame,
Not even the remnant of a name,
On some rude-lettered stone, to tell
On what strange coast our wreck befell.
For us no requiem[v] shall be sung,
Nor prayer be said, nor passing knell
In holy church be rung."

4. To thoughts like these all forms give way
Of duty to a leader's sway;

And, as he moves,—oh! wretched cheer!
Their muttered curses reach his ear.
But all undaunted, firm, and sage,
He scorns their threats, yet thus he soothes their rage:
"That to some nearing coast we bear,
How many cheering signs declare!
Wayfaring birds the blue air ranging,
Their shadowy line to blue air changing,
Pass o'er our heads in frequent flocks;
While sea-weed from the parent rocks,
With fibry roots, but newly torn,
In wreaths are on the clear wave borne.
Nay, has not e'en the drifting current brought
Things of rude art, by human cunning wrought?
Be yet two days your patience tried,
And if no shore is then descried,
E'en turn your dastard prows again,
And cast your leader to the main."

5. And thus a while, with steady hand,
He kept in check a wayward band,
Who but with half-expressed disdain,
Their rebel spirit could restrain.
So passed the day,—the night,—the second day,
With its red setting sun's extinguished ray.

6. Dark, solemn midnight coped the ocean wide,
When from his watchful stand Columbus cried,
"A light, a light!"—blest sounds that rang
In every ear. At once they sprang
With haste aloft, and, peering bright,
Descried afar the blessed sight.
"It moves! It slowly moves, like ray
Of torch that guides some wanderer's way!
Lo! other lights, more distant, seeming
As if from town or hamlet streaming!
'Tis land! 'Tis peopled land! Man dwelleth there;
And thou, O God of heaven, hast heard thy servant's prayer!"

7. Returning day gave to their view
The distant shore and headland blue
Of long-sought land. Then rose on air
Loud shouts of joy, mixed wildly strange

With voice of weeping and of prayer,
Expression of their blessed change
From death to life, from fierce to kind,
From all that sinks to all that elevates the mind.

8. Those who, by faithless fear ensnared,
Had their brave chief so rudely dared,
Now, with keen self-upbraiding stung,
With every manly feeling wrung,
Repentant tears, looks that entreat,
Are kneeling humbly at his feet:
"Pardon our blinded, stubborn guilt!
O, henceforth make us what thou wilt!
Our hands, our hearts, our lives are thine,
Thou wondrous man, led on by power divine!"

9. Columbus led them to the shore
Which ship had never touched before;
And then he knelt upon the strand
To thank the God of sea and land;
And then, with mien and look elate,
Gave welcome to each toil-worn mate.
And lured, with courteous signs of cheer,
The dusky natives gathering near,
Who on them gazed with wondering eyes,
As missioned spirits from the skies.
And then did he possession claim
In royal Isabella's name.

Landing of Columbus.—*Robertson.*

1. As soon as the sun arose, all their boats were manned and armed. They rowed toward the island with their colors displayed, with warlike music, and other martial pomp. As they approached the coast, they saw it covered with a multitude of people, whose attitudes and gestures expressed wonder and astonishment at the strange objects which presented themselves to their view. Columbus was the first European who set foot in the New World which he had discovered.

2. He landed in a rich dress, and with a naked sword in his hand. His men followed, and kneeling down, they all kissed the ground which they had so long desired to see. They next

erected a crucifix,[v] and prostrating themselves before it, returned thanks to God for conducting their voyage to such a happy issue. They then took solemn possession of the country for the crown of Castile and Leon, with all the formalities[v] which the Portuguese were accustomed to observe in acts of this kind, in their new discoveries.

3. The Spaniards, while thus employed, were surrounded by many of the natives, who gazed, in silent admiration, upon actions which they could not comprehend, and of which they did not foresee the consequences. The dress of the Spaniards, the whiteness of their skins, their beards, their arms, appeared strange and surprising. The vast machines in which they had traversed the ocean, that seemed to move upon the water with wings, and uttered a dreadful sound resembling thunder, accompanied with lightning and smoke, struck them with such terror, that they began to respect their new guests as a superior order of beings, and concluded that they were children of the sun, who had descended to visit the earth.

4. The Europeans were hardly less amazed at the scene now before them. Every herb, and shrub, and tree, was different from those which flourished in Europe. The soil seemed to be rich, but bore few marks of cultivation. The climate, even to the Spaniards, felt warm, though extremely delightful. The inhabitants appeared in the simple innocence of nature, entirely naked. Their black hair, long and uncurled, floated upon their shoulders, or was bound in tresses around their heads. They had no beards, and every part of their bodies was perfectly smooth. Their complexion was of a dusky copper-color, their features singular, rather than disagreeable, their aspect gentle and timid.

5. Though not tall, they were well-shaped and active. Their faces, and several parts of their body, were fantastically[v] painted with glaring colors. They were shy at first through fear, but soon became familiar with the Spaniards, and with transports of joy received from them hawks-bells[v], glass beads, or other baubles, in return for which they gave such provisions as they had, and some cotton yarn, the only commodity of value that

they could produce. Toward evening, Columbus returned to his ship, accompanied by many of the islanders in their boats, which they called *canoes;* and though rudely formed out of the trunk of a single tree, they rowed them with surprising dexterity. . . . . .

6. Columbus employed the next day in visiting the coasts of the island; and from the universal poverty of the inhabitants, he perceived that this was not the rich country for which he sought. But, conformably to his theory concerning the discovery of those regions of Asia which stretched toward the east, he concluded that San Salvador was one of the isles which geographers described as situated in the great ocean adjacent to India. Having observed that most of the people whom he had seen wore small plates of gold, by way of ornament, in their nostrils, he eagerly inquired where they got that precious metal.

7. They pointed toward the south, and made him comprehend, by signs, that gold abounded in countries situated in that quarter. Thither he immediately determined to direct his course, in full confidence of finding there those opulent regions which had been the object of his voyage, and would be a recompense for all his toils and dangers. He took along with him seven of the natives of San Salvador, that, by acquiring the Spanish language, they might serve as guides and interpreters; and those innocent people considered it as a mark of distinction when they were selected to accompany him.

8. He saw several islands, and touched at three of the largest, on which he bestowed the names of St. Mary of the Conception, Fernandina, and Isabella. He inquired everywhere for gold, and the signs that were uniformly made by way of answer, confirmed him in the opinion that it was brought from the south. He followed that course, and soon discovered a country which appeared very extensive, not perfectly level, like those which he had already visited, but so diversified with rising grounds, hills, rivers, woods, and plains, that he was uncertain whether it might prove an island, or a part of the continent. The natives of San Salvador, whom he had on board, called it *Cuba:* Columbus gave it the name of *Juana.*

ANALYSIS.—II.

1. Appearance of the New World. 2. Conduct of the Spaniards on landing. 3. Behavior of the natives. 4. Feelings of the Europeans—The climate. 4, 5. Description of the natives. 6. Further proceedings of Columbus—Belief as to the nature of his discovery—Gold. 7, 8. Further voyages and explorations—Cuba.

Other Discoveries and Voyages.—COLUMBUS continued his explorations among the islands, discovering Hayti, which he named Hispaniola (*Little Spain*), on the 6th of December following. Thence, he sailed on his return to Spain, which he reached in March (1493). He was received by his sovereigns (Ferdinand and Isabella) with great pomp and rejoicing, and the fame of his successful expedition soon spread over Europe, exciting very great astonishment and curiosity.

Columbus made three other voyages to the New World, in the first of which, as well as in the one just described, his discoveries were confined to the islands between North and South America; but in his third voyage, in 1498, he discovered the mainland, at the mouth of the River Orinoco, in South America; and in the fourth and last, he examined the coast of Darien. He still, however, believed that the lands which he had discovered were a portion of eastern Asia, instead of a new continent; and in this conviction he died, thus remaining in ignorance of the real grandeur of his discovery (1506).

Maritime Enterprise in the 15th Century.—*Prescott.*

1. THE improvements which took place in the art of navigation, the more accurate measurement of time, and, above all, the discovery of the polarity[v] of the magnet, greatly advanced the cause of geographical knowledge. Instead of creeping timidly along the coast, or limiting his expeditions to the narrow basins of inland waters, the voyager might now spread his sails boldly on the deep, secure of a guide to direct his bark unerringly across the illimitable[v] waste. The consciousness of this power led thought to travel in a new direction; and the mariner began to look with earnestness for another path to the Indian Spice-islands than that by which the Eastern caravans had traversed the continent of Asia.

2. The nations on whom the spirit of enterprise, at this crisis, naturally descended, were Spain and Portugal, placed, as they were, on the outposts of the European continent, commanding the great theatre of future discovery. Both countries felt the responsibility of their new position. The crown of

Portugal was constant in its efforts, through the fifteenth century, to find a passage round the southern point of Africa into the Indian Ocean; though so timid was the navigation that every fresh headland became a formidable barrier; and it was not till the latter part of the century, that the adventurous Diaz passed quite round the Stormy Cape, as he termed it, but which John the Second, with happier augury[v], called the Cape of Good Hope (1486).

3. But, before Vasco de Gama had availed himself of this discovery to spread his sails in the Indian seas (1497), Spain entered on her glorious career, and sent Columbus across the western waters. The object of the great navigator was still the discovery of a route to India, but by the west instead of the east. He had no expectation of meeting with a continent in his way; and, after repeated voyages, he remained in his original error, dying, as is well known, in the conviction that it was the eastern shore of Asia which he had reached.

4. It was the same object which directed the nautical[v] enterprises of those who followed in the admiral's track; and the discovery of a strait into the Indian Ocean was the burden of every order from the government, and the design of many an expedition to different points of the new continent, which seemed to stretch its leviathan[v] length along from one pole to the other. The discovery of an Indian passage is the true key to the maritime[v] movements of the fifteenth and the first half of the sixteenth centuries. It was the great leading idea that gave the character to the enterprise of the age.

5. It is not easy at this time to comprehend the impulse given to Europe by the discovery of America. It was not the gradual acquisition of some border territory, a province, or a kingdom, that had been gained, but a New World that was now thrown open to the European. The races of animals, the mineral treasures, the vegetable forms, and the varied aspects of nature, man in the different phases[v] of civilization, filled the mind with entirely new sets of ideas, that changed the habitual current of thought and stimulated it to indefinite conjecture.

6. The eagerness to explore the wonderful secrets of the new

hemisphere became so active, that the principal cities of Spain were, in a manner, depopulated[v], as emigrants thronged one after another to take their chance upon the deep. It was a world of romance that was thrown open; for, whatever might be the luck of the adventurer, his reports on his return were tinged with a coloring of romance that stimulated still higher the sensitive fancies of his countrymen, and nourished the chimerical[v] sentiments of an age of chivalry[v]. They listened with attentive ears to tales of amazons which seemed to realize the classic legends[v] of antiquity, to stories of Patagonian giants, to flaming pictures of an El Dorado[v], where the sands sparkled with gems, and golden pebbles as large as birds' eggs were dragged in nets out of the rivers.

7. It would seem to have been especially ordered by Providence that the discovery of the two great divisions of the American hemisphere should fall to the two races best fitted to conquer and colonize them. Thus the northern section was consigned to the Anglo-Saxon race, whose orderly, industrious habits found an ample field for development under its colder skies and on its more rugged soil; while the southern portion, with its tropical[v] products and treasures of mineral wealth, held out the most attractive bait to invite the enterprise of the Spaniard.

8. Under the pressure of that spirit of nautical enterprise which filled the maritime communities of Europe in the sixteenth century, the whole extent of the mighty continent, from Labrador to Terra del Fuego, was explored in less than thirty years after its discovery; and in 1521, the Portuguese Maghellan, sailing under the Spanish flag, solved the problem of the strait, and found a westerly way to the long-sought Spice-islands of India,—greatly to the astonishment of the Portuguese, who, sailing from the opposite direction, there met their rivals, face to face, at the antipodes[v]. But while the whole eastern coast of the American continent had been explored, and the central portion of it colonized, even after the brilliant achievement of the Mexican conquest,—the veil was not yet raised that hung over the golden shores of the Pacific.—*History of the Conquest of Peru.*

Character of Columbus.—*Irving.*

1. The conduct of Columbus was characterized by the grandeur of his views, and the magnanimity[v] of his spirit. Instead of scouring the newly-found countries, like a grasping adventurer[v] eager only for immediate gain, as was too generally the case with contemporary[v] discoverers, he sought to ascertain their soil and productions, their rivers and harbors: he was desirous of colonizing and cultivating them; of conciliating and civilizing the natives; of building cities; introducing the useful arts; subjecting everything to the control of law, order, and religion; and thus of founding regular and prosperous empires.

2. In this glorious plan, he was constantly defeated by the dissolute rabble which it was his misfortune to command; with whom all law was tyranny, and all order restraint. They interrupted all useful works by their seditions[v]; provoked the peaceful Indians to hostility; and after they had thus drawn down misery and warfare upon their own heads, and overwhelmed Columbus with the ruins of the edifice he was building, they charged him with being the cause of the confusion. Well would it have been for Spain, had those who followed in the track of Columbus possessed his sound policy and liberal views. The New World, in such cases, would have been settled by pacific colonists, and civilized by enlightened legislators; instead of being overrun by desperate adventurers, and desolated by avaricious conquerors.

3. Columbus was a man of quick sensibility, liable to great excitement, to sudden and strong impressions, and powerful impulses. He was naturally irritable[v] and impetuous, and keenly sensible to injury and injustice; yet the quickness of his temper was counteracted by the benevolence and generosity of his heart. The magnanimity of his nature shone forth through all the troubles of his stormy career. Though continually outraged in his dignity, and braved in the exercise of his command; though foiled in his plans, and endangered in his person by the seditions of turbulent and worthless men, and that too at times when suffering under anxiety of mind and

anguish of body sufficient to exasperate[v] the most patient, yet he restrained his valiant and indignant spirit, by the strong power of his mind, and brought himself to forbear and reason, and even to supplicate: nor should we fail to notice how free he was from all feeling of revenge, how ready to forgive and forget, on the least sign of repentance and atonement[v]. He has been extolled for his skill in controlling others; but far greater praise is due to him for his firmness in governing himself.

4. His natural benignity[v] made him accessible to all kinds of pleasurable sensations from external objects. In his letters and journals, instead of detailing circumstances with the technical[v] precision of a mere navigator, he notices the beauties of nature with the enthusiasm[v] of a poet or a painter. As he coasts the shores of the New World, the reader participates in the enjoyment with which he describes, in his imperfect but picturesque[v] Spanish, the varied objects around him; the blandness[v] of the temperature, the purity of the atmosphere, the fragrance of the air, "full of dew and sweetness," the verdure of the forests, the magnificence of the trees, the grandeur of the mountains, and the limpidity[v] and freshness of the running streams.

5. New delight springs up for him in every scene. He extols each new discovery as more beautiful than the last, and each as the most beautiful in the world; until, with his simple earnestness, he tells the sovereigns, that, having spoken so highly of the preceding islands, he fears that they will not credit him, when he declares that the one he is actually describing surpasses them all in excellence.

6. In the same ardent and unstudied way, he expresses his emotions on various occasions, readily affected by impulses of joy or grief, of pleasure or indignation. When surrounded and overwhelmed by the ingratitude and violence of worthless men, he often, in the retirement of his cabin, gave way to bursts of sorrow, and relieved his overladen heart by sighs and groans. When he returned in chains to Spain, and came into the presence of Isabella, instead of continuing the lofty pride with which he had hitherto sustained his injuries, he was touched

with grief and tenderness at her sympathy, and burst forth into sobs and tears.

7. He was devoutly pious; religion mingled with the whole course of his thoughts and actions, and shone forth in his most private and unstudied writings. Whenever he made any great discovery, he celebrated it by solemn thanks to God. The voice of prayer and melody of praise rose from his ships when they first beheld the New World, and his first action on landing was to prostrate himself upon the earth and return thanksgivings. Every evening, the *Salve Regina*[v] and other vesper[v] hymns were chanted by his crew, and masses were performed in the beautiful groves bordering the wild shores of this heathen land. . . . . .

8. He was decidedly a visionary,[v] but a visionary of an uncommon and successful kind. The manner in which his ardent imagination and mercurial[v] nature were controlled by a powerful judgment, and directed by an acute sagacity, is the most extraordinary feature of his character. Thus governed, his imagination, instead of exhausting itself in idle flights, lent aid to his judgment, and enabled him to form conclusions at which common minds could never have arrived, nay, which they could not perceive when pointed out.

9. To his intellectual vision it was given to read the signs of the times, and to trace, in the conjectures and reveries of past ages, the indications of an unknown world; as soothsayers[v] were said to read predictions[v] in the stars, and to foretell events from the visions of the night. "His soul," observes a Spanish writer, "was superior to the age in which he lived. For him was reserved the great enterprise of traversing that sea which had given rise to so many fables, and of deciphering the mystery[v] of his time."

10. With all the fervor of his imagination, its fondest dreams fell short of the reality. He died in ignorance of the real grandeur of his discovery. Until his last breath, he entertained the idea that he had merely opened a new way to the old mart of opulent[v] commerce, and had discovered some of the wild regions of the east. He supposed Hispaniola to be the ancient Ophir

which had been visited by the ships of Solomon, and that Cuba and Terra Firma were but remote parts of Asia.

11. What visions of glory would have broken upon his mind could he have known that he had indeed discovered a new continent, equal to the whole of the old world in magnitude, and separated by two vast oceans from all the earth hitherto known by civilized man! And how would his magnanimous spirit have been consoled, amidst the afflictions of age and the cares of penury[v], the neglect of a fickle public, and the injustice of an ungrateful king, could he have anticipated the splendid empires which were to spread over the beautiful world he had discovered; and the nations, and tongues, and languages which were to fill its lands with his renown, and revere and bless his name to the latest posterity[v]!—*Life and Voyages of Columbus.*

Amerigo Vespucci.—In 1499, the year after Columbus discovered the continent, Amerigo Vespucci (*ah-mā-rē'gō ves-poot'chē*), an Italian navigator, visited the eastern coast of South America, and, in 1501, made a second voyage to the same regions. He prepared accounts of these two voyages, which were published in Europe, in which he claimed to be the first European that had landed on the western continent. In consequence of the claim set up by him, as well as from the fact that his were the first published accounts of the newly discovered country, it was called America.

The Cabots.—In 1497, about one year before Columbus discovered the continent, and two years previous to Amerigo's visit, John Cabot and his son Sebastian, while sailing under a commission from Henry VII. of England, discovered the coast of Labrador, and thus were the first to discover the continent of America. In a second voyage, made by Sebastian Cabot in 1498, the coast, from Labrador to Chesapeake Bay—some say to Florida—was explored: landings were made in several places, and natives were seen, clad in the skins of beasts, and making use of copper. These achievements of the Cabots, the discovery and explorations, proved of momentous importance, especially to England, as, by reason of them, that country based her claim to all the region from Labrador to Florida.

The Discovery of Florida.—*Bancroft.*

1. Juan Ponce de Leon (*pōn'-thā dā lā-ōn'*) was the discoverer of Florida. His youth had been passed in military service in Spain; and during the war in Granada (*gran-ah'dah*) he had shared in the wild exploits of predatory[v] valor. No sooner had

the return of the first voyage across the Atlantic given an assurance of a New World, than he hastened to participate in the dangers and the fruits of adventure in America. He was a fellow-voyager of Columbus in his second expedition. In the wars of Hispaniola he had been a gallant soldier; and Ovando had rewarded him with the government of the eastern province of that island.

2. From the hills in his jurisdiction[v], he could behold, across the clear waters of a placid[v] sea, the magnificent vegetation of Porto Rico, which distance rendered still more admirable, as it was seen through the transparent atmosphere of the tropics. A visit to the island stimulated the cupidity[v] of avarice, and Ponce aspired to the government. He obtained the station: inured[v] to sanguinary[v] war, he was inexorably[v] severe in his administration. He oppressed the natives; he amassed wealth. But his commission as governor of Porto Rico conflicted with the claims of the family of Columbus; and policy, as well as justice, required his removal. Ponce was displaced.

3. Yet, in the midst of an archipelago[v], and in the vicinity of a continent, what need was there for a brave soldier to pine at the loss of power over a wild though fertile island? Age had not tempered the love of enterprise: he longed to advance his fortunes by the conquest of a kingdom, and to retrieve a reputation which was not without a blemish. Besides, the veteran[v] soldier, whose cheeks had been furrowed by hard service as well as by years, had heard, and had believed the tale, of a fountain which possessed virtues to renovate the life of those who should bathe in its stream, or to give a perpetuity[v] of youth to the happy man who should drink of its ever-flowing waters.

4. So universal was this tradition[v], that it was credited in Spain, not by all the people and the court only, but by those who were distinguished for virtue and intelligence. Nature was to discover the secrets for which alchemy[v] had toiled in vain, and the elixir[v] of life was to flow from a perpetual fountain of the New World, in the midst of a country glittering with gems and gold.

5. Ponce embarked at Porto Rico, with a squadron[v] of three ships, fitted out at his own expense, for his voyage to fairy-land. He touched at Guanahani; he sailed among the Bahamas; but the laws of nature remained inexorable[v]. On Easter Sunday, which the Spaniards call Pascua Florida, land was seen. It was supposed to be an island, and received the name of Florida, from the day on which it was discovered, and from the aspect of the forests, which were then brilliant with a profusion of blossoms, and gay with the fresh verdure of early spring.

6. Bad weather would not allow the squadron to approach land: at length the aged soldier was able to go on shore, in the latitude of thirty degrees and eight minutes; some miles, therefore, to the north of St. Augustine. The territory was claimed for Spain. Ponce remained for many weeks to investigate the coast which he had discovered, though the currents of the gulf-stream, and the islands, between which the channel was yet unknown, threatened shipwreck.

7. He doubled Cape Florida; he sailed among the Tortugas; and, despairing of entire success, he returned to Porto Rico, leaving a trusty follower to continue the research. The Indians had everywhere displayed a determined hostility. Ponce de Leon remained an old man; but Spanish commerce acquired a new channel through the Gulf of Florida, and Spain a new province, which imagination could esteem immeasurably rich, since its interior was unknown.

8. The government of Florida was the reward which Ponce received from the king of Spain; but the dignity was accompanied with the onerous[v] condition, that he should colonize the country which he was appointed to rule. Preparations in Spain, and an expedition against the Caribbee Indians, delayed his return to Florida. When, after a long interval, he proceeded with two ships to take possession of his province, and select a site for a colony, his company was attacked by the Indians with implacable[v] fury.

9. Many Spaniards were killed; the survivors were forced to hurry to their ships; Ponce de Leon himself, mortally wounded

by an arrow, returned to Cuba to die. So ended the adventurer, who had coveted immeasurable wealth, and had hoped for perpetual youth. The discoverer of Florida had desired immortality on earth, and gained its shadow.—*History of the United States.*

Expedition of Balboa.—In 1513, Balboa,* the governor of the Spanish colony at the Isthmus of Darien, the first colony established on the American continent, while crossing the isthmus, gained the summit of a mountain from which he discovered the Pacific Ocean. After falling upon his knees and thanking God for the privilege of being the discoverer of this great ocean, he descended to the sea-shore and took possession of the whole coast in the name of the Spanish crown.

Discovery of the Pacific Ocean.—*Irving.*

1. This was indeed one of the most sublime discoveries that had yet been made in the New World, and must have opened a boundless field of conjecture to the wondering Spaniards. The imagination delights to picture forth the splendid confusion of their thoughts. Was this the great Indian Ocean, studded with precious islands, abounding in gold, in gems, and spices, and bordered by the gorgeous cities and wealthy marts of the East? Or was it some lonely sea, locked up in the embraces of savage, uncultivated continents, and never traversed by a bark, excepting the light pirogue[v] of the savage?

2. The latter could hardly be the case, for the natives had told the Spaniards of golden realms, and populous, and powerful, and luxurious nations upon its shores. Perhaps it might be bordered by various people, civilized in fact, though differing from Europe in their civilization; who might have peculiar laws and customs, and arts and sciences; who might form, as it were, a world of their own, intercommuning by this mighty sea, and carrying on commerce between their own islands and continents; but who might exist in total ignorance and independence of the other hemisphere.—*Companions of Columbus.*

* Vasco Nunez de Balboa was born in Spain, in 1475. Having been superseded in the governorship of the colony at Darien, and afterward charged by the new governor with the design of making other discoveries without authority, he was tried and found guilty. Although he persisted that he was unjustly condemned, he was beheaded in conformity with the sentence, in 1517.

De Ayllon's Expedition.—About the time of De Leon's defeat in Florida, De Ayllon (*dī ile-yone*), a Spanish adventurer, was engaged in an enterprise having for its object the procuring of a large number of Indians to work the plantations and mines of St. Domingo (*do-ming'g*ō). At a place in the southern part of South Carolina, a great number of natives were treacherously captured; but the undertaking proved unsuccessful, for of the two vessels employed, one was lost while on the return to St. Domingo, and many of the captives in the other sickened and died.

It was not many months after this unprofitable speculation that De Ayllon obtained the appointment as governor of Chicora (*che-kō'rah*), the name given to that part of Carolina which he had visited, and he wasted his fortune in fitting out an expedition to conquer the country. The issue of this second enterprise was likewise disastrous: one of his ships, the largest and best, was stranded and lost; many of his men were killed by the natives, in revenge for the treachery which he had previously been guilty of; and he himself barely succeeded in making good his escape.

Discovery and Conquest of Mexico.—In 1517, Cordova, a Spanish navigator, sailed from Cuba and discovered the northern coast of Yucatan. Upon his return he gave such a favorable account of the civilization and riches of the people whom he had seen, as to awaken a keen desire among the Spaniards to undertake their conquest. Accordingly the governor of Cuba sent an expedition under the direction of Grijalva (*gre-hahl'vah*), the result of which was very satisfactory. Grijalva, after an exploration of the southern coast of Mexico, returned with a large amount of treasure, obtained by trafficking with the natives.

The governor then, determining to conquer the Mexicans and get possession of their wealth, sent an expedition, consisting of eleven vessels and more than six hundred armed men, under the command of Cort'ez. Cortez landed, in 1519, near Vera Cruz (*vā'rah kroose*), and was at once met by friendly deputations from Montezuma (*mon-ta-thoo'mah*), the Mexican emperor. By perseverance and a course of falsehood and duplicity, he succeeded in reaching the city of Mexico, the Indian capital; and by stratagem and boldness, and with the aid of Indian tribes opposed to the Mexican rule, finally completed the conquest of the people, and Mexico became a province of Spain in 1521.

Boldness of Cortez.—*Prescott.*

1. There were timid spirits in the camp on whom Cortez could not rely, and who, he feared, might spread the seeds of disaffection[v] among their companions. Even the more resolute, on any occasion of disgust or disappointments hereafter, might falter in purpose, and, getting possession of the vessels, abandon the enterprise. This was already too vast, and the odds were

too formidable, to authorize expectation of success with diminution of numbers. Experience showed that this was always to be apprehended, while means of escape were at hand. The best chance for success was to cut off these means. He came to the daring resolution to destroy the fleet, without the knowledge of his army.

2. When arrived at Cempoalla, he communicated his design to a few of his devoted adherents, who entered warmly into his views. Through them he readily persuaded the pilots, by means of those golden arguments which weigh more than any other with ordinary minds, to make such a report of the condition of the fleet as suited his purpose. The ships, they said, were grievously racked by the heavy gales they had encountered; and, what was worse, the worms had eaten into their sides and bottoms until most of them were not sea-worthy, and some, indeed, could scarcely now be kept afloat.

3. Cortez received the communication with surprise; "for he could well dissemble," observes Las Casas, with his usual friendly comment, "when it suited his interests." "If it be so," he exclaimed, "we must make the best of it: Heaven's will be done!" He then ordered five of the worst conditioned to be dismantled, their cordage, sails, iron, and whatever was movable, to be brought on shore, and the ships to be sunk. A survey was made of the others, and, on a similar report, four more were condemned in the same manner. Only one small vessel remained.

4. When the intelligence reached the troops in Cempoalla, it caused the deepest consternation. They saw themselves cut off by a single blow from friends, family, and country! The stoutest hearts quailed before the prospect of being thus abandoned, on a hostile shore, a handful of men arrayed against a formidable empire. When the news arrived of the destruction of the five vessels first condemned, they had acquiesced in it as a necessary measure, knowing the mischievous activity of the insects in these tropical seas; but, when this was followed by the loss of the remaining four, suspicions of the truth flashed on their minds. They felt they were betrayed. Murmurs, at

first deep, swelled louder and louder, menacing open mutiny. "Their general," they said, "had led them like cattle to be butchered in the shambles." The affair wore a most alarming aspect. In no situation was Cortez ever exposed to greater danger from his soldiers.

5. His presence of mind did not desert him at this crisis. He called his men together, and, employing the tones of persuasion rather than authority, assured them that a survey of the ships showed that they were not fit for service. If he had ordered them to be destroyed, they should consider, also, that his was the greatest sacrifice, for they were his property—all, indeed, he possessed in the world. The troops, on the other hand, would derive one great advantage from it, by the addition of a hundred able-bodied recruits, before required to man the vessels. But, even if the fleet had been saved, it could have been of little service in their present expedition; since they would not need it if they succeeded, while they would be too far in the interior to profit by it if they failed.

6. He besought them to turn their thoughts in another direction. To be thus calculating chances and means of escape was unworthy of brave souls. They had set their hands to the work; to look back, as they advanced, would be their ruin. They had only to resume their former confidence in themselves and their general, and success was certain. "As for me," he concluded, "I have chosen my part. I will remain here, while there is any one to bear me company. If there be any so craven as to shrink from sharing the dangers of our glorious enterprise, let them go home, in God's name. There is still one vessel left. Let them take that and return to Cuba. They can tell there how they have deserted their commander and their comrades, and patiently wait till we return loaded with the spoil of the Aztecs."

7. The politic orator had touched the right chord in the bosoms of the soldiers. As he spoke, their resentment gradually died away. The faded visions of future riches and glory, rekindled by his eloquence, again floated before their imaginations. The first shock over, they felt ashamed of their temporary distrust. Their enthusiasm for their leader revived, for they felt

that under his banner only they could hope for victory; and, as he concluded, they testified the revulsion[v] of their feelings by making the air ring with their shouts, "To Mexico! To Mexico!"

8. The destruction of his fleet by Cortez is, perhaps, the most remarkable passage in the life of this remarkable man. History, indeed, affords examples of a similar expedient in emergencies somewhat similar: but none where the chances of success were so precarious[v], and defeat would be so disastrous. Had he failed, it might well seem an act of madness. Yet it was the fruit of deliberate calculation. He had set fortune, fame, life itself, all upon the cast, and must abide the issue. There was no alternative in his mind, but to succeed or perish. The measure he adopted greatly increased the chance of success. But to carry it into execution, in the face of an incensed and desperate soldiery, was an act of resolution that has few parallels in history.—*History of the Conquest of Mexico.*

Expedition of Narvaez.—In 1528, Narvaez (*nar-vah'eth*), having been appointed governor of Florida by the Spanish sovereign, sailed from Cuba to conquer and possess the country. The attempt proved most disastrous; for, of the three hundred men who landed in Florida and penetrated the wild regions, only four, after years of wandering, succeeded in reaching a Spanish settlement in Mexico.

Expedition of De Soto.—*Parkman.*

1. Hernando De Soto had been the companion of Pizarro in the conquest of Peru. He had come to America a needy adventurer, with no other fortune than his sword and target; but his exploits had given him fame and fortune, and he appeared at court with the retinue[v] of a nobleman. Still his active energies could not endure repose, and his avarice and ambition goaded him to fresh enterprises. He asked and obtained permission to conquer Florida.

2. While this design was in agitation, Cabeça de Vaca, one of those who had survived the expedition of Narvaez, appeared in Spain, and for purposes of his own spread abroad the mischievous falsehood, that Florida was the richest country yet

discovered. De Soto's plans were embraced with enthusiasm. Nobles and gentlemen contended for the privilege of joining his standard: and, setting sail with an ample armament[v], he landed at the Bay of Espiritu Santo, now Tampa Bay, in Florida, with six hundred and twenty chosen men,—a band as gallant and well appointed, as eager in purpose, and audacious in hope, as ever trod the shores of the New World.

3. The clangor[v] of trumpets, the neighing of horses, the fluttering of pennons, the glittering of helmet and lance, startled the ancient forest with unwonted greeting. Amid this pomp of chivalry, religion was not forgotten. The sacred vessels and vestments, with bread and wine for the Eucharist[v], were carefully provided; and De Soto himself declared that the enterprise was undertaken for God alone, and seemed to be the object of His especial care. * * *

4. The adventurers began their march (1539). Their story has been often told. For month after month, and year after year, the procession of priests and cavaliers[v], cross-bowmen, arquebusiers[v], and Indian captives laden with the baggage, still wandered on through wild and boundless wastes, lured hither and thither by the *ignis-fatuus*[v] of their hopes. They traversed great portions of Georgia, Alabama, and Mississippi, everywhere inflicting and enduring misery, but never approaching their phantom[v] El Dorado. At length, in the third year of their journeying, they reached the banks of the Mississippi (1541), a hundred and thirty-two years before its second discovery by Marquette.* One of their number describes the great river as almost half a league wide, deep, rapid, and constantly rolling down trees and drift-wood on its turbid[v] current.

5. The Spaniards crossed over at a point above the mouth of the Arkansas. They advanced westward, but found no treasures, nothing, indeed, but hardships, and an Indian enemy, furious, writes one of their officers, "as mad dogs." They heard

* "On the 17th of June (1673), they saw on their right the broad meadows, bounded in the distance by rugged hills, where now stands the town of Prairie du Chien. Before them, a wild and rapid current coursed athwart their way, by the foot of lofty heights wrapped thick in forests. They had found what they sought, and 'with a joy,' writes Marquette, 'which I cannot express,' they steered forth their canoes on the eddies of the Mississippi."—PARKMAN'S *Discovery of the Great West.*

of a country toward the north where maize could not be cultivated, because the vast herds of wild cattle devoured it. They penetrated so far, that they entered the range of the roving prairie tribes; for, one day, as they pushed their way with difficulty across great plains covered with tall, rank grass, they met a band of savages, who dwelt in lodges of skins sewed together, subsisting on game alone, and wandering perpetually from place to place. Finding neither gold nor the South Sea, for both of which they had hoped, they returned to the banks of the Mississippi.

6. De Soto, says one of those who accompanied him, was a "stern man, and of few words." Even in the midst of reverses, his will had been law to his followers, and he had sustained himself through the depths of disappointment with the energy of a stubborn pride. But his hour was come. He fell into deep dejection, followed by an attack of fever, and soon after died miserably. To preserve his body from the Indians, his followers sank it at midnight in the river, and the sullen waters of the Mississippi buried his ambition and his hopes.

7. The adventurers were now, with few exceptions, disgusted with the enterprise, and longed only to escape from the scene of their miseries. After a vain attempt to reach Mexico by land, they again turned back to the Mississippi, and labored, with all the resources which their desperate necessity could suggest, to construct vessels in which they might make their way to some Christian settlement. Their condition was most forlorn. Few of their horses now remained alive; their baggage had been destroyed at the burning of the Indian town of Mavila, and many of the soldiers were without armor and without weapons. In place of the gallant array which, more than three years before, had left the harbor of Espiritu Santo, a company of sickly and starving men were laboring among the swampy forests of the Mississippi, some clad in skins, and some in mats woven from a kind of wild vine.

8. Seven brigantines[r] were finished and launched; and trusting their lives on board these frail vessels, they descended the Mississippi, running the gauntlet[r] between hostile tribes who

fiercely attacked them. Reaching the Gulf, though not without the loss of eleven of their number, they made sail for the Spanish settlement on the River Panuco, where they arrived safely, and where the inhabitants met them with a cordial welcome. Three hundred and eleven men thus escaped with life, leaving behind them the bones of their comrades strewn broadcast through the wilderness.—*Pioneers of France in the New World.*

Explorations by the French.—In 1524, Verrazzani (*vā-rat-tsah'ne*), a Florentine navigator, while sailing in the service of France, explored the coast of North America from the Carolinas to Newfoundland (*new'fund-land*). To the whole region thus explored he gave the name of New France, a name which was afterwards restricted to the territory of Canada, and so retained while that country remained in the possession of the French.

No other explorations were made by the French until 1534. In that year and the following, James Cartier* (*car-te-ā'*) made two successful voyages, discovered the river St. Lawrence, explored its banks, and took possession of the whole country in the name of his king. Though Cartier and the Lord of Roberval (*ro-bare-val'*), some years after, undertook to colonize Canada, the French effected no permanent settlement until one was made on the site of Quebec, in 1608, by Champlain.

This was not, however, the first settlement made by the French in America, Port Royal (now Annap'olis, in Nova Scotia) having been settled three years previously (1605). This was the principal settlement in Acadia, a territory claimed by the French, and embracing, at that time, New Brunswick, Nova Scotia, and adjacent islands.

Settlement of Florida.—The French Protestants, or Huguenots, as they were called, desiring to have in America a place of refuge, with the permission of King Charles, and aided by the celebrated Coligny (*ko-leen-ye'*), made two attempts to establish a colony—one at Port Royal entrance, Carolina, in 1562, and the other on the banks of the St. John's River, Florida, in 1564. The settlers of 1562 built a fort, to which they gave the name of Carolina, in honor of Charles (*Carolus*, in Latin), their king. Twenty-six men were left to keep possession of the country, while the others, with John Ribault (*rī-bō'*), their commander, returned to France for re-enforcements; but the promised aid not arriving, the colonists, in despair, embarked for their native land.

Spain, thinking that the settlement on the St. John's was an encroachment on her rights, commissioned Melendez (*mā-len'deth*) to destroy it. After laying the foundation of St. Augustine (1565) Melendez proceeded against the

* Cartier was born at St. Malo, France, in 1494. The time of his death is not known, though it is supposed he lived to an advanced age.

Huguenots, whom he surprised and massacred. In revenge, De Gourgues (*goorg*), of France, two years afterward surprised the Spanish forts on the St. John's, and hung two hundred captives upon the trees.

Discovery of Lake Champlain.—*Parkman.*

1. During the autumn (1608), a young chief from the banks of the then unknown Ottawa, had been at Quebec; and, amazed at what he saw, had begged Champlain to join him in the spring against his enemies. These enemies were a formidable race of savages, the Iroquois, or Five Confederate Nations, dwellers in fortified villages within limits now embraced by the State of New York, to whom was afterwards given the fanciful name of "Romans of the New World," and who even then were a terror to all the surrounding forests. Conspicuous among their enemies were their kindred, the tribes of the Hurons, dwelling on the lake which bears their name, and allies of Algonquin bands on the Ottawa. All alike were tillers of the soil, living at ease, when compared to the famished Algonquins of the lower St. Lawrence.

[To this request, Champlain, whose spirit was singularly bold and adventurous, and who seems to have had an insatiable desire for exploration, acceded. Accordingly, during the month of May, 1609, he set out with his Indian allies on the war-path. From Quebec they sailed up the St. Lawrence to the Sorel, sometimes called the Richelieu or St. John, which they entered and ascended. The narrative is thus continued by Parkman.]

2. Again the canoes advanced, the river widening as they went. Great islands appeared, leagues in extent, and channels where ships might float, and broad reaches of expanding water stretched between them, and Champlain entered the lake which preserves his name to posterity. Cumberland Head was passed, and from the opening of the great channel between Grand Isle and the main, he could look forth on the wilderness sea. Edged with woods, the tranquil flood spread southward beyond the sight.

3. Far on the left, the forest ridges of the Green Mountains were heaved against the sun, patches of snow still glistening on their tops; and on the right rose the Adirondacks, haunts,

in these later years, of amateurs sportsmen from counting-rooms or college-halls, nay, of adventurous beauty, with sketch-book and pencil. Then the Iroquois made them their hunting-ground; and beyond, in the valleys of the Mohawk, the Onondaga, and the Genesee, stretched the long line of their five cantons, and palisaded towns.

4. At night they were encamped again. The scene is a familiar one to many a tourists and sportsman; and, perhaps, standing at sunset on the peaceful strand, Champlain saw what a roving student of this generation has seen on those same shores, at that same hour,—the glow of the vanished sun behind the western mountains, darkly piled in mist and shadow along the sky; near at hand, the dead pine, mighty in decay, stretching its ragged arms athwart the burning heaven, the crow perched on its top like an image carved in jet; and aloft, the night-hawk, circling in its flight, and, with a strange whirring sound, diving through the air each moment for the insects he makes his prey.

5. The progress of the party was becoming dangerous. They changed their mode of advance, and moved only in the night. All day they lay close in the depths of the forest, sleeping, lounging, smoking tobacco of their own raising, and beguiling the hours with the shallow banter and jesting with which knots of Indians are wont to amuse their leisure. At twilight they embarked again, paddling their cautious way, till the eastern sky began to redden. Their goal was the rocky promontory where Fort Ticonderoga was long afterward built.

6. Thence, they would pass the outlet of Lake George, and launch their canoes again on that Como of the wilderness, whose waters, limpid as a fountain-head, stretched far southward, between their flanking mountains. Landing at the future site of Fort William Henry, they would carry their canoes through the forest to the river Hudson,* and descending it, attack, perhaps, some outlying town of the Mohawks. In the next century, this chain of lakes and rivers became the grand highway of savage and civilized war,—a bloody debatable ground, linked to memories of momentous conflicts.

* Discovered the same year (1609), by Henry Hudson; previously called the *Shatemuc*.

7. The allies were spared so long a progress. On the morning of the twenty-ninth of July, after paddling all night, they hid, as usual, in the forest on the western shore, not far from Crown Point. The warriors stretched themselves to their slumbers, and Champlain, after walking for a time through the surrounding woods, returned to take his repose on a pit of spruce-boughs. Sleeping, he dreamed a dream, wherein he beheld the Iroquois drowning in the lake; and, essaying to rescue them, he was told by his Algonquin friends that they were good for nothing, and had better be left to their fate. Now, he had been daily beset, on awakening, by his superstitious allies, eager to learn about his dreams; and, to this moment, his unbroken slumbers had failed to furnish the desired prognostics[v]. The announcement of this auspicious[v] vision filled the crowd with joy, and at nightfall they embarked, flushed with anticipated victories.

8. It was ten o'clock in the evening when they descried dark objects in motion on the lake before them. These were a flotilla of Iroquois canoes, heavier and slower than theirs, for they were made of oak-bark. Each party saw the other, and the mingled war-cries pealed over the darkened water. The Iroquois, who were near the shore, having no stomach for an aquatic battle, landed, and making night hideous with their clamors, began to barricade[v] themselves. Champlain could see them in the woods, laboring like beavers, hacking down trees with iron axes taken from the Canadian tribes in war, and with stone hatchets of their own making.

9. The allies remained on the lake, a bowshot from the hostile barricade, their canoes made fast together by poles lashed across. All night they danced with as much vigor as the frailty of their vessels would permit, their throats making amends for the enforced restraint of their limbs. It was agreed on both sides that the fight should be deferred till daybreak; but, meanwhile a commerce of abuse, sarcasm, menace, and boasting gave increasing exercise to the lungs and fancy of the combatants,—"much," says Champlain, "like the besiegers and besieged in a beleaguered[v] town."

10. As day approached, he and his two followers put on the light armor of the time. Champlain wore the doublet[v] and long hose then in vogue. Over the doublet he buckled on a breastplate, and probably a back-piece, while his thighs were protected by *cuisses*[v] of steel, and his head by a plumed casque[v]. Across his shoulder hung the strap of his bandoleer[v], or ammunition-box; at his side was his sword, and in his hand his arquebuse[v], which he had loaded with four balls. Such was the equipment of this ancient Indian fighter, whose exploits date eleven years before the landing of the Puritans at Plymouth, and sixty-six years before King Philip's War.

11. Each of the three Frenchmen was in a separate canoe; and, as it grew light, they kept themselves hidden, either by lying at the bottom, or covering themselves with an Indian robe. The canoes approached the shore, and all landed without opposition, at some distance from the Iroquois, whom they presently could see filing out of their barricade, tall, strong men, some two hundred in number, of the boldest and fiercest warriors of North America. They advanced through the forest with a steadiness which excited the admiration of Champlain. Among them could be seen several chiefs, made conspicuous by their tall plumes. Some bore shields of wood and hide, and some were covered with a kind of armor made of tough twigs interlaced[v] with a vegetable fibre supposed by Champlain to be cotton.

12. The allies, growing anxious, called with loud cries for their champion, and opened their ranks that he might pass to the front. He did so, and, advancing before his red companions-in-arms, stood revealed to the astonished gaze of the Iroquois, who, beholding the warlike apparition[v] in their path, stared in mute amazement. But his arquebuse was leveled; the report startled the woods, a chief fell dead, and another by his side rolled among the bushes. Then there arose from the allies a yell, which, says Champlain, would "have drowned a thunder-clap," and the forest was full of whizzing arrows.

13. For a moment the Iroquois stood firm, and sent back their arrows lustily; but when another and another gunshot

came from the thickets on their flank, they broke and fled in uncontrollable terror. Swifter than hounds, the allies tore through the bushes in pursuit. Some of the Iroquois were killed, more were taken. Camp, canoes, provisions, all were abandoned, and many weapons flung down in the panic flight. The arquebuse had done its work. The victory was complete. . . . .

14. Thus did New France rush into collision with the redoubted warriors of the Five Nations. Here was the beginning, in some measure, doubtless, the cause, of a long suite of murderous conflicts, bearing havoc and flame to generations yet unborn. Champlain had invaded the tiger's den ; and now, in smothered fury, the patient savage would lie, biding his day of blood.—*Pioneers of France in the New World.*

The American Indians.—*Hildreth.*

1. At the period of European discovery, this vast and unknown country, lying as yet in a state of nature, hardly modified at all by the hand of man, was thinly inhabited by a peculiar race, known to Europeans under the general name of Indians—a name which still commemorates[v] the error of Columbus in mistaking America for a part of India.

2. Presenting human society under its simplest and most inartificial forms, these aboriginal[v] inhabitants were divided into a great number of petty tribes, dwelling together in little villages of huts, made with the boughs of trees, and covered with mats ingeniously woven. These villages, by way of defence, were sometimes surrounded by a rude palisade of trees or brushwood, or placed on some little islet in the midst of a morass[v]. For convenience of fishing, they were often built on inlets of the sea, or near the falls of some river. Each village had chiefs of its own, who were often hereditary[v]. The petty tribes were generally united into confederacies[v] of greater or less extent, with superior chiefs exercising a certain authority over the whole.

3. Neighboring confederacies sometimes spoke languages radically distinct; yet the dialects[v] of all the tribes north of the Gulf of Mexico, and south of Hudson's Bay, from the Atlantic

to the Rocky Mountains, are thought by philologists[v] capable, with few exceptions, of being reduced under five general heads.

4. The most widely-diffused of these five languages, called the *Algonquin*, after one of the tribes of Canada, from whom the French missionaries first learned it, is exceedingly harsh and guttural[v], with few vowels, and words often of intolerable length, occasioned by complicated grammatical forms—a whole sentence, by means of suffixes[v] and affixes[v], being often expressed in a single word. This character, indeed, is common in a greater or less degree, to all the American languages, serving to distinguish them, in a remarkable manner, from the dialects of the Old World.

5. Tribes of Algonquin speech extended from Hudson's Bay southeast beyond the Chesapeake, and southwest to the Mississippi and Ohio. They inclosed, however, several formidable confederacies, the *Hárons*, the *Iroquois* (*ee'ro-quah*), the *Eries*, and others settled around Lakes Erie and Ontario, and occupying all the upper waters of the western tributaries of the Chesapeake, who spoke a different language, less guttural and far more sonorous[v], called the *Wyandot*, after a tribe inhabiting the north shore of Lake Erie.

6. The *Cherokee'* is peculiar to a confederacy of that name, occupants for centuries of the southern valleys of the great Alleghany chain, from whence they have been but lately expelled. The common name of *Mobilian* includes the kindred dialects of the Choctaws, the Chickasaws, the Creeks or Muscogees, the Appalachees, and Yemassees,—ancient inhabitants of the valley of the Lower Mississippi, and thence, by the southern foot of the Alleghanies, to the Savannah and beyond it. Compared with the northern languages, the Cherokee and Mobilian are soft and musical, abounding with vowels, thus indicating the long-continued influence of a southern climate. The number of syllables in the Cherokee is very limited—a circumstance of which an uninstructed but ingenious member of that tribe recently availed himself to invent a syllabic alphabet, by means of which the Cherokee is written and read with great facility.

7. Of the ancient state of the wandering tribes of the prairies west of the Mississippi little is known; but the *Daco'tah* or *Sioux* (*soo*), still spoken in a great variety of dialects, has been, probably for centuries, the prevailing language of that region. The *Catawbas*, who have left their name to a river of Carolina, and who once occupied a wide adjacent territory; the *Uchees*, on the Savannah, subjects of the Creeks; the *Natchez*, a small confederacy on the Lower Mississippi, in the midst of the Choctaws, appear to have spoken peculiar languages; and, no doubt, there were other similar cases. Of the dialects west of the Rocky Mountains hardly anything is known.

8. It is from their languages only that some faint trace may be obtained of the derivation and wandering of the American tribes. Other monuments they had none. Their sole records were a few rude drawings on skins or bark, or, among some tribes, belts of beads made of shells, and used to commemorate their treaties. Of any period beyond the memory of their old men, they knew absolutely nothing. They had, indeed, some vague traditions, important, if we had them in a pure version, not however for their historical character, but as illustrating the ideas of the Indians, and the process by which legends are everywhere formed. But these traditions, early modified by suggestions borrowed from the white men, come to us so colored by the fancies and preconceived opinions of those who report them, as to lose a great part of the value they might otherwise have had. . . . .

9. War was esteemed among the Indians, as it has been among communities far more civilized, the most honorable, glorious, and worthy of employments. The rank or comparative estimation of the chiefs greatly depended on the number of enemies they had slain in battle. Their warlike spirit was little, or not at all, stimulated by hopes of conquest or plunder. It was the fury of hatred or revenge, the restless spirit of enterprise, still more the desire of honor and distinction, that stirred up the warriors to deeds of blood. On their return from a successful expedition, they expected to be met and escorted back to the village amid the plaudits of the women and children,

bearing with them the captives taken, and the scalps of the slain stretched on poles—obscure rudiments of what the Romans called a triumph.

10. In their primitive[v] state, pitched battles or general engagements were unknown among the Indians. Surprise was the great point of their tactics. As the warriors were obliged to carry their provisions on their backs, or to support themselves by hunting, their war parties were seldom numerous. Yet their ardor was great. To reach some distant village, they crossed mountains, swam rivers, and endured the utmost extremities of hunger and fatigue. But, though capable of momentary efforts of great vigor, these children of impulse had not the pertinacity, nor perseverance, nor fixed purposes, of civilized life. Bursts of passionate activity were followed by long intervals of indolence. Until they learned of the white man to make war on a larger scale, it was the utmost ambition of their warriors to steal into the enemy's country, to take a few scalps, and to make a few prisoners with the least possible loss to themselves; after which they long remained quiet, unless excited by some retaliatory[v] inroad, or some fortuitous[v] encounter.

11. In the first fury of a successful attack, the women and children of the hostile village were sometimes indiscriminately massacred; but, in general, their lives were spared, and they were received by adoption into the families of their captors. The hostile warrior, if taken prisoner, was reserved for a horrid death, being tortured with all the ingenuity of savage hatred, and burned at the stake by a slow fire. The women and children joined in these torments, and the flesh of the victim was sometimes eaten. Such, at least, was the custom of the Iroquois, the most war-like and ferocious of all the North American tribes; but there is little trace of such cruel practices among the Indians of the Atlantic coast.

12. It was a point of honor with the dying warrior to endure these torments without the slightest flinching or indication of pain, shouting out his death-song from among the flames, and taunting with his latest breath the unskillfulness of his tormentors. Yet, even in the midst of these horrors, humanity

sometimes regained dominion. Among the torturing crowd some one saw, or thought he saw, in the unhappy victim of hate, a resemblance to some relative who had perished in battle. Claimed to supply the place of that relative, the prisoner was adopted on the spot as son or brother, and was expected to evince his gratitude, and to ratify his adoption, by forgetting forever his native tribe and all his former connections.

13. Next to war, it was thought most honorable to excel in hunting and fishing. These pursuits, chief resources for food and clothing, were followed, each in its season, with patience, assiduity, and no little skill. The Indians applied all their sagacity to the knowledge of wood-craft, which they carried to a high degree of perfection. They could trace their game or their enemy by the slightest indication—grass bent, leaves trampled, or twigs broken. Inferior to Europeans in strength and in capacity to perform regular labor, to which they were unaccustomed, their activity, powers of endurance, and acuteness of sight and hearing, were extraordinary.

14. Guided by the stars and sun, and supported by a little parched corn pounded and moistened with water, they performed, with unerring sagacity, immense journeys through the woody or grassy wilderness. The habits of almost all the tribes were more or less migratory[y]. They knew little or nothing of the comforts of a settled habitation. They seemed always uneasy, always on the point of going somewhere else. Their frequent journeys had traced, in many places, trails or footpaths through the woods or across the prairies. It was their custom to kindle small fires, by which the grass and underwood were consumed. Except among the swamps and rocky hills, the forests thus acquired an open and park-like appearance. . .

15. Such was the state of the aboriginal[y] population when North America first became known to Europeans. Yet there exist remarkable proofs, scattered through the whole extent of the Valley of the Mississippi, of the former occupation of that region by a far more numerous,* and, in some respects, a dif-

* It is computed that the total Indian population east of the Alleghanies, at no time since the discovery of America, exceeded 300,000.

ferent people. These memorials consist of embankments of earth and stone, exhibiting undeniable evidences of design and labor, sometimes of very great extent. Some of them, along the brows of hills or the precipitous[v] edges of ravines, inclosing a greater or less space of table-land, were evidently intended as works of defense. Others, still more numerous, extensive, and elaborate[v], seem most probably to have been connected with religious ideas.

16. Occupying often the fertile bottoms at the junction of rivers (sites selected for towns by the present inhabitants), they present in some places curious basso-relievos[v], birds, beasts, reptiles, and even men; but more generally, in the Valley of the Ohio, inclosures of various sorts, often curiously complicated, perfect circles, and perfect squares, and parallel lines of great extent, the embankments being from five to thirty feet high, and the inclosures from one to fifty, and often a hundred or two hundred, and sometimes four hundred acres in extent. Other classes of monuments, often connected with these just mentioned, but often separate, and increasing in number toward the south, are conical and pyramidal[v] structures, from a few yards to a thousand or two thousand feet in diameter, and from ten to ninety feet high, sometimes terraced like the Mexican teocallis.* Some of these mounds were evidently for sepulchral[v] purposes, and others apparently mounds of sacrifice.

17. Connected with these ancient monuments have been found remnants of pottery, weapons and utensils of stone, axes and ornaments of copper, but nothing which affords any decisive evidence of a state of civilization superior to that of the present Indians. Yet the extent and number of these earth erections, of which there are but few traces east of the Alleghanies—the most populous region of North America when it first became known to Europeans—evince the combined labor of many hands, of a sort of which no traces appeared among the tribes found in possession by Europeans.—*History of the United States.*

Teocal'li, meaning *House of God*, is a term applied to the pyramidal buildings erected for religious purposes by the ancient inhabitants of Mexico.

SECTION II.

Colonial History.

VIRGINIA.

Sir Humphrey Gilbert's Voyage.—In 1583, Sir Humphrey Gilbert sailed from England, under a patent granted by Queen Elizabeth. His design was to take possession of the northern parts of America, and found a colony in Newfoundland. He landed on the island, but, in consequence of disasters, no attempt at settlement was made. On the return to England, one of the ships, that in which Gilbert sailed, foundered, and all on board perished.

Voyage of Amidas and Barlow.—Sir Walter Raleigh (*raw'lē*), not disheartened by the sad fate of his step-brother, Gilbert, obtained from Elizabeth an ample patent, and, in 1584, sent two vessels, under the command of Am'i-das and Barlow. The voyagers arrived on the coast of Carolina, visited the islands in Pam'li-co and Albemarle Sounds, took possession of the country in the name of their sovereign, and, after trafficking with the natives, returned to England.

So glowing an account did Amidas and Barlow give of the country which they had seen, that Elizabeth declared the event to be the most glorious in her reign, and, as a memorial of her unmarried state, named the region Virginia. Upon Raleigh she conferred the honor of knighthood.

First Attempts at Settlement in Virginia.—Two unsuccessful attempts were afterward made to establish a colony on Roanoke Island (1585–7); and an attempt farther north was made by *Bartholomew Gosnold*, who discovered Cape Cod (1602), but failed to effect a settlement. *Martin Pring* the following year explored the coast and large rivers of Maine. In 1606, King James I. divided the territory claimed by the English into *North* and *South Virginia*, granting the former to the Plymouth Company, the latter to the London Company. The first *permanent settlement* under this grant was made at *Jamestown*, in 1607, by an expedition sent out by the London Company. This expedition was commanded by Captain Christopher Newport.

Settlement of Jamestown.—*Grahame.*

1. After the lapse of a hundred and ten years from the discovery of the continent by Cabot, and twenty-two years after its first occupation by Raleigh, was the number of English colonists limited to a hundred and five; and this handful of

men undertook the arduous task of peopling a remote and uncultivated land, covered with woods and marshes, and inhabited only by tribes of savages and beasts of prey. Under the sanction of a charter which bereaved Englishmen of their most valuable rights, and banished from the constitution of American society the first principles of liberty, were the foundations laid of the colonial greatness of England, and of the freedom and prosperity of America. From this period, or at least very shortly after, a regular and connected history ensues, of the progress of Virginia and New England, the two eldest-born colonies, whose example promoted the rise, as their shelter protected the weakness, of the others which were successively planted and reared.

2. Newport and his squadron, pursuing, for some unknown reason, the wider compass taken by the first navigators to America, instead of the less circuitous[v] track that had been recently ascertained, did not accomplish their voyage in a shorter period than four months; but its termination was rendered peculiarly fortunate by the effect of a storm, which defeated their purpose of landing and settling at Roanoke, and carried them into the Bay of Chesapeake (April, 1607).

3. As they advanced through its waters, they easily perceived the advantage that would be gained by establishing their settlement on the shores of this spacious haven, replenished[v] by the tributary[v] floods of so many great rivers, which fertilize the soil of that extensive district of America, and, affording commodious inlets into the interior parts, facilitate their foreign commerce and mutual communication.

4. Newport first landed on a promontory[v] forming the southern boundary of the bay, which, in honor of the Prince of Wales, he named Cape Henry. Thence, coasting the southern shore, he entered a river which the natives called Powhatan, and explored its banks for the space of forty miles from its mouth. Impressed with the superior convenience of the coast and soil to which they had been thus happily conducted, the adventurers unanimously[v] determined to make this the place of their abode. They gave to their infant settlement, as well

as to the neighboring river, the name of their king; and Jamestown retains the distinction of being the oldest existing habitation of the English in America.

5. But the dissensions that broke out among the colonists soon threatened to deprive them of all the advantages of their fortunate territorial position. Their animosities were inflamed by an arrangement, which, if it did not originate with the king, at least betrays a strong affinity to that ostentatious[v] mystery and driftless artifice which he affected as the perfection of political dexterity. The names of the provincial council were not communicated to the adventurers when they departed from England; but the commission which contained them was inclosed in a sealed packet, which was directed to be opened within twenty-four hours after their arrival on the coast of Virginia, when the councillors were to be installed in their office, and to elect their own president.

6. The disagreements incident to a long voyage had free scope among men unaware of the relations they were to occupy toward each other, and of the subordination[v] which their relative and allotted functions might imply; and when the names of the council were proclaimed, the disclosure was far from affording satisfaction. Captain Smith, whose superior talents and spirit excited the envy and jealousy of his colleagues[v], was excluded from a seat in the council, which the commission authorized him to assume, and even accused of traitorous designs, so unproved and improbable, that none less believed the charge than the persons who preferred it.

7. The privation of his counsel and services in the difficulties of their outset, was a serious loss to the colonists, and might have been attended with ruin to the settlement, if his merit and generosity had not been superior to their mean injustice. The jealous suspicions of the individual who was elected president restrained the use of arms, and discouraged the construction of fortifications; and a misunderstanding having arisen with the Indians, the colonists, unprepared for hostilities, suffered severely from one of the sudden attacks characteristic of the warfare of these savages.

8. Newport had been ordered to return with the ships to England; and, as the time of his departure approached, the accusers of Smith, with affected clemency, proposed that he also should return with Newport, instead of abiding a criminal prosecution in Virginia. But, happily for the colony, he scorned so to compromise his integrity; and, demanding a trial, was honorably acquitted, and took his seat in the council.

9. The fleet was better victualled than the magazines of the colony; and while it remained with them, the colonists were permitted to share the plenty enjoyed by the sailors. But when Newport set sail for England, they found themselves limited to scanty supplies of unwholesome provisions; and the sultry heat of the climate and moisture of a country overgrown with wood, co-operating[v] with the defects of their diet, brought on diseases that raged with fatal violence. Before the month of September, one half of their number had miserably perished; and among these victims was Bartholomew Gosnold, who had planned the expedition, and materially contributed to its accomplishment.

10. This scene of suffering was embittered by internal dissensions. The president was accused of embezzling[v] the public stores, and finally detected in an attempt to seize a pinnace[v], and escape from the colony and its calamities. At length, in the extremity of their distress, when ruin seemed to impend, alike from famine and the fury of the savages, the colonists obtained a complete and unexpected deliverance, which the piety of Smith ascribed to the influence of God, in suspending the passions, and controlling the sentiments and purposes of men. The savages, actuated by a sudden and generous change of feeling, not only refrained from molesting them, but gratuitously brought them a supply of provisions so liberal, as at once to dissipate their apprehensions of famine and hostility.

11. Resuming their spirit, the colonists now proved themselves not wholly uninstructed by their misfortunes. In seasons of exigency[v] merit is illustrated, and the envy that pursues it is absorbed by deeper interest and alarm. The sense of common and urgent danger promoted a willing and even eager

submission to a man whose talents were most likely to extricate[v] his companions from the difficulties with which they were encompassed. Every eye was now turned on Smith, and with universal acclaim his fellow-colonists devolved on him the authority which they had formerly shown so much jealousy of his acquiring.

12. This individual, whose name will be forever associated with the foundation of civilized society in America, was descended from a respectable family in Lincolnshire, and born to a competent fortune. At an early age, his lively mind was deeply smitten with the spirit of adventure that prevailed so strongly in England during the reign of Elizabeth; and yielding to his inclination, he had passed through a great variety of military service, with little pecuniary[v] gain but high reputation, and with the acquisition of an experience the more valuable that it was obtained without exhausting his ardor or tainting his morals.

13. The vigor of his constitution had preserved his health unimpaired amid the general sickness; the undaunted mettle of his soul retained his spirits unbroken and his judgment unclouded, amidst the general misery and dejection; and his adventurous zeal, which once attracted the reproach of overweening[v] ambition, was now felt to diffuse an animating glow of hope and courage among all around him. A strong sense of religion predominated[v] over the well-proportioned qualities of his mind, refreshed his confidence, extended and yet regulated his views, and gave dignity to his character and consistency to his conduct.

14. Assuming the direction of the affairs of the colonists, he promptly adopted the only policy that could save them from destruction. Under his directions, Jamestown was fortified by such defences as were sufficient to repel the attacks of the savages; and by dint of great labor, which he was always the foremost to partake, its inhabitants were provided with dwellings that afforded shelter from the weather, and contributed to restore and preserve their health. Finding the supplies of the savages discontinued, he put himself at the head of a detach-

ment of his people, and penetrated into the interior of the country, where, by courtesy and liberality to the tribes whom he found well-disposed, and vigorous retribution[v] of the hostility of such as were otherwise minded, he succeeded in procuring a plentiful stock of provisions.

15. In the midst of his successes, he was surprised during an expedition by a band of hostile savages, who, having made him prisoner, after a gallant and nearly successful defense, prepared to inflict on him the usual fate of their captives. His genius and presence of mind did not desert him in this trying emergency[v]. He desired to speak with the sachem or chief of the tribe to which he was a prisoner; and presenting him with a mariner's compass, expatiated[v] on the wonderful discoveries to which this little instrument had contributed,—descanted[v] on the shape of the earth, the extent of its lands and oceans, the course of the sun, the varieties of nations, and the singularity of their relative terrestrial[v] positions, which made some of them antipodes[v] to the others. With equal prudence and magnanimity, he refrained from any expression of solicitude for his life, which would have infallibly[v] weakened or counteracted the effect which he studied to produce.

16. The savages listened to him with amazement and admiration. They had handled the compass, and, viewing with surprise the play of the needle, which they plainly saw, but found it impossible to touch, from the intervention[v] of the glass, were prepared by this marvellous object for the reception of those sublime and interesting communications by which their captive endeavored to gain an ascendency over their minds.

17. For an hour after he had finished his discourse, they remained undecided; till, their accustomed sentiments reviving, they resumed their suspended purpose, and, having bound him to a tree, prepared to dispatch him with their arrows. But a deeper impression had been made on their chief; and his soul, enlarged for a season by the admission of knowledge, or subdued by the influence of wonder, revolted from the dominion of habitual barbarity. This chief bore the harsh and uncouth appellation[v] of Opechancanough,—a name which the subsequent

history of the province was to invest with no small terror and celebrity.

18. Holding up the compass in his hand, he gave the signal of reprieve; and Smith, though still guarded as a prisoner, was conducted to a dwelling, where he was kindly treated and plentifully entertained. But the strongest impressions pass away, while the influence of habit remains. After vainly attempting to prevail on their captive to betray the English colony into their hands, the Indians referred his fate to Powhatan, the emperor or principal sachem of the country, to whose presence they conducted him in triumphal procession.

19. This prince received him with much ceremony, ordered a plentiful repast to be set before him, and then adjudged him to suffer death by having his head laid on a stone and beaten to pieces with clubs. At the place appointed for his execution, Smith was again rescued from impending destruction by the interposition[v] of Pocahontas, the favorite daughter of the king, who, finding her first entreaties in deprecation of the captive's fate disregarded, threw her arms around him, and passionately declared her determination to save him or die with him. Her generous humanity prevailed on the cruelty of her tribe; and the king not only gave Smith his life, but soon after sent him back to Jamestown, where the beneficence of Pocahontas continued to follow him with supplies of provisions, that delivered the colonists from famine.*

20. After an absence of seven weeks, Smith returned to Jamestown, barely in time to prevent the desertion of the colony. His associates, reduced to the number of thirty-eight, impatient of further stay in a country where they had met with so many discouragements, and in which they seemed fated to re-enact the disasters of Roanoke, were preparing to abandon the settlement; and it was not without the utmost difficulty, and alternately[v] employing persuasion, remonstrance, and even

* Recent researches have resulted in throwing very great discredit upon this romantic story of Pocahontas: and it is now generally viewed as a highly exaggerated statement of what really occurred, for while Smith related the story of his adventures soon after his return to England, it was some years before he mentioned this incident at all.

violent interference, that Smith prevailed on them to relinquish their design.

21. The provisions that Pocahontas sent him relieved their present wants; his account of the plenty he had witnessed among the Indians renewed their hopes; and he endeavored, by a diligent improvement of the favorable impressions he had made on the savages, and by a judicious regulation of the intercourse between them and the colonists, to promote a coalition[v] of interests and a reciprocation[v] of advantages between the two races of people. His generous efforts were successful; he preserved a steady and sufficient supply of food to the English, and extended his influence and consideration with the Indians, who began to respect and consult their former captive as a superior being.—*Colonial History of the United States.*

[Pocahontas was subsequently married to John Rolfe, a young Englishman, and three years afterward accompanied her husband to England, where she was an object of general interest and attention, and was presented at court. While about to return to her native land, she suddenly died (March, 1617), leaving a son, from whom are descended some well-known families in Virginia. The marriage of Pocahontas proved of great importance to the colonies, since it had the effect of establishing a lasting peace with Powhatan, as well as with the powerful tribe of the Chickahominies. These peaceful relations were undisturbed until the death of Powhatan, in 1622.]

Pocahontas.—*Hemans.*

[The following lines are a part of a poem, by Mrs. Hemans, entitled the "American Forest Girl," upon the subject of Smith's singular escape from the doom pronounced by the savage chief, in accordance with the statement made by himself some years after his return to England.]

She had sat gazing on the victim long,
Until the pity of her soul grew strong;
And, by its passion's deepening fervor swayed,
Even to the stake she rushed, and gently laid
His bright head on her bosom, and around
His form her slender arms to shield it wound
Like close Liannes;* then raised her glistening eye
And clear-toned voice, that said, "He shall not die!"
"He shall not die!"—the gloomy forest thrilled

* *Liannes* (*le-an'*), or *Liv'nas*, is a term applied by the French colonists to the climbing and twining plants which abound in tropical forests.

To that sweet sound. A sudden wonder fell
On the fierce throng: and heart and hand were stilled,
Struck down as by the whisper of a spell.
They gazed; their dark souls bowed before the maid,
She of the dancing step in wood and glade!
And, as her cheek flushed through its olive hue,
As her black tresses to the night-wind flew,
Something o'ermastered them from that young mien—
Something of heaven in silence felt and seen;
And seeming, to their child-like faith, a token
That the Great Spirit by her voice had spoken.

They loosed the bonds that held their captive's breath;
From his pale lips they took the cup of death;
They quenched the brand beneath the cypress tree;
"Away," they cried, "young stranger, thou art free!"

Virginia under the Second Charter.—The London Company, not having realized their expectations of profit from the Jamestown colony, sought and obtained a second charter, in 1609, and conferred upon Lord Delaware, a nobleman distinguished for his virtues, the appointment of governor for life. Three commissioners, Newport, Gates, and Somers (*sum'erz*), who had been appointed to administer the affairs of the colony till the arrival of Delaware, were dispatched to America with a fleet of nine vessels, and more than five hundred emigrants. While on the passage a severe storm dispersed the fleet. One of the vessels (that bearing the commissioners) was wrecked on the Ber-mu'da Islands, and another foundered; the others reached the James River in safety. Considering that no person had yet arrived who was entitled to supersede him, Smith maintained his position as president, until, having been severely injured by an explosion of gunpowder, he returned to Eng'and for surgical aid.

No sooner had Smith fairly departed than the colonists gave themselves up to idleness and vice. The Indians became hostile, the horrors of famine ensued, and in less than six months not more than sixty of the five hundred persons whom he had left in the colony remained. This period, extending over the first half of 1610, was long remembered as the "starving time."

In consequence of their destitution and gloomy prospects, the colonists determined to seek safety among the English fishermen at Newfoundland. In four vessels they embarked; but, just as they were drawing near the mouth of the river, Lord Delaware appeared with emigrants and supplies, and persuaded them to return. The new administration was a wise one, and under it the colony prospered. In consequence, however, of ill health, Delaware was soon compelled to return to England. He was succeeded in office by Sir Thomas Gates.

Third Charter.—New settlements were made in the vicinity of Jamestown; and, notwithstanding the strictness of the laws, the colony continued

to prosper. With a view to greater privileges, the London Company obtained their third charter, in 1612. A remarkable feature of the new charter allowed the Company to hold meetings for the transaction of business, thus giving to that body a democratic form of government.

Dissolution of the Company.—The affairs of the colony caused frequent meetings of the London Company, which were largely attended. The freedom of speech manifested on such occasions displeased the king, James I., and, under the pretext that the disasters to the colony were the result of bad government, he dissolved the Company. Thus Virginia became, in 1624, a royal province.

The Cultivation and Use of Tobacco.—*Campbell.*

1. In 1615, twelve different commodities had been shipped from Virginia; sassafras and tobacco were now (1624) the only exports. During the year 1619, the company in England imported twenty thousand pounds of tobacco, the entire crop of the preceding year. James I. endeavored to draw a "prerogative" revenue from what he termed a pernicious weed, and against which he had published his "Counterblast;" but he was restrained from this illegal measure by a resolution of the House of Commons. In 1607, he sent a letter forbidding the use of tobacco at St. Mary's College, Cambridge.

2. Smoking was the first mode of using tobacco in England; and when Sir Walter Raleigh first introduced the custom among people of fashion, in order to escape observation he smoked privately in his house (at Islington), the remains of which were till of late years to be seen, as an inn, long known as the Pied Bull. This was the first house in England in which it was smoked, and Raleigh had his arms emblazoned there, with a tobacco-plant on the top.

3. There existed also another tradition in the Parish of St. Matthew, Friday-street, London, that Raleigh was accustomed to sit smoking at the door in company with Sir Hugh Middleton. Sir Walter's guests were entertained with pipes, a mug of ale, and a nutmeg; and on these occasions he made use of his tobacco-box, which was of cylindrical form, seven inches in diameter and thirteen inches long; the outside of gilt leather, and within a receiver of glass or metal, which held about a pound of tobacco. A kind of collar connected the receiver

with the case, and on every side the box was pierced with holes for the pipes. This relic was preserved in the museum of Ralph Thoresby of Leeds, in 1719, and, about 1843, was added, by the late Duke of Sussex, to his collection of the smoking utensils[v] of all nations. . . . .

4. The peers engaged in the trial of the Earls of Essex and Southampton, smoked much while they deliberated on their verdict[v]. It was alleged against Sir Walter Raleigh, that he used tobacco on the occasion of the execution of the Earl of Essex, in contempt of him; and it was perhaps in allusion to this circumstance, that when Raleigh was passing through London to Winchester, to stand his trial, he was followed by the execrations[v] of the populace, and pelted with tobacco-pipes, stones, and mud. On the scaffold, however, he protested that during the execution of Essex he had retired far off into the armory, where Essex could not see him, although he saw Essex, and shed tears for him. Raleigh used tobacco on the morning of his own execution.

5. As early as the year 1610, tobacco was in general use in England. The manner of using it was partly to inhale the smoke and blow it out through the nostrils, and this was called "drinking tobacco," and this practice continued until the latter part of the reign of James I. In 1614, the number of tobacco-houses in or near London was estimated at 7,000. In 1620 was chartered the society of tobacco-pipe makers of London; they bore on their shields a tobacco-plant in full blossom.

6. The "Counterblast against Tobacco," attributed to James I., if in some parts absurd and puerile[v], yet is not without a good deal of just reasoning and good sense; some fair hits are made in it, and those who have ridiculed that production might find it not easy to controvert some of its views. King James, in his Counterblast, does not omit the opportunity of expressing his hatred toward Sir Walter Raleigh, in terms worthy of that despicable monarch. He continued his opposition to tobacco as long as he lived, and in his ordinary conversation oftentimes argued and inveighed[v] against it.

7. The Virginia tobacco, in early times, was imported into England in the leaf, in bundles, as at present; the Spanish or West Indian tobacco, in balls. Molasses or other liquid preparation was used in preparing those balls. Tobacco was then, as now, adulterated in various ways. The nice retailer kept it in what were called *lily-pots*, that is, white jars. The tobacco was cut on a marble block: juniper-wood, which retains fire well, was used for lighting pipes; and among the rich, silver tongs were employed for taking up a coal of it. Tobacco was sometimes called the American Silver-weed. . . . . .

8. The amount of tobacco imported in 1619 into England, from Virginia, being the entire crop of the preceding year, was twenty thousand pounds. At the end of seventy years, there were annually imported into England more than fifteen millions of pounds of it, from which was derived a revenue of upwards of £100,000. In April, 1621, the House of Commons debated whether it was expedient to prohibit the importation of tobacco entirely; and they determined to exclude all save from Virginia and the Somer Isles. It was estimated that the consumption in England amounted to one thousand pounds per diem. This seductive[y] narcotic[y] leaf, which soothes the mind and quiets its perturbations[y], has found its way into all parts of the habitable globe, from the sunny tropics to the snowy regions of the frozen pole.* Its fragrant smoke ascends alike to the blackened rafters of the lowly hut and the gilded ceilings of luxurious wealth.—*History of the Colony of Virginia.*

The Navigation Act.—The celebrated "Navigation Act," which secured to English ships the monopoly of the carrying trade with England, and seriously abridged the freedom of colonial commerce, was passed by Parliament in 1651. It was not at first enforced against Virginia; but after its re-enactment in 1660, with new provisions, it was rigorously executed, despite the remonstrances of the colonists. In 1673, Charles II., of England, granted to Lord Culpepper and the Earl of Arlington, "all the dominion of land and water called Virginia," for the term of thirty-one years.

In addition to this lavish grant, and the oppressiveness of the "Navigation Act," the colonists were restricted in the elective franchise[y]; were required to

* The use of tobacco, however, is neither to be encouraged nor commended. The "Counterblast" was, perhaps, the most sensible of all King James's productions

conform to the doctrines and rituals[v] of the Church of England; and the taxes levied were unequal and oppressive. They wanted but an excuse for appearing in arms, and it was soon found in the invasion made by the Susquehanna Indians. The invaders penetrated Virginia from the north, and carried desolation and death to many a lonely plantation.

Bacon's Rebellion.—The people, knowing Governor Berkeley's measures for defense to be very inefficient, demanded permission to arm and protect themselves; but, being refused, they united ostensibly[v] to repel the Indian invaders; and thus a struggle for popular liberty broke out in 1676, known as Bacon's Rebellion. Nathaniel Bacon, from whom the movement took its name, was at once pointed out as the leader. His social position was good, and he was eloquent and courageous.

With a force of five hundred men he marched against the Indians, whom he met and defeated; and though Berkeley issued a proclamation declaring those in arms rebels, no notice was taken of the fulmination[v]. The success against the Indians inspired the insurgents with confidence. They made demands which Berkeley consented to grant; but it soon becoming evident that he was acting treacherously, a desultory[v] civil war broke out, in the course of which Jamestown was burned to the ground.

Just as the success of the rebellion seemed to be established, and plans in respect to a new government were about to be adopted, Bacon suddenly died. The governor then pursued vigorous measures, and, regaining his former power, caused twenty-two of the insurgents to be hanged. Fines, imprisonments, and confiscations[v] disgraced his administration until he was recalled by the king, in 1677.

Subsequent History.—Berkeley's successor was Lord Culpepper, to whom and the Earl of Arlington the country had been granted in 1673, as previously stated. Virginia then became a proprietary government. Culpepper continued to rule until 1684, when, in consequence of his mismanagement, the king revoked the grant made to him and Arlington, and deprived him of his office. Virginia thus became a royal province again, and so remained till the Revolution.

MASSACHUSETTS.

From its settlement, in 1620, *to the union of New England Colonies, in* 1643.

Exploration of New England.—Captain Smith, who had performed so creditable a part in the settlement of Virginia, set sail from London in 1614, for the purpose of trade and discovery in America. He examined the shores from the Penobscot River to Cape Cod, and prepared a map of the country, to which he gave the name of New England. The original Plymouth Company having been superseded by another, called the Council of Plymouth, the king, James I., granted to the latter, in 1620, all the territory between the fortieth and forty-eighth parallels of north latitude, extending from the Atlantic to the Pacific.

The Puritans.—The first permanent settlement in New England was made by a small band of pilgrims, dissenters from the Church of England, who fled from their own country to seek an asylum[v] from religious persecution. These people belonged to a class known in England as Puritans,* from the strictness of their religious practices and doctrines.

They at first went to Amsterdam, in Holland, whence they removed to Leyden (*lī'den*). At Leyden they lived eleven years in great harmony, under the pastoral care of John Robinson; but, from various causes, they became dissatisfied with their residence, and desired to plant a colony in America, where they might enjoy their civil and religious rights without molestation. After much solicitation, they obtained a grant of land from the London Company.

As many as could be accommodated embarked on board a vessel called the Speedwell. The ship sailed to Southampton, England, where she was joined by another ship, called the Mayflower, with other Pilgrims from London. The two vessels set sail, but had not gone far before the Speedwell was found to need repairs, and they entered the port of Dartmouth (*dart'muth*), England. A second time they started, but again put back—this time to Plymouth, where the Speedwell was abandoned as unseaworthy.

Voyage of the Mayflower.—The Mayflower finally sailed alone, with one hundred and one passengers, the most distinguished of whom were John Carver, William Brewster, Miles Standish, William Bradford, and Edward Winslow. After a boisterous passage, they reached Cape Cod Bay; and, though they had originally designed to seek a landing in the vicinity of Hudson River, they determined to attempt a settlement at this place, in consequence of the lateness of the season, and the great fatigue which they had already undergone in so long a voyage.

Landing of the Pilgrims.—*Southey.*

1. Days pass, winds veer, and favoring skies
Change like the face of fortune; storms arise:
Safely, but not within her port desired,
The good ship lies.
Where the long sandy Cape
Bends and embraces round,
As with a lover's arm, the sheltered sea,
A haven she hath found,
From adverse gales and boisterous billows free.

* The name *Puritans* was first given to those who, during the reign of Elizabeth, refused to conform to the liturgy and ceremonies of the Church of England, on the ground that the Church required further reformation, abandoning all merely traditional practices and doctrines, and following the "pure word of God." The name was afterward given, in derision, not only to such, but to all who were peculiarly strict and serious in religious matters. The Puritans included several sects, as the Presbyterians and the Brownists, or Independents, who were opposed alike to Episcopacy and Presbyterianism. The Pilgrim Fathers were of this latter class.

2. Now strike your sails,
Ye toil-worn mariners, and take your rest
Long as the fierce northwest
In that wild fit prevails,
Tossing the waves uptorn with frantic sway.
Keep ye within the bay,
Contented to delay
Your course till the elemental madness cease,
And heaven and ocean are again at peace.

3. How gladly there,
Sick of the uncomfortable ocean,
The impatient passengers approach the shore;
Escaping from the sense of endless motion,
To feel firm earth beneath their feet once more;
To breathe again the air
With taint of bilge and cordage undefiled,
And drink of living springs, if there they may,
And with fresh fruits and wholesome food repair
Their spirits, weary of the watery way.

4. And oh! how beautiful
The things of earth appear
To eyes that, far and near,
For many a week have seen
Only the circle of the restless sea!
With what a fresh delight
They gaze again on fields and forests green,
Hovel, or whatsoe'er
May bear the trace of man's industrious hand;
How grateful to their sight
The shore of shelving sand,
As the light boat moves joyfully to land!

5. Woods they beheld, and huts, and piles of wood,
And many a trace of toil,
But not green fields or pastures. 'Twas a land
Of pines and sand;—
Dark pines, that, from the loose and sparkling soil,
Rose in their strength aspiring: far and wide,
They sent their searching roots on every side,
And thus, by depth and long extension, found
Firm hold and grasp within that treacherous ground;

So had they risen and flourished; till the earth,
Unstable as its neighboring ocean there,
Like an unnatural mother, heaped around
Their trunks its wavy furrows white and high,
And stifled thus the living things it bore.
Half buried thus they stand,
Their summits sere and dry,
Marking, like monuments, the funeral mound;
As when the masts of some tall vessel show
Where, on the fatal shoals, the wreck lies whelm'd below.

6. Such was the ungenial earth; nor was the air
Fresh and delightful there;
A noisome taint upon the breath it bore;
For they who dwelt upon that sandy shore,
Of meadows and of gardens took no care.
They sow'd not, neither did they reap:
The ocean was their field, their flocks and herds
The myriad moving armies of the deep;
The whale their mighty chase, whose bones bestrew'd
The sandy margin of that ample bay,
And all about, in many a loathly heap,
The offal and the reeking refuse lay,
Left there for dogs obscene[v] and carrion birds a prey.

A New England Tale.

Settlement of Plymouth.—*Palfrey.*

1. The narrow peninsula, sixty miles long, which terminates in Cape Cod, projects eastwardly from the mainland of Massachusetts, in shape resembling the human arm bent rectangularly[v] at the elbow and again at the wrist. In the basin inclosed landward by the extreme point of this projection, in the roadstead of what is now Provincetown, the Mayflower dropped her anchor at noon on a Saturday near the close of autumn. The exigencies of a position so singular demanded an organization adequate[v] to the preservation of order and of the common safety, and the following instrument was prepared and signed:

2. "In the name of God, amen. We, whose names are underwritten, the loyal subjects of our dread sovereign lord, King James, by the grace of God, of Great Britain, France, and Ireland, King, Defender of the Faith, etc., having undertaken,

for the glory of God, and advancement of the Christian faith, and honor of our king and country, a voyage, to plant the first colony in the northern parts of Virginia, do by these presents, solemnly and mutually, in the presence of God and one another, covenant and combine ourselves together into a civil body politic, for our better ordering and preservation, and furtherance of the ends aforesaid; and by virtue hereof do enact, constitute, and frame such just and equal laws, ordinances, acts, constitutions, and offices, from time to time, as shall be thought most meet and convenient for the general good of the colony; unto which we promise all due submission and obedience. In witness whereof we have hereunto subscribed our names, at Cape Cod, the 11th of November, in the year of the reign of our sovereign lord, King James, of England, France, and Ireland, the eighteenth, and of Scotland the fifty-fourth, Anno Domini 1620."

3. Such was the beginning of the colony of Plymouth. To the end of its separate history, it continued to be an humble community in numbers and in wealth. When four years had passed, the village consisted of only thirty-two cabins, inhabited by a hundred and eighty persons. The government of the company was prescribed by the majority of voices, and administered by one of its members, with another for his assistant. It was not so much a commonwealth as a factory, of which the head bore the title of governor.

4. Six years later, it numbered three hundred persons; five years after this, it had added two hundred more; and, at the end of its life of seventy years, its population, scattered through several towns, had probably not come to exceed eight thousand. It is on account of the virtue displayed in its institution and management, and of the great consequences to which it ultimately led, that the Colony of Plymouth claims the attention of mankind. In any other view its records would be unattractive. The building of log hovels, the turning of sand-heaps into cornfields, dealings with stupid Indians and with overreaching partners in trade, anxious struggles to get a living, and, at most, the sufferings of men, women, and children,

wasting under cold, sickness, and famine, feebly supply, as the staple of a history, the place of those splendid exhibitions of power, and those critical conflicts of intrigue[v] and war, which fill the annals of great empires.

5. But no higher stake is played for in the largest sphere, than the life of a body politic; nor can the most heroic man be moved by any nobler impulse than the sense of patriotic and religious obligation; nor is the merit of that constancy, which makes no account of sacrifice and suffering, to be estimated by the size of the theatre on which it is displayed. And the homely story of the planters of Plymouth will not fail to have interest for those readers who are able to discriminate what is most excellent in human nature from its adjuncts[v], or for such as delight to trace the method of Providence, in educing[v] results of the largest benefit to mankind, from the simple element of devotion to right and duty in lowly men.

6. At the time of the adoption of the compact for a government, Carver was chosen governor of the company. In the afternoon, "fifteen or sixteen men, well armed," were sent on shore to reconnoitre[v], and collect fuel. They returned at evening, reporting that they had seen neither person nor dwelling, but that the country was well wooded, and that the appearance as to soil was promising.

7. Having kept their Sabbath in due retirement, the men began the labors of the week by landing a shallop[v] from the ship and hauling it up the beach for repairs, while the women went on shore to wash clothes. While the carpenter and his men were at work on the boat, sixteen others, armed and provisioned, with Standish for their commander, set off on foot to explore the country. The only incident of this day was the sight of five or six savages, who, on their approach, ran away too swiftly to be overtaken. At night, lighting a fire and setting a guard, the party bivouacked[v], at the distance, as they supposed, of ten miles from their vessel.

8. Proceeding southward next morning, they observed marks of cultivation; some heaps of earth which they took for signs of graves, and the remains of a hut, with a "great kettle, which had

been some ship's kettle." In a heap which they opened they found two baskets containing four or five bushels of Indian corn, of which they took as much as they could carry away in their pockets and in the kettle. Further on, they saw two canoes, and "an old fort or palisade, made by some Christians," as they thought.

9. The second night, which was rainy, they encamped again with more precautions than before. On Friday evening, having lost their way meanwhile, and been amused by an accident to Bradford, who was caught in an Indian deer-trap, they returned to their friends, "both weary and welcome, and delivered in their corn into the store to be kept for seed, for they knew not how to come by any, and therefore were very glad, proposing, so soon as they could meet with any of the inhabitants of that place, to make them large satisfaction."

10. The succeeding week was spent in putting their tools in order and preparing timber for a new boat. During this time, which proved to be cold and stormy, much inconvenience was experienced from having to wade "a bow-shot" through the shallow water to the shore; and many took "coughs and colds, which afterward turned to scurvy." On Monday of the week next following, twenty-four of the colonists, in the shallop, which was now refitted, set out for an exploration along the coast, accompanied by Jones, the shipmaster, and ten of his people, in the long-boat. That day and the following night they suffered from a cold snow-storm, and were compelled to run in to the shore for security.

11. The next day brought them to the harbor to which the preceding journey by land had been extended, now named by them *Cold Harbor*, and ascertained to have depth of twelve feet of water at flood-tide. Having slept under a shelter of pine-trees, they proceeded to make an examination of the spot as to its fitness for their settlement; in doing which, under the snow-covered and frozen surface, they found another parcel of corn and a bag of beans. These spoils they sent back in the shallop with Jones and sixteen of the party, who were ill, or worn out with exposure and fatigue. Marching inland five or six miles, they found a grave with a deposit of personal articles, as "bowls,

trays, dishes," "a knife, a pack-needle," "a little bow," and some "strings and bracelets of fine white beads." Two wigwams[v] were seen, which appeared to have been recently inhabited. Returning to their boat in the evening, the party hastened to rejoin their friends.

12. The question was discussed whether they should make a further examination of the coast, or sit down at the harbor which had been visited. The land about it had been under cultivation. The site appeared healthy and convenient for defense, as well as for taking whales, of which numbers were daily seen. The severity of the winter season was close at hand, and the delay, fatigue, and work of further explorations were dreaded. But, on the whole, the uncertainty as to an adequate supply of water, with the insufficiency of the harbor, which, though commodious for boats, was too shallow for larger vessels, was regarded as a conclusive objection, and it was resolved to make a further examination of the bay. The mate of the Mayflower had told them of Agawam, now Ipswich, as a good harbor, with fertile land, and facilities for fishing; but, as things stood, it was thought too distant for a visit.

13. As soon as the state of the weather permitted, a party of ten, including Carver, Bradford, and others of the principal men, set off with eight seamen in the shallop, on what proved to be the final expedition of discovery. The severity of the cold was extreme. "The water froze on their clothes, and made them many times like coats of iron." Coasting along the cape in a southerly direction for six or seven leagues, they landed and slept at a place where ten or twelve Indians had appeared on the shore.

14. The Indians ran away on being approached, and at night it was supposed that it was their fires which appeared at four or five miles' distance. The next day, while part of the company in the shallop examined the shore, the rest, ranging about the country, where are now the towns of Wellfleet and Eastham, found a burial-place, some old wigwams, and a small store of parched acorns buried in the ground; but they met with no

inhabitants. The following morning, at daylight, they had just ended their prayers, and were preparing breakfast at their camp on the beach, when they heard a yell, and a flight of arrows fell among them. The assailants turned out to be thirty or forty Indians, who, being fired upon, retired. Neither side had been harmed. A number of the arrows were picked up, "some whereof were headed with brass, others with hart's horn, and others with eagles' claws."

15. Getting on board, they sailed all day along the shore in a storm of snow and sleet, making, by their estimate, a distance of forty or fifty miles without discovering a harbor. In the afternoon, the gale having increased, their rudder was disabled, and they had to steer with oars. At length the mast was carried away, and they drifted in the dark with a flood-tide. With difficulty they brought up under the lee of a "small rise of land." Here a part of the company, suffering from wet and cold, went on shore, though not without fear of hostile neighbors, and lighted a fire by which to pass the inclement night. In the morning, "they found themselves to be on an island,* secure from the Indians, where they might dry their stuff, fix their pieces, and rest themselves; and this being the last day of the week, they prepared there to keep the Sabbath."

16. "On Monday they sounded the harbor, and found it fit for shipping, and marched also into the land, and found divers corn-fields and little running brooks, a place, as they supposed, fit for situation; . . . so they returned to their ship again with this news to the rest of the people, which did much comfort their hearts." Such is the record of that event which has made the *twenty-second* of December a memorable day in the calendar.†—*History of New England.*

---

* *Clark's Island*, in Plymouth Harbor, said to have been afterward so named from the mate of the *Mayflower*. Some authors give 101 as the number of the *Mayflower's* passengers.

† By the old style of reckoning it was Dec 11. When the practice of celebrating the anniversary at Plymouth began, in 1769, eleven days were erroneously added to the recorded date, to accommodate it to the Gregorian style, which had been adopted in England in 1752. In 1620, however, the derangement of the calendar only amounted to *ten* days, and consequently the landing described in the text occurred on the 21st of December. Mr. Palfrey remarks, in this connection that "an attempt has been made within a few years to substitute the true allowance of ten days; but the *twenty-second* day of December has taken a firm hold on the local thought and literature, which the *twenty-first* will scarcely displace."

The Pilgrim Fathers.—*Pierpont.*

1. The Pilgrim Fathers—where are they?
The waves that brought them o'er
Still roll in the bay and throw their spray,
As they break along the shore;
Still roll in the bay, as they rolled that day
When the Mayflower moored below,—
When the sea around was black with storms,
And white the shore with snow.

2. The mists that wrapped the Pilgrim's sleep
Still brood upon the tide;
And the rocks yet keep their watch by the deep,
To stay its waves of pride.
But the snow-white sail that he gave to the gale,
When the heavens looked dark, is gone;—
As an angel's wing, through an opening cloud,
Is seen, and then withdrawn.

3. The Pilgrim exile—sainted name!—
The hill whose icy brow
Rejoiced when he came, in the morning's flame,
In the morning's flame burns now;
And the moon's cold light, as it lay that night
On the hillside and the sea,
Still lies where he laid his houseless head;—
But the Pilgrim—where is he?

4. The Pilgrim Fathers are at rest;
When summer's throned on high,
And the world's warm breast is in verdure dressed,
Go stand on the hill where they lie.
The earliest ray of the golden day
On that hallowed spot is cast;
And the evening sun, as he leaves the world,
Looks kindly on that spot last.

5. The Pilgrim *spirit* has not fled:
It walks in noon's broad light;
And it watches the bed of the glorious dead,
With the holy stars, by night.

It watches the bed of the brave who have bled,
And shall guard this ice-bound shore,
Till the waves of the bay, where the Mayflower lay,
Shall foam and freeze no more.

History of Plymouth.—The first winter was very severe, and in less than five months nearly one-half of that Pilgrim band died from the effect of exposure and privations, Governor Carver and his wife being among the number. William Bradford was thereupon elected to fill the vacancy, and during thirty years was active and conspicuous in the history of the colony.

In 1621, a treaty of friendship was made with Massasoit (*mas-sa-soit'*), chief of the Wampanoags (*wom-pa-nō'ags*), that was sacredly observed for more than thirty years. Canonicus (*ka-non'i-kus*), chief of the Narragansetts, kept the colonists in fear for a while, but the decisive course of Bradford eventually compelled him to sue for peace.

Massachusetts Bay Colony.—In the mean time, other influences were at work to extend the range of settlements. A company composed of gentlemen who were interested in the fisheries and trade of New England, having purchased a tract of land, sent out an expedition of a hundred persons, under the charge of John Endicott. These reached Salem in 1628, and made a settlement, thus laying the foundation of the Massachusetts Bay Colony. The proprietors soon after obtained a charter from the king, under the incorporated title of "The Governor and Company of Massachusetts Bay, in New England."

Accessions were rapidly made to the new colony, and settlements at Charlestown and other places were made. An important change took place in 1629, by which the government of the company was transferred from London to New England. This induced men of fortune and intelligence to become interested, among whom was John Winthrop,* who was afterward elected governor, and who set sail for the colony in the beginning of April, 1630. Winthrop was accompanied by about three hundred families, mostly Puritans, who settled at Boston and adjacent places, in 1630.

The banishment of Roger Williams, in 1635, was an event not only important in itself, but also on account of the principle it enunciated. Though a Puritan, Williams denounced the religious intolerance practised in New England; for which, as well as for certain opinions which he held touching civil matters, he was banished. Nor was this the only banishment. A Mrs. Hutchinson,† who persisted in holding meetings of her own sex, and promulgating peculiar views, was also driven into exile.

* John Winthrop was born in Groton, county of Suffolk, England, in 1588. He was re-elected governor of Massachusetts every year until 1634. With the exception of two or three years, he was afterward deputy governor or governor until his death, which occurred in 1649.

† Mrs. Anne Hutchinson, upon being sentenced to banishment, at first went to Rhode Island. After the death of her husband, which occurred in 1642, five years later, she removed with her children to New Netherlands. The Indians and the Dutch were then at war, and, in an attack made by the former, her house was set on fire, and she and all her family, except one child, either perished in the flames or were massacred by the savages.

RHODE ISLAND.

Roger Williams, and the Settlement of Providence.—*Bancroft.*

1. At a time when Germany was the battle-field for all Europe in the implacable[v] wars of religion; when even Holland was bleeding with the anger of vengeful factions; when France was still to go through the fearful struggle with bigotry[v]; when England was gasping under the despotism[v] of intolerance[v]; almost half a century before William Penn became an American proprietary[v]; and two years before Descartes (*da-kart'*) founded modern philosophy on the method of free reflection,—Roger Williams asserted the great doctrine of intellectual liberty. It became his glory to found a state upon that principle, and to stamp himself upon its rising institutions in characters so deep that the impress has remained to the present day, and can never be erased without the total destruction of the work.

2. The principles which he first sustained amidst the bickerings[v] of a colonial parish, next asserted in the general court of Massachusetts, and then introduced into the wilds on Narragansett Bay, he soon found occasion to publish to the world, and to defend, as the basis of the religious freedom of mankind; so that, borrowing the rhetoric employed by his antagonist[v] in derision, we may compare him to the lark, the pleasant bird of the peaceful summer, that, "affecting to soar aloft, springs upward from the ground, takes his rise from pale to tree," and at last, surmounting the highest hills, utters his clear carols through the skies of morning.

3. He was the first person in modern Christendom to assert in its plenitude[v] the doctrine of the liberty of conscience, the equality of opinions before the law; and in its defense he was the harbinger[v] of Milton, the precursor[v] and the superior of Jeremy Taylor. For Taylor limited his toleration to a few Christian sects; the philanthropy[v] of Williams compassed the earth: Taylor favored partial reform, commended lenity, argued for forbearance, and entered a special plea in behalf of

each tolerable sect; Williams would permit persecution of no opinion, of no religion, leaving heresy[v] unharmed by law, and orthodoxy unprotected by the terrors of penal[v] statutes.

4. Taylor still clung to the necessity of positive regulations enforcing religion and eradicating error; he resembled the poets, who, in their folly, first declare their hero to be invulnerable[v], and then clothe him in earthly armor: Williams was willing to leave Truth alone, in her own panoply of light, believing that if, in the ancient feud between Truth and Error, the employment of force could be entirely abrogated[v], Truth would have much the best of the bargain.

5. It is the custom of mankind to award high honors to the successful inquirer into the laws of nature,—to those who advance the bounds of human knowledge. We praise the man who first analyzed[v] the air, or resolved water into its elements, or drew the lightning from the clouds; even though the discoveries may have been as much the fruits of time as of genius. A moral principle has a much wider and nearer influence on human happiness; nor can any discovery of truth be of more direct benefit to society, than that which establishes a perpetual religious peace, and spreads tranquillity through every community and every bosom.

6. If Copernicus is held in perpetual reverence because, on his death-bed, he published to the world that the sun is the centre of our system; if the name of Kepler is preserved in the annals of human excellence for his sagacity in detecting the laws of the planetary motion; if the genius of Newton has been almost adored for dissecting a ray of light, and weighing heavenly bodies as in a balance,—let there be for the name of Roger Williams at least some humble place among those who have advanced moral science, and made themselves the benefactors[v] of mankind. . . .

7. Winter was at hand [when sentence of exile was pronounced against him]; Williams succeeded in obtaining permission to remain till Spring; intending then to begin a plantation on Narragansett Bay. But the affections of the people of Salem revived, and could not be restrained; they thronged

to his house to hear him whom they were so soon to lose forever; it began to be rumored that he could not safely be allowed to found a new state in the vicinity; "many of the people were much taken with the apprehension of his godliness;" his opinions were contagious[v]; the infection spread widely.

8. It was therefore resolved to remove him to England in a ship that was just ready to set sail. A warrant was accordingly sent to him to come to Boston and embark. For the first time he declined the summons of the court. A pinnace[v] was sent for him; the officers repaired to his house; he was no longer there. Three days before he had left Salem, in winter snow and inclement[v] weather, of which he remembered the severity even in his late old age. "For fourteen weeks, he was sorely tost in a bitter season, not knowing what bread or bed did mean." Often in the stormy night he had neither fire, nor food, nor company; often he wandered without a guide, and had no house but a hollow tree.

9. But he was not without friends. The same scrupulous respect for the rights of others which had led him to defend the freedom of conscience, had made him also the champion of the Indians. He had already been zealous to acquire their language, and knew it so well that he could debate with them in their own dialect[v]. During his residence at Plymouth, he had often been the guest of the neighboring sachems[v]; and now, when he came in winter to the cabin of the chief of Pokanoket, he was welcomed by Massasoit; and "the barbarous heart of Canonicus, the chief of the Narragansetts, loved him as his son to the last gasp." "The ravens," he relates with gratitude, "fed me in the wilderness." And in requital[v] for their hospitality, he was ever, through his long life, their friend and benefactor; the apostle[v] of Christianity to them, without hire, without weariness, and without impatience at their idolatry;—the guardian of their rights; the pacificator, when their rude passions were inflamed; and their unflinching advocate and protector, whenever Europeans attempted an invasion of their soil.

10. He first pitched, and began to build and plant at Seekonk

But Seekonk was found to be within the patent of Plymouth; on the other side of the water, the country opened in its unappropriated beauty, and there he might hope to establish a community as free as the other colonies. "That ever-honored Governor Winthrop," says Williams, "privately wrote to me to steer my course to the Narragansett Bay, encouraging me from the freeness of the place from English claims or patents. I took his prudent motion as a voice from God."

11. It was in June that the lawgiver of Rhode Island, with five companions, embarked on the stream; a frail Indian canoe contained the founder of an independent state and its earliest citizens. Tradition has marked the spring near which they landed; it is the parent spot, the first inhabited nook of Rhode Island. To express his unbroken confidence in the mercies of God, Williams called the place PROVIDENCE. "I desired," said he, "it might be for a shelter for persons distressed for conscience."

12. In his new abode, Williams could have less leisure for contemplation and study. "My time," he observes of himself,—and it is a sufficient apology for the roughness of his style, as a writer on morals,—"was not spent altogether in spiritual labors; but, day and night, at home and abroad, on the land and water, at the hoe, at the oar, for bread." In the course of two years he was joined by others, who fled to his asylum. The land which was now occupied by Williams was within the territory of the Narragansett Indians; it was not long before an Indian deed from Canonicus and Miantonomah made him the undisputed possessor of an extensive domain.—*History of the United States.*

Rhode Island Plantation.—Charter.—In 1638, William Coddington, who had been subjected to religious persecution in Boston, accepted an invitation from Williams, purchased from the Indians the island of Rhode Island,* and settled there. Rather than admit a claim of jurisdiction set up by Plymouth, Williams went to England, and obtained a charter whereby the

* It (the Island) "was so called from a fancied resemblance to the island of Rhodes." Another authority says, "That in consequence of the reddish appearance of the island, it was soon known among the Dutch (of New Netherlands) as *Roode*, or Red Island. From this is derived the name of the Island and State."

settlements of Rhode Island were united, in 1644, under one government, as "The Incorporation of Providence Plantations in the Narragansett Bay in New England."

After Charles II. ascended the throne of England, Rhode Island, in 1663, obtained a new charter. When Andros assumed the government of New England, the management of affairs under the charter was, for the time, necessarily suspended; but directly after he was seized and sent to England, as elsewhere stated, the charter became the fundamental law of the colony, and was the only constitution of the State till 1842.

NEW HAMPSHIRE.

The Council of Plymouth, in 1620, obtained a grant of land including the whole of what is now known as New England. In 1622, a portion of this grant, extending from the Merrimac to the Kennebec, was ceded by the council to Ferdinand Gorges (*gor'jes*) and John Mason, two of its most active members. Gorges and Mason, indulging "brilliant anticipations" for their territory, sent over emigrants, in 1623, who settled at Little Harbor, near Portsmouth, and at Dover. These were the first settlements in New Hampshire.

In 1629, the Rev. John Wheelwright and others, evidently not considering the grant to Gorges and Mason as of much value, purchased of the Indians all the territory between the Merrimac and Piscataqua. In the same year, Mason obtained a grant, in his own name alone, of the country which Wheelwright had purchased, and to this he gave the name of New Hampshire.*

The different settlements of New Hampshire in time came to be governed by different proprietors; but the people, believing their interests would be promoted by a change, in 1641 formed a union, and placed themselves under the protection of Massachusetts. This privilege was enjoyed for a period of nearly forty years, when, in 1680, the two colonies were separated by order of the king, and New Hampshire became a royal province.

The district of New Hampshire was several times connected with Massachusetts,—the first from 1641 to 1680, as previously stated; but, in 1741, it became a separate province, and so continued till the Revolution.

CONNECTICUT.

Connecticut Colony.—In 1630, the Council of Plymouth ceded the "soil of Connecticut"† to the Earl of Warwick; and this grant the following year was transferred to Lord Say-and-Seal, Lord Brooke, and others. As the Dutch, at the time, laid claim to the territory thus ceded, they built a fort on the Connecticut, where Hartford now stands, to prevent the English from making any settlements in that section.

Saybrook Colony.—The structure was hardly completed when Captain

* Mason had been governor of Portsmouth, Hampshire County, England. Hence the name. A recent writer pronounces Wheelwright's deed from the Indians "a forgery."

† This State derives its name from its chief river, the Connecticut, a name given to it by the Indians, and signifying in their language *The Long River.*

Holmes (*hōmz*) and a company from Plymouth sailed up the river. Though menaced by the Dutch, the English passed the fort unhurt, and commenced the settlement of Connecticut, by erecting in that year, 1633, a trading-house at Windsor (*win'zer*). Important additions were made to this, called the Connecticut Colony, by two large emigrations from Massachusetts—the second conducted by the Rev. Thomas Hooker, in 1636.

Settlement of Saybrook.—Toward the close of 1635, John Winthrop, son of the Massachusetts governor, acting under a commission from the proprietors of Connecticut, built a fort at the mouth of the Connecticut River. A colony was also established there, which, in honor of Lord Say-and-Seal, and Lord Brooke, was called Saybrook.

Pequod War.—About this time difficulties with the Indians commenced. The Pequods (*pe'kwodz*), a warlike tribe inhabiting the southeastern part of Connecticut, having committed many acts of hostility, Hartford, Windsor, and Wethersfield, in 1637, united in declaring war against them. Captain Mason, with a force of colonists and friendly Indians, proceeded against the Pequods, burned their fort and wigwams, killed more than six hundred of their number, and completely broke them up as a tribe.

New Haven Colony.—A third colony was established in Connecticut, in 1638, called the New Haven Colony. The land was bought of the Indians; and, under the guidance of Theophilus Eaton and the Rev. John Davenport, a colony, remarkable for the religious spirit that marked its laws, was planted and flourished.

Union of the Colonies.—In 1639, the people of Hartford, Windsor, and Wethersfield, finding their settlements beyond the limits of Massachusetts, met at Hartford, and united in forming a government for themselves. The colony of Saybrook maintained its separate existence until 1644. By its annexation in that year to the Connecticut Colony, only two colonies remained, which were united in 1665, under a liberal royal charter granted by King Charles II. of England.

The Charter Oak.—Sir Edmund Andros, who had been made royal governor of New England, in 1687 appeared before the Connecticut Assembly, in session at Hartford, and demanded the surrender of the charter. A discussion at once arose, which was protracted till evening, when the charter was brought in and laid upon the table; but just as Andros was stepping forward to take it, the lights were suddenly extinguished. When the candles were relighted, the document could not be found. It had been carried away and hid in the hollow of a tree, which was afterward known as the *Charter Oak*.

Andros, although unable to procure the charter, assumed the government, which he administered till he was seized at Boston and sent to England, in 1689, to be tried on a charge of maladministration of the public affairs. The charter was then taken from its hiding-place, and Connecticut again assumed her position as an independent colony.

The Charter Oak was held in great veneration, and was carefully preserved till 1856, when it was laid prostrate by a violent storm.

MASSACHUSETTS.

From the Union of the New England Colonies in 1643, *to the French and Indian War.*

The New England Confederacy.—*Grahame.*

1. Alarmed by the frequent indications of fickleness[v], dislike, and furious passion of the Indians, and ascertaining by dint of inquiry that they had recently proposed and entertained the plan of a general conspiracy against the colonists, the authorities of Massachusetts conceived the defensive project of providing, by a mutual concert of the colonies, for the common danger which they might expect to encounter at no distant day, when the savages, instructed by experience, would sacrifice their private feuds to combined hostility against a race of strangers, whose progressive advancement seemed to minister occasion of increasing and incurable jealousy to the whole Indian race.

2. Having composed, for this purpose, a plan which was framed in imitation of the bond of union between the Dutch provinces, and which readily suggested itself to some leading personages among the colonists, who had resided with the Brownist congregation in Holland, they communicated it to the neighboring settlements of New Plymouth, Connecticut, and New Haven, by which it was cordially embraced. These four colonies accordingly entered into a league of perpetual confederacy, offensive and defensive (May 19, 1643).

3. The instrument of confederation between them announced that their respective inhabitants *had all come into these parts of America with the same errand and aim*, to advance the Christian religion, and *enjoy the liberty of their consciences with purity and peace.* It was stipulated[v], that the confederates should thenceforth be distinguished by the title of the United Colonies of New England; that each province should remain a separate and distinct municipal[v] association, and retain independent jurisdiction within its own territory; that in every war, offensive or defensive, each of the confederates should furnish its quota of men, money, and provisions, at a rate to be

fixed from time to time, in proportion to the population of the respective communities; that a council, composed of two commissioners from each province, should be annually convoked and empowered to deliberate and decide on all points of common concern to the confederacy; and that every resolve sanctioned by the approbation of six of the commissioners, should be binding on all the associated provinces.

4. Every province renounced the right of protecting fugitive debtors or criminals from the legal process of the particular community which they might have wronged and deserted. The State of Rhode Island, which was not included in this confederacy, petitioned a few years after to be admitted into it; but her request was refused, except on the condition, which she declined, of merging her separate existence in an incorporation with the colony of New Plymouth. Thus excluded from the benefit of the federal union, and in a manner dissociated from the other states, the inhabitants of Rhode Island and Providence endeavored to promote their separate security by conciliating the friendship of the Indians; and the humane and courteous policy which the purpose taught them to pursue, proved remarkably successful.—*Colonial History of the United States.*

Eliot's Efforts to Convert the Indians.—*Grahame.*

1. While the people at large were progressively extending their industry, and subduing by culture the rudeness of desert nature, the ministers of religion, with earnest zeal, aspired to an extension of *their* peculiar sphere of usefulness; and at a very early period entertained designs of redeeming to the dominion of piety and civility the neglected wastes of human life and character that lay stretched in savage ignorance and idolatry around them. John Eliot, one of the ministers of Roxbury, a man whose large soul glowed with the intensest flame of holy charity, was deeply penetrated with a sense of this duty, and for some time had been laboriously qualifying himself to overcome the preliminary difficulty by which its performance was obstructed. He had now by diligent study attained such acquaintance with the Indian language as enabled him not only

to speak it with fluency, but to facilitate the acquisition of it to others, by the construction and publication of a system of Indian Grammar.

2. Having completed his preparatory inquiries, he began, in the close of this year (October, 1646), a scene of pious labor, which has been traced with great interest and accuracy by the ecclesiastical historians of New England; and still more minutely, we may believe, in that eternal record where alone the actions of men obtain their just, their final, and everlasting proportions. It is a remarkable feature in his long and arduous career, that the spirit and energy by which he was supported never incurred the slightest abatement, but, on the contrary, manifested a steady and continual increase. He confidently relied on its unfailing endurance; and always referring it to divine infusion, felt assured of its derivation from a fountain incapable of being wasted by the most liberal communication.

3. Everything he saw or knew occurred to him in a religious aspect; every faculty, and every acquisition that he derived from the employment of his faculties, was received by him as a ray imparted to his soul from that supreme source of sentiment and intelligence which was the object of his earnest contemplation and continual desire. As he was one of the holiest, so was he also one of the happiest and most beloved of men. When he felt himself disabled from preaching by the infirmities of old age, he proposed to his parishioners of Roxbury to resign his ministerial salary; but these good people unanimously declared that they would willingly pay the stipend[y], for the advantage and honor of having him reside among them. His example, indeed, was the most valuable part of his ministry among Christians; his life, during many years, being a continual and manifest effusion of soul in devotion to God and charity to mankind.

4. The mild, persuasive address of Eliot soon gained him a favorable audience from many of the Indians; and having successfully represented to them the expediency[y] of an entire departure from their savage habits of life, he obtained from the General Court a suitable tract of land adjoining to the settlement of Concord, in Massachusetts, where a number of Indian

families began, under his counsel, to erect fixed habitations for themselves, and where they eagerly received his instructions, both spiritual and secular[y]. It was not long before a violent opposition to these innovations was excited by the powwows, or Indian priests, who threatened death, and other inflictions of the vengeance of their idols, on all who should embrace Christianity. The menaces and artifices of these persons caused several of the seeming proselytes to draw back, but induced others to separate themselves entirely from the society and converse of the main body of their countrymen, and court the advantage of a closer association with that superior race of men who showed themselves so generously willing to diffuse and communicate the capacity and benefits of their own improved condition.

5. A considerable number of Indians resorted to the land allotted to them by the provincial government, and exchanged their wild and barbarous habits for the modes of civilized life and industry. Eliot was continually among them, instructing, animating, and directing them. They felt his superior wisdom, and saw him continually and serenely happy; and there was nothing in his exterior condition that indicated sources of enjoyment from which they were necessarily debarred[y]. On the contrary, it was obvious that of every article of merely selfish comfort he was willing to divest himself, in order to communicate to them a share of what he esteemed the only true riches of an immortal being. The women in the next settlement learned to spin; the men to dig and till the ground; and the children were instructed in the English language, and taught to read and write, or, as the Indians expressed themselves, to get *news from the paper, and mark their thoughts on it.*

6. As the numbers of domesticated[y] Indians increased, they built a town by the side of Charles River, which they called *Natick*, and they desired Eliot to frame a system of municipal[y] government for them. He directed their attention to the counsel that Jethro gave to Moses; and, in conformity with it, they elected for themselves rulers of hundreds, of fifties, and of tens. The provincial government also established a tribunal,

which, without assuming jurisdiction over them, tendered the assistance of its judicial mediation to all who might be willing to refer to it the adjustment of their more difficult or important controversies. In endeavoring to extend their missionary influence among the surrounding tribes, Eliot and the associates of his labors (men like-minded with himself), encountered a variety of success, corresponding to the visible varieties of human character, and the invisible predeterminations of the divine will.

7. Many persons expressed the utmost abhorrence and contempt of Christianity; some made a hollow profession of willingness to learn, and even of conviction,—with the view, as it afterward proved, of obtaining the tools and other articles of value that were furnished to every Indian who proposed to embrace the habits of civilized life. In spite of great discouragement, the missionaries persisted; and the difficulties that at first mocked their efforts seeming at length to vanish under an influence at once mysterious and irresistible, their labors were crowned with astonishing success. The character and habits of the lay colonists promoted the efficacy of these pious exertions, in a manner which will be forcibly appreciated by all who have examined the history and progress of missions. Simple in their manners, devout, moral, and industrious in their conduct and demeanor, they enforced the lessons of the missionaries by demonstrating their practicability and beneficial effects, and exhibited a model of life, which, in point of refinement, was not too elevated for Indian imitation. . . .

8. Eliot had occasionally translated and printed various approved theological dissertations for the use of the Indians; and at length, in the year 1664, the Bible was printed, for the first time, in one of the native languages of the New World, at Cambridge, in Massachusetts. This, indeed, was not accomplished without the assistance of pecuniary contributions from the mother country. The colonists had zealously and cheerfully co-operated with their ministers, and assisted to defray the cost of their charitable enterprises; but the increasing expenses threatened at last to exceed what their narrow means were competent to afford.

9. Happily, the tidings of this great work excited a kindred spirit in the parent state, where, in the year 1649, there was formed by act of parliament, a *Society for propagating the Gospel in New England*, whose co-operation proved of essential service to the missionary cause. This society, dissolved at the Restoration, was afterward re-established by a charter from Charles II., obtained by the exertions of the pious Richard Baxter, and the influence of the illustrious Robert Boyle, who thus approved himself the benefactor of New England as well as of Virginia.

10. Supported by its ample endowments, and the liberal contributions of their own fellow-colonists, the American missionaries exerted themselves with such energy and success in the work of converting and civilizing the savages, that, before the close of the seventeenth century, there were collected in the province of Massachusetts more than thirty congregations of Indians, comprising upward of three thousand persons, reclaimed from a gross barbarism and degrading superstition, and advanced to the comfort and respectability of civilized life, and the dignity and happiness of worshippers of the true God. There were nearly as many converts to religion and civility in the islands of Massachusetts Bay; there were several Indian congregations in the Plymouth territories; and among some of the tribes that still pursued their wonted style of roving life, there was introduced a considerable improvement in civil and moral habits. Several Indians received education at Harvard College; from which, in the year 1665, one of their number obtained the degree of Bachelor of Arts.—*Colonial History of the United States.*

Persecution of the Quakers.—In 1656 a serious trouble commenced, growing out of the arrival in that year of a number of Quakers from England. They had been represented as a people of peculiar opinions and conduct, and consequently they were persecuted. Many were banished, four were executed, and others were whipped or cast into prison. The great severity of the measures at last produced a reaction in public feeling; and, after five years of trouble, the Quakers were allowed to come and enjoy their opinions in peace.

King Philip's War.—During the life of Massasoit, the treaty of friend-

ship between him and the people of Plymouth was faithfully kept; but, after his death, Philip, commonly known as King Philip, his son and successor, made war upon the colonists. It became evident to the Indians that the spreading settlements were fast breaking up their hunting-grounds; and they saw too, in the growing power of the whites, their own inevitable[v] extinction. Besides, they were burning to avenge personal wrongs.

Nothing short of a union of the New England tribes for the extermination[v] of the colonists, it was thought, could arrest the tide against them; and Philip, so it was alleged, was the leading spirit in plotting the combination. It is related that a converted Indian, who had been sent as a missionary among his people, was the principal informer against Philip. This man was found murdered. The execution by the whites of three Indians, convicted of the murder, may be considered as the immediate cause of the war.

The first attack was made by Philip, in 1675, upon the people of Swan'zey, as they were returning, one Sunday, from church. Although a treaty of peace had been made with the Narragansetts, they joined in the war against the English. A strong force was sent against the Indians; and, in an immense swamp in the southern part of Rhode Island, they were defeated with great loss. Yet they continued their depredations[v] till the death of Philip, which occurred in 1676, he being shot by one of his own tribe.

Death and Character of King Philip.—*Irving.*

1. With a scanty band of followers, who still remained true to his desperate fortunes, the unhappy Philip wandered back to Mount Hope, the ancient dwelling of his fathers. Here he lurked about, like a spectre[v], among scenes of former power and prosperity, now bereft of home, of family, and friends. There needs no better picture of his destitute and piteous situation than that furnished by the homely pen of the chronicler[v], who is unwarily enlisting the feelings of the reader in favor of the hapless warrior whom he reviles. "Philip," he says, "like a savage wild beast, having been hunted by the English forces through the woods, above a hundred miles backward and forward, at last was driven to his own den upon Mount Hope, where he retired, with a few of his best friends, into a swamp, which proved but a prison to keep him fast till the messengers of death came by divine permission to execute vengeance upon him."

2. Even in this last refuge of desperation and despair, a sullen grandeur gathers round his memory. We picture him to ourselves seated among his care-worn followers, brooding in

silence over his blasted fortunes, and acquiring a savage sublimity from the wildness and dreariness of his lurking-place. Defeated, but not dismayed—crushed to the earth, but not humiliated—he seemed to grow more haughty beneath disaster, and to experience a fierce satisfaction in draining the last dregs of bitterness.

3. Little minds are tamed and subdued by misfortune, but great minds rise above it. The very idea of submission awakened the fury of Philip, and he smote to death one of his followers, who proposed an expedient of peace. The brother of the victim made his escape, and in revenge betrayed the retreat of his chieftain. A body of white men and Indians were immediately dispatched to the swamp where Philip lay crouched, glaring with fury and despair. Before he was aware of their approach, they had begun to surround him. In a little while he saw five of his trustiest followers laid dead at his feet; all resistance was vain; he rushed forth from his covert, and made a headlong attempt to escape, but was shot through the heart by a renegade[v] Indian of his own nation.

4. Such is the scanty story of the brave but unfortunate King Philip; persecuted while living, slandered and dishonored when dead. If, however, we consider even the prejudiced anecdotes furnished us by his enemies, we may perceive in them traces of amiable and lofty character sufficient to awaken sympathy for his fate, and respect for his memory. We find that, amidst all the harassing cares and ferocious passions of constant warfare, he was alive to the softer feelings of connubial[v] love and paternal[v] tenderness, and to the generous sentiment of friendship. The captivity of his "beloved wife and only son" is mentioned with exultation as causing him poignant misery; the death of any near friend is triumphantly recorded as a new blow on his sensibilities; but the treachery and desertion of many of his followers, in whose affections he had confided, is said to have desolated his heart, and to have bereaved him of all further comfort.

5. He was a patriot attached to his native soil—a prince true to his subjects, and indignant of their wrongs—a soldier daring

in battle, firm in adversity, patient of fatigue, of hunger, of every variety of bodily suffering, and ready to perish in the cause he had espoused. Proud of heart, and with an untamable love of natural liberty, he preferred to enjoy it among the beasts of the forest, or in the dismal and famished recesses of swamps and morasses, rather than bow his haughty spirit to submission, and live dependent and despised in the ease and luxury of the settlements. With heroic qualities and bold achievements that would have graced a civilized warrior, and have rendered him the theme of the poet and the historian, he lived a wanderer and a fugitive in his native land, and went down, like a lonely bark foundering amid darkness and tempest —without a pitying eye to weep his fall, or a friendly hand to record his struggle.—*Sketch Book.*

The Indian Hunter.—*Longfellow.*

1. When the summer harvest was gathered in,
And the sheaf of the gleaner grew white and thin,
And the ploughshare was in its furrow left,
Where the stubble land had been lately cleft,
An Indian hunter, with unstrung bow,
Looked down where the valley lay stretched below.
He was a stranger there, and all that day
Had been out on the hills—a perilous way;
But the foot of the deer was far and fleet,
And the wolf kept aloof from the hunter's feet;
And bitter feelings passed o'er him then,
As he stood by the populous haunts of men.

2. The winds of autumn came over the woods,
As the sun stole out from their solitudes,
The moss was white on the maple's trunk,
And dead from its arms the pale vine shrunk;
And ripened the mellow fruit hung, and red,
Where the trees withered leaves around it shed.
The foot of the reaper moved slow on the lawn,
And the sickle cut down the yellow corn;
The mower sung loud by the meadow side,
When the mists of evening were spreading wide;
And the voice of the herdsman came up the lea,
And the dance went round by the greenwood tree.

3. Then the hunter turned away from that scene,
Where the home of his fathers once had been,
And heard, by the distant and measured stroke,
That the woodman hewed down the giant oak;
And burning thoughts flashed over his mind,
Of the white man's faith and love unkind.
The moon of the harvest grew high and bright,
As her golden horn pierced the cloud of white,—
A footstep was heard in the rustling brake,
Where the beech overshadowed the misty lake,
And a moaning voice, and a plunge from the shore—
And the hunter was seen on the hills no more.

4. When years had passed on, by that still lake side
The fisher looked down through the silver tide,
And there, on the smooth yellow sand displayed,
A skeleton wasted and white was laid;
And 'twas seen, as the waters moved deep and slow,
That the hand was still grasping a hunter's bow.

Coinage in Massachusetts.—*Everett.*

1. Among the indications not only of the commercial prosperity of the colony, but of the reliance which the colonial government felt in the good-will of the ruling powers at home, we may mention that the colony of Massachusetts went so far as to establish a mint for the coinage of silver (1652). There was no currency, before this time, except the European coins which may have found their way across the Atlantic, unless we choose to give the name of currency to the *wampum*, or *wampumpeage* (as it is more properly called), of the Indians. As this actually served the purpose of coin among some of the native tribes, and the use of it was borrowed from them by the settlers, it may merit a moment's notice.

2. This currency appears to have been first in use among the Indians of the Mohawk and other western tribes, who were more advanced in civilization than our New England Indians, who received it from them. *Peage* was the name of the substance, which was of two kinds—black and white. *Wampum*, or *wompum*, is the Indian word for *white;* and as the white kind was the most common, *wampumpeage* got to be the com-

mon name of this substance, which was usually abbreviated into *wampum*.

3. The black *peage* consisted of the small round spot in the inside of the shell, which is still usually called in this neighborhood by its Indian name of *quahog*. These round pieces were broken away from the rest of the shell, brought to a smooth and regular shape, drilled through the centre, and strung on threads. The white *peage* was the twisted ends of several small shells, broken off from the main part. These portions of shell, thus strung, were worn as bracelets and necklaces, and wrought into belts of curious workmanship. They thus possessed an intrinsic value with the natives, for the purposes of ornament; and they were readily taken by them in exchange for their furs.

4. When wrought into belts they had an extensive use among the Indian tribes, as presents at the negotiation of treaties; and for this purpose they were wrought in such a way as to furnish a guide to the memory in retaining and transmitting the traditions of the tribe. They were originally, therefore, a mere article of merchandise, as, in fact, is also the case with gold and silver; but being, for the reasons named, esteemed of value generally by the Indians, they were made use of by the Dutch in New York as a currency. The Indians of Block Island learned the use of them from the Dutch; the Narragansetts, from the Block Islanders, and the English settlers, from them.

5. As soon as they began to be used as currency, they acquired a conventional value. Six of the white beads, or three of the black ones, made an English penny, and a fathom length was rated in the gross at five shillings sterling. The process of coining was, as we have seen, exceedingly simple. Roger Williams, in describing the *quahog*, calls it "a little thick shellfish, which the Indians wade deep and dive for; and after they have eaten the meat there (in those which are good), they break out of the shell about half an inch of a black part of it, of which they make their Suckauhock or black money, which is to them precious."

6. This currency may be compared with the *cowries,* or small shells, used by the native races of Africa, for the same purpose. When the commissioners of the United Colonies, in 1645, made peace with the Narragansetts, they imposed upon them, among other conditions, a fine of two thousand fathoms of wampum. The Indians considered this as a very heavy burden; and it was not till after the lapse of five years, and sending several times to demand it, that the whole was paid up. . . .

7. But this currency was, of course, too rude to answer the purposes of an extensive commerce. The trade of New England was, as I have observed, very considerable at this period, and especially with the West Indies. A portion of the returns was made in bullion. The West India seas, at this time, also swarmed with pirates or buccaneers; and as there was no custom-houses and no Court of Admiralty in New England, it is greatly to be feared that some part of the spoils, made by these freebooters, found a market in this part of the country in the form of silver bullion.

8. The growing trade of the inhabitants rendering a currency desirable, and the material being supplied in the manner alluded to, the General Court took into their hands, without the least scruple, this branch of the prerogative, and took order for the erection of a mint, and the coining of shillings, sixpences, and threepences. At first it was directed that the coins should have nothing but the letters N. E. on one side, and the Roman numerals XII., VI., and III., on the other; but it was soon after ordered, by the General Court, that the shillings should have, on one side, a pine-tree, with the word MASATVSETS around it; and on the other the words NEW ENGLAND, AN. DOM., running around the exterior; and in the inner circle, the year 1652 and the Roman numeral XII. Although this coin continued to be struck for many years, the date of 1652 was never changed upon the shilling. The shillings of this coinage are occasionally still (in 1833) met with in circulation; but those of the lower denominations are much more rare. . . .

9. An amusing anecdote of this currency is contained in the memoirs of Thomas Hollis, to the following effect: "Sir Thomas

Temple, brother of Sir William Temple, resided several years in New England during the commonwealth. After the Restoration, when he returned to England, the king sent for him, and discoursed with him on the state of affairs in Massachusetts, and discovered great warmth against that colony. Among other things, he said they had invaded his prerogative by coining money. Sir Thomas, who was a real friend to the colony, told his majesty that the colonists had but little acquaintance with law, and that they thought it no crime to make money for their own use. In the course of the conversation, Sir Thomas took some of the money out of his pocket, and presented it to the king. On one side of the coin was a *pine-tree*, of that kind which is thick and bushy at the top. Charles asked what tree that was. Sir Thomas informed him it was the royal oak which preserved his majesty's life. This account of the matter brought the king into good humor, and disposed him to hear what Sir Thomas had to say in their favor, calling them 'a parcel of honest dogs.'"—*Anecdotes of Early Local History.*

Arbitrary Conduct of the King.—The opposition which Massachusetts had shown to the "Navigation Act," and other obnoxious laws of Parliament, displeased the king, Charles II., and he declared her charter void. His death occurring not long after, his successor, James II., pursued the same arbitrary policy, and, in 1686, deprived Massachusetts of her charter government. In the same year, Andros was appointed royal governor of New England. These proceedings on the part of King James rendered him so unpopular, that, when the news of the English Revolution and of his dethronement reached Boston, in 1689, it caused great rejoicing. Andros and his officers, whose tyranny had made them odious to the people, were seized and sent to England, when the New England colonies established their former modes of government.

King William's War.—James fled to France, and William, Prince of Orange, and Mary, his wife, the eldest daughter of James, were called to the English throne as king and queen of that country. The cause of the fugitive king was espoused by the French monarch; and this, principally, led to a contest between the two powers, known as King William's War, in which the respective colonists became involved.

An expedition, fitted out by Massachusetts, commanded by Sir William Phipps, captured Port Royal, now Annapolis, Nova Scotia, and secured a large amount of booty. A second expedition, also commanded by Phipps, for the conquest of Canada, proved a failure. These were the most important events

of the contest in America. The war lasted from 1689 to the peace of Ryswick (*riz'wick*), in 1697, a period of about eight years. The claims to territory in America remained as before the war.

Salem Witchcraft.—During the war, King William, refusing to restore to Massachusetts the charter which James II. had taken away, granted a new one, which united Plymouth, Massachusetts, Maine, and Nova Scotia in a royal government. Upon Phipps was conferred the office of governor.

One of the first acts of the new governor was the formation, in 1692, of a court to try certain persons who, because of their real or supposed strange conduct, were accused of practising witchcraft. Most of the inhabitants of Salem and vicinity, where the accused parties lived, believed the accusations to be true; and, before the delusion was dispelled, twenty persons were put to death, more than fifty were tortured or frightened into confessing themselves guilty, and many suffered imprisonment.

Witchcraft in Massachusetts.—*Everett.*

1. Of the memorable incidents of the earlier period of the Massachusetts history, the fatal delusion relative to witchcraft is among the most celebrated. The extent to which this delusion proceeded in Salem has given a prominence to the tragical occurrences which took place there; but whatever reproach attaches to its prevalence, must be shared by other portions of Massachusetts. In point of fact, it is well known that no exclusive reproach can with justice be cast upon any part of New England, on account of a delusion which equally prevailed in the most enlightened countries in Europe, and received the countenance of the most learned and intelligent men and upright magistrates. . . .

2. As early as 1645, the first suspicion of witchcraft arose at Springfield, on Connecticut River. Several persons were supposed to be under an evil hand, and, among the rest, two of the minister's children; and great pains were taken to prove the fact against some persons charged with the crime, but without success. The first execution for witchcraft in New England took place in Charlestown, in 1648. The name of the sufferer was Margaret Jones. No detailed account is preserved of her imputed misdemeanors, nor of the facts by which they were pretended to be proved. Governor Winthrop informs us, in his Journal, that she was proved to have such a malignant touch,

that whosoever she touched, man, woman, or child, with any affection of displeasure, was presently taken with deafness, vomiting, or other violent pains or sickness.

3. The poor woman, it seems, was a medical practitioner in a small way; and one of the proofs of her witchcraft was that, though she used simple medicines, her patients got well. Her husband seems to have shared her bewitching powers. Shortly after her execution, he endeavored to procure a passage to Barbadoes, in a vessel of three hundred tons, which lay at anchor off Charlestown, bound for that island, with one hundred and eighty tons of ballast in her hold, and eighty horses on board. The owners of the vessel refused to take the husband of a witch as a passenger; and it was immediately observed that this vessel, without any visible cause, began to roll, as if, according to the words of the historian, it would have turned over.

4. This phenomenon[y], continuing, was reported to the magistrates then sitting in Boston, and being by them imputed to the diabolical[y] agency of Jones, a warrant was issued to apprehend him. As the officer was passing over the ferry with his warrant, and the vessel was still rolling violently, some one in the ferry-boat jestingly asked the officer whether he "who could tame men, could not tame the vessel?" He replied that he had that in his pocket which would perhaps tame the vessel and keep it quiet, and exhibited the warrant for arresting Jones. At this moment the vessel ceased rolling, and righted herself, after having been violently in motion for twelve hours. Jones was apprehended and thrown into prison, and from that time the ship "never moved in that kind any more." It does not appear, however, that Jones was executed. About the same time, it is stated that a woman was executed at Cambridge, and another at Dorchester, for the crime of witchcraft; but no particulars—not even the names of the parties—are preserved.

5. In 1655 a most extraordinary case of imputed witchcraft occurred in Boston,—the victim, Mrs. Ann Hibbins. Her husband, who died the year before, had been the colony agent in England, had for several years filled the office of assistant, and was a merchant of note in Boston. In the latter part of his

life he met with heavy misfortunes, among others with the loss of five hundred pounds by the carelessness of a shipmaster. These misfortunes appear to have been felt with peculiar severity by his wife. According to Hutchinson, "they increased the natural crabbedness of his wife's temper," discomposed her mind, and made her turbulent and discontented.

6. Her strange and unusual carriage raised a cry against her. Her behavior brought her under church censures, and caused her to be excommunicated[v]; and this probably not improving the quality of her temper, recorded by the historian, she fell at last under the suspicion of being a witch, and as such was brought to trial. The jury found her guilty; but the magistrates, who, at that period, acted as judges, refused to accept the verdict. But the popular fanaticism[v] was not, in this manner, to be defrauded of its prey. The case went to the General Court, popular clamor prevailed, she was declared guilty by the deputies, and executed,—a violation of the forms of justice not less detestable than of its substance.

7. It is to the credit of the magistrates that they had rejected the verdict of the jury; and there were not wanting others in the community who accounted her innocent, and who undertook to trace the marks of an offended Providence against those who were forward in bringing her to trial. She was a member of the first church in Boston; and though she was excommunicated from its fellowship, Mr. Norton, the minister, appears to have thought her innocent of witchcraft. He declared at his own table, some years afterward, in the presence of a company of friends, that "the wife of a magistrate had been hanged as a witch, because she had more wit than her neighbors."

8. On being asked to explain his meaning, he said that Mrs. Hibbins had seen two persons, who had persecuted her, talking together in the street, and had guessed they were talking of her. This happened to be the fact, and was set down as a proof positive that she was in league with the devil. She was confined for some time in prison; made a will, disposing of her estate; appointed some of the principal gentlemen of the colony the executors[v] of her will, and expressed the hope that they would see her decently buried. She was executed in June, 1656.

9. Other similar cases occurred between this period and the year 1692, when the great tragedy was enacted at Salem,—the last occasion on which blood was shed under the influence of this cruel fanaticism. But as late as 1720, an instance of pretended witchcraft occurred at Littleton, in this State, differing in nothing but the absence of a tragical close from the Salem delusion. The parties pretending to be bewitched afterward removed to Medford, and the whole fraud was detected and exposed by the confession of the chief agent, mainly by the sagacious interference of the Rev. Mr. Turell of that place, whose interesting account has been preserved, and is well worth perusal.

10. In contemplating this sorrowful page in the history of our ancestors, we must bear in mind that, as I have already intimated, no peculiar reproach attaches to them. They acted, on this occasion, upon principles which all professed, and in which the sincere in all parts of Christendom reposed an undoubting faith. Circumstances have given to these melancholy transactions an unfortunate notoriety. It has attracted the public attention, both in this country and Europe, partly for the reason that this, and the persecution of the Quakers, stand out in dark relief on the annals of New England. In the older countries of the world, the most dreadful tragedies—the horrors of the Inquisition, the Sicilian Vespers, the massacre of St. Bartholomew's eve, the fires of Smithfield—are hardly signalized in the long line of strange and cruel incidents which fill the annals of Europe down into the eighteenth century. For ages there seems to have been no sense of the worth of human life; no mercy for human suffering. Before we undertake, in the self-sufficiency of a greatly improved age, to reflect upon the errors of our fathers, we should carefully consider in what our superiority over them in these matters consists, and then inquire from what it proceeds.—*Anecdotes of Early Local History.*

Queen Anne's War.—Upon the death of James II., which occurred in France, the French monarch acknowledged his son King of England. This

tended to produce a spirit of resentment in England, where the crown had previously been settled upon Anne, the second daughter of James. While the English were making preparations for war, King William died, and Anne became Queen of England. The interference of France in the succession to the English crown, in connection with other causes, led to a war between England on the one side, and France and Spain on the other, which is known in America as Queen Anne's War; but in Europe, is called the War of the Spanish Succession. Hostilities were commenced in 1702.

The capture of Port Royal, in 1710, by a force from Massachusetts, after an unsuccessful attempt three years before, was the most important event of the war in America. The name of the place was changed to Annapolis, in honor of the English queen, and Acadia was annexed to the British realm. The contest continued about eleven years, being terminated by the treaty of Utrecht (*u'trekt*) in 1713.

King George's War.—A peace of nearly thirty years followed, which was broken, during the reign of George II., by *King George's War*. This contest had its origin in European disputes, relating, principally, to the kingdom of Austria, and was therefore known in Europe as the *War of the Austrian Succession*.

War having been declared between England and France in 1744, the colonists soon became involved. The most important event of the struggle in America was the taking of Louisburg (*loo'is-burg*), a fortress erected by the French, and which, from its strength, was called the *Gibraltar of America*.

The capture of this place was effected in 1745, by a force, mostly of New England troops, under William Pepperill, aided by an English fleet commanded by Commodore Warren. The contest between the two nations was terminated by the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle (*āks lah sha-pel'*), in 1748, by which all acquisitions of territory made during the war were mutually restored.

The Pilgrims.—*Everett.*

[Extract from a speech delivered by Edward Everett, in 1845, on the anniversary of the Landing of the Pilgrims.]

I DO not mean, Mr. President, to indulge in extravagant eulogy. I am not blind to the imperfections of the Pilgrims. I mourn especially that they did not recognize in others the rights which they asserted for themselves. I deplore their faults, though the faults of the age. I am grieved that in pursuing the simplicity and purity of the Gospel, they could not have imbibed more of its lovely meekness. But so often as I revert to this painful contemplation, I am checked by the doubt, whether this great work could have been done by softer instru-

ments. I doubt whether we have a right, living as we do in ease and luxury, to take for granted that this heavy burden could have been borne by more delicate frames and gentler tempers. "By their fruits ye shall know them." Not by the graceful foliage which dallies with the summer breeze, not by the flower which fades away with the perfume which it scatters on the gale—but by the golden, perfect fruit, in which the mysterious life of the plant is garnered up, which the genial earth and the kindling sun have ripened into the refreshment and food of man, and which, even when it perishes, leaves behind it the germs of continued and multiplying exuberance.

NEW YORK.

Discovery of the Hudson River.—Henry Hudson, an English navigator, while sailing in the service of "The Dutch East India Company," in 1609, discovered the river which now bears his name. His object was to find a northwest passage to the Pacific Ocean; in pursuance of which he sailed up the river to the head of ship navigation, and, in a small boat, continued his explorations some miles further. The vessel in which this voyage was made was called the *Half-Moon*.

Voyage of the Half-Moon.—*Brodhead.*

1. After trying in vain to find an opening to the westward, he put about, and passing the southern headland, which he now perceived was the one which Gosnold had discovered in 1602, and named "Cape Cod," he stood off to sea again toward the southwest. In a fortnight Hudson arrived off the mouth of Chesapeake Bay, which he recognized as "the entrance into King's River in Virginia, where our Englishmen are." But the temptation to meet his old friend Smith, who, disgusted with the distractions in the colony at Jamestown, and maimed by accidental wounds, was preparing to return to England, did not divert Hudson from the great object of his voyage. Contenting himself with a few soundings, he stood again to sea, and passing northwest along the coast of Maryland, he ran into a "great bay with rivers"—afterward called "South River," and "Newport May," by the Dutch, and "Delaware," by the English—where the Half-Moon anchored.

2. Finding the navigation so difficult, that "he that will thoroughly discover this great bay must have a small pinnace that must draw but four or five feet of water, to sound before him," Hudson stood out to sea again, and, running northward several days along a low sandy coast, with "broken islands," arrived, on the evening of the 2d of September, in sight of the "high hills" of Navesinck, then, as now, "a very good land to fall in with, and a pleasant land to see." The next morning he sailed onward until he came to "three great rivers," the most northerly of which he attempted to enter, but was prevented by the "very shoal bar before it." So, sending his boat before him to sound the way, he went in past Sandy Hook, and, on the evening of the 3d of September, 1609, anchored the Half-Moon in the bay, where the waters were alive with fish.

3. For a week Hudson lingered in the lower bay, admiring the "goodly oaks" which garnished the neighboring shores, and holding frequent intercourse with the native savages of Monmouth, in New Jersey. The Half-Moon was visited in return by the wondering Indians, who flocked on board the strange vessel, clothed with mantles of feathers and robes of fur, and adorned with rude copper necklaces. Meanwhile, a boat's crew was sent to sound the river which opened to the northward. Passing through the Narrows, they found a noble harbor, with "very good riding for ships." A little further on, they came to "the Kills, between Staten Island and Bergen Neck," a narrow river to the westward, between two islands. The lands on both sides were "as pleasant with grass and flowers and goodly trees as ever they had seen, and very sweet smells came from them."

4. Six miles up this river, they saw "an open sea," now known as Newark Bay. In the evening, as the boat was returning to the ship, the exploring party was set upon by two canoes full of savages; and one of the English sailors, John Coleman, was killed by an arrow shot in his throat. The next day Hudson buried, upon the adjacent beach, the comrade who had shared the dangers of his polar adventures, to become the first European victim of an Indian weapon in the placid waters

he had now reached. To commemorate the event, Sandy Hook was named "Coleman's Point." The ship was soon visited by canoes full of native warriors; but Hudson suspecting their good faith, took two of the savages and "put red coats on them," while the rest were not suffered to approach.

5. Cautiously sounding her way through the lower bay, the Half-Moon at length "went into the river" past the Narrows, and anchored near the mouth of the Kills in "a very good harbor for all winds." The native savages came at once on board, "making show of love;" but Hudson, remembering Coleman's fate, "durst not trust them." The next morning, twenty-eight canoes, "made of single hollowed trees," and crowded with men, women, and children, visited the yacht. But none were suffered to come on board, though their oysters and beans were gladly purchased. In the afternoon, the Half-Moon ran six miles further up; and the crew were enraptured by the loveliness of the surrounding country. "It is as beautiful a land as one can tread upon," said Hudson, "and abounds in all kinds of excellent ship-timber."

6. The first of Europeans, Hudson now began to explore the great river which stretched before him to the north, opening, as he hoped, the way to Eastern seas. Slowly drifting upward with the flood-tide, he anchored one night just above Yonkers, in sight of "a high point of land, which showed out" five leagues off to the north. The next day, a southeast wind carrying him rapidly up Tappan and Haverstraw Bays, and beyond the "strait" between Stony and Verplanck's Points. Hudson sailed onward through the majestic pass guarded by the frowning Donderberg, and at nightfall anchored his yacht near West Point, in the midst of the sublimest scenery of the "Matteawan * Mountains.

7. The next morning was misty until the sun arose, and the grandeur of the overhanging highlands was again revealed. A fair south wind sprung up as the weather became clear; and while the Half-Moon was getting under way, the two savages who had been detained captives on board at Sandy Hook,

* The Indian name of the Highlands.

watching their opportunity, leaped out of a porthole and swam ashore, scornfully deriding the crew as the yacht sailed onward. A bright autumnal day succeeded the misty morning. Running sixty miles up along the varied shores which lined the deep channel, and delighted every moment with the ever-changing scenery and the magnificent virgin forests which clothed the river-banks with their gorgeous autumnal hues, Hudson arrived, toward evening, opposite the loftier "mountains which lie from the river's side," and anchored the Half-Moon near Catskill landing, where he found a "very loving people, and very old men."

8. The friendly natives flocked on board the yacht, as she remained lazily at anchor, the next morning, and brought the crew "ears of Indian corn, and pumpkins, and tobacco," which were readily bought "for trifles." In the afternoon, Hudson went six miles further up the river, and anchored one night near the marshes which divide the channel, opposite the flourishing city which now bears his name. Early the next morning he set sail again, and, slowly working his way through the shoaling channel and among the "small islands" which embarrassed navigation, anchored, toward evening, about eighteen miles further up, between Schodac and Castleton. Here the Half-Moon remained at anchor all the next day. . . .

9. With the flood-tide, on the following morning, the Half-Moon "ran higher up, two leagues above the shoals," and anchored in deep water, near the site of the present city of Albany. The people of the country came flocking on board, and brought grapes and pumpkins, and beaver and otter skins, which were purchased for beads, knives, and hatchets. Here the yacht lingered several days. The carpenter went ashore, and made a new foreyard, while Hudson and his mate, "determined to try some of the chief men of the country, whether they had any treachery in them," took them down into the Half-Moon's cabin, and "gave them so much wine and *aqua vitæ*, that they were all merry." An old Indian, stupefied with drink, remained on board, to the amazement of his simple countrymen, who "could not tell how to take it." The traditions of the aborigines yet

preserve the memory of this first revel, which was followed, the next day, by another visit from the reassured savages, one of whose chiefs, addressing Hudson, "made an oration, and showed him all the country round about."

10. Everything now seemed to indicate that the Half-Moon had reached the head of ship navigation. The downward current was fresh and clear, the shoaling channel was narrow and obstructed; yet Hudson, unwilling, perhaps, to abandon his long-cherished hope, dispatched the mate, with a boat's crew, to sound the river higher up. After going "eight or nine" leagues further—probably to some distance above Waterford—and finding "but seven feet water, and inconstant soundings," the exploring party returned late at night, and reported that they had "found it to be at an end for shipping to go in." Hudson now reluctantly prepared to return. His ascent of the river had occupied eleven days; his descent consumed as many more.

11. The yacht anchored over night "on the other side of the river," in the bay, near Hoboken. Hard by his anchorage, and upon "that side of the river that is called *Manna-hata*," Hudson noticed that "there was a cliff that looked of the color of a white green." Here he lay wind-bound the next day, and "saw no people to trouble" him. The following morning, just one month after his arrival at Sandy Hook, Hudson weighed anchor for the last time, and coming out of the "great mouth of the great river," into which he had "run so far," he set all sail, and steered off again into the main sea.—*History of New York.*

[Hudson reached the shores of England in November of the same year, and was about to proceed to Holland, when he was detained by the English government, jealous of the advantages which the Dutch had gained by the important discovery he had made. It was several months before the Half-Moon was permitted to return home. Hudson made his fourth voyage in 1610. While in Hudson Bay, a mutiny occurring among his men, he, with eight who remained faithful to him, was put into an open boat and abandoned. Two ships were afterward sent from England to make search for him, but no tidings of the bold navigator could ever be gained.]

Colonization of the Country.—The Dutch, claiming that Hudson's discoveries gave them a title to the country, in 1614 built a fort on Man-hat'tan Island. Their claim to territory included the whole region from Cape Cod to the southern shore of Delaware Bay. This became known as New Neth'erlands, though the name was more generally applied to only that part actually in possession of the Dutch.

The colonization of the country did not commence until 1623. In that year,

under the auspices of a new organization, known as "The Dutch West India Company," two settlements were made—one on Manhattan Island, called New Amsterdam, and the other at Albany, called Fort Orange. The company, to encourage emigration, offered a large tract of land and certain privileges to every individual who would form a settlement of fifty persons.

Governors of New Netherlands.—The first Dutch governor was Peter Min'u-its; the second, Wout'er Van Twil'ler; the third, Sir William Kieft (*keeft*); and the fourth and last, Peter Stuyvesant (*sti've-sant*). Kieft, who was haughty and unscrupulous, involved the colony in a strife with the Swedes on the Delaware, and the English on the Connecticut. He also, by his unjust and inhuman conduct, brought on a disastrous war with the Indians. The rule of Stuyvesant was vigorous, though often arbitrary. He conciliated[v] the Indians, settled the disputes with the people of Connecticut in relation to the western boundary of that colony, and gained by conquest the Swedish territory on the banks of the Delaware River (1647–64.)

Character of Peter Stuyvesant.—*Irving.*

[The following amusing sketch of the character of Governor Stuyvesant is extracted from "Knickerbocker's History of New York," by Washington Irving. Although the striking traits of the character as represented correspond to the reality, the whole description is rather a playful satire than an authentic delineation.]

1. Peter Stuyvesant was the last, and, like the renowned Wouter Van Twiller, the best of our ancient Dutch governors, Wouter having surpassed all who preceded him, and Pieter or Piet, as he was socially called by the old Dutch burghers, who were ever prone to familiarize names, having never been equalled by any successor. He was, in fact, the very man fitted by nature to retrieve the desperate fortunes of his beloved province, had not the fates, those most potent and unrelenting of all ancient spinsters[v], destined them to inextricable[v] confusion.

2. To say merely that he was a hero would be doing him great injustice: he was, in truth, a combination of heroes; for he was of a sturdy, rawboned make like Ajax Telamon, with a pair of round shoulders that Hercules would have given his hide for (meaning his lion's hide), when he undertook to ease old Atlas of his load. He was, moreover, as Plutarch describes Coriolánus, not only terrible for the force of his arm, but likewise of his voice, which sounded as though it came out of

a barrel; and, like the self-same warrior, he possessed a sovereign contempt for the sovereign people, and an iron aspect, which was enough of itself to make the very bowels of his adversaries quake with terror and dismay.

3. All this martial excellency of appearance was inexpressibly heightened by an accidental advantage, with which I am surprised that neither Homer nor Virgil have graced any of their heroes. This was nothing less than a wooden leg, which was the only prize he had gained in bravely fighting the battles of his country, but of which he was so proud, that he was often heard to declare he valued it more than all his other limbs put together; indeed, so highly did he esteem it, that he had it gallantly enchased and relieved with silver devices, which caused it to be related in divers histories and legends that he wore a silver leg.

4. Like that choleric warrior Achilles (*a-kil'leez*), he was somewhat subject to extempore bursts of passion, which were rather unpleasant to his favorites and attendants, whose perceptions he was apt to quicken, after the manner of his illustrious imitator, Peter the Great, by anointing their shoulders with his walking-staff. Though I cannot find that he had read Plato, or Aristotle, or Hobbes, or Bacon, or Algernon Sydney, or Tom Paine, yet did he sometimes manifest a shrewdness and sagacity in his measures that one would hardly expect from a man who did not know Greek, and had never studied the ancients.

5. True it is, and I confess it with sorrow, that he had an unreasonable aversion to experiments, and was fond of governing his province after the simplest manner; but then he contrived to keep it in better order than did the erudite Kieft, though he had all the philosophers, ancient and modern, to assist and perplex him. I must likewise own that he made but very few laws, but then again he took care that those few were rigidly and impartially enforced; and I do not know but justice, on the whole, was as well administered as if there had been volumes of sage acts and statutes yearly made, and daily neglected and forgotten.

6. He was, in fact, the very reverse of his predecessors[v], being neither tranquil and inert[v], like Walter the Doubter, nor restless and fidgeting, like William the Testy; but a man, or rather a governor, of such uncommon activity and decision of mind, that he never sought nor accepted the advice of others; depending bravely upon his single head, as would a hero of yore upon his single arm, to carry him through all difficulties and dangers. To tell the simple truth, he wanted nothing more to complete him as a statesman than to think always right, for no one can say but that he always acted as he thought.

7. He was never a man to flinch when he found himself in a scrape; but to dash forward through thick and thin, trusting, by hook or by crook, to make all things straight in the end. In a word, he possessed in an eminent degree that great quality in a statesman, called perseverance by the polite, but nicknamed obstinacy by the vulgar,—a wonderful salve for official blunders, since he who perseveres in error without flinching gets the credit of boldness and consistency; while he who wavers in seeking to do what is right gets stigmatized[v] as a trimmer.

8. This much is certain, and it is a maxim well worthy the attention of all legislators[v], great and small, who stand shaking in the wind, irresolute which way to steer, that a ruler who follows his own will pleases himself, while he who seeks to satisfy the wishes and whims of others runs great risk of pleasing nobody. There is nothing, too, like putting down one's foot resolutely, when in doubt, and letting things take their course. The clock that stands still points right twice in the four-and-twenty hours, while others may keep going continually, and be continually going wrong.

9. Nor did this magnanimous quality escape the discernment of the good people of New Nederlands; on the contrary, so much were they struck with the independent will and vigorous resolution displayed on all occasions by their new governor, that they universally called him *Hard-Koppig Piet*, or *Peter the Headstrong*—a great compliment to the strength of his understanding.

10. If from all that I have said thou dost not gather, worthy

reader, that Peter Stuyvesant was a tough, sturdy, valiant, weather-beaten, mettlesome, obstinate, leathern-sided, lion-hearted, generous-spirited old governor, either I have written to but little purpose, or thou art dull at drawing conclusions.—*Knickerbocker's History of New York.*

Conquest of New Netherlands by the English.

Brodhead.

1. English jealousy had grown with the increasing commerce of Holland, and a rupture with the Dutch appeared to be near at hand. . . . The farmers of the revenue had complained that traders to Virginia, New England, Maryland, and Long Island were constantly conveying great quantities of tobacco to the neighboring Dutch plantations, the customs on which "would amount to ten thousand pounds per annum or upward;" and the plantation Board had taken measures to put the British Acts of Navigation and Trade "carefully in execution." The brother of Governor Berkeley, too, coveted New Jersey.

2. To accomplish all objects at one blow, England now determined boldly to rob Holland of her American province. The king accordingly sealed a patent granting to the Duke of York and Albany a large territory in America, comprehending Long Island and the islands in its neighborhood—his title to which Lord Stirling had released—and all the lands and rivers from the west side of the Connecticut River to the east side of Delaware Bay. This sweeping grant included the whole of New Netherlands and a part of the territory of Connecticut, which, two years before, Charles had confirmed to Winthrop and his associates.

3. The Duke of York lost no time in giving effect to his patent. As Lord High Admiral, he directed the fleet. Four ships, the Guinea, of thirty-six guns; the Elias, of thirty; the Martin, of sixteen; and the William and Nicholas, of ten, were detached for service against New Netherlands, and about four hundred and fifty regular soldiers, with their officers, were embarked. The command of the expedition was entrusted to Colonel Richard Nicolls, a faithful Royalist, who had served

L. of C.

under Turenne with James, and had been made one of the gentlemen of his bed-chamber.

4. Nicolls was also appointed to be the Duke's deputy-governor, after the Dutch possessions should have been reduced. With Nicolls were associated Sir Robert Carr, Colonel George Cartwright, and Samuel Maverick, as royal commissioners, to visit the several colonies in New England. These commissioners were furnished with detailed instructions; and the New England governments were required by royal letters to "join and assist them vigorously" in reducing the Dutch to subjection. A month after the departure of the squadron, the Duke of York conveyed to Lord Berkeley and Sir George Carteret all the territory between the Hudson and Delaware Rivers, from Cape May north to forty-one degrees and forty minutes of latitude, hereafter to be called by the name or names of Nova Cæsarea (*sez-ah-re'ah*), or New Jersey.

5. Intelligence from Boston that an English expedition against New Netherlands had sailed from Portsmouth was soon communicated to Stuyvesant by Captain Thomas Willett; and the burgomasters[v] and schepens[v] of New Amsterdam were summoned to assist the council with their advice. . . .

6. When the truth of Willett's intelligence became confirmed, the council sent an express to recall Stuyvesant from Fort Orange. Hurrying back to the capital, the anxious director endeavored to redeem the time which had been lost. The municipal authorities ordered one-third of the inhabitants, without exception, to labor every third day at the fortifications; organized a permanent guard; forbade the brewers to malt any grain; and called on the provincial government for artillery and ammunition. Six pieces, beside the fourteen previously allotted, and a thousand pounds of powder, were accordingly granted to the city. The colonists around Fort Orange, pleading their own danger from the savages, could afford no help; but the soldiers at Esopus [now Kingston] were ordered to come down, after leaving a small garrison[v] at the Ronduit.*

7. In the meantime, the English squadron had anchored just

* The *Ronduit*, a small fort; hence the name *Rondout*.

below the Narrows, in Nyack Bay, between New Utrecht and Coney Island. The mouth of the river was shut up; communication between Long Island and Manhattan, Bergen and Achter Cul, interrupted; several yachts, on their way to the South River, captured; and the block-house on the opposite shore of Staten Island seized. Stuyvesant now dispatched Councilor De Decker, Burgomaster Van der Grist, and two Domines Megapolen'sis, with a letter to the English commanders, inquiring why they had come, and why they continued at Nyack without giving notice.

8. The next morning, which was Saturday, Nicolls sent Colonel Cartwright, Captain Needham, Captain Groves, and Mr. Thomas Delavall, up to Fort Amsterdam, with a summons for the surrender of "the town situate on the island, and commonly known by the name of Manhattoes, with all the forts thereunto belonging." This summons was accompanied by a proclamation declaring that all who would submit to his majesty's government should be protected "in his majesty's laws and justice," and peaceably enjoy their property. Stuyvesant immediately called together the council and burgomasters, but would not allow the terms offered by Nicolls to be communicated to the people, lest they might insist on capitulating.

9. In a short time, several of the burghers' and city officers assembled at the Stadt-Huys [State-House]. It was determined to prevent the enemy from surprising the town; but, as opinion was generally against protracted resistance, a copy of the English communication was asked from the director. On the following Monday, the burgomasters explained to a meeting of the citizens the terms offered by Nicolls. But this would not suffice; a copy of the paper itself must be exhibited. Stuyvesant then went in person to the meeting. "Such a course," said he, "would discourage the people." All his efforts, however, were vain; and the director, protesting that he should not be held answerable for "the calamitous consequences," was obliged to yield to the popular will.

10. Nicolls now addressed a letter to Winthrop, who, with other commissioners from New England, had joined the squad-

ron, authorizing him to assure Stuyvesant that, if Manhattan should be delivered up to the king, "any people from the Netherlands may freely come and plant there, or thereabouts; and such vessels of their own country may freely come thither, and any of them may as freely return home in vessels of their own country." Visiting the city under a flag of truce, Winthrop delivered this to Stuyvesant outside the fort, and urged him to surrender. The director declined; and, returning to the fort, he opened Nicolls' letter before the council and burgomasters, who desired that it should be communicated, as "all which regarded the public welfare ought to be made public."

11. Against this Stuyvesant earnestly remonstrated; and, finding that the burgomasters continued firm, in a fit of passion he "tore the letter in pieces." The citizens, suddenly ceasing their work at the palisades, hurried to the Stadt-Huys, and sent three of their number to the fort to demand the letter. In vain the director hastened to pacify the burghers, and urge them to go on with the fortifications. "Complaints and curses" were uttered on all sides against the company's misgovernment; resistance was declared to be idle; "the letter! the letter!" was the general cry. To avoid a mutiny, Stuyvesant yielded, and a copy, made out from the collected fragments, was handed to the burgomasters.

12. In answer, however, to Nicolls' summons, he submitted a long justification of the Dutch title; yet, while protesting against any breach of the peace between the king and the States General, "for the hinderance and prevention of all differences, and the spilling of innocent blood, not only in these parts, but also in Europe," he offered to treat. "Long Island is gone and lost;" the capital "cannot hold out long," was the last dispatch to the "Lords Majors" of New Netherlands, which its director sent off that night "in silence through Hell-gate."

13. Observing Stuyvesant's reluctance to surrender, Nicolls directed Captain Hyde, who commanded the squadron, to reduce the fort. Two of the ships accordingly landed their troops just below Breuckelen [Brooklyn], where volunteers from New

England and the Long Island villages had already encamped. The other two, coming up with full sail, passed in front of Fort Amsterdam, and anchored between it and Nutten Island [Governor's Island]. Standing on one of the angles of the fortress—an artilleryman with a lighted match at his side—the director watched their approach. At this moment, the two Domines Megapolensis, imploring him not to begin hostilities, led Stuyvesant from the rampart, who then, with a hundred of the garrison, went into the city to resist the landing of the English.

14. Hoping on against hope, the director now sent Councilor De Decker, Secretary Van Ruyven, Burgomaster Steenwyck, and Schepen Cousseau, with a letter to Nicolls, stating that, though he felt bound "to stand the storm," he desired, if possible, to arrange an accommodation. But the English commander merely declared, "To-morrow I will speak with you at Manhattan." "Friends," was the answer, "will be welcome, if they come in a friendly manner." "I shall come with ships and soldiers," replied Nicolls; "raise the white flag of peace at the fort, and then something may be considered."

15. When this imperious message became known, men, women, and children flocked to the director, beseeching him to submit. His only answer was, "I would much rather be carried out dead." The next day, the city authorities, clergymen, and the officers of the burgher-guard, assembling at the Stadt-Huys at the suggestion of Domine Megapolensis, adopted a remonstrance to the director, exhibiting the hopeless situation of New Amsterdam, on all sides "encompassed and hemmed in by enemies," and protesting against any further opposition to the will of God. Besides the schout, burgomasters, and schepens, the remonstrance was signed by Wilmerdonck and eighty-five of the principal inhabitants, among whom was Stuyvesant's own son, Balthazar.

16. At last the director was obliged to yield. Although there were now fifteen hundred souls in New Amsterdam, there were not more than two hundred and fifty men able to bear arms, besides the one hundred and fifty regular soldiers. The people

had at length refused to be called out, and the regular troops were already heard talking of "where booty is to be found, and where the young women live who wear gold chains."

17. The city, entirely open along both rivers, was shut on the northern side by a breast-work and palisades, which, though sufficient to keep out the savages, afforded no defense against a military siege. There were scarcely six hundred pounds of serviceable powder in store. A council of war had reported Fort Amsterdam untenable; for, though it mounted twenty-four guns, its single wall of earth, not more than ten feet high and four thick, was almost touched by the private dwellings clustered around, and was commanded, within a pistol-shot, by hills on the north, over which ran the "Heereweg," or Broadway.

18. Upon the faith of Nicolls' promise to deliver back the city and fort, "in case the difference of the limits of this province be agreed upon betwixt his majesty of England and the High Mighty States General," Stuyvesant now commissioned Councilor John de Decker, Captain Nicholas Varlett, Doctor Samuel Megapolensis, Burgomaster Cornelis Steenwyck, old Burgomaster Oloff Stevensen van Cortlandt, and old Schepen Jacques Cousseau, to agree upon articles with the English commander or his representatives. Nicolls, on his part, appointed Sir Robert Carr and Colonel George Cartwright, John Winthrop and Samuel Willys of Connecticut, and Thomas Clarke and John Pynchon of Massachusetts. "The reason why those of Boston and Connecticut were joined," afterward explained the royal commander, "was because those two colonies should hold themselves the more engaged with us, if the Dutch had been over-confident of their strength."

19. At eight o'clock the next morning, which was Saturday, the commissioners on both sides met at Stuyvesant's "bouwery," and arranged the terms of capitulation[v]. The only difference which arose was respecting the Dutch soldiers, whom the English refused to convey back to Holland. The articles of capitulation promised the Dutch security in their property, customs of inheritance, liberty of conscience, and church discipline. The principal officers of Manhattan were to continue for the

present unchanged, and the town was to be allowed to choose deputies, with "free voices in all public affairs."

20. Owners of property in Fort Orange might, if they pleased, "slight the fortifications there," and enjoy their houses "as people do where there is no fort." For six months there was to be free intercourse with Holland. Public records were to be respected. The articles, consented to by Nicolls, were to be ratified by Stuyvesant the next Monday morning at eight o'clock, and within two hours afterward, the "fort and town called New Amsterdam, upon the isle of Manhattoes," were to be delivered up, and the military officers and soldiers were to "march out with their arms, drums beating, and colors flying, and lighted matches."

21. On the following Monday morning at eight o'clock, Stuyvesant, at the head of the garrison, marched out of Fort Amsterdam with all the honors of war, and led his soldiers down the Beaver Lane to the water-side, whence they were embarked for Holland. An English corporal's-guard at the same time took possession of the fort; and Nicolls and Carr, with their two companies, about a hundred and seventy strong, entered the city, while Cartwright took possession of the gates and the Stadt-Huys. The New England and Long Island volunteers, however, were prudently kept at the Breuklen ferry, "as the citizens dreaded most being plundered by them." The English flag was hoisted on Fort Amsterdam, the name of which was immediately changed to "Fort James."

22. Nicolls was now proclaimed by the burgomasters deputy-governor for the Duke of York; in compliment to whom he directed that the city of New Amsterdam should thenceforth be known as "New York." To Nicolls' European eye the Dutch metropolis, with its earthen fort inclosing a windmill and a high flag-staff, a prison, and a governor's house, and a double-roofed church, above which loomed a square tower, its gallows and whipping-post at the river's side, and its rows of houses which hugged the citadel, presented but a mean appearance. Yet, before long, he described it to the duke as "the best of all his majesty's towns in America," and assured his

royal highness that, with proper management, "within five years the staple[v] of America will be drawn hither, of which the brethren of Boston are very sensible."—*History of the State of New York.*

First English Governor.—Nicolls was the first English governor. The name of the province, as well as that of New Amsterdam, was changed to New York; and Fort Orange received the name of Albany. In 1673, during a war between England and Holland, the Dutch regained their former possessions; but after a period of fifteen months, returned them to the English. Andros was then appointed governor.

Negro Plot.—In 1741, several incendiary[v] fires occurred in the city of New York, and a house was robbed by slaves. Witnesses testified that the negroes had conspired to burn the city, murder the inhabitants, and set up a government of their own. An intense excitement followed; and before it was allayed more than thirty persons, condemned as having been engaged in the alleged plot, were executed, and others were transported. A plot of some kind there may have been, though it is certain the accounts of it were greatly exaggerated, and many innocent persons suffered.

Subsequent History.—The history of New York during the next few years, and till the commencement of the French and Indian War, contains no events of much importance. During King George's War, which commenced in 1744 and continued nearly four years, the Indians, in alliance with the French, made frequent incursions into the territory between Albany and Crown Point, and a number of skirmishes took place; but in the great final struggle for territory between England and France, which had its beginning in 1754, New York took no inconsiderable part.

NEW JERSEY.

The Dutch, who included New Jersey in the province of New Netherlands, established a trading-post at *Bergen* as early as 1622; but the colonization of the country did not commence till 1664, when a settlement was made at *Elizabethtown* (now Elizabeth) by emigrants from Long Island.

Previous to this, however, this portion of New Netherlands had been sold by the Duke of York to Lord Berkeley and Sir George Carteret, and was named New Jersey in honor of the latter, who had been governor of the island of Jersey in the English Channel. Berkeley's interest in the province having been sold, and afterward assigned to William Penn and other Quakers, the whole territory was divided into two portions, Carteret taking the eastern, known as East Jersey, and the Quakers taking the western, known as West Jersey. In 1682, New Jersey became the exclusive property of Quakers, William Penn and eleven of his brethren having in that year purchased the eastern division. In 1702, it was given up by the proprietors, and formed, with New York, a royal province, and thus continued till 1738, when it became a separate province.

MARYLAND.

Charter.—By the second charter granted to the London Company, the limits of Virginia embraced all the territory which afterward formed the states of Maryland, Virginia, and North Carolina; but, by the dissolution of the company in 1624, the whole region became the property of the crown. In 1631, William Clay'borne obtained a license from Charles I. to traffic with the Indians; and, under this authority, a trading-post was established on an island in Chesapeake Bay, and another at the mouth of the Susquehanna.

Influenced by a desire to provide an asylum for Catholics, then persecuted in England, Sir George Cal'vert, a Roman Catholic nobleman, whose title was Lord Baltimore, applied for a charter to establish a colony in America. The king, Charles I., readily agreed to make the grant, but before the document received the royal seal, Calvert died. It was then issued to Ce'cil Calvert, son of Sir George, who, by the death of his father, inherited the title of Lord Baltimore.

This charter was the most liberal one, in every respect, that had thus far been granted by the English Crown, for it did not deny equality in religious rights and civil freedom to any. The province was called Maryland, in honor of Henrietta Maria, wife of the king.

Settlement of St. Mary's.—The first body of emigrants sent by Lord Baltimore consisted of about two hundred persons, mostly Roman Catholics. They arrived in 1634, and at once commenced a settlement, which they anticipated would become a great city, calling it St. Mary's. Leonard Calvert, brother of the proprietor, was the first governor.

Commencement of Colonization in Maryland.

Bancroft.

1. On Friday, the 22d of November, with a small but favoring gale, Leonard Calvert, and about two hundred people, most of them Roman Catholic gentlemen and their servants, in the *Ark and the Dove*, a ship of large burden, and a pinnace, set sail for the northern bank of the Potomac. Having stayed by the way in Barbadoes and St. Christopher, it was not till February of the following year [1634] that they arrived at Point Comfort, in Virginia; where, in obedience to the express letters of King Charles, they were welcomed by Harvey with courtesy and humanity. Clayborne also appeared, but it was as a prophet of ill-omen, to terrify the company by predicting the fixed hostility of the natives.

2. Leaving Point Comfort, Calvert sailed into the Potomac;

and, with the pinnace, ascended the stream. A cross was planted on an island, and the country claimed for Christ and for England. At about forty-seven leagues above the mouth of the river, he found the village of Piscataqua, an Indian settlement, nearly opposite Mount Vernon. The chieftain of the tribe would neither bid him go nor stay; "he might use his own discretion." It did not seem safe for the English to plant the first settlement so high up the river; Calvert descended the stream, examining, in his barge, the creeks and estuaries nearer the Chesapeake; he entered the river which is now called St. Mary's, and which he named St. George's; and, about four leagues from its junction with the Potomac, he anchored at the Indian town of Goacomoco.

3. The native inhabitants, having suffered from the superior power of the Susquehannas, who occupied the district between the bays, had already resolved to remove into places of more security, in the interior; and many of them had begun to migrate before the English arrived. To Calvert, the spot seemed convenient for a plantation; it was easy, by presents of cloth and axes, of hoes and knives, to gain the good-will of the natives, and to purchase their rights to the soil which they were preparing to abandon. They readily gave consent that the English should immediately occupy one-half of their town, and, after the harvest, should become the exclusive tenants of the whole. Mutual promises of friendship and peace were made; so that, upon the twenty-seventh of March, the Catholics took quiet possession of the little place; and religious liberty obtained a home, its only home in the wide world, at the humble village which bore the name of St. Mary's.

4. Three days after the landing of Calvert, the *Ark and the Dove* anchored in the harbor. Sir John Harvey soon arrived on a visit; the native chiefs, also, came to welcome or to watch the emigrants, and were so well received that they resolved to give perpetuity to their league of amity with the English. The Indian women taught the wives of the new-comers to make bread of maize; the warriors of the tribes instructed the huntsmen how rich were the forests of America in game, and

joined them in the chase. And, as the season of the year invited to the pursuits of agriculture, and the English had come into possession of ground already subdued, they were able, at once, to possess cornfields and gardens, and prepare the wealth of successful husbandry[v].

5. Virginia, from its surplus produce, could furnish a temporary[v] supply of food, and all kinds of domestic cattle. No sufferings were endured; no fears of want were excited; the foundation of the colony of Maryland was peacefully and happily laid. Within six months, it had advanced more than Virginia had done in as many years. The proprietary continued, with great liberality, to provide everything that was necessary for its comfort and protection, and spared no cost to promote its interests; expending, with the aid of his friends, upward of forty thousand pounds sterling.

6. But far more memorable[v] was the character of the Maryland institutions. Every other country in the world had persecuting laws; through the benign administration of the government of that province, no person professing to believe in Jesus Christ was permitted to be molested on account of religion. Under the munificence[v] and superintending mildness of Baltimore, the dreary wilderness was soon quickened with the swarming life and activity of prosperous settlements; the Roman Catholics, who were oppressed by the laws of England, were sure to find a peaceful asylum in the quiet harbors of the Chesapeake; and there, too, Protestants were sheltered against Protestant intolerance.

7. Such were the beautiful auspices under which Maryland started into being; its prosperity and peace seemed assured; the interests of its people and its proprietary were united; and for some years its internal peace and harmony were undisturbed by domestic faction. Its history is the history of benevolence, gratitude, and toleration. Everything breathed peace but Clayborne. Dangers could only grow out of external causes, and were eventually the sad consequences of the revolution in England.—*History of the United States.*

Subsequent History of the Colony.—Clayborne, who had refused to submit to the authority of the governor, in 1645 incited a rebellion, which compelled Calvert to seek safety for a time in Virginia. After the governor resumed his office, the Assembly enacted a law known as the "Toleration Act," which secured the free exercise of religious opinions to all persons professing belief in Jesus Christ. Thus did the right promised by the charter receive the sanction of law.

During the supremacy of Cromwell in England, Parliament appointed commissioners to administer the government of the colony. The Protestants gaining a majority in the Assembly, the Catholics were deprived of their rights as citizens, and an act was passed declaring them not entitled to the protection of the laws. A civil war between the Catholics and the Protestants followed. After Cromwell's death, the rights of Lord Baltimore were restored to him.

Upon the death of Cecil Calvert, his son Charles became the proprietor of the province, of which he retained possession until deprived of it by King William, in 1691. In 1715 the proprietor's rights were restored to his infant heir, the fourth Lord Baltimore, and Maryland remained a proprietary government from that time till the Revolution.

PENNSYLVANIA.

Grant to William Penn.—Actuated by a desire to found a colony where civil and religious liberty might be enjoyed, and where the people might dwell together in peace, William Penn* obtained from Charles II. a tract of land west of the Delaware. The domain thus granted was called Pennsylvania.† From the Duke of York, Penn also obtained a grant of Delaware, then called "The Territories," or "The Three Lower Counties on the Delaware."

Founding of Philadelphia.—Penn's Treaty.—Though small settlements of Swedes had been previously made within the limits of both Pennsylvania and Delaware, the permanent settlement of the former dates from the founding of Philadelphia in 1682, by Penn. After several conferences with the Indians, he met them beneath the wide-spreading elm, at a place now called Kensington, a part of Philadelphia, where he made his famous "treaty of peace and friendship" with the "red men." This treaty was "never sworn to and never broken."

Treatment of the Swedes.—To the Swedes on the Delaware, Penn gave assurance that they should not be molested in their religion or laws. The wisdom of his course toward the Swedes and Indians, as well as of his government

* William Penn, the founder of Pennsylvania, was the son of an English admiral, who left, at his death, a large estate to his son, and a considerable claim upon the government for money advanced by him to carry on several important expeditions, when the finances of England were exhausted. He early embraced the religion of the Quakers, who were then a new sect in England.

† The word *sylva* means a wood or forest. William Penn, thinking that *sylvania* would be an appropriate name for a land covered with forest, suggested it for his territory. The prefix *Penn* was put to the word, in honor, as the king said, of Penn's father.

in general, was soon apparent; for the colony had a more rapid and peaceful growth than any other in America.

Subsequent History.—Upon the death of Penn, which occurred in England in 1718, he left his American possessions to his sons. They administered the government, most of the time by deputies, until the Revolution, when their claims were purchased by the commonwealth of Pennsylvania.

Penn's Treaty with the Indians.

1. WILLIAM PENN took the utmost care to protect the Indians in their rights, and to prevent the encroachments of white men. For this purpose he ordered all goods sold to the Indians to be first tested; that wrongs done to Indians should be punished as those done to white men; and that all differences should be settled by twelve men, six planters, and six Indians. These stipulations in favor of the poor natives will forever immortalize the name of William Penn; for, soaring above the prejudices and customs of other adventurers, who considered them a lawful prey, whom they might defraud at pleasure, he considered them as brethren, rational beings, who, in proportion to their ignorance, were entitled to his fatherly protection and care.

2. Soon after his arrival, he had a meeting with the Indians to confirm the treaty; for his scrupulous morality did not permit him to look upon the king's patent as sufficient to establish his right to the country, without purchasing it by fair and open bargain of the natives, to whom only it properly belonged. Near the city of Philadelphia there was an elm-tree of a prodigious size, to which the leaders on both sides repaired. Penn appeared in his usual dress, and, on his arrival, he found the sachems and their tribes assembling. They were seen in the woods as far as the eye could reach, and looked frightful, both on account of their number and their arms. The Quakers were unarmed, and but a handful in comparison.

3. When the sachems were all seated, William Penn is said to have addressed the chief of them in the following words: "The Great Spirit, who made us and thee, and who rules in heaven and earth, knows that I and my friends have a hearty desire to live in friendship with thee, and to serve thee to the

utmost of our power. It is not our custom to use hostile weapons against our fellow-creatures, for which reason we have come unarmed. Our object is not to do injury, and thus provoke the Great Spirit, but to do good. We are now met on the broad pathway of good faith and good will, so that no advantage is to be taken on either side."

4. The great elm-tree, under which this treaty was made, became celebrated on that account, and when the British were quartered near it, during the war of American Independence, their general so respected it, that, when his soldiers were cutting down every tree for firewood, he placed a sentinel under it, that not a branch of it might be touched. A few years ago it was blown down, when it was split into wood, and many cups, bowls, and other articles made of it, to be kept as memorials.

5. As to the roll of parchment containing the treaty, it was shown to Governor Keith at a conference in 1722, about forty years after it was signed; and a respectable missionary informs us, that, between the years 1770 and 1780, the Indians minutely related to him what had passed between William Penn and their forefathers.

DELAWARE.

Settlement.—The settlement of Delaware may be said to have had its origin in the desire of Gus-ta'vus Adolphus, the renowned king of Sweden, to found a free colony in the New World for all persecuted Christians. His death occurring before the project was undertaken, a delay of several years followed; but finally a charter was granted by the government of that country to the Swedish West India Company. In 1638, a body of emigrants, sent out by the company under the care of Minuits, a former governor of New Netherlands, arrived at Cape Hen-lo'pen. Having purchased of the Indians all the lands from the cape to the falls in the Delaware, at Trenton, they commenced a settlement on Chris-ti-an'a Creek, near the present site of Wilmington. To the country thus purchased was given the name of New Sweden.

Conquest by the Dutch.—Other settlements were formed, but the one on Tin'i-cum Island, a few miles below Philadelphia, was made the capital. The Dutch, regarding these settlements as intrusions upon their territory of New Netherlands, Governor Stuyvesant proceeded against the Swedes, in 1655, and subjected them to the authority of Holland, which government retained possession of the country till 1664.

Subsequent History.—During the period from 1664 to 1682, Delaware,* being claimed by the Duke of York, formed a part of the province of New York. By the grant to Penn, in 1682, it was united to Pennsylvania; and although the settlers in "The Territories" became dissatisfied with Penn's government, and were granted an Assembly of their own, Pennsylvania and Delaware continued under one governor until the Revolution.

NORTH AND SOUTH CAROLINA.

Settlements.—The earliest attempts to settle North Carolina, as before described, were made by parties sent by Raleigh in 1585 and 1587. More than sixty years later, probably in 1650, emigrants from Virginia made a settlement upon the Cho-wan' River, near the present village of E'den-ton.

In 1663, a vast territory, south of Virginia, was granted by Charles II. to Lord Clar'en-don and seven other noblemen of England; and, in the same year, a government was instituted over the settlement on the Chowan, which was called "The Albemarle County Colony." Two years later a second colony was planted in North Carolina. A company from Barbadoes (*bar-ba'doz*) selected a place near Wilmington, and there established "The Clarendon County Colony." It having been discovered that the settlement on the Chowan was outside of the limits of the domain granted to Clarendon and associates, a new grant was made to the same parties, by which the boundaries were extended so as to embrace the country from Virginia to about the middle of Florida.

South Carolina.—In 1670, a colony, known as "The Carteret County Colony," was planted on the western bank of the Ashley River; but this, in consequence of not being well located for commercial facilities, was removed, ten years after, to the junction of the Cooper and Ashley rivers, and thus the foundation of Charleston was laid. In 1729, Carolina† was sold to the King of England, and separated into North and South Carolina. From that time till the Revolution they were royal provinces.

GEORGIA.

Grant to Oglethorpe.—Though Spain claimed the territory of Georgia as a part of Florida, the English king, George II., disregarded the claim; and, in 1732, granted to a corporation, consisting of James Oglethorpe (*ō'gl-thorp*) and twenty other trustees, for twenty-one years, all the country between the Savannah and the Altamaha (*al-ta-ma-haw'*). In honor of the king it was called Georgia. The object of the trustees was to provide an asylum for their destitute countrymen, the grant being "in trust for the poor."

Settlement.—The first settlement was made in 1733, at Savannah. The

* Delaware bay and river were so named in honor of Lord Delaware (*de-la-ware*); whence the name of the State.

† The Huguenots made a settlement at Port Royal entrance, Carolina, in 1562, and built a fort which they called *Caroline*, in honor of Charles IX. (*Carolus*, in Latin) of France. (See p. 33.)

colony made rapid increase in numbers; but, owing to the poverty and idle habits of the settlers, as also to the impolitic regulations of the trustees, the bright anticipations of plenty and comfort which had been entertained were not, for a time, realized.

War with the Spaniards.—In consequence of the claim to territory set up by Spain, hostilities took place between the English settlers and their Spanish neighbors. Owing, however, to the bravery and skill of Oglethorpe, the result was favorable to the English. The trustees governed till 1752, when, wearied with their troublesome charge, they surrendered their charter to the crown, and Georgia became a royal province.

SECTION III.

The French and Indian War.

Causes of the War.—Although the boundaries between the British and French possessions in America had been, for more than a quarter of a century, a subject of dispute, the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle, made in 1748, left them still undefined.

The English, basing their title upon the discoveries made by the Cabots, laid claim to all the territory from Newfoundland to Florida, extending from the Atlantic to the Pacific. The French claimed all the interior portion adjacent to the rivers St. Lawrence and Mississippi and their tributaries, upon the ground that they had explored and occupied it; and, the better to secure this claim, they erected forts at various places through the region.

In consequence of these conflicting claims, a war broke out between England and her colonies, assisted to some extent by the Indians, on the one side, and France and her colonies, largely aided by the Indians, on the other. This is known as "The French and Indian War." It was thus a contest for territory and dominion in America.

Washington's Mission.—The French having seized three British traders, and also built forts on the land of the Ohio Company, an association formed under a royal grant, to trade with the Indians, Governor Dinwiddie, of the Virginia Colony, selected George Washington, then a young man of about twenty-two, to carry a letter to the French Commandant, remonstrating[v] against these aggressive[v] acts. This was the first public service of importance performed by Washington.

He set out on his mission in October, 1753, from Williamsburg, then the capital of Virginia. His journey of four hundred miles, more than half of it through a

FRENCH & INDIAN WAR AND THE REVOLUTION.
QUEBEC
MONTREAL
CANADA
St. Lawrence R.
Ft. Frontenac (now Kingston)
York (now Toronto)
L. ONTARIO
L. ERIE
Ft. Niagara
Oswego
Ft. Schuyler
Schenectady
Cherry Val.
Presque Isle
Chemung
Ft. Venango
Ft. Le Boeuf
Kittanning
Ft. Duquesne (now Pittsburgh)
Ft. Necessity
NEW YORK
PENNSYLVANIA
Wyoming
Susquehanna R.
Delaware R.
Mohawk R.
Saratoga
Ft. Edward
Hudson R.
Newburgh
West Point
Morristown
Jersey City
Elizabeth
Princeton
Reading
TRENTON
Valley Forge
PHILADELPHIA
Brandywine
Ft. Mercer
WILMINGTON
NEW JERSEY
DELAWARE
Delaware Bay
C. May
Ft. McHenry
Potomac Riv.
MARYLAND
BALTIMORE
ALEXANDRIA
Chesapeake Bay
York R.
James R.
RICHMOND
Yorktown
Petersburg
JAMESTOWN
Williamsburg
VIRGINIA
Ohio River
Gt. Kanawha R.
Monongahela R.
Allegheny R.
French Cr.
PLATTSBURG
L. Champlain
BURLINGTON
Crown Pt.
Hubbardton
TICONDEROGA
L. George
VERMONT
BENNINGTON
Connecticut R.
N. HAMPSHIRE
MAINE
Dover
Portsmouth
Newburyport
Salem
BOSTON
MASSACHUSETTS
Providence
Hartford
CONN.
New Haven
New London
Sag Harbor
Long Isl.
Brooklyn
Staten I.
Monmouth
R. I.
Ft. Nonango
Ft. Le Boeuf
Roanoke R.
Dan R.
Raleigh
Gulford C. H.
Yadkin R.
Catawba R.
Tar R.
Albemarle Sd.
Neuse R.
Pamlico Sd.
NORTH CAROLINA
Kings Mt.
Cowpens
Catawba
Wateree R.
CAMDEN
Broad R.
Saluda R.
Congaree R.
COLUMBIA
SOUTH CAROLINA
Gt. Pedee R.
C. Fear R.
C. Hatteras
WILMINGTON
C. Fear
Augusta
Eutaw Springs
Santee R.
CHARLESTON
Ft. Moultrie
Savannah R.
Altamaha R.
GEORGIA
SAVANNAH
ATLANTIC OCEAN
CAPE BRETON I.
PR EDWARD I.
LOUISBURG
BAY OF FUNDY
Port Royal (now Annapolis)
NOVA SCOTIA
HALIFAX
ATLANTIC OCEAN

wilderness inhabited by hostile Indians, was perilous and difficult; but he completed it in safety, returning after an absence of eleven weeks, during which he had encountered the severest hardships amid snow, icy floods, and savage enemies. The answer of St. Pierre (*pe-are'*), the French commandant, was not, however, satisfactory to the governor. He stated that he was acting under the orders of Duquesne (*du-kane'*), governor of Canada, and refused to quit the territory. The following incidents will give some idea of the kind of perils encountered by Washington during this journey.

Incidents of Washington's Journey.—*Lossing.*

1. The horses were so emaciated and jaded, that it was doubtful whether they could ever cross the mountains. The provisions and other luggage were to be transported on their backs; and, to lighten their burden as much as possible, Washington, Gist, and the interpreters determined to proceed on foot, confiding them to the direction of the servants. Washington put on an Indian walking-dress, and continued with them three days, when, finding that there was no probability of their getting home in any reasonable time, that the beasts became less able to travel every day, that the cold increased very fast, and that the roads were becoming much worse by a deep snow, continually freezing, he determined to proceed in advance, the nearest way, through the woods.

2. Leaving the rest of the party, with the luggage, in charge of Van Braam, therefore, with money and directions to provide necessaries from place to place, and orders to go on as rapidly as he could, he tied a heavy watch-coat close about him, and, with gun in hand, and a knapsack containing provisions and his papers on his shoulders, left the cavalcade, accompanied only by Mr. Gist, who was equipped in the same manner.

3. Abandoning the beaten path, they directed their way through the woods so as to cross the Alleghany near Shannopinstown, two or three miles above the intersection of that river with the Monongahela. Washington's own account of the hardships and dangers which succeeded is modest and subdued, but extremely interesting. The narrative of Mr. Gist is

in this part more ample, but perfectly consistent with that of his leader.

4. "I was unwilling," writes the guide, "that he should undertake such a march, who had never been used to walking before this time; but, as he insisted on it, we set out with our packs, like Indians, and travelled eighteen miles. That night we lodged at an Indian cabin, and the major was much fatigued. It was very cold: all the small streams were frozen, so that we could hardly get water to drink." At two o'clock the next morning, they were again on foot, and pressed forward until they struck the southeast branch of Beaver Creek, at a place called Murderingtown, the scene, probably, of some Indian massacre.

5. "Here," proceeds Mr. Gist, "we met with an Indian, whom I thought I had seen at Joncaire's, at Venango, when on our journey up to the French fort. This fellow called me by my Indian name, and pretended to be glad to see me. He asked us several questions, as, how came we to travel on foot, when we left Venango, where we parted from our horses, and when they would be there. Major Washington insisted upon travelling on the nearest way to the forks of the Alleghany. We asked the Indian if he could go with us, and show us the nearest way. He seemed very glad, and ready to do so; upon which we set out, and he took the major's pack.

6. "We travelled quite briskly for eight or ten miles, when the major's feet grew very sore, and he very weary, and the Indian steered too much northeastwardly. The major desired to encamp, upon which the Indian asked to carry his gun; but he refused that, and then the Indian grew churlish, and pressed us to keep on, telling us there were Ottawa Indians in these woods, and that they would scalp us if we lay out; but to go to his cabin and we should be safe.

7. "I thought very ill of the fellow, but did not care to let the major know I mistrusted him. But he soon mistrusted him as much as I. The Indian said he could hear a gun from his cabin, and steered us more northwardly. We grew uneasy, and then he said two whoops might be heard from his cabin.

We went two miles farther. Then the major said he would stay at the next water, and we desired the Indian to stop at the next water; but before we came to water we came to a clear meadow.

8. "It was very light, and snow was on the ground. The Indian made a stop, and turned about. The major saw him point his gun toward us, and he fired. Said the major, 'Are you shot?' 'No,' said I; upon which the Indian ran forward to a big standing white oak, and began loading his gun, but we were soon with him. I would have killed him, but the major would not suffer me. We let him charge his gun. We found he put in a ball; and then we took care of him. Either the major or I always stood by the guns. We made him make a fire for us by a little run, as if we intended to sleep there.

9. "I said to the major, 'As you will not have him killed, we must get him away, and then we must travel all night;' upon which I said to the Indian, 'I suppose you were lost, and fired your gun.' He said he knew the way to his cabin, and it was but a little way. 'Well,' said I, 'do you go home; and as we are much tired, we will follow your track in the morning.' He was glad to get away. I followed him, and listened until he was fairly out of the way, and then we went about half a mile, when we made a fire, set our compass, and fixed our course and travelled all night. In the morning we were on the head of Piney Creek." There is little reason to doubt that it was the intention of the savage to kill one or both of them.—*Life of Washington.*

Events of 1754.—At the confluence of the Alleghany and Monongahela rivers, the Ohio Company commenced the construction of a fort; and a body of troops, of which Washington became the commander, was sent to protect the works. Before, however, he had time to reach the place, a party of French and Indians suddenly appeared and took possession. The works were then completed, and called Fort Duquesne.

Receiving intelligence of the disaster, and that a strong force was marching to intercept him, Washington fell back, and took a position at a place called the Great Meadows. Here word came to him that a small detachment of the French had advanced to within a few miles of his position, where they were skulking, evidently with hostile intent. With the determination of forestalling

their design, he sallied forth, came upon them by surprise, and, in the contest that followed, 28th of May, 1754, killed or captured all but one.

In little more than a month after, a force of fifteen hundred French and Indians, commanded by De Villiers (*vil-le-ãre'*), made an attack upon a small fort which Washington had constructed and named Fort Necessity. A brave defense of ten hours was made, but, on the morning of the 4th of July, Washington was compelled to surrender, though upon condition that he and the garrison should be permitted to return to Virginia.

Events of 1755.—Four expeditions, on the part of the English, were planned for 1755; namely, against Nova Scotia, Crown Point, Fort Niagara, and Fort Duquesne. The one against Nova Scotia was commanded by Col. Monckton (*monk'tun*). Two forts there were captured in June; a beautiful and fertile country was reduced to a solitude; and the inhabitants by thousands were driven on board the English ships, and scattered among the colonists of New England and other places.

Braddock's Expedition.—Gen. Brad'dock, who had been sent to America as commander-in-chief of the royal forces, headed the expedition against Fort Duquesne. Disregarding the suggestions of Washington, who was acting as his aid-de-camp, he fell into an ambush of French and Indians, July the 9th, when within a few miles of the fort, and was defeated with great loss, he himself being mortally wounded.

Defeat of Braddock.—*Sparks.*

1. On the 8th of July, the General arrived with his division, all in excellent health and spirits, at the junction of the Youghiogany and Monongahela rivers. At this place Colonel Washington joined the advanced division, being but partially recovered from a severe attack of fever, which had been the cause of his remaining behind. The officers and soldiers were now in the highest spirits, and firm in the conviction that they should, within a few hours, victoriously enter the walls of Duquesne.

2. The steep and rugged grounds on the north side of the Monongahela prevented the army from marching in that direction; and it was necessary, in approaching the fort, now about fifteen miles distant, to ford the river twice, and march a part of the way on the south side. Early on the morning of the 9th, all things were in readiness, and the whole train passed through the river, a little below the mouth of the Youghiogany (*yoh-ho-ga'ne*), and proceeded in perfect order along the southern margin

of the Monongahela. Washington was often heard to say, during his life-time, that the most beautiful spectacle he had ever beheld was the display of the British troops on this eventful morning. Every man was neatly dressed in full uniform, the soldiers were arranged in columns and marched in exact order, the sun gleamed from their burnished arms, the river flowed tranquilly on their right, and the deep forest overshadowed them with solemn grandeur on their left. Officers and men were equally inspirited with cheering hopes and confident anticipations.

3. In this manner they marched forward till about noon, when they arrived at the second crossing-place, ten miles from Fort Duquesne. They halted but a little time, and then began to ford the river and regain its northern bank. As soon as they had crossed, they came upon a level plain, elevated but a few feet above the surface of the river, and extending northward nearly half a mile from its margin. Then commenced a gradual ascent, at an angle of about three degrees, which terminated in hills of a considerable height at no great distance beyond. The road from the fording-place to Fort Duquesne led across the plain and up this ascent, and thence proceeded through an uneven country, at that time covered with wood.

4. By the order of march, a body of three hundred men, under Colonel Gage, made the advanced party, which was immediately followed by another of two hundred. Next came the General, with the columns of artillery, the main body of the army, and the baggage. At one o'clock the whole had crossed the river; and almost at this moment, a sharp firing was heard upon the advanced parties, who were now ascending the hill, and had got forward about a hundred yards from the termination of the plain. A heavy discharge of musketry was poured in upon their front, which was the first intelligence they had of the proximity of an enemy; and this was suddenly followed by another on their right flank. They were filled with the greatest consternation, as no enemy was in sight, and the firing seemed to proceed from an invisible foe. They fired in their turn, however, but quite at random, and

obviously without effect, as the enemy kept up a discharge in quick and continued succession.

5. The General advanced speedily to the relief of these detachments; but, before he could reach the spot which they occupied, they gave way and fell back upon the artillery[v] and the other columns of the army, causing extreme confusion, and striking the whole mass with such a panic, that no order could afterwards be restored. The General and the officers behaved with the utmost courage, and used every effort to rally the men, and bring them to order, but all in vain. In this state they continued nearly three hours, huddling together in confused bodies, firing irregularly, shooting down their own officers and men, and doing no perceptible harm to the enemy. The Virginian provincials were the only troops who seemed to retain their senses, and they behaved with a bravery and resolution worthy of a better fate.

6. They adopted the Indian mode, and fought, each man for himself, behind a tree. This was prohibited by the General, who endeavored to form his men into platoons and columns, as if they had been manœuvring[v] on the plains of Flanders. Meantime, the French and Indians, concealed in the ravines and behind trees, kept up a deadly and unceasing discharge of musketry, singling out their objects, taking deliberate aim, and producing a carnage almost unparalleled in the annals of modern warfare. More than half of the whole army, which had crossed the river in so proud an array only three hours before, were killed or wounded, the General himself had received a mortal wound, and many of his best officers had fallen by his side. . . . .

7. When the battle was over, and the remnant of Braddock's army had gained, in their flight, the opposite bank of the river, Colonel Washington was dispatched by the General to meet Colonel Dunbar, and order forward wagons for the wounded with all possible speed. But it was not till the 11th, after they had reached Gist's plantation, with great difficulty and much suffering from hunger, that any arrived. The General was at first brought off in a tumbril[v]; he was next put

on horseback, but, being unable to ride, was obliged to be carried by the soldiers. They all reached Dunbar's camp, to which the panic[y] had already extended, and a day was passed there in the greatest confusion. The artillery was destroyed, and the public stores and heavy baggage were burnt, by whose order was never known.

8. They moved forward on the 13th, and that night General Braddock died, and was buried in the road, for the purpose of concealing his body from the Indians. The spot is still pointed out, within a few yards of the present National Road, and about a mile west of the site of Fort Necessity at the Great Meadows. Captain Stewart, of the Virginia forces, had taken particular charge of him from the time he was wounded till his death. On the 17th the sick and wounded arrived at Fort Cumberland, and were soon joined by Colonel Dunbar, with the remaining fragments of the army. The French sent out a party as far as Dunbar's camp, and destroyed everything that was left. Colonel Washington, being in very feeble health, proceeded in a few days to Mount Vernon.—*Life of Washington.*

Other Expeditions of 1755.—The expedition against Niagara was also a failure. Gov. Shir'ley, who commanded it, advanced as far as Oswego; but the defeat of Braddock paralyzed[y] his efforts, his Indian allies deserted, and finally the enterprise was abandoned. Leaving garrisons for two new forts which had been commenced, Shirley returned to Albany.

To Gen. Johnson had been confided the expedition against Crown Point. He was preceded by Gen. Ly'man, who, at the "carrying place" between the Hudson and Lake George, constructed Fort Edward. Johnson advanced as far as the head of the lake, and, while encamped there, his Indian scouts brought word that two thousand French and Indians were marching to attack Fort Edward. Dieskau (*de-es-ko'*), commanding this force, had made his way from Montreal.

Losing no time, Johnson sent Col. Williams with twelve hundred men, two hundred of whom were Indians, to intercept the enemy. But Dieskau changed his plan. As he approached the fort, Sept. 8th, his Indian allies, fearful of its cannon, refused to proceed. Then, taking another direction, to surprise the army at the lake, he drew the forces of Williams into an ambush, and routed them with fearful slaughter, pursuing the fugitives to Johnson's camp.

From behind a breastwork of trees, Johnson fired upon his assailants; but

he receiving a wound early in the action, the defense was continued by Lyman, and finally turned into an attack. The French and their allies were defeated; and Dieskau, incurably wounded, was made a prisoner. Johnson, after erecting Fort William Henry, retired to Albany.

Events of 1756. —The Marquis de Montcalm (*mont-kam'*), Dieskau's successor, in August, 1756, made an attack upon Oswego, and compelled the English, numbering fourteen hundred men, to surrender. A large amount of stores and money also fell into the hands of the victor. Incited by French emissaries, the Indians of the Ohio committed great desolation; but Col. Armstrong, after a long and perilous march, reached Kittanning (*kit-tan'ning*), their chief town, and destroyed it by fire.

Events of 1757.—In the beginning of August, 1757, Montcalm, with nine thousand men, two thousand of whom were Indians, laid siege to Fort William Henry. For six days its commander, Col. Monro, kept up a vigorous defense, trusting to receive aid from Gen. Webb, who, at the time, was in command of a large force at Fort Edward, only fifteen miles off. At length, learning that no assistance would be sent, and being without ammunition, he was compelled to surrender on the 9th, capitulating that his men should have a safe escort to Webb's quarters. Notwithstanding the stipulation, the English had hardly left the fort before the Indian allies of Montcalm, incited by the hope of plunder, attacked them, and massacred a large number. The fort was soon afterward demolished.

Events of 1758.—Upon the death of Braddock, which occurred four days after his defeat in 1755, the general command devolved upon Shirley. Shirley was soon succeeded by Lord Lou'don, and he, in turn, by Gen. Ab'ercrom by. With the celebrated William Pitt, afterward Lord Chatham, at the head of the British government, preparations to carry on the war were made with great vigor. Three expeditions were planned for 1758; one, under Gen. Amherst (*am'erst*), against Louisburg; another, under Abercromby, against Fort Ticonderoga; and a third, under Gen. Forbes, against Fort Duquesne.

On the 26th of July, Louisburg surrendered, after a desperate resistance of more than forty days, during which two officers, Wolfe and Montgomery, greatly distinguished themselves by their bravery. St. John's Island, now Prince Edward's, as well as the island of Cape Breton (*brit'un*), fell into the hands of the British.

Abercromby, making his way northward, sailed down Lake George, and, debarking near its outlet, commenced a march through the forests toward Ticonderoga, then commanded by Montcalm. In a conflict which took place, July 6th, between advanced bodies of the contending parties, Lord Howe, an officer greatly beloved, was slain. Two days after, an unsuccessful assault upon the fort was made in full force, the assailants losing nearly two thousand men in killed and wounded.

During this year, a detachment of Abercromby's army crossed Lake Ontario and captured Fort Frontenac, on the northeast shore, and with it several vessels

and a vast amount of military stores. Fort Duquesne was also captured, and its name changed to Fort Pitt, in honor of the illustrious orator and statesman, William Pitt.

Events of 1759.—The great object of the campaign of 1759 was the reduction of Canada. Gen. Wolfe was to lay siege to Quebec; Amherst, who had succeeded Abercromby as commander-in chief, was to reduce Ticonderoga and Crown Point, and then co-operate with Wolfe; and Gen. Prideaux (*prid'o*) was to capture Niagara and Montreal, and then join Amherst.

Prideaux reached Niagara in July, but, during the siege of the place, was killed. Johnson, having succeeded to the command, defeated a relief force of French and Indians, and compelled the besieged to surrender. Instead, however, of proceeding to Montreal, he made his way to Albany. Amherst reached the vicinity of Ticonderoga, when the French abandoned both it and Crown Point without striking a blow. He went into winter-quarters at the latter place, and thus failed to co-operate with Wolfe.

With eight thousand men Wolfe ascended the St. Lawrence, and landed his army upon the isle of Orleans. On the 31st of July, he made a daring though unsuccessful attempt upon the French intrenchments at Montmorenci, near Quebec. Not discouraged by the disaster, the English effected a landing at night about two miles above the city, and climbing the steep banks of the river, by daybreak, on the following morning, September 13th, stood on the Plains of Abraham in battle array.

Taking of Quebec, and Death of Wolfe.—*Parkman.*

1. The eventful night of the twelfth [September, 1759] was clear and calm, with no light but that of the stars. Within two hours before daybreak, thirty boats, crowded with sixteen hundred soldiers, cast off from the vessels, and floated downward, in perfect order, with the current of the ebb tide. To the boundless joy of the army, Wolfe's malady had abated, and he was able to command in person. His ruined health, the gloomy prospects of the siege, and the disaster at Montmorenci, had oppressed him with the deepest melancholy, but never impaired for a moment the promptness of his decisions, or the impetuous energy of his actions.

2. He sat in the stern of one of the boats, pale and weak, but borne up to a calm height of resolution. Every order had been given, every arrangement made, and it only remained to face the issue. The ebbing tide sufficed to bear the boats along, and nothing broke the silence of the night but the

gurgling of the river, and the low voice of Wolfe as he repeated to the officers about him the stanzas of Gray's "Elegy in a Country Churchyard," which had recently appeared, and which he had just received from England. Perhaps, as he uttered those strangely appropriate words,

"The paths of glory lead but to the grave,"

the shadows of his own approaching fate stole with mournful prophecy across his mind. "Gentlemen," he said, as he closed his recital, "I would rather have written those lines than take Quebec to-morrow." . . . . .

3. They reached the landing-place in safety—an indentation in the shore about a league from the city, and now bearing the name of Wolfe's Cove. Here a narrow path led up the face of the heights, and a French guard was posted at the top to defend the pass. By the force of the currents, the foremost boats, including that which carried Wolfe himself, were borne a little below the spot. The General was one of the first on shore. He looked upward at the rugged heights that towered above him in the gloom. "You can try it," he coolly observed to an officer standing near him, "but I don't think you'll get up."

4. At the point where the Highlanders landed, one of their captains, Donald Macdonald, was climbing in advance of his men, when he was challenged by a sentinel. He replied in French, by declaring that he had been sent to relieve the guard, and ordering the soldier to withdraw. Before the latter was undeceived, a crowd of Highlanders were close at hand, while the steps below were thronged by eager climbers, dragging themselves up by trees, roots, and bushes. The guard turned out, and made a brief but brave resistance. In a moment they were cut to pieces, dispersed, or made prisoners; while men after men came swarming up the height, and quickly formed upon the plains above. Meanwhile, the vessels had dropped downward with the current, and anchored opposite the landing-place. The remaining troops were disembarked, and with the dawn of day the whole were brought in safety to the shore.

5. The sun rose, and from the ramparts of Quebec the astonished people saw the Plains of Abraham glittering with arms, and the dark red lines of the English forming in array of battle. Breathless messengers had borne the evil tidings to Montcalm, and far and near his wide-extended camp resounded with the rolling of alarm-drums and the din of startled preparation. . . . . .

6. It was nine o'clock, and the adverse armies stood motionless, each gazing on the other. The clouds hung low, and, at intervals, warm, light showers descended, besprinkling both alike. The coppice[v] and cornfields in front of the British troops were filled with French sharpshooters, who kept up a distant, spattering fire. Here and there a soldier fell in the ranks, and the gap was filled in silence.

7. At a little before ten, the British could see that Montcalm was preparing to advance, and in a few moments all his troops appeared in rapid motion. They came on in three divisions, shouting after the manner of their nation, and firing heavily as soon as they came within range. In the British ranks, not a trigger was pulled, not a soldier stirred; and their ominous composure seemed to damp the spirits of the assailants. It was not till the French were within forty yards that the fatal word was given. At once, from end to end of the British line, the muskets rose to the level, as if with the sway of some great machine, and the whole blazed forth at once in one crashing explosion. Like a ship at full career arrested with sudden ruin on a sunken rock, the columns of Montcalm staggered, shivered, and broke before that wasting storm of lead.

8. The smoke, rolling along the field, for a moment shut out the view; but when the white wreaths were scattered in the wind, a wretched spectacle was disclosed—men and officers tumbled in heaps, columns resolved into a mob, order and obedience gone; and when the British muskets were levelled for a second volley, the masses were seen to cower and shrink with uncontrollable panic.

9. For a few minutes, the French regulars stood their ground, returning a sharp and not ineffectual fire. But now, echoing

cheer on cheer, redoubling volley on volley, trampling the dying and the dead, and driving the fugitives in crowds, the British troops advanced, and swept the field before them. The ardor of the men burst all restraint. They broke into a run, and, with unsparing slaughter, chased the flying multitude to the very gates of Quebec. Foremost of all, the light-footed Highlanders dashed along in furious pursuit, hewing down the Frenchmen with their broadswords, and slaying many in the very ditch of the fortifications. Never was victory more quick or more decisive.

10. In the short action and pursuit, the Frenchmen lost fifteen hundred men, killed, wounded, and taken. Of the remainder, some escaped within the city, and others fled across the St. Charles, to rejoin their comrades who had been left to guard the camp. The pursuers were recalled by sound of trumpet; the broken ranks were formed afresh, and the English troops withdrawn beyond reach of the cannon of Quebec. Bougainville, with his detachment, arrived from the upper country, and, hovering about their rear, threatened an attack; but when he saw what greeting was prepared for him, he abandoned his purpose, and withdrew. Townshend and Murray, the only general officers who remained unhurt, passed to the head of every regiment in turn, and thanked the soldiers for the bravery they had shown; yet the triumph of the victors was mingled with sadness, as the tidings went from rank to rank that Wolfe had fallen.

11. In the heat of the action, as he advanced at the head of the grenadiers of Louisburg, a bullet shattered his wrist; but he wrapped his handkerchief about the wound, and showed no sign of pain. A moment more, and a ball pierced his side. Still he pressed forward, waving his sword and cheering his soldiers to the attack, when a third shot lodged deep within his breast. He paused, reeled, and staggering to one side, fell to the earth. Brown, a lieutenant of the grenadiers, Henderson, a volunteer, an officer of artillery, and a private soldier, raised him together in their arms, and bearing him to the rear, laid him softly on the grass.

12. They asked if he would have a surgeon; but he shook his

head, and answered, that all was over with him. His eyes closed with the torpor of approaching death, and those around sustained his fainting form. Yet they could not withhold their gaze from the wild turmoil before them, and the charging ranks of their companions, rushing through the fire and smoke. "See how they run," one of the officers exclaimed, as the French fled in confusion before the levelled bayonets. "Who runs?" demanded Wolfe, opening his eyes like a man aroused from sleep. "The enemy, sir," was the reply; "they give way everywhere." "Then," said the dying general, "tell Colonel Burton to march Webb's regiment down to Charles River, to cut off their retreat from the bridge. Now, God be praised, I die in peace," he murmured; and turning on his side, he calmly breathed his last. Almost at the same moment fell his great adversary, Montcalm, as he strove, with useless bravery, to rally his shattered ranks.—*Conspiracy of Pontiac.*

Events of 1760, and Close of the War.—De Levi, Montcalm's successor, made extensive preparations for the recovery of Quebec. He marched to Sillery, three miles above the city, and there, on the 28th of April, 1760, was fought one of the most desperate battles of the war. At length the English, after losing a thousand men, fell back; and the opportune arrival of a British fleet, some days after, compelled the French to retreat. Amherst proceeded against and invested Montreal. The governor, unable to resist, signed a capitulation, by which not only that city but the whole of Canada was surrendered to the English.

The war between France and England continued until 1763, when a treaty of peace was signed at Paris, by which France ceded to Great Britain all her American possessions east of the Mississippi, and north of the Iberville (*i'ber-vil*) River, in Louisiana. At the same time, Spain ceded Florida to Great Britain.

State of the Colonies in 1765.—*Grahame.*

1. The war which had just so triumphantly closed, exercised during its continuance a mischievous influence on the population and prosperity of the American provinces, which, however, the vigor and virtue of their excellent constitutions, aided by the happy result of the contest, enabled them very speedily to surmount. In the commencement of the war, the successes of the French and the ferocious ravages of the Indians tended to

repress the flow of emigration from Europe to America; and, during the whole of its continuance, the sacrifice of life and resources, yielded to military exigence, and inflicted by hostile rage, diminished the means and the activity of domestic increase.

2. But the progressive growth of America, though impeded, was by no means arrested during this war. In every instance in which materials for judgment can be obtained, we find the various States more wealthy and populous at the period of the treaty of Paris, than at the preceding date of the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle. From Virginia, in the year 1758, there were exported seventy thousand hogsheads of tobacco,—"the largest quantity of this produce," says Jefferson, "we exported from the colony in a single year."

3. The population of this province is said to have amounted, in 1763, to one hundred and seventy thousand persons, of whom one hundred thousand were slaves. Burnaby, an English gentleman and scholar, who visited the North American colonies in 1759 and 1760, and afterward published an account of his travels, remarks that the progress of arts and sciences had been very slight and scanty in Virginia, where the college of William and Mary was yet the only established seminary of education, and by no means fulfilled the designs of its founders. This writer expressed his conviction that no considerable town would arise in Virginia for some centuries. . . . .

4. Massachusetts contained, in the year 1763, a population of at least two hundred and forty-one thousand persons, of whom five thousand two hundred were slaves; Connecticut, one hundred and forty-five thousand five hundred, of whom four thousand five hundred were slaves; and Rhode Island, upwards of forty thousand, of whom four thousand six hundred were slaves. The population of New Hampshire at this period has not been distinctly noted; but in the year 1767 it is said to have amounted to fifty-two thousand seven hundred persons. Of the population of Maine no notice has been transmitted. These numbers are certainly too low; and more credit is due to the computation of Dr. Stiles, who assigns to the whole of New England, at this period, a population of upwards of five hundred thousand souls.

5. The States of New England were more eager to increase their population than to publish the details of its progressive growth. In the year 1763, the British ministers, who were intent upon schemes of rendering the resources of America directly tributary to the revenue of the parent state, instructed the governor of Massachusetts to obtain for them an accurate census of the number of inhabitants of this province. In compliance with their wish, the governor proposed to the Assembly to enact a law requiring every parish and district to ascertain and report the amount of its population.

6. But this measure was opposed with strong manifestations both of patriotic jealousy and of Puritan prejudice. Many persons entertained a suspicion (which the frame of their temper would have led them to infer from slighter grounds) that some sinister[v] design of British tyranny and encroachment was couched under the proceeding; and not a few opposed it with religious scruples, and assimilated it to King David's unhallowed and calamitous policy in *numbering the people of Israel.* After being postponed from session to session, the proposed law was reluctantly passed by a small majority of the Assembly; and executed, most probably, with little diligence or exactness. . . . . .

7. The conquest of the French dominions, and the reduction of the hostile Indians, which communicated a new energy to the principle of increase in all the British colonies, was beneficial in an especial degree to New England. In New Hampshire, more particularly, this advantage was speedily and strikingly apparent. For many years the frontiers of this province had been, with little intermission, a scene of suffering and danger, from the incursions[v] of the Indian allies of France. At the conclusion of the war, many of the inhabitants of New Hampshire were enabled to return from savage captivity to their homes, and friends who had long been separated were restored to each other's society.

8. The general joy was heightened by the consideration that Canada would no longer be a source of terror and distress. Relieved from this scourge, New Hampshire began to expand

with happy vigor in the extension of settlements and the multiplication of its people. From the peace of Paris may be dated the flourishing state of this province, which till then was circumscribed[v] and stinted in its growth by the continual pressure of danger from a savage enemy. But now that the land had rest, its frontiers[v] were rapidly peopled and extended, both by internal increase, and by copious emigration from the other States of New England; and the territory, in particular, subsequently distinguished by the name of Vermont, and whose original cultivation we have already remarked, began to fill apace with inhabitants.

9. Proportioned to its replenishment[v], unfortunately, was the warmth of the controversy in which New Hampshire and New York urged their rival pretensions to the government of this territory. The colonists of Vermont, who would probably have submitted with little opposition to the jurisdiction of New York, were provoked to the most violent and determined resistance of this pretension by the claims for heavy fines and quitrents which were blended with it. Encouraged by two leaders of ardent and daring spirit, Ethan Allen and Seth Warner, both natives of Connecticut, a numerous body of the colonists, with arms in their hands, rejected the mandates, and defied the menaces of the government of New York; and though the Assembly of this province enacted a decree of outlawry against Allen and Warner, its power was unavailing[v] to carry the sentence into effect, or to overcome the opposition which these adventurers promoted. The controversy was conducted with a virulence unfriendly to civilization and humanity; but it proved eventually serviceable in a high degree to the political interests, of America by educating a prompt and vigorous spirit of self-defense among the growing population of Vermont. . . . . .

10. Shortly after the conquest of Canada, there was discovered, at the mouth of the river St. Lawrence, a valuable whale-fishery, which had been unknown to the French. Its resources were made tributary to the people of New England with such prompt and progressive vigor of appropriation, that in

the year 1761 ten New England ships, and in 1763 no fewer than eighty, were profitably employed in this adventure. . .

11. No fewer than five printing-presses were at this time maintained in constant employment at Boston. Within the limits of the old Plymouth territory, which was now annexed to this province, there still remained upward of nine hundred Indians. In the island of Nantucket, about three hundred and fifty of this race were still to be found. In Duke's County in the same province, there remained about three hundred Indians; and at Natick only thirty-seven of the Indian inhabitants survived. Nearly one thousand Indians continued to occupy lands within the territory of Connecticut. In the months of September and October, 1760, more than one hundred bears were killed in one district of the County of Hampshire, in Massachusetts. The manufacture of sugar and molasses from the juice of the maple-tree was first introduced into New England in the year 1765.

12. Of the population and condition of Maryland at the present period, no memorial[y] has been preserved. The proprietary authority still subsisted in the family of Lord Baltimore; and though it was not exercised with that sordid[y] and illiberal policy which provoked so much dislike against the kindred institution in Pennsylvania, it seems to have been regarded with little respect or affection. . . . .

13. North Carolina, in the year 1763, is reported to have contained about ninety-five thousand white inhabitants. The contentment and prosperity of the people of this province had suffered a much greater abatement from the extortion[y] and injustice practised by Governor Dobbs and other administrators of British authority, than from their share, comparatively a small one, of the calamities of the late Indian wars. Amidst a great deal of genuine American virtue and happiness, North Carolina contained a more numerous body of indigent and discontented freemen than existed in any or perhaps all of the other British settlements. Education was generally neglected; the laws and the executive officers enjoyed little influence or respect; and it was difficult among this people to recover payments of debts, or to obtain satisfaction for injuries.

14. South Carolina, which had continued to advance in growth, notwithstanding the pressure of the war, reaped an ample and immediate share of the advantages resulting from the peace of Paris. In consequence of an act of its Assembly, which appropriated a large fund to the payment of bounties to industrious laborers from Great Britain and Ireland, and to all foreign Protestants resorting to the province within three years and forming settlements in its interior districts, vast numbers of emigrants from Germany, England, Scotland, and especially Ireland, eagerly embraced the prospect and became citizens of the New World in South Carolina. . . In 1765, the province contained one hundred and thirty thousand inhabitants, of whom ninety thousand were slaves.

15. In none of the British colonies were the advantages attendant on the treaty of Paris more speedily or strikingly manifested than in Georgia. This young provincial community, destitute of commercial credit, and peculiarly exposed to hostile molestation, had hitherto experienced but a feeble and languid progress; but from the present period it advanced, with sudden and surprising rapidity, in wealth and population. The British merchants, considering the colony securely established and likely to attain a flourishing estate, were no longer backward in extending credit to its planters, and freely supplied them with negroes, and with the produce of the manufactures of Britain.

16. In 1763, the exports of Georgia consisted of 7,500 barrels of rice, 9,633 pounds of indigo, and 1,250 bushels of Indian corn, which, together with silk,* deer and beaver skins, naval stores, provisions, and timber, amounted in value to £27,021 sterling; while in 1773, the province exported staple commodities to the value of £124,677 sterling. The valuable plant, sago, whose nutritious[ly] and antiscorbutic[ly] properties had been remarked by Bowen, a traveller in China, was, by the same enterprising observer, discovered in Georgia, whence he imported it into Britain, and introduced its use about the year 1766.—*Colonial History of the United States.*

* In 1759, upward of 10,000 lbs. weight of raw silk was stored in Savannah for exportation.

SECTION IV.

The American Revolution.

Causes.—The expenses which Great Britain had incurred in the French and Indian War greatly increased her national debt; and the British ministry, asserting that this had been done in defending their American possessions, proposed to lessen the burden by taxing the colonies. In pursuance of this proposition, the *Stamp Act* was passed in 1765; the effect of which was to excite a great storm of indignation throughout the colonies, the people of which opposed all measures of taxation, on the ground that they had no representatives in the British Parliament.

The Stamp Act.—*Grimshaw.*

1. At the time of that disastrous warfare, in which Washington rose upon the ruins of the incautious Braddock, resolutions had passed the British Parliament for laying a stamp-duty in America; but they were not followed immediately by any legislative act. The declaratory opinion of that body met with no opposition on either side of the Atlantic; because the "omnipotence of Parliament" was then a familiar phrase; but, afterward, when the measure was examined, it was better understood, and constitutional objections were urged by many sagacious statesmen, both in England and America.

2. But, notwithstanding the powerful reasons offered against this unjust and hazardous experiment, George Grenville, impelled by a partiality for a long-cherished scheme, in the following year, 1765, again brought into the House of Commons this unpopular bill, and succeeded in its enactment. By this, the instruments of writing in daily use amongst a commercial people were to be null and void, unless executed on paper or parchment stamped with a specific duty. Law documents and leases, articles of apprenticeship and contracts, protests and bills of sale, newspapers and advertisements, almanacs and pamphlets,—all must contribute to the British treasury.

3. When the measure was examined, Charles Townshend delivered a speech in its favor, in concluding which, he said, "Will these Americans, children planted by our care, nourished by our indulgence, till they are grown up to a degree of strength and opulence, and protected by our arms;—will they grudge to contribute their mite to relieve us from the weight of that heavy burden under which we lie?"

4. "They, planted by your care!" replied Colonel Barré: "No; they were planted by your oppressions. They fled from tyranny to an uncultivated, inhospitable[v] country, where they exposed themselves to all the hardships to which human nature is liable; and, amongst others, to the cruelty of a savage foe the most subtle, and, I will take it upon me to say, the most formidable, people on the face of this earth. And yet, actuated by principles of true English liberty, they met all hardships with pleasure, compared with what they had suffered in their own country, from the hands of those that should have been their friends.

5. "They, nourished by your indulgence! They grew up by your neglect. As soon as you began to extend your care, that care was displayed in sending persons to rule them, in one department and another, who were, perhaps, the deputies[v] of deputies to some members of the house; sent to spy out their liberties, to misrepresent their actions, and to prey upon their substance; men whose behavior, on many occasions, has caused the blood of those sons of freedom to recoil within them: men promoted to the highest seats of justice—some, who, to my knowledge, were glad, by going to a foreign country, to escape their being brought to the bar of a court of justice in their own.

6. "They, protected by your arms! They have nobly taken up arms in your defense, have exerted a valor amidst their constant laborious industry, for the defense of a country whose frontier was drenched in blood, while its interior yielded all its little savings to your emolument[v]. And, believe me, that the same spirit of freedom which actuated these people at first will accompany them still:—but, prudence forbids me to explain myself further.

7. "God knows, I do not, at this time, speak from any motives of party heat. I deliver the genuine sentiments of my heart. However superior to me, in general knowledge and experience, the respectable body of this house may be, yet, I claim to know more of America than most of you; having seen that country, and been conversant with its people. They are, I believe, as truly royal as any subjects the king has; but a people jealous of their liberties, and who will vindicate them, if ever they should be violated. But the subject is too delicate: I will say no more."

8. The night after the bill passed, Dr. Franklin wrote to Mr. Charles Thomson, "The sun of liberty is set; you must light up the candles of industry and economy."—Mr. Thomson answered: "I was apprehensive that other lights would be the consequence, and I foresee the opposition that will be made."—*History of England.*

Effect of its Passage.—The first burst of opposition appeared in the Legislature of Virginia, where Patrick Henry* distinguished himself by his bold eloquence. Afterward, a more formidable opposition was shown, when, upon the recommendation of the Massachusetts Assembly, a Colonial Congress, in which nine colonies were represented, was held in New York. Of this Congress, Timothy Ruggles, of Massachusetts, was elected President; and, after mature deliberation, a Declaration of Rights, a Petition to the King, and a Memorial to Parliament, were adopted.

When the day came on which the Stamp Act was to go into effect, there were no officials courageous enough to carry it into execution; and, besides, all the stamps had been concealed or destroyed. Business continued to be conducted without stamps, and the colonial merchants agreed to import no more goods while the obnoxious measure remained a law. A change in the British ministry occurring, the act was repealed in 1766.

Other Measures of Taxation.—The next year the attempt to tax the colonies was renewed, by the passage of an act levying duties on glass, paper, tea, etc. This measure met with decided opposition from the colonists, particularly in Boston, to which General Gage† ordered two regiments, to over-

* Patrick Henry was born in Virginia in 1736, and died there in 1799, the year of Washington's death. His early life was not promising, but after his admission to the bar (1760), he became in a short time wonderfully successful as a pleader, and was soon regarded as the most gifted orator and political thinker in America. He was, in succession, a member of the Virginia House of Burgesses, delegate to the "First Continental Congress," colonel of a Virginia regiment, and governor of Virginia during a large part of the Revolution, and again after its close.

† Thomas Gage was the last royal governor of Massachusetts. He was an active officer during the French and Indian War and served with Washington during Braddock's campaign.

awe the inhabitants (1770). This greatly exasperated the people, and led to the affray called the "Boston Massacre," in which the soldiers fired upon the populace, killing three men, and wounding others (1770).

The Boston Massacre.—*Hawthorne.*

1. It was now the 3d of March, 1770. The sunset music of the British regiments was heard, as usual, throughout the town. The shrill fife and rattling drum awoke the echoes in King-street, while the last ray of sunshine was lingering on the cupola of the town-house. And now all the sentinels were posted. One of them marched up and down before the custom-house, treading a short path through the snow, and longing for the time when he would be dismissed to the warm fireside of the guard-room.

2. In the course of the evening there were two or three slight commotions, which seemed to indicate that trouble was at hand. Small parties of young men stood at the corners of the streets, or walked along the narrow pavements. Squads of soldiers, who were dismissed from duty, passed by them, shoulder to shoulder, with the regular step which they had learned at the drill. Whenever these encounters took place, it appeared to be the object of the young men to treat the soldiers with as much incivility as possible.

3. "Turn out, you lobster-backs!" one would say. "Crowd them off the sidewalks!" another would cry. "A red-coat has no right in Boston streets." "Oh, you rebel rascals!" perhaps the soldiers would reply, glaring fiercely at the young men, "Some day or other we'll make our way through Boston streets at the point of the bayonet!"

4. Once or twice such disputes as these brought on a scuffle; which passed off, however, without attracting much notice. About eight o'clock, for some unknown cause, an alarm-bell rang loudly and hurriedly. At the sound, many people ran out of their houses, supposing it to be an alarm of fire. But there were no flames to be seen, nor was there any smell of smoke in the clear, frosty air; so that most of the townsmen went back to their own firesides. Others, who were younger and less prudent, remained in the streets.

5. Later in the evening, not far from nine o'clock, several young men passed down King-street, toward the custom-house. When they drew near the sentinel, he halted on his post, and took his musket from his shoulder, ready to present the bayonet at their breasts. "Who goes there?" he cried, in the gruff tones of a soldier's challenge. The young men, being Boston boys, felt as if they had a right to walk in their own streets without being accountable to a British red-coat. They made some rude answer to the sentinel. There was a dispute, or perhaps a scuffle. Other soldiers heard the noise, and ran hastily from the barracks to assist their comrade.

6. At the same time many of the townspeople rushed into King-street, by various avenues, and gathered in a crowd about the custom-house. It seemed wonderful how such a multitude had started up all of a sudden. The wrongs and insults which the people had been suffering for many months now kindled them into a rage. They threw snowballs and lumps of ice at the soldiers. As the tumult grew louder, it reached the ears of Captain Preston, the officer of the day. He immediately ordered eight soldiers of the main guard to take their muskets and follow him. They marched across the street, forcing their way roughly through the crowd, and pricking the townspeople with their bayonets.

7. A gentleman (it was Henry Knox, afterward general of the American Artillery) caught Captain Preston's arm. "For heaven's sake, sir," exclaimed he, "take heed what you do, or there will be bloodshed!" "Stand aside!" answered Captain Preston, haughtily; "do not interfere, sir. Leave me to manage the affair." Arriving at the sentinel's post, Captain Preston drew up his men in a semicircle, with their faces to the crowd. When the people saw the officer, and beheld the threatening attitude with which the soldiers fronted them, their rage became almost uncontrollable.

8. "Fire, you lobster-backs!" bellowed some. "You dare not fire, you cowardly red-coats," cried other. "Rush upon them," shouted many voices. "Drive the rascals to their barracks! Down with them! Down with them! Let them fire,

if they dare!" Amid the uproar, the soldiers stood glaring at the people with the fierceness of men whose trade was to shed blood.

9. Oh, what a crisis had now arrived! Up to this very moment the angry feelings between England and America might have been pacified. England had but to stretch out the hand of reconciliation, and acknowledge that she had hitherto mistaken her rights, but would do so no more. Then the ancient bonds of brotherhood would again have been knit together as firmly as in old times. But, should the king's soldiers shed one drop of American blood, then it was a quarrel to the death. Never, never would America rest satisfied, until she had torn down royal authority, and trampled it in the dust.

10. "Fire, if you dare, villains!" hoarsely shouted the people, while the muzzles of the muskets were turned upon them; "you dare not fire!" They appeared ready to rush upon the leveled bayonets. Captain Preston waved his sword, and uttered a command which could not be distinctly heard amid the uproar of shouts that issued from a hundred throats. But his soldiers deemed that he had spoken the fatal mandate, "Fire!" The flash of their muskets lighted up the street, and the report rang loudly between the edifices.

11. A gush of smoke overspread the scene. It rose heavily, as if it were loath to reveal the dreadful spectacle beneath it. Eleven of the sons of New England lay stretched upon the street. Some, sorely wounded, were struggling to rise again. Others stirred not, nor groaned, for they were past all pain. Blood was streaming upon the snow; and that purple stain, in the midst of King-street, though it melted away in the next day's sun, was never forgotten nor forgiven by the people.

Tax upon Tea, etc.—The opposition to the revenue measures induced Parliament to revoke all the duties laid in 1767, except that of threepence per pound on tea; but, as the people were contending against the *principle* of "taxation without representation," and not against the *amount* of taxes imposed, the concession was not satisfactory.

The tea for New York and Philadelphia was sent back; that for Charleston,

being stored in damp cellars, perished. At Boston a party of men, since known as the "Boston Tea Party," disguised as Indians, boarded the ships on a moonlight night in December, 1773, broke open the chests of tea, and emptied their contents into the water.

Boston Port Bill.—For the purpose of punishing the Bostonians, Parliament passed the Boston Port Bill, which prohibited all intercourse with Boston by water, and removed the custom-house to Salem. But the people of Salem generously refused to thrive at the expense of their neighbors, and the wharves of that town were offered for the use of the Boston merchants, free of charge.

First General Congress, etc.—A general Congress, known as "The First Continental Congress," with Peyton Randolph,* of Virginia, as president, met at Philadelphia, in September, 1774. All the colonies, except Georgia, were represented. After due deliberation, a Declaration of Rights was made; the suspension of all commercial intercourse with Great Britain recommended; and addresses were voted to the king and the people of Great Britain and Canada.

Minute Men.—A conflict with Great Britain seemed inevitable. The men in Massachusetts capable of bearing arms were daily trained in military exercises, and pledged to take the field at a minute's notice,—hence their name of "Minute Men." Military measures were also adopted in other colonies, and a general determination was manifest to resist, even with arms, the new oppressions attempted to be imposed by Great Britain.

The First American Congress.—*Maxcy.*

1. THE interposition of Divine Providence was eminently conspicuous in the first general Congress. What men! what patriots! what independent, heroic spirits! Chosen by the unbiased people,—chosen, as all public servants ought to be, without favor and without fear,—what an august assembly of sages! Rome, in the height of her glory, fades before it.

2. There never was, in any age or nation, a body of men, who, for general information, for the judicious use of the results of civil and political history, for eloquence and virtue, for true dignity, elevation, and grandeur of soul, could stand a comparison with the first American Congress! See what the people will do when left to themselves, to their unbiased good

* Peyton Randolph was born in Virginia, in 1723. As stated above, he was the president of "The First Continental Congress." He was also elected president of the second Congress, held at Philadelphia in the following year, but political duties calling him to Virginia before the close of its session, he was succeeded in the position by John Hancock, of Massachusetts. His death was sudden, occurring at Philadelphia, toward the close of October, 1775.

sense, and to their true interests! The ferocious Gaul would have dropped his sword at the hall-door, and have fled, thunderstruck, as from an assembly of gods!

3. Whom do I behold?—A Hancock, a Jefferson, an Adams, a Henry, a Lee, a Rutledge! Glory to your immortal spirits! On you depend the destinies of your country; the fate of three millions of men, and of the countless millions of their posterity! Shall these be slaves, or will you make a noble stand for liberty, against a power whose triumphs are already coextensive with the earth; whose legions trample on thrones and sceptres; whose thunders bellow on every ocean? How tremendous the occasion! How vast the responsibility!

4. The president and all the members of this august assembly take their seats. Every countenance tells the mighty struggle within. Every tongue is silent. It is a pause in nature,—that solemn, awful stillness, which precedes the earthquake and tornado! At length Demosthenes arises,—he only is adequate to the great occasion,—the Virginian Demosthenes, the mighty Henry! What dignity! What majesty! Every eye fastens upon him. Firm, erect, undaunted, he rolls on the mighty torrent of his eloquence.

5. What a picture does he draw of the horrors of servitude and the charms of freedom! At once he gives the full rein to all his gigantic powers, and pours his own heroic spirit into the minds of his auditors; they become as one man—actuated by one soul; and the universal shout is "Liberty or Death!" This single speech of this illustrious man, gave an impulse which probably decided the fate of America.

[This Congress prepared and issued several State papers, which showed great political wisdom, as well as consummate statesmanship. The Earl of Chatham, in the House of Lords, pronounced the following eulogium upon it and its members: "I must declare and avow that in all my reading and study of history,—(and it has been my favorite study—I have read Thucydides, and have studied and admired the master States of the world)—that, for solidity of reasoning, force of sagacity, and wisdom of conclusion, under such a complication of circumstances, no nation or body of men can stand in preference to the General Congress at Philadelphia."]

Events of 1775.—Battle of Lexington.—On the night of the 18th of April, 1775, Gen. Gage dispatched eight hundred troops, under Col. Smith and Major Pitcairn (*pit'kārne*), to destroy some military supplies which

the Americans had collected at Concord, a town in Massachusetts, about sixteen miles from Boston.

The patriots of Boston, having had a suspicion of such a movement, were on the alert. By preconcerted signals, the alarm was given, and when the British reached Lexington,* early on the following morning, April 19th, about seventy of the militia were drawn up under arms. The king's troops fired upon them, killing and wounding several. Then was shed the first blood of the Revolution. At Concord some of the supplies were destroyed; but the militia beginning to assemble, a skirmish took place, in which several were killed on both sides. On their way back to Boston, the British were re-enforced at Lexington; but during their retreat, as far as Charlestown, the Americans pursued, keeping up a constant and destructive fire upon them. The loss of the British during the day was over two hundred: that of the patriots was about ninety.

Battle of Lexington.—*O. W. Holmes.*

Slowly the mist o'er the meadow was creeping,
Bright on the dewy buds glistened the sun,
When from his couch, while his children were sleeping,
Rose the bold rebel and shouldered his gun.
Waving her golden veil
Over the silent dale,
Blithe looked the morning on cottage and spire;
Hushed was his parting sigh,
While from his noble eye
Flashed the last sparkle of liberty's fire.

On the smooth green where the fresh leaf is springing,
Calmly the first-born of glory have met;
Hark! the death-volley around them is ringing!
Look! with their life-blood the young grass is wet!
Faint is the feeble breath,
Murmuring low in death,
"Tell to our sons how their fathers have died;"
Nerveless the iron hand,
Raised for its native land,
Lies by the weapon that gleams at its side.

Over the hill-sides the wild knell is tolling,
From their far hamlets the yeomanry come;
As through the storm-clouds the thunder-burst rolling,
Circles the beat of the mustering drum.

* Lexington, the scene of the first encounter between the British and Americans in the Revolutionary contest, is situated about ten miles northwest from Boston, and seven miles east from Concord. At the time of the encounter the town contained about seven hundred inhabitants.

Fast on the soldier's path
Darken the waves of wrath,
Long have they gathered, and loud shall they fall;
Red glares the musket's flash,
Sharp rings the rifle's crash,
Blazing and clanging from thicket and wall.

Gaily the plume of the horseman was dancing,
Never to shadow his cold brow again;
Proudly at morning the war-steed was prancing;
Reeking and panting he droops on the rein;
Pale is the lip of scorn,
Voiceless the trumpet horn,
Torn is the silken-fringed red cross on high;
Many a belted breast
Low on the turf shall rest,
Ere the dark hunters the herd have passed by.

Snow-girdled crags where the hoarse wind is raving,
Rocks where the weary floods murmur and wail,
Wilds where the fern by the furrow is waving,
Reeled with the echoes that rode on the gale;
Far as the tempest thrills
Over the darkened hills,
Far as the sunshine streams over the plain,
Roused by the tyrant band,
Woke all the mighty land,
Girded for battle, from mountain to main.

Green be the graves where her martyrs are lying!
Shroudless and tombless they sunk to their rest,—
While o'er their ashes the starry fold flying
Wraps the proud eagle they roused from his nest.
Borne on her Northern pine,
Long o'er the foaming brine
Spread her broad banner to storm and to sun;
Heaven keep her ever free,
Wide as o'er land and sea
Floats the fair emblem her heroes have won!

[Read also in this connection "Paul Revere's Ride," by Longfellow. *Introduction*, page XXII.]

Capture of Ticonderoga.—*Ethan Allen.*

1. Ever since I arrived at the state of manhood, and acquainted myself with the general history of mankind, I have felt a sincere passion for liberty. The history of nations doomed to perpetual slavery, in consequence of yielding up to tyrants their natural-born liberties, I read with a sort of philosophical horror; so that the first systematical and bloody attempt, at Lexington, to enslave America, thoroughly electrified my mind, and fully determined me to take part with my country. And, while I was wishing for an opportunity to signalize myself in its behalf, directions were privately sent to me from the colony (now State) of Connecticut, to raise the Green Mountain Boys, and, if possible, with them to surprise and take the fortress of Ticonderoga.

2. This enterprise I cheerfully undertook; and, after first guarding all the several passes that led thither, to cut off all intelligence between the garrison and the country, made a forced march from Bennington, and arrived at the lake opposite to Ticonderoga, on the evening of the 9th of May, 1775, with two hundred and thirty valiant Green Mountain Boys; and it was with the utmost difficulty that I procured boats to cross the lake. However, I landed eighty-three men near the garrison, and sent the boats back for the rear-guard, commanded by Colonel Seth Warner; but the day began to dawn, and I found myself under the necessity to attack the fort before the rear could cross the lake; and, as it was deemed hazardous, I harangued the officers and soldiers in the manner following:

3. "Friends and fellow-soldiers: You have, for a number of years past, been a scourge and terror to arbitrary power. Your valor has been famed abroad, and acknowledged, as appears by the advice and orders to me from the General Assembly of Connecticut, to surprise and take the garrison now before us. I now propose to advance before you, and in person conduct you through the wicket-gate; for we must this morning either quit our pretensions to valor, or possess ourselves of this fortress in a few minutes; and, inasmuch as it is a desperate attempt, which none but the bravest of men dare undertake, I do not

urge it on any one contrary to his will. You that will undertake voluntarily, poise your firelocks."

4. The men being at this time drawn up in three ranks, each poised his firelock. I ordered them to face to the right, and, at the head of the centre file, marched them immediately to the wicket-gate aforesaid, where I found a centry posted, who instantly snapped his fusee[r] at me. I ran immediately toward him, and he retreated through the covered way into the parade within the garrison, gave a halloo, and ran under a bomb-proof[r]. My party, who followed me into the fort, I formed on the parade in such a manner as to face the two barracks, which faced each other.

5. The garrison being asleep, except the sentries, we gave three huzzas, which greatly surprised them. One of the sentries made a pass at one of my officers with a charged bayonet, and slightly wounded him. My first thought was to kill him with my sword; but, in an instant, I altered the design and fury of the blow to a slight cut on the side of the head, upon which he dropped his gun, and asked quarter, which I readily granted him, and demanded of him the place where the commanding officer slept.

6. He showed me a pair of stairs in the front of a barrack, on the west part of the garrison, which led up to a second story in said barrack, to which I immediately repaired, and ordered the commander, Captain de la Place, to come forth instantly, or I would sacrifice the whole garrison; at which the captain came immediately to the door with his breeches in his hand, when I ordered him to deliver me the fort instantly. He asked me by what authority I demanded it; I answered him, "*In the name of the Great Jehovah, and the Continental Congress.*"

7. The authority of the Congress being very little known at that time, he began to speak again; but I interrupted him, and, with my drawn sword over his head, again demanded an immediate surrender of the garrison; with which he then complied, and ordered his men to be forthwith paraded without arms, as he had given up the garrison. In the meantime, some of my officers had given orders, and in consequence

thereof, sundry of the barrack doors were beat down, and about one-third of the garrison imprisoned, which consisted of the said commander, a Lieutenant Feltham, a conductor of artillery, a gunner, two sergeants, and forty-four rank and file: about one hundred pieces of cannon, one thirteen-inch mortar^{v}, and a number of swivels^{v} were also taken.

8. This surprise was carried into execution in the gray of the morning of the 10th of May, 1775. The sun seemed to rise that morning with a superior lustre; and Ticonderoga and its dependencies smiled to its conquerors, who tossed about the flowing bowl, and wished success to Congress, and the liberty and freedom of America.—*Narrative of his own Captivity.*

Second Continental Congress.—The second Continental Congress had assembled at Philadelphia on the very day of the capture of Ticonderoga (May 10th). That body decided to raise an army of 20,000 men, and appointed Washington commander-in-chief.

The Appointment of General Washington.—*Sparks.*

1. THESE preliminary^{v} arrangements being finished, the next thing was to appoint a commander-in-chief of the American armies. This was a task of more delicacy and difficulty than might at first be supposed. Many considerations were to be weighed, besides the personal qualifications of any individual for that high station, either as to character, abilities, or military skill.

2. In the first place, it was essential that he should be acceptable to all the colonies, and particularly to such as, from their position and extent, would be compelled to take the largest share in the war. Otherwise, local jealousies and discontents might spring up, which would defeat the best-laid schemes, and possibly ruin the cause. Next, there were officers in the country, older in years than Colonel Washington, who had acquired a reputation in the last war, and whose services would be necessary.

3. To pass over such as would be thought by themselves or their friends to have higher claims, on the score of former

rank and standing, a point on which military men are always so sensitive, might be a hazardous experiment. Besides, the troops already in the field were wholly from the New England provinces, and it was uncertain how far they would be reconciled to the appointment of a commander from the South, with whom no one among them had a personal acquaintance, and who could not be supposed to understand their habits, feelings, and prepossessions[y]. General Ward, who had hitherto been at the head of the army by the appointment of Massachusetts, and whose command was cheerfully acquiesced[y] in by the other New England colonies, was an officer of experience and ability, and it was questionable in what light an attempt to supersede him might be viewed.

4. These difficulties were deeply felt by the members of Congress, and examined in all their bearings. Nor had they come together without previously pondering the subject, and ascertaining, as far as they could, the views of men of influence in different places. From the first Congress they had gone home with most favorable impressions of the character and talents of Colonel Washington. All the world acknowledged his military accomplishments, intellectual resources, courage, coolness, and control over the minds of others. Five years' experience, in a responsible and arduous service, had afforded ample proofs of these qualities.

5. It was fortunate, also, that political motives conspired to fix the choice on him in preference to any other person. Virginia was powerful in wealth and numbers, and doubly so in its men of brilliant parts, who had espoused the cause of the continent with a spirit and resolution which had nowhere else been surpassed. To take the commander of the American armies from that province was a dictate of policy, which the wise and prudent would not overlook, and none but the narrow-minded could disapprove.

6. It should be said, to the credit of the New England delegates, that they were among the foremost to propose, and the most zealous to promote, the appointment of Colonel Washington. As the contest had begun in Massachusetts, the inhabitants of

which had been the chief sufferers, and as the existing army was mostly raised there, it could not have been thought an extravagant assumption, had that colony aspired to the honor of furnishing a commander-in-chief. But, happily for America, the patriots of that day rose far above the sordid aims of selfishness and party rivalships.

7. While the discussions were going on in Congress respecting military preparations, Mr. John Adams, one of the delegates from Massachusetts, moved that the army, then besieging the British troops in Boston, should be adopted by Congress as a Continental army ; and, in the course of his observations enforcing this motion, he said it was his intention to propose for the office of commander-in-chief a gentleman from Virginia, who was at that time a member of their own body. His remarks were so pointed, that all present perceived them to apply to Colonel Washington, who, upon hearing this reference to himself, retired from his seat and withdrew.

8. When the day for the appointment arrived, the nomination was made by Mr. Thomas Johnson, of Maryland. The choice was by ballot; and, on inspecting the votes, it was found that Colonel Washington was unanimously elected. As soon as the result was ascertained, the House adjourned. On the convening of Congress the next morning, the president communicated to him officially the notice of his appointment, and he rose in his place and signified his acceptance in a brief and appropriate reply.

9. After expressing his thanks for the signal honor done him by Congress, and his concern, "from the consciousness that his abilities and military experience might not be equal to the extensive and important trust," he added: "lest some unlucky event should happen, unfavorable to my reputation, I beg it may be remembered by every gentleman in the room, that I this day declare, with the utmost sincerity, I do not think myself equal to the command I am honored with."

10. Before the election it had been voted that five hundred dollars a month should be allowed for the pay and expenses of the general. On this point he said: "I beg leave to assure

the Congress that, as no pecuniary[v] consideration could have tempted me to accept this arduous employment, at the expense of my domestic ease and happiness, I do not wish to make any profit from it. I will keep an exact account of my expenses. Those, I doubt not, they will discharge; and that is all I desire."

11. In a letter to his wife on this occasion, his sentiments are uttered with the same frankness, the same self-distrust, and under circumstances which prove them to have flowed from his heart. "You may believe me," said he, "when I assure you in the most solemn manner, that, so far from seeking this appointment, I have used every endeavor in my power to avoid it, not only from my unwillingness to part with you and the family, but from a consciousness of its being a trust too great for my capacity, and that I should enjoy more real happiness in one month with you at home, than I have the most distant prospect of finding abroad, if my stay were to be seven times seven years.

12. "But as it has been a kind of destiny that has thrown me upon this service, I shall hope that my undertaking it is designed to answer some good purpose. You might, and I suppose did, perceive, from the tenor of my letters, that I was apprehensive I could not avoid this appointment, as I did not pretend to intimate when I should return. That was the case. It was utterly out of my power to refuse this appointment, without exposing my character to such censures as would have reflected dishonor upon myself, and given pain to my friends. This, I am sure, could not and ought not to be pleasing to you, and must have lessened me considerably in my own esteem. I shall rely, therefore, confidently on that Providence which has hitherto preserved and been bountiful to me."

13. The appointment was made on the 15th of June. Four days afterward, he received his commission from the president of Congress, in which he was declared to be commander-in-chief of all the forces then raised, or that should be raised, in the United Colonies, or that should voluntarily offer their service for the defense of American liberty. The members of Congress pledged themselves, by a unanimous resolve, to maintain,

assist, and adhere to him, with their lives and fortunes, in the same cause.

14. Four major-generals and eight brigadiers were likewise appointed for the Continental army. To the former rank were chosen Artemus Ward, Charles Lee, Philip Schuyler (*ski'ler*), and Israel Putnam; to the latter, Seth Pomroy, Richard Montgomery, David Wooster, William Heath, Joseph Spencer, John Thomas, John Sullivan, and Nathaniel Greene. To these was added Horatio Gates, as adjutant-general, with the rank of brigadier.—*Life of Washington.*

Battle of Bunker Hill.—As it was evident that the British meditated offensive operations, Colonel Prescott was sent, on the evening of the 16th of June, with a detachment of one thousand men, to fortify Bunker Hill; but, on attaining the heights, he concluded to fortify Breed's Hill instead, this being nearer to Boston. The British, on the following morning, discovering the redoubt, commenced a cannonade upon it; and, this failing, three thousand men, under General Howe, were sent to dislodge the patriots.

Twice did the British approach within a few rods of the redoubt, but each time were repulsed with heavy loss. Clinton arriving, the third charge was more successful; since the Americans had exhausted their ammunition and were forced to retreat. The severest loss of the Americans was the brave and patriotic General Warren.* This determined, and for a time successful, resistance on the part of the American soldiers was so encouraging that it had all the effect of a triumph.†

Warren's Address.—*John Pierpont.*

STAND! the ground's your own, my braves!
Will ye give it up to slaves?
Will ye look for greener graves?
Hope ye mercy still?
What's the mercy despots feel?
Hear it in that battle-peal!
Read it on yon bristling steel!
Ask it—ye who will.

* Gen. Joseph Warren was born in Massachusetts in 1741; graduated at Harvard College, studied medicine, became a physician in Boston, and was one of the most earnest and eloquent leaders in resisting the unjust measures of the British Government. His loss was sincerely lamented by his countrymen.

† Bunker Hill monument, an obelisk two hundred and twenty-one feet high, erected in commemoration of the battle, now stands on the spot where the redoubt was built on Breed's Hill. Its corner-stone was laid by General Lafayette, on the 17th of June, 1825, the fiftieth anniversary of the battle. An immense concourse of persons was present on the occasion, including nearly two hundred revolutionary soldiers and forty surviving patriots of the battle, and President John Quincy Adams, with his entire cabinet. Daniel Webster delivered the oration.

Fear ye foes who kill for hire?
Will ye to your homes retire?
Look behind you! They're afire!
And, before you, see
Who have done it!—From the vale
On they come!—and will ye quail!—
Leaden rain and iron hail
Let their welcome be!

In the God of battles trust!
Die we may—and die we must;
But, oh, where can dust to dust
Be consigned so well,
As where heaven its dews shall shed,
On the martyred patriot's bed,
And the rocks shall raise their head,
Of his deeds to tell?

In their ragged regimentals
Stood the old Continentals,
Yielding not,
When the grenadiers were lunging,
And like hail fell the plunging
Cannon shot;
When the files
Of the Isles
From the smoky night encampment bore the banner of the rampant Unicorn;
And grummer, grummer, grummer, rolled the roll of the drummer
Through the morn.—*Mac Master.*

Conduct of Lord Dunmore.—Lord Dunmore, the governor of Virginia, took a decided course against the patriots; but, owing to the activity of Patrick Henry and others, he was compelled to make compensation for a quantity of powder which he had seized. Some months later, a force of Tories and negroes which he had collected attacked a body of Virginians near Norfolk; but the assailants were repulsed with great loss. In revenge, Dunmore, on the first day of the new year, reduced Norfolk to ashes.

Invasion of Canada.—To prevent the use of Canada by the British as a place of rendezvous and supply, an invasion by two forces was determined upon. Accordingly, Gen. Schuyler,* commanding one, was sent by the way of Lake Champlain; while the other, under Gen. Arnold, took the route by the Kennebec River. Schuyler proceeded but a short distance when, sickness

* Philip Schuyler was born at Albany, New York, in 1733. He was engaged in the French and Indian war, and accompanied Sir William Johnson in 1755. His death occurred at Albany, in 1804.

compelling him to return, the next in command, Gen. Montgomery,* gained possession of Fort Chambly (*sham'ble*), St. John's, and Montreal, and then moved against Quebec.

Arnold, having performed a tedious march through the wilderness, effected a junction of his force with that of Montgomery's, and, with the latter officer in the chief command, Quebec was besieged for three weeks. Finally, it was resolved to make an assault upon the city, notwithstanding the fearful strength of its fortifications.

Montgomery's Attack on Quebec.—*Parton.*

1. THE attack, it was agreed at the council of war, should take place at night, and in a snow-storm. By the 20th of December the preparations were complete, and nightly the little army awaited the signal, and the sentinel watched the heavens for signs of the gathering storm. The weather was bitterly cold; the small-pox was making fearful ravages among the troops; there was no hope of an alleviation[v] to their sufferings but in capturing the fortress-crowned heights above them.

2. The last night of the year 1775 had come; and a brilliant moon, when the patriot army retired to rest, was flooding with light the fields of snow, the ice-batteries, the town, and the lofty citadel. No one expected to be aroused that night by the familiar signal. But, at midnight, the heavens became suddenly overcast, and a northeasterly snow-storm, of unusual violence, came driving over the scene. The general was roused. At a glance he saw that the hour had come, and gave the order for the troops to get under arms.

3. Burr assisted in communicating the order to the divisions, and soon had his storming-party in readiness to move. By personal inspection, by the touch of his own hand, he assured himself that the men under his immediate direction were equipped as he had determined they should be on the decisive night. By two o'clock the men had been carefully inspected, and were ready to march to the points whence they were to assault the town.

4. About nine hundred men answered to their names that

* Richard Montgomery was born in Ireland, in 1736. In 1775, he was a representative from New York in the Continental Congress.

morning. They were divided into four parties, only two of which were designed to fight; the others were to distract the garrison by feints at places remote from the scene of serious attack. One of the fighting parties was led by Arnold; the other, in spite of the remonstrances of Burr and others of the general's family, was commanded by Montgomery, whose towering form appeared at the head of the column. At four o'clock the divisions had reached their designated posts. At five the signal of attack was given, and the chilled soldiers, impatient to move, began the ascent through the snow-drifts, and in the teeth of the storm.

5. Captain Burr marched side by side with his general at the head of the division, as it hurried along the St. Lawrence to the defenses under Cape Diamond. These were well known to the vigilant aid-de-camp[v]. First, the attacking party came upon a row of pickets, which the general, with his own hands, assisted to cut away. Pushing on through the snow and darkness, they reached, a few paces beyond, a second row of pickets, behind which was a square, two-story block-house, loop-holed above for musketry, and pierced below for two twelve-pounders, which, charged with grape, commanded the narrow gorge up which an enemy must advance.

6. It was not till the Americans had begun to remove the second row of pickets that the British guard became aware of the presence of an enemy. Delivering one ineffectual fire, they fled to the block-house, and, communicating their terror to the party within, who were mostly sailors and militia, the whole body fled without once discharging the cannon. But their panic, unfortunately, was not perceived by the Americans, and a delay, short but fatal, occurred.

7. Masses of ice, left on the winter subsidence[v] of the river, obstructed the ascent, and several minutes elapsed before a sufficient number of men could clamber over these and form within the second picket to attack the block-house. In smoothing the pathway, the general himself tugged at the great blocks of ice with furious energy. At length, two hundred men were formed in column. The general was at its head, as before. Burr was at his side.

8. Two other aids, an orderly sergeant, and a French guide, completed the group in advance. "Push on, brave boys, Quebec is ours," cried Montgomery, as the column began to move up the ascent. On they marched to within forty paces of the block-house. At that moment, a sailor who had fled from his post, surprised that the Americans did not advance, ventured back to discover the reason. Through one of the port-holes of the block-house he saw the advancing party, and turned to run away again; but as he turned, he performed an act which decided the fortunes of the day, and gave Canada back again to Britain. He touched off one of those grape-charged cannon.

9. Forward fell the majestic form of Montgomery, never to rise again. Down went two of his aids, mortally wounded. The orderly sergeant, too, never saw daylight again. Every man that marched in front of the column, except Captain Burr and the guide, was struck down to death by the discharge of that twelve-pounder. The day was just dawning, and the soldiers were soon aware of the whole extent of the catastrophe. The column halted and wavered. The command fell into incompetent hands. Priceless minutes were lost in those *consultations* by which cowardice loves to hide its trepidation. . . . . The enemy returned to the block-house, and opened fire on the assailants. The retreat soon became a precipitate and disorderly retreat.—*Life of Aaron Burr.*

Evacuation of Canada.—Arnold, though wounded, took command of the troops that had effected a retreat, and, in an encampment a short distance from Quebec, passed a rigorous winter. In the spring, Gen. Wooster arrived and took the command; and he, in turn, was succeeded by Gen. Thomas. By the middle of June, 1776, the Americans had abandoned one place after another, and entirely evacuated Canada.

Events of 1776.—Evacuation of Boston.—Washington, who had arrived at Cambridge about three weeks after his appointment as commander-in-chief, and had there taken command of the army, determined to drive the British from Boston; but no plan of operations was fully determined upon before the early part of March, 1776. Then, in one night, intrenchments were thrown up on Dor'ches-ter Heights, which completely commanded the city and harbor of Boston.

Gen. Howe, who had succeeded Gage in the command, being unable to dislodge the Americans, informally agreed to evacuate the city without setting fire to it, upon condition that, while doing so, his army should not be molested from the batteries on the heights. Accordingly, on the 17th of March, 1776, the British troops, accompanied by fifteen hundred families of loyalists, embarked on board the ships in the harbor, and sailed for Halifax.

Repulse of the British from Charleston.—General Clinton, at the head of an expedition, set out to attack New York, but finding that Washington had sent General Lee thither with a force to protect the city, he sailed further south, and was joined by Sir Peter Parker and Lord Cornwallis with a fleet and troops from England. The whole force then proceeded against Charleston.

The people of Charleston had made preparations against an attack, by erecting a fort of palmetto-wood on Sullivan's Island, which commanded the channel leading to the town. This was garrisoned by five hundred men, under Col. Moultrie (*mōle'tre*). On the morning of the 28th of June, the fleet approached Sullivan's Island; but, after a conflict of nine hours, during which Clinton was defeated in an attempt to reach the island, the ships, much shattered, drew off, and afterward sailed to the North.

Declaration of Independence.—In the meantime, Congress, then in session at Philadelphia, was preparing to declare a separation of the political relations existing between Great Britain and the colonies. A resolution to that effect having been offered by Richard Henry Lee, of Virginia, on the 7th of June, was passed by a large majority on the 2d of July. Two days after, Thomas Jefferson, of Virginia, in behalf of a committee of five members, presented a document which he had prepared; and then, July 4th, 1776, this document, the DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE, was unanimously adopted by Congress.

Independence Bell.—July 4th, 1776.—*Anon.*

WHEN it was certain that the Declaration of Independence would be adopted by Congress, it was resolved to announce the event by ringing the old State-House bell, which bore the inscription: "Proclaim liberty to the land: to all the inhabitants thereof!" The old bellman, accordingly, placed his little son at the door of the hall, to await the instruction of the doorkeeper when to ring; and, when the word was given, the little patriot-scion rushed out, and, flinging up his hands, shouted aloud, "*Ring!* RING! RING!"

1. There was tumult in the city,
In the quaint old Quakers' town,
And the streets were rife with people,
Pacing restless up and down;—
People gathering at corners,
Where they whispered each to each,
And the sweat stood on their temples,
With the earnestness of speech.

2. As the bleak Atlantic currents
Lash the wild Newfoundland shore,
So they beat against the State-House,
So they surged against the door;
And the mingling of their voices
Made a harmony profound,
Till the quiet street of Chestnut
Was all turbulent with sound.

3. "Will they do it?" "Dare they do it?"
"Who is speaking?" "What's the news?"
"What of Adams?" "What of Sherman?"
"Oh, God grant they won't refuse!"
"Make some way there!" "Let me nearer!"
"I am stifling!" "Stifle, then!
When a nation's life's at hazard,
We've no time to think of men!"

4. So they beat against the portal,
Man and woman, maid and child;
And the July sun in heaven
On the scene look'd down and smiled;
The same sun that saw the Spartan
Shed his patriot blood in vain,
Now beheld the soul of freedom
All unconquer'd rise again.

5. See! See! The dense crowd quivers
Through all its lengthy line,
As the boy beside the portal
Looks forth to give the sign!
With his small hands upward lifted,
Breezes dallying with his hair,
Hark! with deep, clear intonation,
Breaks his young voice on the air.

6. Hush'd the people's swelling murmur,
List the boy's strong, joyous cry!
"*Ring!*" he shouts, "RING! *Grandpa*,
RING! OH, RING FOR LIBERTY!"
And straightway, at the signal,
The old bellman lifts his hand,
And sends the good news, making
Iron music through the land.

7. How they shouted! What rejoicing!
How the old bell shook the air,
Till the clang of freedom ruffled
The calm, gliding Delaware!
How the bonfires and the torches
Illumed the night's repose,
And from the flames, like Phœnix,
Fair Liberty arose!

8. That old bell now is silent,
And hush'd its iron tongue,
But the spirit it awakened
Still lives,—forever young.
And while we greet the sunlight,
On the fourth of each July,
We'll ne'er forget the bellman,
Who, twixt the earth and sky,
Rung out OUR INDEPENDENCE:
Which, please God, *shall never die!*

Speech of John Adams.—*Webster.*

[John Adams was the most prominent advocate of the Declaration of Independence in Congress. The following speech, though not that which he delivered (for no report of it is extant), embodies the sentiments and some of the expressions which he is known to have uttered on the occasion of the consideration and final passage of the Declaration. It forms a part of Daniel Webster's great oration in eulogy of Adams and Jefferson, pronounced on the 2d of August, 1826.]

1. SINK or swim, live or die, survive or perish, I give my hand and my heart to this vote. It is true, indeed, that in the beginning we aimed not at independence. But "there's a Divinity which shapes our ends." The injustice of England has driven us to arms; and, blinded to her own interest for our good, she has obstinately persisted, till independence is now

within our grasp. We have but to reach forth to it, and it is ours.

2. Why, then, should we defer the Declaration? Is any man so weak as now to hope for a reconciliation with England, which shall leave either safety to the country and its liberties, or safety to her own life and honor? Are not you, sir, who sit in that chair; is not he, our venerable colleague[v] near you; are you not both already the proscribed[v] and predestined[v] objects of punishment and vengeance? Cut off from all hope of royal clemency, what are you, what can you be, while the power of England remains, but outlaws?

3. If we postpone independence, do we mean to carry on, or give up, the war? Do we mean to submit to the measures of Parliament[v], Boston Port Bill and all? Do we mean to submit and consent that we ourselves shall be ground to powder, and our country and its rights trodden down in the dust? I know we do not mean to submit. We never shall submit. Do we intend to violate that most solemn obligation ever entered into by men, that plighting[v] before God, of our sacred honor to Washington, when putting him forth to incur the dangers of war, as well as the political hazards of the times, we promised to adhere to him, in every extremity, with our fortunes and our lives?

4. I know there is not a man here who would not rather see a general conflagration[v] sweep over the land, or an earthquake sink it, than one jot or tittle of that plighted faith fall to the ground. For myself, having, twelve months ago, in this place, moved you, that George Washington be appointed commander of the forces raised, or to be raised, for defense of American liberty, may my right hand forget her cunning, and my tongue cleave to the roof of my mouth, if I hesitate or waver in the support I give him.

5. The war, then, must go on. We must fight it through. And if the war must go on, why put off longer the Declaration of Independence? That measure will strengthen us. It will give us character abroad. The nations will treat with us, which they can never do while we acknowledge ourselves sub-

jects in arms against our sovereign. Nay, I maintain that England herself will sooner treat for peace with us on the footing of independence, than consent, by repealing her acts, to acknowledge that her whole conduct toward us has been a course of injustice and oppression.

6. Her pride will be less wounded by submitting to that course of things which now predestinates our independence, than by yielding the points in controversy to her rebellious subjects. The former she would regard as the result of fortune; the latter she would feel as her own deep disgrace. Why, then, why then, sir, do we not as soon as possible change this from a civil to a national war? And since we must fight it through, why not put ourselves in a state to enjoy all the benefits of victory, if we gain the victory?

7. If we fail, it can be no worse for us. But we shall not fail. The cause will raise up armies; the cause will create navies. The people, the people, if we are true to them, will carry us, and will carry themselves, gloriously through this struggle. I care not how fickle other people have been found. I know the people of these colonies, and I know that resistance to British aggression is deep and settled in their hearts, and cannot be eradicated[v]. Every colony, indeed, has expressed its willingness to follow, if we but take the lead. Sir, the Declaration will inspire the people with increased courage.

8. Instead of a long and bloody war for the restoration of privileges, for redress of grievances, for chartered immunities[v], held under a British king, set before them the glorious object of entire independence, and it will breathe into them anew the breath of life. Read this Declaration at the head of the army; every sword will be drawn from its scabbard, and the solemn vow uttered to maintain it or to perish on the bed of honor. Publish it from the pulpit; religion will approve it, and the love of religious liberty will cling around it, resolved to stand with it or fall with it. Send it to the public halls; proclaim it there; let them hear it who heard the first roar of the enemy's cannon; let them see it who saw their brothers and their sons fall on the field of Bunker Hill and in the streets of Lexing-

ton and Concord, and the very walls will cry out in its support.

9. Sir, I know the uncertainty of human affairs; but I see, I see clearly through this day's business. You and I, indeed, may rue it. We may not live to the time when this Declaration shall be made good. We may die; die colonists; die slaves; die, it may be, ignominiously, and on the scaffold. Be it so. Be it so. If it be the pleasure of Heaven that my country shall require the poor offering of my life, the victim shall be ready at the appointed hour of sacrifice, come when that hour may. But while I do live, let me have a country, or at least the hope of a country, and that a free country.

10. But whatever may be our fate, be assured, be assured that this Declaration will stand. It may cost treasure, and it may cost blood; but it will stand, and it will richly compensate for both. Through the thick gloom of the present, I see the brightness of the future, as the sun in heaven. We shall make this a glorious, an immortal day. When we are in our graves, our children will honor it. They will celebrate it with thanksgiving, with festivity, with bonfires and illuminations.

11. On its annual return they will shed tears, copious, gushing tears, not of subjection and slavery, not of agony and distress, but of exultation, of gratitude, and of joy. Sir, before God, I believe the hour is come. My judgment approves this measure, and my whole heart is in it. All that I have, and all that I am, and all that I hope, in this life, I am now ready to stake upon it; and I leave off as I begun, that, live or die, survive or perish, I am for the Declaration. It is my living sentiment, and, by the blessing of God, it shall be my dying sentiment, Independence *now* and INDEPENDENCE FOREVER.*

* The old State-House, in Philadelphia, where Congress met, is still standing. It is generally known by the name of Independence Hall, though the room in which the Declaration of Independence was adopted and signed, received at first that appellation. The building was erected in 1735, but its bell tower was not put up until 1750. A bell which was imported from England, expressly for the tower, was found cracked upon its arrival, and thereupon it was recast in the city of Philadelphia, and raised to its place in 1753. This is the bell spoken of in the preceding selection as "Independence Bell."

The Declaration of Independence.

[The Committee appointed by Congress to draw up in proper form a Declaration of the Independence of the American colonies, consisted of Thomas Jefferson, John Adams, Benjamin Franklin, Roger Sherman, and Robert R. Livingston. The Declaration adopted was written by Thomas Jefferson.]

A Declaration by the Representatives of the United States of America in Congress assembled, July 4th, 1776.

When, in the course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another, and to assume, among the powers of the earth, the separate and equal station to which the laws of nature and of nature's God entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation.

We hold these truths to be self-evident, that all men are created equal; that they are endowed by their Creator with certain unalienable[v] rights; that among these are life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness. That to secure these rights, governments are instituted among men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed; that, whenever any form of government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the right of the people to alter or to abolish it, and to institute a new government, laying its foundation on such principles, and organizing its powers in such form, as to them shall seem most likely to effect their safety and happiness. Prudence, indeed, will dictate that governments long established, should not be changed for light and transient causes; and, accordingly, all experience hath shown, that mankind are more disposed to suffer, while evils are sufferable, than to right themselves by abolishing the forms to which they are accustomed. But, when a long train of abuses and usurpations[v], pursuing invariably the same object, evinces a design to reduce them under absolute despotism[v], it is their right, it is their duty, to throw off such government, and to provide new guards for their future security. Such has been the patient

sufferance of these colonies, and such is now the necessity which constrains them to alter their former systems of government. The history of the present king of Great Britain is a history of repeated injuries and usurpations, all having, in direct object, the establishment of an absolute tyranny over these States. To prove this, let facts be submitted to a candid world:

He has refused his assent to laws the most wholesome and necessary for the public good.*

He has forbidden his governors to pass laws of immediate and pressing importance, unless suspended in their operation till his assent should be obtained; and, when so suspended, he has utterly neglected to attend to them.†

He has refused to pass other laws for the accommodation of large districts of people, unless those people would relinquish the right of representation in the legislature; a right inestimable to them, and formidable to tyrants only.‡

He has called together legislative bodies at places unusual, uncomfortable, and distant from the depository of their public records, for the sole purpose of fatiguing them into compliance with his measures.§

He has dissolved representative houses repeatedly, for opposing, with manly firmness, his invasions on the rights of the people.‖

He has refused, for a long time after such dissolutions, to cause others to be elected; whereby the legislative powers, incapable of annihilation, have returned to the people at large

* That is, laws passed by the Colonial Assemblies, in relation to commerce, finance, etc.

† Some of the Provincial governors endeavored to conciliate the Indian tribes by treaties of alliance and other measures; but the king, fearing that the colonists would thus acquire too much strength, and be less dependent upon the British crown, instructed the governors to desist from all such measures till his consent should be given; and failed subsequently to give such consent.

‡ In 1774, a bill was passed which took the government of Massachusetts out of the hands of the people, vesting the nomination of judges, etc. in the crown. It also abridged the privilege of popular election. The people then demanded the passage of laws for the "accommodation of large districts of people," but were told that they must first "relinquish the right of representation in the legislature."

§ This has reference to the passage of the Boston Port Bill, by which the Custom-House, Courts, etc., were removed to Salem; while the public records were kept at Boston.

‖ The Colonial Assembly of Massachusetts, in 1768, invited by circular the other Assemblies to join it in opposing the urgent measures of Great Britain, and was dissolved for so doing. Other Assemblies were dissolved for similar reasons, and in the same arbitrary manner.

for their exercise; the state remaining, in the meantime, exposed to all the danger of invasion from without, and convulsions within.*

He has endeavored to prevent the population of these states; for that purpose, obstructing the laws for the naturalization of foreigners; refusing to pass others to encourage their migration[v] hither, and raising the conditions of new appropriations of lands.†

He has obstructed the administration of justice, by refusing his assent to laws for establishing judiciary[v] powers.‡

He has made judges dependent on his will alone, for the tenure[v] of their offices, and the amount and payment of their salaries.§

He has erected a multitude of new offices, and sent hither swarms of officers to harass our people, and eat out their substance.‖

He has kept among us, in times of peace, standing armies, without the consent of our legislatures.¶

He has affected to render the military independent of, and superior to, the civil power.**

He has combined with others to subject us to a jurisdiction foreign to our constitution, and unacknowledged by our laws; giving his assent to their acts of pretended legislation:††

For quartering large bodies of armed troops among us;‡‡

For protecting them, by a mock trial, from punishment, for

* This was the case in regard to the Assemblies of New York and Massachusetts, which were dissolved by royal authority, and not permitted to re-assemble for several months, the States in the meantime being in great peril of "invasion from without, and convulsions within."

† The king dreaded the increasing power of the colonies, as well as the advance of democratic ideas in them. The German immigration was especially checked by obstacles and discouragements.

‡ By the Act of 1774, Massachusetts was deprived of its own judiciary, the judges being appointed by the king.

§ The salaries of the judges were paid under the royal authority, from moneys obtained from the people.

‖ The passage of the Stamp Act, and the other similar acts, gave rise to the appointment of swarms of tax-collectors, etc.

¶ The armies employed in the French and Indian War were continued in the colonies after the treaty of 1763.

** Thus General Gage, a military commander, was made governor of Massachusetts; and the military were employed to enforce the Boston Port Bill.

†† The Board of Trade was created to act independently of colonial legislation, and almost absolute power was conferred on the king.

‡‡ Large forces were levied and sent over by vote of the English Parliament, to control the inhabitants.

any murders which they should commit on the inhabitants of these states;*

For cutting off our trade with all parts of the world;†

For imposing taxes on us without our consent;‡

For depriving us, in many cases, of the benefit of trial by jury;§

For transporting us beyond seas to be tried for pretended offences;‖

For abolishing the free system of English laws in a neighboring province, establishing therein an arbitrary government, and enlarging its boundaries, so as to render it at once an example and fit instrument for introducing the same absolute rule into these colonies;¶

For taking away our charters, abolishing our most valuable laws, and altering, fundamentally, the powers of our governments;**

For suspending our own legislatures, and declaring themselves invested with power to legislate for us in all cases whatsoever.††

He has abdicated[r] government here, by declaring us out of his protection, and waging war against us.‡‡

He has plundered our seas, ravaged our coasts, burnt our towns, and destroyed the lives of our people.§§

* In 1768, some mariners were tried in Annapolis, Md., for the murder of two citizens, and in the face of clear proof of their guilt were acquitted. Similar instances occurred in other places.

† Such had been the result of the Navigation Acts. The British navy was also employed to break up the colonial trade with the French and Spanish West Indies.

‡ Such as the Stamp duties, the tax on paper, painters' colors, tea, etc.

§ In trials for violations of the revenue laws, under the Commissioners of Customs, the accused were not allowed the benefit of a jury.

‖ Persons charged with riot, resistance to the magistrates, might, by a law passed in 1774, be transported to Great Britain or other places, for trial.

¶ The law of 1774 (referred to on p. 162), abolished the popular legislature in Canada, and appointed royal officers to make laws for the province, except to raise taxes. This gave the British a firm hold of Canada, and enabled them to use it to advantage against the colonies during the Revolution: hence the efforts of Congress to gain possession of that province in 1775.

** This was done in the case of the judiciary of Massachusetts, already referred to. Other officers besides judges were made dependent on the crown, in opposition to the chartered rights of the people.

†† After the dissolution of the colonial legislatures, before mentioned, several of the governors presumed to legislate arbitrarily for the colonies, giving to their proclamations the force of laws.

‡‡ The king, in 1775, declared the colonies in open rebellion; and he sanctioned the acts of the governors in employing Indian warfare against them. He also employed German mercenaries to war against them. In these acts he abdicated the proper functions of government, and placed the colonies beyond the pale of his protection.

§§ These acts were performed by the naval commanders. Charlestown was burned by the British fleet.

He is, at this time, transporting large armies of foreign mercenaries[v] to complete the works of death, desolation, and tyranny already begun, with circumstances of cruelty and perfidy[v] scarcely paralleled in the most barbarous ages, and totally unworthy the head of a civilized nation.*

He has constrained our fellow-citizens, taken captive on the high seas, to bear arms against their country, to become the executioners of their friends and brethren, or to fall themselves by their hands.†

He has excited domestic insurrections amongst us, and has endeavored to bring on the inhabitants of our frontiers the merciless Indian savages, whose known rule of warfare is an undistinguished destruction of all ages, sexes, and conditions.‡

In every stage of these oppressions, we have petitioned for redress, in the most humble terms; our repeated petitions have been answered only by repeated injury. A prince, whose character is thus marked by every act which may define a tyrant, is unfit to be the ruler of a free people.

Nor have we been wanting in attention to our British brethren. We have warned them, from time to time, of attempts made by their Legislature to extend an unwarrantable jurisdiction over us. We have reminded them of the circumstances of our emigration and settlement here. We have appealed to their native justice and magnanimity, and we have conjured them, by the ties of our common kindred, to disavow these usurpations, which would inevitably[v] interrupt our connections and correspondence. They, too, have been deaf to the voice of justice and consanguinity[v]. We must, therefore, acquiesce in the necessity which denounces our separation, and hold them, as we hold the rest of mankind, enemies in war, in peace, friends.

We, therefore, the representatives of the United States of

---

* This is covered, in a general way, in the article already referred to.

† The crews of American ships captured by the British, were, by Act of Parliament, treated not as prisoners of war, but as *slaves*, and were impressed into the king's service.

‡ Dunmore, in Virginia, endeavored to excite the slaves to rise against their masters. The Indians were, under instructions from the British ministry, instigated by several of the colonial governors to attack the colonists. Dreadful massacres were the consequence.

America, in general Congress assembled, appealing to the Supreme Judge of the world for the rectitude of our intentions, do, in the name and by the authority of the good people of these colonies, solemnly publish and declare, that these United Colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent States; that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British crown, and that all political connection between them and the state of Great Britain is, and ought to be, totally dissolved; and that, as free and independent States, they have full power to levy war, conclude peace, contract alliances, establish commerce, and to do all other acts and things which independent States may of right do. And, for the support of this declaration, with a firm reliance on the protection of Divine Providence, we mutually pledge to each other our lives, our fortunes, and our sacred honor.

The foregoing declaration was, by order of Congress, engrossed, and signed by the following members:

JOHN HANCOCK.

New Hampshire.
Josiah Bartlett,
William Whipple,
Matthew Thornton.

Massachusetts Bay.
Samuel Adams,
John Adams,
Robert Treat Paine,
Elbridge Gerry.

Rhode Island.
Stephen Hopkins,
William Ellery.

Connecticut.
Roger Sherman,
Samuel Huntington,
William Williams,
Oliver Wolcott.

New York.
William Floyd,
Philip Livingston,
Francis Lewis,
Lewis Morris.

New Jersey.
Richard Stockton,
John Witherspoon,
Francis Hopkinson,
John Hart,
Abraham Clark.

Pennsylvania.
Robert Morris,
Benjamin Rush,
Benjamin Franklin,
John Morton,
George Clymer,
James Smith,
George Taylor,
James Wilson,
George Ross.

Delaware.
Cæsar Rodney,
George Read,
Thomas M'Kean.

Maryland.
Samuel Chase,
William Paca,
Thomas Stone,
Charles Carroll, of Carrollton.

Virginia.
George Wythe,
Richard Henry Lee,
Thomas Jefferson,
Benjamin Harrison,
Thomas Nelson, Jr.,
Francis Lightfoot Lee,
Carter Braxton.

North Carolina.
William Hooper,
Joseph Hewes,
John Penn.

South Carolina.
Edward Rutledge,
Thomas Heyward, Jr.,
Thomas Lynch, Jr.,
Arthur Middleton.

Georgia.
Button Gwinnett,
Lyman Hall,
George Walton.

Debate in Congress on the Declaration.

H. S. Randall.

1. "THE Great Charter" did not pass that body without encountering a fiery ordeal[v]. The steadiness and force of the resistance it encountered, Mr. Jefferson afterwards compared to "the ceaseless action of gravity weighing upon us by night and by day." He did not attempt to say a word for it himself, thinking "it a duty to be on that occasion a passive auditor of the opinions of others, more impartial judges than he could be of its merits or demerits."

2. But this passiveness does not appear to have entirely embraced his feelings. Several passages in his writings show that he felt with natural sensibility the sharp attack on both the matter and form of his intellectual progeny[v]. In one of these he says: "During the debate I was sitting by Dr. Franklin, and he observed that *I was writhing a little* under the acrimonious[v] criticisms of some of its parts; and it was on that occasion that, by way of comfort, he told me the story of John Thompson, the hatter, and his new sign." *

3. But the calm pulse kept pretty good time! The pocket account-book, the meteorological[v] table, etc., all show that the usual precise routine of matters was neither overlooked nor disturbed during the three days of the galling debate. John Adams was the great champion of the Declaration on the floor, indulging in none of the milk-and-honey criticisms of his Pickering letter (about the "personality" of George III., a

* The following is the incident, as related by Franklin: "When I was a journeyman printer, one of my companions, an apprentice hatter, having served out his time, was about to open shop himself. His first concern was to have a handsome sign-board, with a proper inscription. He composed it in these words: 'John Thompson, Hatter, *makes and sells hats for ready money*,' with a figure of a hat subjoined; but he thought he would submit it to his friends for their amendments. The first he showed it to, thought the word *hatter* tautologous, because followed by the words '*makes hats*,' which showed he was a hatter. It was struck out. The next observed that the word '*makes*' might as well be omitted, because his customers would not care who made the hats. If good and to their mind, they would buy, by whomsoever made. He struck it out. A third said he thought the words '*for ready money*' were useless, as it was not the custom of the place to sell on credit. Every one who purchased expected to pay. They were parted with, and the inscription now stood, 'John Thompson sells hats.' '*Sells* hats!' says his next friend; 'why, nobody will expect you to give them away; what then is the use of that word?' It was stricken out, and 'hats' followed it, the rather as there was one painted on the board. So the inscription was reduced ultimately to 'John Thompson,' with the figure of a hat subjoined."

tyrant, etc.), but fighting fearlessly for every word of it—and with a power to which a mind masculine and impassioned in its conceptions—a will of torrent-like force—a heroism which only glared forth more luridly at the approach of danger—and a patriotism whose burning throb was rather akin to the feeling of a parent fighting over his offspring than to the colder sentiment of tamer minds, lent limitless sway.

4. The meed of praise to the principal defender comes appropriately from the author of the Declaration. No other pen has done, and all other pens have not done, half so much as Jefferson's, to impress the public mind with the magnitude of John Adams's splendid services—with the glorious display of his, in some respects, pre-eminent[v] abilities, on that memorable occasion. His written tributes to Mr. Adams are numerous and glowing; and that "he was the Colossus in that debate," was a tribute he never withheld from him during the sharpest rivalries or ensuing alienations.

5. Collect all the instances of John Adams's faults and foibles, and occasional insanities almost, and grave political errors, to be found in truthful record, and then expunge all the memorials of his great and good deeds and private virtues, except from the writings of Jefferson; and, from the latter alone, the reader who has a heart would turn away from the dark strokes of the picture, and exclaim, in the language of one of Mr. Jefferson's descendants, "Glorious old John Adams."—*Life of Jefferson.*

Reading of the Declaration to the Army.

(*Pennsylvania Journal of July* 17, 1776.)

1. This afternoon (July 10) the Declaration of Independence was read at the head of each brigade of the Continental Army, posted at and in the vicinity of New York. It was received everywhere with loud huzzas, and the utmost demonstrations of joy; and to-night the equestrian[v] statue of George III., which Tory pride and folly raised in the year 1770, has, by the Sons of Freedom, been laid prostrate in the dirt—the just desert of an ungrateful tyrant!

2. The lead wherewith the monument was made is to be run into bullets, to assimilate[v] with the brains of our infatuated[v] adversaries, who, to gain a pepper-corn, have lost an empire. A gentleman who was present at this ominous fall of leaden majesty, looking back to the original's hopeful beginning, pertinently[v] exclaimed, in the language of the Angel to Lucifer,*

"If thou beest he; but, O how fallen! how changed!"

3. A few hours before the Declaration was read, the light dragoon regiment of Connecticut troops arrived in the city, and paraded on horseback through the streets, making a noble and martial appearance. Nothing could be more agreeable or animating to all the true friends of their country, than the sight of this corps, which is composed of the substantial yeomanry of a virtuous sister State. Some of them assisted, in their present uniforms, at the first reduction of Louisburg; and their "lank, lean cheeks and war-worn coats," are viewed with more veneration by their *honest* countrymen, than if they were glittering nabobs from India, or bashaws[v] with nine tails.

Battle of Long Island.—*Holmes.*

1. It had early occurred to Washington, that the central situation of New York, with the numerous advantages attending the possession of that city, would render its reduction an object of the first importance to the British. Under this impression, before the enemy evacuated[v] Boston, he had detached General Lee from Cambridge, to put Long Island and New York into a posture of defense. Soon after the evacuation, he followed, and fixed his headquarters in New York, where the greater part of the troops rendezvoused[v]. A part of the residue was left in Massachusetts; and about two or three thousand were ordered to Canada.

2. At the opening of the campaign, Congress instituted a flying camp, to consist of an intermediate corps, between regular soldiers and militia; and called for ten thousand men from the States of Pennsylvania, Maryland, and Delaware, to be in

* More correctly, of Satan to Beelzebub. See Milton's "*Paradise Lost*," *Book I.*

constant service to the first day of the ensuing December; and for thirteen thousand eight hundred of the common militia from Massachusetts, Connecticut, New York, and New Jersey.

3. The command of the British force, destined to operate against New York, was given to Admiral Lord Howe, and his brother, Sir William; who, in addition to their military powers, were appointed commissioners for restoring peace to the colonies. General Howe, after waiting two months at Halifax for his brother and the expected re-enforcements from England, sailed with the force which he had previously commanded in Boston; and, directing his course toward New York, arrived on the 25th of June, off Sandy Hook. Admiral Lord Howe, with part of the re-enforcements from England, arrived at Halifax soon after his brother's departure; and, without dropping anchor, followed and joined him on the 12th of July at Staten Island.

4. General Clinton arrived there about the same time, with the troops brought back from the expedition against Charleston, South Carolina; Commodore Hotham also appeared there, with the re-enforcement under his escort; and in a short time the army amounted to about twenty-four thousand men, English, Hessians, and Waldeckers. The royal commissioners, before they commenced military operations, attempted to effect a reunion between the Colonies and Great Britain. Lord Howe announced his pacific powers to the principal magistrates of the several colonies. He promised pardon to all who, in the late times, had deviated from their allegiance, on condition of their speedily returning to their duty; and, in case of their compliance, encouraged their expectation of the future favor of the sovereign.

5. In his declaration he observed, "That the commissioners were authorized, in his majesty's name, to declare any province, colony, county, district, or town, to be at the peace of his majesty; and that due consideration should be had to the meritorious services of any who should aid or assist in restoring the public tranquillity; that their dutiful representatives should be received, pardons granted, and suitable encouragement to

such as would promote the measures of legal government and peace; in pursuance of his majesty's most gracious purposes." The matter and the form of these pacificatory proposals were too exceptionable to be for a moment seriously regarded.

6. The British forces waited so long to receive accessions from Halifax, South Carolina, Florida, the West Indies, and Europe, that the month of August was far advanced before they were in a condition to open the campaign. The first and second divisions of German troops, under General De Heister, amounting to about nine thousand, arrived at New York on the 12th of August; and one hundred of the English guards joined the army of General Howe. The British commanders, having resolved to make their first attempt on Long Island, landed their troops, estimated at about twenty-four thousand men, at Gravesend Bay, to the right of the Narrows.

7. The Americans, to the number of fifteen thousand, under Major-General Sullivan, were posted on a peninsula between Mill Creek, a little above Red Hook, and an elbow of East River, called Whaaleboght (*walla-bout*) Bay. Here they had erected strong fortifications, which were separated from New York by East River, at the distance of a mile. A line of entrenchment from the Mill Creek inclosed a large space of ground, on which stood the American camp, near the village of Brooklyn. This line was secured by abatis, and flanked by strong redoubts.

8. The armies were separated by a range of hills, covered with a thick wood, which intersect the country from west to east, terminating on the east near Jamaica. Through these hills there were three roads; one near the Narrows, a second on the Flatbush road, and a third on the Bedford road; and these were the only passes from the south side of the hills to the American lines, excepting a road which led to Jamaica, round the easterly end of the hills. General Putnam, agreeably to the instructions of General Washington, had detached a considerable part of his men to occupy the woody hills and passes; but in the performance of this service there appears to have been a deficiency, either of skill or of vigilance.

9. When the whole British army was landed, the Hessians, under General De Heister, composed the centre at Flatbush; Major-General Grant commanded the left wing, which extended to the coast; and the principal army, under the command of General Clinton, Earl Percy, and Lord Cornwallis, turned short to the right, and approached the opposite coast at Flatland. The position of the Americans having been reconnoitred, Sir William Howe, from the intelligence given him, determined to attempt to turn their left flank. The right wing of his army, consisting of a strong advanced corps, commanded by General Clinton and supported by the brigades under Lord Percy, began, at nine o'clock at night on the 26th of August, to move from Flatland; and, passing through the New Lots, arrived on the road that crosses the hills from Bedford to Jamaica.

10. Having taken a patrol, they seized the pass, without alarming the Americans. At half after eight in the morning, the British troops, having passed the heights and reached Bedford, began an attack on the left of the American army. In the centre, General De Heister, soon after daylight, had begun to cannonade the troops which occupied the direct road to Brooklyn, and which were commanded by General Sullivan in person. As soon as the firing toward Bedford was heard, De Heister advanced and attacked the centre of the Americans, who, after a warm engagement, were routed and driven into the woods.

11. The firing toward Bedford giving them the alarming notice that the British had turned their left flank, and were getting completely into their rear, they endeavored to escape to the camp. The sudden rout of this party enabled De Heister to detach a part of his force against those who were engaged near Bedford. There also the Americans were broken and driven into the woods; and the front of the British column, led by General Clinton, continuing to move forward, intercepted and engaged those whom De Heister had routed, and drove them back into the woods. There they again met the Hessians, who drove them back on the British. Thus alternately chased and intercepted, some forced their way through

the enemy to the lines at Brooklyn; several saved themselves in the coverts of the woods; but a great part of the detachment was killed or taken.

12. The left column, led by General Grant, advancing from the Narrows along the coast, to divert the attention of the Americans from the principal attack on the right, had about midnight fallen in with Lord Stirling's advanced guard, stationed at a strong pass, and compelled them to relinquish it. As they were slowly retiring, they were met on the summit of the hills about break of day by Lord Stirling, who had been directed, with the two nearest regiments, to meet the British on the road leading from the Narrows. Lord Stirling having posted his men advantageously, a furious cannonade commenced on both sides, which continued several hours.

13. The firing toward Brooklyn, where the fugitives were pursued by the British, giving notice to Lord Stirling that the enemy had gained his rear, he instantly gave orders to retreat across a creek near the Yellow Mills. The more effectually to secure the retreat of the main body of the detachment, he determined to attack in person a British corps under Lord Cornwallis, stationed at a house somewhat above the place where he proposed to cross the creek.

14. With about four hundred men, drawn out of Smallwood's regiment for that purpose, he made a very spirited attack, and brought up this small corps several times to the charge, with confident expectations of dislodging Lord Cornwallis from his post. But, the force in his front increasing, and General Grant now advancing on his rear, he was compelled to surrender himself and his brave men prisoners of war. This bold attempt, however, gave opportunity to a large part of the detachment to cross the creek, and effect an escape.

15. The enemy encamped in front of the American lines; and, on the succeeding night, broke ground within six hundred yards of a redoubt[v] on the left. In this critical state of the American army on Long Island; in front a numerous and victorious enemy, with a formidable train of artillery; the fleet indicating an intention to force a passage into East River to make some

attempt on New York; the troops lying without shelter from heavy rains, fatigued and dispirited; it was determined to withdraw from the island; and this difficult movement was effected with great skill and judgment, and with complete success.*—*Annals of America.*

Retreat of Washington.—Influenced by his officers, Washington retreated to the northern part of New York Island, and then to White Plains. Here a partial engagement, to the disadvantage of the Americans, took place on the 28th of October, when they withdrew to North Castle. Instead of following, the British general turned his attention to the forts on the Hudson.

Leaving one detachment, under Lee,† at North Castle, another, under Colonel Magaw, at Fort Washington, and a third, under General Heath, at Peekskill, Washington crossed the Hudson and entered New Jersey. On the 16th of November, the British attacked Fort Washington, and, although they were successful, the victory cost them a thousand men. The loss to the Americans in the number of troops surrendered was also very heavy. To the number of six thousand, with Lord Cornwallis in command, the enemy crossed the Hudson, and took possession of Fort Lee, which the Americans had abandoned on their approach. Closely pursued by Cornwallis, Washington retreated through New Jersey, and, on the 8th of December, crossed the Delaware with his diminished and disheartened army. Congress, then in session at Philadelphia, soon after adjourned to Baltimore.

Battle of Trenton.—A feeling of despondency, occasioned by the many disasters, prevailed among the patriots. This was dispelled by a bold enterprise accomplished by Washington. On Christmas night, he crossed the Delaware, and, on the following morning, December 26th, attacked a body of Hessians stationed at Trenton. Rahl, their commander, was mortally wounded, about thirty were slain, and nearly a thousand taken prisoners. The Americans lost only four men, two of whom fell in the battle, and two were frozen to death. This victory restored confidence to the Americans, while it startled and mortified the British.

Washington recrossed the Delaware with his prisoners; but, encouraged by his success and finding his army strengthened by recent recruits, he again crossed the river, and took post at Trenton, resolved to act on the offensive. This was a bold movement, for the enemy were assembled in great force at Princeton, only ten miles distant.

* This retreat was accomplished during a thick fog, about midnight of the 29th. Washington, as far as possible, inspected everything himself. From the commencement of the action on the 27th until the troops were safely across the East River, he never closed his eyes, and was almost constantly on horseback. His wisdom and vigilance, with the interposing favor of Divine Providence, saved the army from destruction.

† Charles Lee was born in England, in 1731. He was with Braddock in the battle of the Monongahela, and with Abercrombie in the assault on Ticonderoga. He afterward served in the Russian army. His death occurred at Philadelphia, in 1782.

Events of 1777.—Battle of Princeton.—Washington's whole force, on the 1st of January, 1777, did not exceed five thousand men. Cornwallis reached Trenton on the following afternoon, and, although baffled, with serious loss, in his attempts to cross the stream running through the town, felt sure of being able the next morning to capture the entire army of the Americans. The position of the latter was critical; but a bold expedient was adopted by Washington. Leaving his camp-fires burning, so as to deceive Cornwallis, he marched by a circuitous route toward Princeton, intending to surprise the enemy at that place. At sunrise, January 3d, the van of his forces encountered, near Princeton, a division of the British troops already on their march to join Cornwallis. At first the American militia gave way; but Washington coming up with a select corps, turned the tide of battle and routed the enemy. The loss of the British in killed, wounded, and prisoners, was about four hundred men; that of the patriots did not exceed thirty, but General Mercer, one of their best officers,* was among the mortally wounded.

Washington at Princeton.—*Miss C. F. Orne.*

The Assunpink† was choked with dead between us and the foe,
We had mowed their ranks before our guns, as ripe grain is laid low;
But we were few, and worn and spent—many and strong were they,
And they waited but the morning dawn to fall upon their prey.
We left our camp-fires burning, that their ruddy, gleaming light
Might hide from Lord Cornwallis our hurried march by night.
While fiery Erskine fretted at his leader's fond delay,
All silently and swiftly we were marching on our way.
For the British troops at Princeton our little force was bound,—
We tracked with bare and bleeding feet the rough and frozen ground;
All night we hastened onward, and we spoke no word of plaint,
Though we were chilled with bitter cold, with toil and fasting faint;
We hailed with joy the sunlight, as o'er the hills it streamed,
And through the sharp and frosty air on the near homesteads beamed.
We were weary, we were hungry; before us lay good cheer,
And right gladly to the hearth-fires our eager steps drew near.
But sudden, on our startled sight, long lines of bayonets flash;
The road's aglow with scarlet coats! The British on us dash!

* Hugh Mercer was born in Scotland about 1720. He studied medicine, became a physician, and was a surgeon's assistant in the Scotch army in the battle of Culloden (1746). Emigrating to America, he resided in Virginia until 1755, when he joined Braddock's expedition, and was severely wounded at the battle of the Monongahela. His funeral, which took place in Philadelphia, was attended by 30 000 persons.

† The name of the stream running through the city of Trenton.

The smoke-wreaths from our volleys meet; then hand-to-hand the fight;
Proud, gallant Mercer falls; our lines are wavering in flight!
"Press on!" cries Mawhood, "by St. George! the rebel cowards fly,
We'll sweep their ranks before our charge, as storm-winds sweep the sky."

They burst with bold and sudden spring as a lion on the prey,
Our ranks of worn and weary men to that fierce rush gave way.
Black was that bitter moment, and well-nigh all was lost,
But forth there sprang a god-like form between us and the host.
The martyr-fires of freedom in his flaming glances burned,
As his awful countenance sublime upon the foe he turned;
And, reining up his gallant steed, alone amid the fight,
Like an angel of the Lord he stood to our astonished sight!
And instantly our wavering bands wheeled into line again,
And suddenly from either side the death-shots fell like rain.
All hearts stood still, and horror-struck was each averted eye;
For who could brook that moment's look, or who could see *him* die?
But when the smoke-clouds lifted, and still we saw him there,
Oh, what a mighty shout of joy filled all the startled air!
And tears fell like the summer showers from our bravest and our best,
As dashing up with fiery pace around him close they prest.
A moment's hand-grasp to his Aid, that told the tale of hours,
"Away! bring up the troops," he cried, "the day is wholly ours."

"Now, praised be God!" from grateful lips the fervent prayer uprose,
And then, as with an eagle's swoop, we burst upon our foes.
And "Long live Washington!" we cried, in answer to his shout,
As still he spurred his charger on amid the flying rout.
They broke their ranks before our charge; amain they wildly fled;
Stiff on the slopes, at Princeton, they left their hapless dead.
No more a band of weary men, we followed in his track,
And bore, with stern, resistless force, the British lion back.
Our toilsome march, our sleepless nights, cold, hunger—what were they?
We broke the yoke of foreign power on that eventful day.
The great heart of our leader went on before us then,
And led us forth to wield the strength of more than mortal men;
The pulses of that noble heart a nation's life concealed,
But fate refused the sacrifice whose offer won the field.

C. C. Haven's Historic Manual.

Arrival of Lafayette.—Early in 1776, Congress sent Silas Deane to France to solicit aid. Deane was afterwards joined by Dr. Franklin and Arthur Lee. Though France hesitated to extend the aid solicited, the Marquis de

Lafayette (*lah-fā-ett'*)* and other citizens of that country acted generously. At his own expense, Lafayette fitted out a vessel, and, in the spring of 1777, arrived in America. He joined the army as a volunteer without pay, but was soon after appointed a major-general.

First Anniversary of the Declaration of Independence.

[As celebrated in Philadelphia, July 4th, 1777. This account is extracted from the *Pennsylvania Journal*, one of the newspapers of the time.]

1. (July 5.)—YESTERDAY, being the first anniversary of the Independence of the United States of America, was celebrated in Philadelphia with demonstrations of joy and festivity. About noon all the armed ships and galleys in the river were drawn up before the city, dressed in the gayest manner, with the colors of the United States and streamers displayed. At one o'clock, the yards being properly manned, they began the celebration of the day by a discharge of thirteen cannon from each of the ships, and one from each of the thirteen galleys, in honor of the thirteen United States.

2. In the afternoon an elegant dinner was provided for Congress, to which were invited the President and the supreme executive council, the speaker of the Assembly of the State, the general officers and colonels of the army, and strangers of eminence, and the members of the several continental boards in town. The Hessian band of music, taken in Trenton the twenty-sixth of December last, attended and heightened the festivity with some fine performances suited to the joyous occasion; while a corps of British deserters, taken into the service of the continent by the State of Georgia, being drawn up before the door, filled up the intervals with *feux de joie*.

3. After dinner, a number of toasts were drank, all breathing Independence and a generous love of liberty, and commemorating the memories of those brave and worthy patriots who gallantly exposed their lives, and fell gloriously in defense of freedom and the righteous cause of their country. Each toast

* The Marquis de Lafayette was born in France, of an ancient and distinguished family, in 1757. He was in the battles of Brandywine, Monmouth, and Yorktown, and was a member of the court that tried André as a spy. He died in Paris, in 1834.

was followed by a discharge of artillery and small-arms, and a suitable piece of music by the Hessian band.

4. The glorious Fourth of July was reiterated three times, accompanied with triple discharges of cannon and small-arms, and loud huzzas that resounded from street to street through the city. Toward evening, several troops of horse, a corps of artillery, and a brigade of North Carolina forces, which was in town on its way to join the grand army, were drawn up in Second Street, and reviewed by Congress and the general officers.

5. The evening was closed with the ringing of bells, and at night there was a grand exhibition of fireworks (which began and concluded with thirteen rockets) on the commons; and the city was beautifully illuminated. Everything was conducted with the greatest order and decorum, and the face of joy and gladness was universal.

Thus may the Fourth of July, that glorious and ever memorable day, be celebrated through America by the sons of freedom from age to age, till time shall be no more. *Amen and Amen!*

Battle of Brandywine, etc.—Washington's army was encamped at Morristown during the early part of 1777; but in the spring he took up a position at Middlebrook. General Howe, failing to draw Washington into an engagement in New Jersey, conveyed his troops, by means of the fleet of his brother, Lord Howe, to Chesapeake Bay, at the head of which they disembarked, and marched toward Philadelphia. At Chad's Ford, on Brandywine Creek, their passage was disputed by Washington; but the latter was defeated with considerable loss (Sept. 11). Two weeks afterward, Philadelphia fell into the hands of the British.

Battle of Germantown, etc.—Learning that strong detachments of the British army had been dispatched for the reduction of Forts Mifflin and Mercer, on the Delaware, a few miles below Philadelphia, Washington made a vigorous attack upon the main body of the British, stationed at Germantown; but, although at first successful, he was finally repulsed (Oct. 4). Forts Mifflin and Mercer were soon afterwards captured by the British, though not without a contest in which they met with severe loss (Nov.).

Burgoyne's Expedition.—In the meantime, *General Burgoyne*, with an army of ten thousand men, British and German troops, Canadians and Indians, invaded the State of New York from Canada, with the design of effecting a junction with another army from the city of New York, so as to cut off

Washington's communication with the eastern States. At first, Burgoyne met with some success, capturing *Ticonderoga*, and compelling the American forces to retreat to the Mohawk; but a detachment of his army having been defeated at *Bennington* (August 16), the Americans, under *General Gates*,* advanced to *Bem'is Heights*, where a severe battle was fought, by which Burgoyne found his march to Albany effectually checked (Sept. 19).

A few weeks afterwards, a second battle occurred near the scene of the previous one, and the British were driven back (Oct. 7). In this battle, called the *Battle of Saratoga*, Benedict Arnold, who afterwards turned traitor, greatly distinguished himself. It was soon followed by the surrender of Burgoyne† to General Gates, at Saratoga (Oct. 17). Clinton, in the meantime, had ascended the Hudson as far as Forts Clinton and Montgomery, and captured both forts; but instead of hastening to the co-operation of Burgoyne, he sent an expedition to devastate the country. The British, on the northern frontiers, upon hearing of their disaster at Saratoga, abandoned Ticonderoga and other places; and Clinton's expedition, after burning Kingston, returned to New York.

Surrender of Burgoyne.—*De Chastellux.*

1. Let us now compare the situation of General Burgoyne collecting his trophies and publishing his insolent manifesto at Ticonderoga, with that in which he now stood, when, vanquished and surrounded, as he was, by a troop of peasants, not a place was left him even to discuss the terms of capitulation.

2. I confess, when I was conducted to the spot where the English laid down their arms, and to that where they filed off before Gates's army, I could not but partake of the triumph of the Americans, and at the same time admire their magnanimity; for the soldiers and officers beheld their presumptuous and sanguinary enemies pass, without offering the smallest insult, without suffering an insulting smile or gesture to escape them.

3. This majestic silence conveyed a very striking refutation of the vain declarations of the English general, and seemed to attest all the rights of our allies to the victory. Chance alone

* Horatio Gates was born in England, in 1728. He was an officer in Braddock's expedition, in 1755, and was severely wounded in the battle of the Monongahela. After the Revolutionary War, he resided on an estate which he owned in Virginia, until 1790. He then removed to New York, where he died in 1806.

† John Burgoyne was born in England, about 1730. After his surrender to Gates he returned to England, being then a prisoner on parole, where he was coldly received in Parliament, of which body he was a member. He died in London, in 1792.

gave rise to an allusion with which General Burgoyne was very sensibly affected. It is the custom, in England and in America, on approaching any person for the first time, to say, *I am very happy to see you;* General Gates chanced to make use of this expression in accosting General Burgoyne. "I believe you are," replied the General; "the fortune of the day is entirely yours."

4. General Gates pretended to give no attention to this answer, and conducted Burgoyne to his quarters, where he gave him a good dinner, as well as to the principal of the English officers. Everybody ate and drank heartily, and seemed mutually to forget their misfortunes, or their successes.—*Journal of Travels in North America.*

Washington at Valley Forge.—*Th. Parker.*

1. During the winter of 1777–8, Washington went into winter quarters at Valley Forge. What a terrible time it was for the hopes of America! In 1776, he had an army of forty-seven thousand men, and the nation was exhausted by the great effort. In 1777, it was less than twenty thousand men. Women who had once melted their pewter plates into bullets, could not do it a second time.

2. At Valley Forge, within a day's march of the enemy's headquarters, there were not twelve thousand soldiers. That winter they lay on the ground. So scarce were blankets, that many were forced to sit up all night by their fires. At one time, more than a thousand soldiers had not a shoe to their feet. You could trace their march by the blood which their naked feet left in the ice. At one time, more than one-fourth of all the troops there are reported as "unfit for duty, because barefoot or otherwise naked." Washington offered a prize for the best substitute for shoes made of untanned hides!

3. Even provisions failed. Once there was a famine in the camp, and Washington must seize provisions by violence, or the army would die. He ordered the Pennsylvania farmers to thresh out the wheat and sell it to him, or he would take it and pay them only for the straw. Congress was disheartened.

The men of ability staid at home, and weaklings took their place. For some time there were only twenty-one members, and it was difficult to assemble a quorum of States for business.

4. Tories abounded. There were cabals against Washington in the army. Mifflin, Conway, Gates, Pickering, Schuyler, were hostile; and they found abundant support in Congress. Samuel Adams* distrusted Washington. So, too, did John Adams. James Lovell, of Massachusetts, and Richard Henry Lee, of Virginia, were not more friendly, and far less honorable. It is not wholly to be wondered at.

5. Within a year, Washington had lost New York and its neighborhood—lost Philadelphia and all the strongholds around it. He had gained but one victory worth naming—that at Trenton. In the meantime, Burgoyne, an able soldier, with an admirable army, had walked into a trap on the North River, and had been taken by Gates and the northern army, who were most of them militia of New England. It is not wonderful that men doubted, and thought that the selfish, mean-spirited, and loud-talking General Conway would do better than the modest Washington to command the army.

6. Samuel Adams wanted democratic rotation in office, that the general should be hired by the year! If he had not been possessed of great wealth, and cared for nothing, I think Washington's command had come to an end before 1778. But Dr. Franklin was on the other side of the sea; and, with consummate art, he had induced the French court to favor America with contributions of money and of arms, and, after the surrender of Burgoyne, to acknowledge the independence of the United States, and to make an open treaty of alliance, furnishing America with money and men, artillery and stores. Then, first, America began to uplift her drooping head.—*Historic Americans.*

* Samuel Adams was born in Boston, in 1722. He and John Adams were related, having the same great-grandfather, making them second cousins. He was one of the signers of the Declaration of Independence. His death occurred in Boston, in 1803.

Life at Valley Forge.—*Geo. W. Greene.*

1. But even Valley Forge had its recreations. "Several general officers are sending for their wives," writes Lafayette to his own, "and I envy them, not their wives, but the happiness of being where they can see them." Mrs. Greene (wife of General Greene) had joined her husband early in January, bringing with her her summer's acquisition, a stock of French, that quickly made her little parlor the favorite resort of foreign officers.

2. There was often to be seen Lafayette, not yet turned of twenty-one, though a husband, a father, and a major-general; graver somewhat in his manners than strictly belonged either to his years or his country; and loved and trusted by all —by Washington and Greene especially. Steuben, too, was often there, wearing his republican uniform, as, fifteen years before, he had worn the uniform of the despotic Frederick; as deeply skilled in the ceremonials[v] of a court as in the manœuvring of an army; with a glittering star on his left breast, that bore witness to the faithful service he had rendered in his native Germany; and revolving in his accurate mind designs which were to transform this mass of physical strength, which Americans had dignified with the name of army, into a real army, which Frederick himself might have accepted.

3. He had but little English at his command, as yet; but at his side there was a mercurial[v] young Frenchman, Peter Duponceau (*du-pong'so*), who knew how to interpret both his graver thoughts and the lighter gallantries with which the genial old soldier loved to season his intercourse with the wives and daughters of his new fellow-citizens. As the years passed away, Duponceau himself became a celebrated man, and loved to tell the story of these checkered days.

4. Another German, too, De Kalb, was sometimes seen there; taller, statelier, graver than Steuben, with the cold, observant eye of the diplomatist, rather than the quick glance of the soldier; though a soldier, too, and a brave and skillful one; caring very little about the cause he had forsaken his noble

chateau[x] and lovely wife to fight for, but a great deal about the promotion and decorations which his good service here was to win him in France; for he had made himself a Frenchman, and served the King of France, and bought him French lands, and married a French wife.

5. Already before this war began, he had come hither in the service of France to study the progress of the growing discontent; and now he was here again, an American major-general, led partly by the ambition of rank, partly by the thirst of distinction, but much, too, by a certain restlessness of nature and longing for excitement and action, not to be wondered at in one who had fought his way up from a butlership to a barony[x].

6. He and Steuben had served on opposite sides during the Seven Years' War, though born, both of them, on the same bank of the Rhine; and though, when Steuben first came, De Kalb was at Albany, yet in May they must have met more than once. How did they feel toward each other, the soldier of Frederick and the soldier of Louis? If we had known more about this, we should have known better, perhaps, why Lafayette, a fast friend of De Kalb, speaks of the "methodic mediocrity" of Steuben, and Steuben of the "vanity and presumption" of the young major general.

7. [Many other foreign officers of present or subsequent distinction were also in the same circle.] Kosciusko* was in the north, but Poland had still another representative,—the gallant Pulaski, who had done good service during the last campaign, and who, the very next year, was to lay down his life for us at the siege of Savannah.

8. Washington, too, and his wife were often seen in this evening circle,—not the grave, cold Washington of some books, but a human being, who knew how to laugh heartily and smile genially; and the courtly Morris and the brilliant Reed were there; and Charles Carroll, who was to outlive them nearly all; and Knox, whom Greene loved as a brother; and Hamilton and

* Thaddeus Kosciusko, a Polish patriot, was born about 1755. He was with Gates in the two battles of Stillwater, and subsequently distinguished himself as an adjutant of Washington. His death, which occurred in Switzerland, in 1817, was caused by a fall from his horse over a precipice.

Laurens, as often as their duty would permit; and Wayne, and Varnum, and Sullivan, and many others of whom history tells, with some of whom she has kept no record; all equally glad to escape, for a while, from stern duties and grave cares, to a cheerful fireside and genial conversation.

9. There was no room for dancing in these narrow quarters; but next winter, at Morristown, we shall find a good deal of it, and see Washington dancing four hours with Mrs. Greene without once sitting down. There were no cards, either. All games of chance had been prohibited early in the war; and American officers, even if they had had the means and inclination, had no opportunity to ruin themselves, as the officers of Howe's army were ruining themselves at Philadelphia this very winter.

10. But there was tea or coffee, and pleasant conversation always, and music often, no one who had a good voice being allowed to refuse a song. Few could give more interest to a story, or life to an anecdote, than Mrs. Greene, and no one in those evening circles could excel her in adapting her subject and manner to the taste and manner of the immediate listener. And thus, again, somewhat of the gentleness of domestic life was shed over these stern scenes of war, and somewhat of its cheerfulness brought into these narrow dwellings; of themselves "no gayer," writes Lafayette, "than a dungeon."

11. Out of doors, all was more like a dungeon still; for the bleak hills shut them in on one side, the frozen river on the other. Out of the cold, white snow rose the leafless forest, dark and spectral; and the wind swept in fierce gusts down the valley, or sighed and moaned around the thatched roofs of the huts. From the huts themselves came few signs of life, but the smoke that swayed to and fro over the chimneys at the will of the blast, and the shivering sentinels at the officers' doors, and now and then, as you passed along, a half-naked soldier peering from a door, and muttering, in an ominous undertone, "No bread, no soldier."

12. If you ventured within, hungry nakedness met you on the threshold, or a foul and diseased air repelled you from it

In the streets, you would meet parties of soldiers yoked together to little carriages of their own contriving, and dragging their wood and provisions from the storehouse to their huts. There were regular parades, too, at guard-mounting; and sometimes grand parades, in which you would see men half naked holding their rusty firelocks with hands stiffened with cold, and officers shielding themselves from the cold in a kind of dressing-gown made out of an old blanket or faded bed-quilt.—*Life of Nathaniel Greene.*

Events of 1778.—Alliance with France.—The success of the Americans at Saratoga decided the negotiations which had been set on foot in 1776. France acknowledged the independence of the United States, and, mainly through the efforts of Dr. Franklin, an alliance was concluded between the two nations. The French government at once fitted out a squadron, of which Count D'Estaing (*des-tang'*)* was given the command, and, about the middle of April, the fleet sailed for America.

Evacuation of Philadelphia.—In the meantime, Gen. Howe having resigned his command, Gen. Clinton was appointed his successor; and the British government, fearing for the safety of their army at Philadelphia, ordered Clinton to proceed to New York. In July D'Estaing arrived in Delaware Bay, but not in time to capture the British fleet, as Lord Howe had sailed a few days before. On the 18th of June, Clinton evacuated Philadelphia, and commenced his march through New Jersey to New York. The Americans gave pursuit; and at Mon'mouth, on the 28th, a severely contested battle was fought.

Battle of Monmouth.—*Irving.*

1. EARLY in the morning, Washington received an express from Dickinson, informing him that the enemy were in motion. He instantly sent orders to Lee to push forward and attack them, unless there should be powerful reasons to the contrary, adding, that he was coming on to support him. For that purpose he immediately set forward with his own troops, ordering them to throw by their knapsacks and blankets.

2. Knyphausen, with the British vanguard, had begun about daybreak to descend into the valley between Monmouth Court House and Middletown. To give the long train of wagons and pack-horses time to get well on the way, Sir Henry Clinton,

* Charles Hector, Count D'Estaing, was a native of France, born in 1729. He was a member of the Assembly of Notables in the French Revolution, but, falling under the suspicion of the Terrorists, was guillotined in 1794.

with his choice troops, remained in camp on the heights of Freehold until eight o'clock, when he likewise resumed the line of march toward Middletown.

3. In the mean time Lee, on hearing of the early movement of the enemy, had advanced with the brigades of Wayne and Maxwell, to support the light troops engaged in skirmishing. The difficulty of reconnoitering a country cut up by woods and morasses, and the perplexity occasioned by contradictory reports, embarrassed his movements. Being joined by Lafayette, with the main body of the advance, he had now about four thousand men at his command, independent of those under Morgan and General Dickinson.

4. Arriving on the heights of Freehold, and riding forward with General Wayne to an open place to reconnoitre, Lee caught sight of a force under march, but partly hidden from view by intervening woods. Supposing it to be a mere covering party of about two thousand men, he detached Wayne with seven hundred men and two pieces of artillery, to skirmish in its rear and hold it in check; while he, with the rest of his force, taking a shorter road through the woods, would get in front of it, and cut it off from the main body. He at the same time sent a message to Washington, apprising him of this movement and of his certainty of success.

5. Washington, in the mean time, was on his march with the main body, to support the advance, as he had promised. The booming of cannon at a distance indicated that the attack so much desired had commenced, and caused him to quicken his march. Arrived near Freehold church, where the road forked, he detached Greene with part of his forces to the right, to flank the enemy in the rear of Monmouth Court-House, while he, with the rest of the column, would press forward by the other road.

6. Washington had alighted while giving these directions, and was standing with his arm thrown over his horse, when a countryman rode up, and said the Continental troops were retreating. Washington was provoked at what he considered a false alarm. The man pointed, as his authority, to an Ameri-

can fifer, who just then came up in breathless affright. The fifer was ordered into custody to prevent his spreading an alarm among the troops who were advancing, and was threatened with a flogging should he repeat the story.

7. Springing on his horse, Washington had moved forward but a short distance when he met other fugitives, one in the garb of a soldier, who all concurred in the report. He now sent forward Colonels Fitzgerald and Harrison, to learn the truth, while he himself spurred past Freehold meeting-house. Between that edifice and the morass beyond it, he met Grayson's and Patton's regiments in most disorderly retreat, jaded with heat and fatigue. Riding up to the officer at their head, Washington demanded whether the whole advance corps were retreating. The officer believed they were.

8. It seemed incredible. There had been scarce any firing; Washington had received no notice of the retreat from Lee. He was still almost inclined to doubt, when the heads of several columns of the advance began to appear. It was too evident—the whole advance was falling back on the main body, and no notice had been given to him. One of the first officers that came up was Colonel Shreve, at the head of his regiment; Washington, greatly surprised and alarmed, asked the meaning of this retreat. The colonel smiled significantly—he did not know—he had retreated by order. There had been no fighting excepting a slight skirmish with the enemy's cavalry, which had been repulsed.

9. A suspicion flashed across Washington's mind, of wrong-headed conduct on the part of Lee, to mar the plan of attack adopted contrary to his counsels. Ordering Colonel Shreve to march his men over the morass, halt them on the hill beyond and refresh them, he galloped forward to stop the retreat of the rest of the advance, his indignation kindling as he rode. At the rear of the regiment he met Major Howard; he, too, could give no reason for the retreat, but seemed provoked at it—declaring that he had never seen the like. Another officer exclaimed, with an oath, that they were flying from a shadow.

10. Arriving at a rising ground, Washington beheld Lee approaching with the residue of his command, in full retreat. By this time he was thoroughly exasperated. "What is the meaning of all this, sir?" demanded he, in the sternest and even fiercest tone, as Lee rode up to him. Lee for a moment was disconcerted, and hesitated in making a reply, for Washington's aspect, according to Lafayette, was terrible. "I desire to know the meaning of this disorder and confusion," was again demanded, still more vehemently.

11. Lee, stung by the manner more than the words of the demand, made an angry reply, and provoked still sharper expressions, which have been variously reported. He attempted a hurried explanation. His troops had been thrown into confusion by contradictory intelligence; by disobedience of orders; by the meddling and blundering of individuals; and he had not felt disposed, he said, to beard the whole British army with troops in such a situation.

12. "I have certain information," rejoined Washington, "that it was merely a covering party."

"That may be, but it was stronger than mine, and I did not think proper to run such a risk."

"I am very sorry," replied Washington, "that you undertook the command, unless you meant to fight the enemy."

"I did not think it prudent to bring on a general engagement."

"Whatever your opinion may have been," replied Washington, disdainfully, "I expected my orders would have been obeyed."

13. This all passed rapidly, and, as it were, in flashes; for there was no time for parley. The enemy were within a quarter of an hour's march. Washington's appearance had stopped the retreat. The fortunes of the day were to be retrieved, if possible, by instant arrangements. These he proceeded to make with great celerity. The place was favorable for a stand; it was a rising ground, to which the enemy could approach only over a narrow causeway. The rallied troops were hastily formed upon this eminence. Colonels Stewart and Ramsey, with two

batteries, were stationed in a covert of woods on their left, to protect them and keep the enemy at bay. Colonel Oswald was posted for the same purpose on a height, with two field-pieces. The promptness with which everything was done showed the effects of the Baron Steuben's discipline. . . . .

14. A warm cannonade by Oswald, Stewart, and Ramsey, had the desired effect. The enemy were brought to a stand, and Washington had time to gallop back and bring on the main body. This he formed on an eminence, with a wood in the rear and the morass in front. The left wing was commanded by Lord Stirling, who had with him a detachment of artillery and several field-pieces. General Greene was on his right.

15. Lee had maintained his advanced position with great spirit, but was at length obliged to retire. He brought off his troops in good order, across a causeway which traversed the morass in front of Lord Stirling. As he had promised, he was the last to leave the ground. Having formed his men in a line, beyond the morass, he rode up to Washington. "Here, sir, are my troops," said he; "how is it your pleasure I should dispose of them?" Washington saw that the poor fellows were exhausted by marching, countermarching, hard fighting, and the intolerable heat of the weather: he ordered Lee, therefore, to repair with them to the rear of Englishtown, and to assemble there all the scattered fugitives he might meet with. . . . .

16. The enemy at length gave way, and fell back to the ground which Lee had occupied in the morning. Here their flanks were secured by woods and morasses, and their front could only be approached across a narrow causeway. Notwithstanding the difficulties of the position, Washington prepared to attack it; ordering General Poor, with his own and the Carolina brigade, to move round upon their right, and General Woodford on their left; while the artillery should gall them in front.

17. Before these orders could be carried into effect, the day was at an end. Many of the soldiers had sunk upon the ground, overcome by fatigue and the heat of the weather; all needed repose. The troops, therefore, which had been in

the advance, were ordered to lie on their arms on the ground they occupied, so as to be ready to make the attack by daybreak. The main army did the same, on the field of action, to be at hand to support them. Washington lay on his cloak at the foot of a tree, with Lafayette beside him, talking over the strange conduct of Lee; whose disorderly retreat had come so near being fatal to the army.—*Life of Washington.*

Result of the Battle.—During the night, Clinton silently retreated, leaving in his deserted camp only a few wounded officers and privates, whom he was unable to carry with him on his hurried march. At daybreak his army was beyond pursuit. The loss of the British in the battle and by desertions during the march, amounted to fifteen hundred men. The patriots lost more than two hundred, many of whom fell from the excessive heat and fatigue of the day.

End of Lee's Career.—Lee's pride having been wounded by the rebuke which he had received, he addressed two disrespectful letters to Washington. For this disrespect and his conduct on the battle-field, he was tried by a court-martial, found guilty, and sentenced to be suspended from command for one year. He, however, never rejoined the army, but, just before the close of the war, died in Philadelphia.

Attack on Rhode Island.—A combined attack by D'Estaing and Gen. Sullivan was planned for the expulsion of the British from Rhode Island, where, under Gen. Pig'ot, they had established a military depot. Tempted by the hope of a victory, D'Estaing sailed from Newport to meet Lord Howe, who had heard of Pigot's danger and hastened to his relief; but a furious storm having disabled the two fleets just as they were about to engage, he returned to Newport, and soon after departed for Boston, to repair his ships.

Sullivan, finding himself thus deserted, withdrew to the northern part of the island; and, being followed by the enemy, an engagement took place, August 29th, resulting in a loss of over two hundred on each side, and in the repulse of the British. Learning that a fleet with troops was coming to the aid of Pigot, Sullivan gained the mainland just in time to avoid being intercepted by Clinton.

Massacre of Wyoming.—Early in July, a large force of tories and Indians, under Col. John Butler, entered the valley of Wy-o'ming, Pennsylvania, spread desolation in every direction, and slaughtered a body of inhabitants who had marched against them. In November, a party of the same mixed character fell upon the settlement of Cherry Valley, New York, and killed or carried into captivity many of the settlers.

Capture of Savannah.—Toward the close of the year, Clinton sent an expedition of two thousand men to invade Georgia. Col. Campbell, its commander, proceeded against Savannah, then defended by a small force under

Gen. Robert Howe, and, on the 29th of December, made an attack. The Americans were defeated with great loss, and, in consequence, Savannah fell into the hands of the British, and was retained by them till 1783.

Events of 1779.—Re-capture of Stony Point.—Washington, desiring to re-capture Stony Point, New York, which had been taken a short time previously, planned an attack to be conducted by Wayne.* At midnight, on the 15th of July, the Americans, in two columns, forced their way into the fort from opposite sides, and, meeting in the centre of the works, the garrison surrendered at discretion. The entire loss of the patriots in this brilliant success, achieved at the point of the bayonet and without firing a gun, was fifteen killed and eighty-three wounded. The enemy lost upward of six hundred in killed and prisoners.

Battle of Chemung.—Sullivan, who had been sent against the Indians of western New York, to check their depredations and avenge the "Massacre of Wyoming," was completely successful. He defeated a body of Indians and tories in the battle of Chemung (*she-mung'*), August 29th, and then destroyed forty Indian villages, and a vast amount of corn.

Paul Jones's Victory.—In September an obstinate engagement took place off the eastern coast of England, between a small squadron of French and American vessels, commanded by Paul Jones,† and two British frigates. It lasted from seven till after ten at night, when both frigates surrendered.

Paul Jones's Naval Battle.—*Parton.*

1. *First Hour.*—Commodore Jones, finding that he had an enemy of superior force on his hands, used all his art to gain an advantage over the Serapis (the British vessel) in point of position, so as to rake her. But Captain Pearson of the Serapis being as good a sailor as himself, and having a better ship and a better-trained crew, not only balked this design, but gave the Bon Homme Richard (Jones's ship) some raking fires. Jones soon saw that his only chance for an equal fight was to close with his adversary, and fight it out, muzzle to muzzle and hand to hand.

2. His first attempt to close failed, from the defective training of his crew, his Malays understanding neither English nor

* Anthony Wayne was born at Waynesborough, Chester County, Pennsylvania, in 1745. In 1794, during Washington's administration, he defeated the Indians in the battle of the Maumee, Ohio. During the Revolution he was known as "Mad Anthony." He died at Presque Isle, now Erie, in 1796, while on his way from the west.

† John Paul Jones was born in Scotland, in 1747. When the American Revolution broke out he was in Virginia. Dr. Franklin aided him in France to fit out the fleet. His name was John Paul, to which, for some unknown reason, he added Jones. After the Revolution he entered the Russian naval service. He died at Paris, in poverty and neglect, in 1792.

navigation. He ran his bowsprit on board the Serapis, but in such a manner that he could not bring a gun to bear.

"Have you struck?" shouted an officer on board the English ship.

"I have not begun to fight," replied Commodore Jones.

He backed off; but the Serapis, wearing round "upon her heel," ran her jib-boom into the mizzen rigging of the Bon Homme Richard.

3. Jones instantly lashed the bowsprit of the enemy to his own mizzen-mast; and, in another minute or two, the two vessels swung round alongside of each other, the stern of one to the bow of the other, the yards and rigging all entangled, the muzzles of the one touching the side of the other, the end of the main-yard of the American ship being directly over the main-hatchway of the Serapis.

4. Not a moment too soon had Commodore Jones closed with his powerful adversary. It was eight o'clock when the ships came together, and the action had lasted just an hour. By that time, though the Serapis had suffered no very serious damage, the Bon Homme Richard had received eighteen shots below the water; had four feet of water in her hold; was leaking as fast as her pumps could clear her; had had four guns burst; had every gun on the side next the enemy silenced, except two nine-pounders on the quarter-deck; and had lost a hundred men in killed and wounded. Some officers had abandoned their posts, many more were disabled; and all fighting on the decks seemed at an end.

5. The ship, in fact, was beaten; it was the indomitable heart of John Paul Jones, supported by a few gallant spirits below and aloft, that was not conquered. In the tops, he received efficient aid, particularly in the main-top, where Lieutenant Stack commanded a most expert, vigilant, and daring body of sailors and marines. . . . .

6. *Second Hour.* — Brilliant moonlight. The commodore being now the only officer left on the quarter-deck, rallied the men that still had fight in them, and shifted over one of the nine-pounders on the other side of the deck, to the side next

the Serapis. The rest of the action was fought with the three nine-pounders and the musketry in the tops; not a gun below, nor a gun forward of the quarter-deck, was fired after the ships closed. Jones himself handled the nine-pounders. One of them he charged with round-shot, and pointed it continually at the main-mast of the Serapis; the others, filled with grape and canister, swept the enemy's decks with most destructive effect; while from the tops rained a murderous fire of musketry.

7. The commander of the Serapis relied chiefly upon his lower-deck guns, and poured broadside after broadside into the battered old hulk of the Bon Homme Richard, hoping to sink her. Both ships repeatedly caught fire; and "the scene," as Captain Jones observes, "was dreadful beyond the reach of language." But the terror on board the Bon Homme Richard was water, not fire; for it soon began to be doubtful if she could be kept afloat long enough to fight the action fairly out. Towards nine, one of her pumps being shot away, and the carpenter crying out the ship must go down, a panic arose among the group near the pumps, and the gunner ran aft to strike the flag.

8. "Fortunately for me," says Jones, "a cannon-ball had done that before;" which the gunner perceiving, he shouted, "Quarters! quarters!" in the tone of a man who thinks his ship is sinking. "Do you call for quarter?" shouted Captain Pearson. "No," replied Jones, with savage emphasis. The answer was unheard in the noise of the battle, and Captain Pearson ordered a party to board.

9. On mounting the bulwarks of the Bon Homme Richard, the boarders were met by a vigorous charge of pikemen, who had been stationed along the deck for the purpose, under cover of the bulwarks. The boarders returned to their guns, and the battle was renewed with redoubled fury. At the moment of the panic on board the American ship, a petty officer had set at liberty the four hundred and fifty prisoners confined below, meaning to give them a chance for their lives; and, before they could be again secured, one of them, the captain of a twenty-gun ship taken a day or two before, leaped into a port-

hole of the Serapis, and told Captain Pearson that if he could but hold out a few minutes longer, the enemy's ship must sink. This news, equal to a reinforcement of two hundred men, gave new heart to the brave commander of the Serapis.

10. And so the battle raged another hour, Jones being well seconded by the best of his crew, and efficiently aided by some of the volunteers. Even his purser, Mr. Matthew Mease, most nobly fought on the quarter-deck; and when, at last, he was wounded in the head so seriously that it was afterward trepanned in six places, he only remained below long enough to have it bound with a handkerchief, and then returned to his gun.

11. A young Parisian, named Baptiste Travallier (*trah-val'-ya*), a friend of the Chaumonts (*sho-mong'*), amused the band of fighting men on the quarter-deck. One of the sailors calling for wadding, young Travallier took off his coat and thrust it into the muzzle of the gun. Soon after, the ship catching fire, he took off his shirt, and dipping it into water, used it "with great dexterity" to extinguish the flames; and fought the rest of the action in a cool undress of trousers and shoes.

12. *Third Hour.*—The sharpshooters in the tops of the Bon Homme Richard, aided by the commodore's grape and canister, had, by the end of the second hour of the battle, killed, wounded, or driven below, most of the men on the deck of the Serapis, and every man above the deck. Emboldened by this, the sailors in the main-top of the American formed a line along the main-yard, the end of which hung directly over the enemy's main hatchway.

13. A cool and daring sailor, seated at the end of the yard, dropped hand-grenades into the hatchway. One of these exploding in a heap of cartridges, they blew up with appalling effect. Twenty men were instantly blown to pieces; forty more were disabled, and, as some report, forty more were slightly wounded. The ship was set on fire in half a dozen places at once, nor was the fire extinguished until the next day. Thus, while one ship was threatened with one element, the other had to contend with another; and the question was,

which was likely to gain the faster, the water in the hold of the Richard, or the fire between the decks of the Serapis. . .

14. *The End of it.*—Scottish grit carried the day on this occasion against English pluck. At half-past ten, when the combat had lasted three hours and a half, Captain Pearson ordered his flag to be struck.—*Life of Franklin.*

Repulse of the Americans at Savannah.—In September, 1779, D'Estaing appeared before Savannah, and prepared to co-operate with General Lincoln, then commanding the American forces in the South, in an effort to regain possession of the city. On the 9th of October, after a siege of about three weeks, an assault was made, but the allied forces were repulsed with the loss of about a thousand men. Among those who fell was the gallant Count Pulaski. General Lincoln, receiving no further aid from D'Estaing, was then obliged to abandon the siege, and he retired with his little army to Charleston.

Pulaski's Banner.—*Longfellow.*

[Count Pulaski, a brave Polish officer, entered the American service in 1777; and, after the battle of the Brandywine, in which he commanded the cavalry, was made a brigadier. This appointment he soon resigned, to command an independent corps, which he raised in Baltimore in 1778. It was on this occasion that he was presented with the celebrated banner of crimson silk, by the Moravian nuns of Bethlehem, in Pennsylvania. This banner he gallantly bore through many a conflict until he fell at Savannah. The following beautiful poem commemorates the presentation of the banner.]

When the dying flame of day
Through the chancel shot its ray,
Far the glimmering taper shed
Faint light on the cowlèd head,
And the censer burning swung,
Where before the altar hung
That proud banner, which, with prayer,
Had been consecrated there;
And the nuns' sweet hymn was heard the while,
Sung low in the dim, mysterious aisle:

"Take thy banner. May it wave
Proudly o'er the good and brave,
When the battle's distant wail
Breaks the Sabbath of our vale;
When the clarion's music thrills
To the hearts of these lone hills;
When the spear in conflict shakes,
And the strong lance, shivering, breaks.

"Take thy banner; and, beneath
The war-cloud's encircling wreath,
Guard it—till our homes are free;
Guard it—God will prosper thee!
In the dark and trying hour,
In the breaking forth of power,
In the rush of steeds and men,
His right hand will shield thee then.

"Take thy banner. But, when night
Closes round the ghastly fight,
If the vanquish'd warrior bow,
Spare him—by our holy vow;
By our prayers and many tears;
By the mercy that endears;
Spare him—he our love hath shared;
Spare him—as thou would'st be spared.

"Take thy banner; and, if e'er
Thou should'st press the soldier's bier,
And the muffled drum should beat
To the tread of mournful feet,
Then this crimson flag shall be
Martial cloak and shroud for thee."
And the warrior took that banner proud,
And it was his martial cloak and shroud.

[The banner was saved by Pulaski's lieutenant, and was taken to Baltimore. It was subsequently deposited in Peale's Museum; and, in 1844, was presented to the Maryland Historical Society, in whose possession it still remains.]

Events of 1780.—Taking of Charleston.—The principal military operations of 1780 were carried on in the Carolinas. Clinton, with a fleet commanded by Ar'buth-not, having sailed from New York to the South, appeared before Charleston in February, and, on the 1st of April, commenced a regular siege. The forces defending the city were commanded by Lincoln. While the siege was in progress, an American corps, stationed at Monk's Corner, to keep open a communication between the city and the interior, was surprised by Col. Tarleton (*tarl'tun*) and put to flight. On the 12th of May, after a heroic defense of about forty days, Lincoln surrendered; and six thousand prisoners fell into the hands of the British.

Partisan Warfare in the South.—Clinton, believing South Carolina to be subdued, sailed for New York, leaving Cornwallis to carry the war into North Carolina and Virginia; but Generals Sumter* and Marion, and

* Thomas Sumter was born in South Carolina, about 1734. During the Revolution he took an active and able part as one of the partisan leaders at the South. The qualities of bravery, determi-

other patriot leaders, by their partisan warfare, still kept alive the spirit of freedom at the South. Sumter met with a repulse at Rocky Mount, but at Hanging Rock, only a week after, he gained a decided victory.

Marion's Brigade.—*Ramsay.*

1. General Francis Marion was born at Winyard, in 1733. His grandfather was a native of Languedoc, and one of the many Protestants who fled from France to Carolina, to avoid persecution on account of religion. . . . . On the formation of a regular army in 1775, to defend his native province against Great Britain, he was appointed a captain in the second South Carolina regiment, and had gradually risen to the rank of colonel before Charleston fell.

2. Fortunately for his country, he had fractured his leg and retired from the garrison, which prevented his being made a prisoner of war. After the surrender, he retreated to North Carolina. On the approach of General Gates, he advanced with a small party through the country toward the Santee. On his arrival there, he found a number of his countrymen ready and willing to put themselves under his command, to which he had been appointed by General Gates. This corps afterward acquired the name of *Marion's Brigade.* . . . .

3. In a few days after taking the command, General Marion led his men across the Pedee at Post's Ferry, to disperse a large party of tories, commanded by Major Gainey, collected between Great and Little Pedee. He surprised them in their camp, and killed one of their captains and several privates. Two of his own party were wounded. Major James was detached at the head of a volunteer troop of horse to attack their horse. He came up with them, charged, and drove them into Little Pedee swamp.

4. Marion returned to Post's Ferry, and threw up a redoubt on the east bank of Pedee, to awe the tories, still numerous in that neighborhood. While thus employed, he heard of the

nation, and cheerfulness, which he exhibited, endeared him to his followers, who bestowed upon him the sobriquet of the "Carolina Game-Cock." Fort Sumter, in Charleston Harbor, was so named in honor of him. His death occurred in South Carolina, in 1832.

defeat of Gates, at Camden, August 16th, 1780. Without communicating the intelligence, he immediately marched for Nelson's Ferry, on the Santee, in the hope of intercepting some of the prisoners on their way to Charleston. Near Nelson's, he was informed of a party on their way down, and found by his scouts that the British had stopped at the house on the main road on the east side of Santee.

5. The general waited till near daylight next morning, and then divided his men into two divisions. A small party under Colonel Hugh Horry (the bosom-friend of General Marion) was directed to gain possession of the road at the entrance of the swamp, and the main body, led by himself, was, by a circuitous route, to attack the British in the rear. Colonel Horry, in taking his position, had advanced in the dark too near to a sentinel, who fired upon him. In a moment he, with his little party, rushed up to the house, found the British arms piled before the door, and seized upon them.

6. Thus, by a party of sixteen American militia, was a British guard of thirty-two men taken, and one hundred and fifty prisoners released. Colonel Horry had one man wounded. However, the news of the defeat of Gates, which now became public, damped all joy for the complete success of this well-conducted attack. On the same day, General Marion marched back for his old position on the Pedee. On the way, many of his militia, and, with the exception of two, the whole of the regulars released from the enemy, deserted. But, by the exertions of the general and his officers, the spirits of the drooping began to revive.

7. About the 14th of September, 1780, when Marion had under his command only one hundred and fifty men, he heard of the approach of Major Weyms from the King's Tree, at the head of a British regiment and Harrison's regiment of tories. Major James was instantly despatched at the head of a party of volunteers to reconnoitre, and with orders to count the enemy. On his return a council of war was called. The British force was reported to be double that of Marion's. Gainey's party of tories in the rear had always been estimated

at five hundred men. Under these discouraging circumstances, the line of march was directed back toward Lynch's Creek.

8. This was a most trying occasion. Men were called upon to leave their property and their families at the discretion of an irritated and relentless enemy. About half of Marion's party left him; Colonels Peter and Hugh Horry, Colonels John Erwin and John Baxter, Major John Vanderhorst, Major John James, Major Benson, and about sixty others, continued with their general. Captain James, with ten chosen men, was left to succor the distressed and to convey intelligence.

9. The next morning, Marion arrived at his redoubt; and at sunset the same evening turned toward North Carolina, and soon reached the eastern bank of Drowning Creek, in that State. Major James obtained leave to return at the head of a few volunteers, and General Marion continued on to the White Marsh, near the source of the Waccamaw. In a little time the major returned with intelligence of the depredations and house-burnings committed by Weyms. Many of Marion's party were reduced from easy circumstances to poverty. . . .

10. In all these marches, Marion and his men lay in the open air, with little covering, and with little other food than sweet potatoes and meat, mostly without salt. Though it was in the unhealthy season of autumn, yet sickness seldom occurred. The general fared worse than his men; for his baggage having caught fire by accident, he had literally but half a blanket to cover him from the dews of the night, and but half a hat to shelter him from the rays of the sun. . . .

11. After the return of General Greene* to Carolina, in 1781, Marion acted under his orders; and the exploits of his brigade, no longer acting by itself, make a part of the general history of the Revolutionary War.—*History of South Carolina.*

*Nathaniel Greene was born of Quaker parents, at Warwick, Rhode Island, in 1742. He aided, at the beginning of the Revolution, in driving the British from Boston, and he took a distinguished part in the battles of Trenton, Princeton, Brandywine, Germantown, and Quaker Hill; and commanded in the battles of Guilford Court-House, Hobkirk's Hill, and Eutaw Springs. He died of "sun-stroke," in Georgia, near Savannah, in 1786. On the 8th of August of that year, Congress adopted the following resolution: "That a monument be erected to Nathaniel Greene, Esq., at the seat of the Federal government, with the following inscription: Sacred to the memory of Nathaniel Greene, Esq., a native of the State of Rhode Island, who died on the 19th of June, 1786; late major-general in the service of the United States, and commander of their army in the Southern Department, etc."

Song of Marion's Men.—*Bryant.*

1. Our band is few, but true and tried, our leader frank and bold;
The British soldier trembles when Marion's name is told;
Our fortress is the good greenwood, our tent the cypress-tree;
We know the forest round us, as seamen know the sea.
We know its walls of thorny vines, its glades of reedy grass,
Its safe and silent islands within the dark morass.

2. Woe to the English soldiery that little dread us near!
On them shall light at midnight a strange and sudden fear;
When, waking to their tents on fire, they grasp their arms in vain,
And they who stand to face us are beat to earth again;
And they who fly in terror deem a mighty host behind,
And hear the tramp of thousands upon the hollow wind.

3. Then sweet the hour that brings release from danger and from toil!
We talk the battle over and share the battle's spoil;
The woodland rings with laugh and shout, as if a hunt were up,
And woodland flowers are gathered to crown the soldier's cup.
With merry songs we mock the wind that in the pine-top grieves,
And slumber long and sweetly on beds of oaken leaves.

4. Well knows the fair and friendly moon the band that Marion leads—
The glitter of their rifles, the scampering of their steeds.
'Tis life to guide the fiery barb across the moonlit plain;
'Tis life to feel the night-wind that lifts his tossing mane.
A moment in the British camp—a moment, and away
Back to the pathless forest before the peep of day.

5. Grave men there are by broad Santee, grave men with hoary hairs,
Their hearts are all with Marion, for Marion are their prayers.
And lovely ladies greet our band with kindliest welcoming,
With smiles like those of summer and tears like those of spring.
For them we wear these trusty arms, and lay them down no more,
Till we have driven the Briton forever from our shore.

Marion, Sumter, and Pickens.—*H. Lee.*

1. Marion was about forty-eight years of age, small in stature, hard in visage, healthy, abstemious, and taciturn. Enthusiastically wedded to the cause of liberty, he deeply deplored the doleful condition of his beloved country. The common weal was his sole object; nothing selfish, nothing mercenary, soiled his character. Fertile in stratagem, he

struck unperceived; and, retiring to those hidden retreats selected by himself, in the morasses of the Pedee and the Black Rivers, he placed his corps not only out of the reach of his foe, but often out of the discovery of his friends.

2. A rigid disciplinarian, he reduced to practice the justice of the heart; and during the difficult course of warfare through which he passed, calumny itself never charged him with violating the rights of person, property, or humanity. Never avoiding danger, he never rashly sought it; and acting for all around him as he did for himself, he risked the lives of his troops only when it was necessary. Never elated with prosperity, nor depressed by adversity, he preserved an equanimity which won the admiration of his friends, and exacted the respect of his enemies. The country from Camden to the sea-coast, between Pedee and Santee Rivers, was the theatre of his exertions.

3. Sumter was younger than Marion, larger in frame, better fitted in strength of body to the toils of war, and, like his compeer, devoted to the freedom of his country. His aspect was manly and stern, denoting insuperable firmness and lofty courage. He was not over-scrupulous as a soldier in his use of means, and apt to make considerable allowances for a state of war. Believing it warranted by the necessity of the case, he did not occupy his mind with critical examinations of the equity of his measures, or their bearings on individuals, but indiscriminately pressed forward to his end—the destruction of his enemies and the liberation of his country.

4. In his military character he resembled Ajax, relying more upon the fierceness of his courage than upon the results of unrelaxing vigilance and nicely adjusted combination. Determined to deserve success, he risked his own life and the lives of his associates without reserve. Enchanted with the splendor of victory, he would wade in torrents of blood to attain it. This general drew about him the hardy sons of the upper and middle grounds; brave and determined like himself, familiar with difficulty, and fearless of danger. He traversed the region between Camden and Ninety-Six.

5. A third gentleman followed their example. Andrew Pickens, younger than either of them, inexperienced in war with a sound head, a virtuous heart, and a daring spirit, joined in the noble resolve to burst the chains of bondage riveted upon the two southern States, and soon found himself worthy of being ranked with his illustrious precursors. This gentleman was also promoted by the governor to the station of brigadier-general; and, having assembled his associates of the same brave and hardy cast, distinguished himself and his corps, in the progress of the war, by the patience and cheerfulness with which every privation was borne, and the gallantry with which every danger was confronted. The country between Ninety-six and Augusta received his chief attention.

6. These leaders were always engaged in breaking up the smaller posts and intermediate communications, or in repairing losses sustained by action. The troops which followed their fortunes, on their own or their friends' horses, were armed with rifles, in the use of which they had become expert; a small portion only, who acted as cavalry, being provided with sabres. When they approached an enemy, they dismounted, leaving their horses in some hidden spot, to the care of a few of their comrades. Victorious or vanquished, they flew to their horses, and thus improved victory or secured retreat.

7. Their marches were long and toilsome, and they seldom partook of food more than once a day. Their combats were like those of the Parthians, sudden and fierce, their decisions speedy, and all their subsequent measures equally prompt. With alternate fortunes they persevered to the last, and greatly contributed to that success which was the first object of their efforts.—*Memoirs of the War in the Southern Department of the United States.*

Arnold's Treason.—The year 1780 is particularly memorable for the "Treason of Arnold." In 1778, after the British had evacuated Philadelphia, Arnold was put in command of that city. Here he lived at an expense beyond his income, and, to meet the demands of his creditors, appropriated public funds to his own use. Charges were preferred against him, and, in conformity with the decision of the court, he was reprimanded by Washington. He felt

the disgrace, and determined to wreak his vengeance. Having secured the command of West Point, he offered, by means of a correspondence which he had carried on several months, to betray it into the hands of Clinton. Major André, aid-de-camp to Clinton, was sent to finish the plan of treason and adjust the traitor's recompense. André proceeded up the Hudson, and, at a place six miles below West Point, met Arnold, and completed the bargain.

Instead of returning by water, as had been previously arranged, André was compelled by circumstances to cross to the east side of the Hudson and proceed by land. When near Tarrytown, he was stopped by three militiamen,—Paulding, Williams, and Van Wart,—who conducted him to North Castle, the nearest military station of the Americans. The commander at North Castle, having no suspicion of Arnold's base design, wrote to that officer, informing him of the arrest of André. The traitor, startled and alarmed upon reading the letter, escaped on board the British sloop-of-war Vulture, the vessel which had been intended for André's return, and took refuge in New York. André was conveyed to Tappan, a village on the west side of the Hudson, opposite Tarrytown, and was there tried by a court-martial, found guilty, and, agreeably to the laws and usages of nations, executed as a spy. Arnold was made a brigadier-general in the British service.

Execution of Major André.—*Alexander Hamilton.*

1. NEVER, perhaps, did any man suffer death with more justice, or deserve it less. The first step he took after his capture, was to write a letter to General Washington, conceived in terms of dignity without insolence, and apology without meanness. The scope of it was to vindicate himself from the imputation of having assumed a mean character for treacherous or interested purposes; asserting that he had been involuntarily an impostor; that, contrary to his intention, which was to meet a person for intelligence on neutral ground, he had been betrayed within our posts, and forced into the vile condition of an enemy in disguise; soliciting only that to whatever rigor policy might devote him, a decency of treatment might be observed due to a person, who, though unfortunate, had been guilty of nothing dishonorable.

2. His request was granted in its full extent; for, in the whole progress of the affair, he was treated with the most scrupulous delicacy. When brought before the board of officers, he met with every mark of indulgence, and was required to

answer no interrogatory which would even embarrass his feelings. On his part, while he carefully concealed everything that might implicate others, he frankly confessed all the facts relating to himself, and, upon his confession, without the trouble of examining a witness, the board made their report.

3. The members were not more impressed with the candor and firmness, mixed with a becoming sensibility, which he displayed, than he was penetrated with their liberality and politeness. He acknowledged the generosity of the behavior toward him in every respect, but particularly in this, in the strongest terms of manly gratitude. In a conversation with a gentleman who visited him after his trial, he said, he flattered himself he had never been illiberal; but, if there were any remains of prejudice in his mind, his present experience must obliterate them.

4. In one of the visits I made (and I saw him several times during his confinement), he begged me to be the bearer of a request to the general, for permission to send an open letter to Sir Henry Clinton. "I foresee my fate," said he, "and though I pretend not to play the hero, or to be indifferent about life, yet I am reconciled to whatever may happen, conscious that misfortune, not guilt, has brought it upon me. There is only one thing that disturbs my tranquillity. Sir Henry Clinton has been too good to me; he has been lavish of his kindness; I am bound to him by too many obligations, and love him too well to bear the thought that he should reproach himself, or others should reproach him, on the supposition of my having conceived myself obliged, by his instructions, to run the risk I did. I would not, for the world, leave a sting in his mind that should embitter his future days."

5. He could scarcely finish the sentence, bursting into tears in spite of his efforts to suppress them, and with difficulty collecting himself enough afterward to add: "I wish to be permitted to assure him, I did not act under this impression, but submitted to a necessity imposed upon me, as contrary to my own inclinations as to his orders." His request was readily complied with; and he wrote the letter annexed, with which I

dare say you will be as much pleased as I am, both for the sentiments and diction.

6. When his sentence was announced to him, he remarked, that since he was to die, there was still a choice in the mode, which would make a material difference to his feelings; and he would be happy, if possible, to be indulged with a professional death. He made a second application by letter, in concise, but persuasive terms. It was thought that this indulgence, being incompatible[v] with the customs of war, could not be granted; and it was, therefore, determined, in both cases, to evade an answer, to spare the sensations which a certain knowledge of the intended mode would inflict.

7. In going to the place of execution, he bowed familiarly as he went along, to all those with whom he had been acquainted in his confinement. A smile of complacency expressed the serene fortitude of his mind. Arrived at the fatal spot, he asked, with some emotion: "Must I then die in this manner?" He was told it had been unavoidable. "I am reconciled to my fate," said he, "but not to the mode." Soon, however, recollecting himself, he added: "It will be but a momentary pang;" and springing upon the cart, performed the last offices for himself with a composure that excited the admiration and melted the hearts of the beholders.

8. Upon being told the final moment was at hand, and asked if he had anything to say, he answered: "Nothing, but to request you will witness to the world that I die like a brave man." Among the extraordinary circumstances that attended him, in the midst of his enemies, he died universally regretted and universally esteemed.

9. There was something singularly interesting in the character and fortunes of Andre. To an excellent understanding, well improved by education and travel, he united a peculiar elegance of mind and manners, and the advantage of a pleasing person. 'Tis said he possessed a pretty taste for the fine arts, and had himself attained some proficiency in poetry, music, and painting. His knowledge appeared without ostentation, and embellished by a diffidence that rarely accompanies

so many talents and accomplishments, which left you to suppose more than appeared.

10. His sentiments were elevated, and inspired esteem; they had a softness that conciliated affection. His elocution was handsome; his address easy, polite, and insinuating. By his merit, he had acquired the unlimited confidence of his general, and was making a rapid progress in military rank and reputation. But in the height of his career, flushed with new hopes from the execution of a project the most beneficial to his party that could be devised, he was at once precipitated from the summit of prosperity, and saw all the expectations of his ambition blasted, and himself ruined.—*Letter to Laurens.*

Andre's Last Request.—*Willis.*

[The request of Andre to Washington, to be permitted to die the death of a *soldier*, not of a *spy*, is beautifully expressed in the following lines by N. P. Willis.]

It is not the fear of death
That damps my brow;
It is not for another breath
I ask thee now;
I can die with a lip unstirr'd,
And a quiet heart—
Let but this prayer be heard
Ere I depart.

I can give up my mother's look—
My sister's kiss;
I can think of love—yet brook
A death like this!
I can give up the young fame
I burned to win;
All but the spotless name
I glory in.

Thine is the power to give,
Thine to deny,
Joy for the hour I live,
Calmness to die.
By all the brave should cherish,
By my dying breath,
I ask that I may perish
By a soldier's death.

Benedict Arnold.—*Garden.*

1. That treachery creates its own punishment, and, to the detestation of the world, adds the inward agony "that passeth show," is strikingly exemplified in the history of the apostate[v] Arnold. What were the results of his desertion? The fair fame acquired by his early exertions as a patriot-soldier was blasted. Children that had learned to lisp his deeds of gallantry, now shuddered with abhorrence at his name.

2. Execrated[v] by his former friends, proscribed by his country, reluctantly obeyed, and by the meanest sentinel held in the meanest contempt, his life was a constant scene of apprehension, misery, and remorse. A cloud hung over his fortunes that shaded his countenance with the gloom of despair, and betrayed the increasing agonies of his guilty heart. That such was the state of his mind is clear, from his anxiety to learn from others what they supposed his fate would be should he fall into the hands of his countrymen.

3. While commanding the predatory[v] expedition on the shores of Virginia,—a service peculiarly suited to his character,—it is stated that, on one occasion, when some danger appeared of his being taken, he asked an officer near him, "What treatment, think you, sir, am I to look for, should the rebels make me their prisoner?" "I have no doubt," replied the officer, "though my frankness may offend, but that they will cut off the leg that was wounded in storming the British lines at Saratoga, and bury it with the honors of war; but, having no respect for the rest of your body, they will gibbet it."

4. The contempt that followed him through life is further illustrated by the speech of the present Lord Lauderdale, who, perceiving Arnold on the right hand of the king, and near his person, as he addressed his Parliament, declared on his return to the Commons, "that however gracious the language he had heard from the throne, his indignation could not but be greatly excited, beholding, as he had done, his Majesty supported by a traitor." And on another occasion, Lord Surrey, since Duke of Norfolk, rising to speak in the House of Commons, and

perceiving Arnold in the gallery, sat down with precipitation[v], exclaiming, "I will not speak while that man (pointing to him) is in the House."

5. I myself witnessed a remarkably strong proof of it. Sitting in a coffee-house, at Cowes, in 1792, with a British officer of high distinction, he purposely turned the conversation on the blessings of the Americans, declaring, with earnestness, that he believed them happier and more to be envied than any people in the world. A stranger who sat near, and who appeared intent on these encomiums[v], rose hastily and left the room; when my companion said, "I perceive that you are unacquainted with the traitor, once the pride of your army: the man who has just retired is Benedict Arnold. The language which I used must have appeared extravagant. I spoke of America with enthusiasm, to make him feel his degradation; as no one, in my opinion, so highly deserves execration."

6. It must ever be lamented, that, while so generous and high-spirited a soldier as Andre paid the penalty of the treason, the traitor should live to enjoy pecuniary recompense and command;—I cannot say *honor*, for, from the moment of his apostasy[v], he sunk into the most profound abyss of infamy. The very services required of him showed the opinion of the commander-in-chief. What was the object in Virginia? *Plunder.* What at New London? *Destruction.* He was an adept at both, and failed not to add to the black catalogue of his former atrocities.*

Events of 1781.—Mutiny of the Pennsylvania Troops. —During the winter of 1780–1, great dissatisfaction existed among the troops of Washington's army, because they had not been paid for several months, and were not provided with sufficient clothing and provisions. This feeling increasing among the Pennsylvania troops, owing to a dispute about the term of their enlistment, they left their camp at Morristown, on the first day of 1781, to seek redress of Congress. On the march toward Philadelphia they were overtaken by two emissaries[v] of Clinton, whom they seized and conducted to Gen. Wayne, to be treated as spies. At Princeton they were met by a committee

* Benedict Arnold was born at Norwich, Connecticut, in 1740. After the Revolution he was engaged in business for a time at St. John's, New Brunswick. He died in obscurity, at London, in 1801.

of Congress, who satisfied their pressing wants, and thus suppressed the revolt. This mutiny, and another among the New Jersey troops, which was speedily quelled by military power, quickened Congress to act for the relief of the army.

Measures of Relief.—Robert Morris.—Taxation was resorted to, an agent was sent to Europe for aid, and other measures were adopted. Robert Morris, who had been appointed superintendent of the national treasury, was very active in the discharge of his duties; and, by the financial aid which he rendered, enabled Congress to prosecute the war. Upon his recommendation, the Bank of North America was established at a later period; and this institution proved of great service during the rest of the contest.

Battle of the Cowpens.—Gates, in consequence of his defeat at Sanders Creek, was superseded in the command by Gen. Greene, who at once sent Gen. Morgan * to check the devastations of the British in South Carolina. At the Cow'pens, on the 17th of January, Tarleton overtook Morgan; but, after a severe battle, the British were completely routed, losing about eight hundred men, while the loss of the Americans did not exceed eighty.

Retreat of Morgan and Greene.—Morgan, after his victory, hurried off in a northeasterly direction; and Cornwallis, on hearing of Tarleton's defeat, started in pursuit, and reached the Ca-taw'ba, at evening, on the 29th, just two hours after the Americans had forded the river. He halted, intending to cross in the morning, but, during the night, a heavy rain set in, and, by daybreak, the stream was so swollen as to be impassable. Here, on the east side of the Catawba, Greene came to the aid of Morgan, and, taking the command, continued the retreat. At the Yadkin the Americans were again favored by a rain-storm; and, after they crossed the Dan, Cornwallis gave up the pursuit.

Battle of Guilford Court-House.—In a few days Greene recrossed the Dan into North Carolina. Receiving re-enforcement, which increased his army to over four thousand men, he no longer avoided a battle. At Guilford (*ghil'furd*) Court-House, where he had taken a position, he was attacked on the 15th of March. The result, though unfavorable to the Americans, left Cornwallis in such a disabled condition, that, three days after, he retreated from the field of victory, taking the road to Wilmington.

Battle of Hobkirk's Hill.—Greene rallied his forces, and for several days pursued Cornwallis; but not being able to overtake him, advanced into South Carolina to attack the enemy at Camden. At Hobkirk's Hill, two miles from that place, Lord Rawdon partly surprised him on the 25th of April. The struggle was waged with varied fortune; but at length, a regiment of the Americans breaking, the patriots were forced to retreat.

* Daniel Morgan was born in New Jersey, in 1736. He was with Braddock in the expedition of 1755, performing the humble duties of teamster. At the breaking out of the Revolution, he joined Washington, at Cambridge, with a rifle corps. He accompanied Arnold across the wilderness to Quebec, and participated in the attempt to capture that city. In the battle of Bemis Heights he took a distinguished part. His death occurred in 1802, at Winchester, Virginia.

Battle of Eutaw Springs.—Close of the Campaign.—The battle of Eutaw (*ū'taw*) Springs, fought on the 8th of September, between Greene and Stuart, closed the contest in the Carolinas. This was a desperate engagement, and at one time victory seemed certain for the Americans; but the British rallying, Greene drew off his troops, taking with him about five hundred prisoners. The enemy decamped during the night. In this battle, which may be said to have closed the contest in South Carolina, both parties claimed the victory. Washington considered it a victory for the Americans, as the advantage, without doubt, was on their side.

Thus ended certainly the most brilliant campaign of the war,—a campaign which, although decided success was not fully attained by the Americans, was of inconceivable value to their cause, and in which, without doubt, more skillful generalship was displayed by their commander, than was exhibited in any other continuous series of operations during the entire war.

Character of General Greene.—***Alexander Hamilton.***

1. As a man, the virtues of Nathaniel Greene are admitted; as a patriot, he holds a place in the foremost rank; as a statesman, he is praised; as a soldier, he is admired. But in the two last characters, especially in the last but one, his reputation falls far below his desert. It required a longer life and still greater opportunities, to have enabled him to exhibit, in full day, the vast —I had almost said the enormous—powers of his mind.

2. The termination of the American war—not too soon for his wishes, nor for the welfare of his country, but too soon for his glory—put an end to his military career. The sudden termination of his life cut him off from those scenes which the progress of a new, immense, and unsettled empire could not fail to open to the complete exertion of that universal and pervading genius which qualified him not less for the senate than for the field.

3. General Greene, descended from reputable parents, but, not placed by birth in that elevated rank which, under a monarchy, is the only sure road to those employments that give activity and scope to abilities, must, in all probability, have contented himself with the humble lot of a private citizen, or, at most, with the contracted sphere of an elective officer in a colonial and dependent government, scarcely conscious of the resources of his own mind, had not the violated rights of his country

called him to act a part on a more splendid and more ample theatre.

4. Happily for America, he hesitated not to obey the call. The vigor of his genius, corresponding with the importance of the prize to be contended for, overcame the natural moderation of his temper; and though not hurried on by enthusiasm, but animated by an enlightened sense of the value of free government, he cheerfully resolved to stake his fortune, his hopes, his life, and his honor, upon an enterprise of the danger of which he knew the whole magnitude,—in a cause which was worthy of the toils and the blood of heroes.

5. The sword having been appealed to at Lexington as the arbiter of the controversy between Great Britain and America, Greene shortly after marched, at the head of a regiment, to join the American forces at Cambridge, determined to abide the awful decision. He was not long there before the discerning eye of the American Fabius* marked him out as the object of his confidence. His abilities entitled him to a pre-eminent share in the councils of his chief. He gained it, and he preserved it, amidst all the checkered varieties of military vicissitude, and in defiance of all the intrigues of jealous and aspiring rivals.

6. As long as the measures which conducted us safely through the first most critical stages of the war shall be remembered with approbation; as long as the enterprises of Trenton and Princeton shall be regarded as the dawnings of that bright day which afterward broke forth with such resplendent lustre; as long as the almost magic operations of the remainder of that memorable winter, distinguished not more by these events than by the extraordinary spectacle of a powerful army straitened within narrow limits by the phantom of a military force, and never permitted to transgress those limits with impunity, in which skill supplied the place of means, and disposition was the substitute for an army; as long, I say, as these operations shall continue to be the objects of curiosity and wonder, so long ought the name of Greene to be revered by a grateful country.—*Eulogium before the Society of Cincinnati.*

* Washington was so called on account of his cautious generalship.

Siege of Yorktown.—Surrender of Cornwallis.—The operations of Cornwallis in Virginia were very distressing to the patriotic inhabitants, as Lafayette, in consequence of the inferiority of his forces, was unable to make a stand against the enemy. In August, Cornwallis concentrated his forces at Yorktown, and at once began to strengthen his position by fortifications. In the meantime Washington had made preparations by which a large force of French troops, co-operating with another of Americans, was to make an attack for the recovery of New York. On learning, however, that a French fleet would soon arrive in the Chesapeake, Washington was induced to change his design, and proceed against Cornwallis. Yorktown was accordingly soon invested with a large land-force, while the French fleet, commanded by Count de Grasse (*gras*), blockaded the York and James Rivers. On the 9th of October, the allied armies commenced a cannonade so heavy, that in a day or two most of the works of the British were demolished. At length, on the 19th, finding his position untenable, and seeing no prospect of relief, Cornwallis* surrendered the place, with more than seven thousand soldiers, to Washington, and his shipping and seamen to De Grasse.

Yorktown.—*Whittier.*

From Yorktown's ruins, ranked and still,
Two lines stretch far o'er vale and hill;
Who curbs his steed at head of one?
Hark! the low murmur: Washington!
Who bends his keen, approving glance
Where down the gorgeous line of France
Shine knightly star and plume of snow?
Thou too art victor, Rochambeau!†

The earth which bears this calm array
Shook with the war-charge yesterday;
Ploughed deep with hurrying hoof and wheel,
Shot down and bladed thick with steel;
October's clear and noonday sun
Paled in the breath-smoke of the gun;
And down night's double blackness fell,
Like a dropped star, the blazing shell.

Now all is hushed: the gleaming lines
Stand moveless as the neighboring pines;
While through them, sullen, grim, and slow,
The conquered hosts of England go:

* After the Revolution he was appointed to an important command in India, where he inaugurated a series of victories by which the British authority there was finally established. He died in India, in 1805.

† Count Rochambeau (*r shong-bo'*) commanded the French troops in the siege.

O'Hara's brow belies his dress,
Gay Tarleton's troop ride bannerless:
Shout, from thy fired and wasted homes,
Thy scourge, Virginia, captive comes!

Nor thou alone: with one glad voice
Let all thy sister States rejoice;
Let Freedom, in whatever clime
She waits with sleepless eye her time,
Shouting from cave and mountain wood,
Make glad her desert solitude,
While they who hunt her quail with fear:
The New World's chain lies broken here.

Expedition of Arnold.—In the mean time Arnold had been despatched, by Clinton, on an expedition against New London, in the hope that Washington would thus be diverted from his design upon Cornwallis and Yorktown. Fort Griswold, by which the town was defended, made a brave defense, but was finally carried by assault. Col. Led'yard, its commander, was murdered with his own sword, after yielding it up, and many of the garrison were also slaughtered. The town was reduced to ashes.

Close of the Revolution.—The surrender of Cornwallis caused great rejoicings throughout the United States, being considered a death-blow to the war. The effect in England was as might have been anticipated. Public opinion became so decidedly opposed to the further prosecution of hostilities, that, upon the formation of a new ministry, negotiations were entered into for the establishment of peace. A convention of commissioners from the two countries met at Paris, four of whom, Benjamin Franklin, John Adams, John Jay, and Henry Laurens, represented the United States, and, on the 30th of November, 1782, they signed a preliminary treaty. A cessation of hostilities was proclaimed in the American army on the 19th of April, 1783, the eighth anniversary of the battle of Lexington; and, on the 3d of September, a definitive treaty of peace was signed at Paris. By the terms of this treaty, Great Britain acknowledged the independence of the United States, conceded boundaries extending to the great lakes on the north and the Mississippi on the west, as well as an unlimited right to fish on the banks of Newfoundland. Florida was, at the same time, given back to Spain.

Difficulties at the Close of the War.—The close of the war found the national treasury empty; the States were unable to respond to the call of Congress for money, and the resources obtained by foreign loans were nearly exhausted. The government was, accordingly, unable to meet the just claims made upon it, and the consequence was general discontent, particularly among the officers and privates of the army. Through the influence of Washington, these discontents in the army were soothed, and arrangements were made by which Congress granted five years' whole pay to the officers, instead of,

as by resolution passed in 1780, half pay for life. Four months' whole pay was granted to the soldiers, in part liquidation of their claims. During this period the headquarters of Washington were at Newburg. (See Newburg Addresses, p. 214.)

Proposal of Colonel Nicola.—It was at this place that an event occurred, which, while it gave great pain as well as alarm to Washington, served to illustrate more forcibly than any other incident could have done, the virtue, magnanimity, and disinterested patriotism, for which his character is so remarkable. Colonel Nicola was the usual medium employed by the officers and soldiers to convey to the commander-in-chief their troubles, their complaints, and their desires. In May, 1783, this officer addressed a letter to him, complaining of the then condition of the army and the country, and the unsatisfactory prospect of improvement and relief through the action of Congress, and expressing the opinion that a republican form of government was insecure and unreliable, and that the English form of government was more stable, and preferable on other accounts. This celebrated letter ended thus: "It will, I believe, be uncontroverted, that the same abilities which have led us, through difficulties apparently insurmountable, to human power, to victory and glory—those qualities that have merited and obtained the universal esteem and veneration of an army—would be most likely to conduct and direct us in the smoother paths of peace. Some people have so connected the idea of tyranny and monarchy, as to find it very difficult to separate them. It may, therefore, be requisite to give the head of such a constitution as I propose, some title apparently more moderate; but, if all other things were once adjusted, I believe strong arguments might be produced for admitting the title of KING, which I conceive would be attended with some national advantage." The following was Washington's reply, probably, in view of the conduct of other distinguished men in the world's history, the most to be admired of all his utterances:

Washington's Reply to Colonel Nicola.

SIR: With a mixture of great surprise and astonishment, I have read with attention the sentiments you have submitted to my perusal. Be assured, sir, no occurrence in the course of this war has given me more painful sensations than your information of there being such ideas existing in the army as you have expressed, and which I must view with abhorrence and reprehend with severity. For the present, the communication of them will rest in my own bosom, unless some further agitation of the matter shall make a disclosure necessary. I am much at a loss to conceive what part of my conduct should have given encouragement to an address which to me seems big with the

greatest mischiefs that can befall my country. If I am not deceived in the knowledge of myself, you could not have found a person to whom your schemes are more disagreeable. At the same time, in justice to my own feelings, I must add, that no man possesses a more serious wish to see ample justice done to the army, than I do; and as far as my power and influence, in a constitutional way, extend, they shall be employed to the utmost of my abilities to effect it, should there be any occasion. Let me conjure you, then, if you have any regard for your country, concern for yourself or posterity, or respect for me, to banish these thoughts from your mind, and never communicate, as from yourself or any one else, a sentiment of the like nature.

I am etc.

Newburg Addresses.—In March, 1783, before Congress had taken any satisfactory action in relation to the claims of the army, anonymous addresses were circulated, with the view apparently to inflame the minds of the soldiers, and lead to such violent action on their part as would have compelled a compliance with their demands. The author of these addresses was Major John Armstrong, Jr., a young officer, who served as aide-de-camp to General Gates; and it afterwards appeared that his only object was to quicken Congress to do justice to the soldiers. Had it not been for the wisdom and tact of Washington, however, their circulation might have led to the most disastrous consequences. The following is the first of these addresses:

Address to the Army.

1. A FELLOW-SOLDIER, whose interests and affections bind him strongly to you, whose past sufferings have been as great, and whose future fortunes may be as desperate, as yours, would beg leave to address you. Age has its claims, and rank is not without its pretensions to advise; but although unsupported by both, he flatters himself that the plain language of sincerity and experience will neither be unheard nor unregarded.

2. Like many of you, he loved private life, and left it with regret. He left it, determined to retire from the field with the necessity that called him to it, and not till then—not till the enemies of his country, the slaves of power and the hirelings of injustice, were compelled to abandon their schemes, and ac-

knowledge America as terrible in arms as she had been humble in remonstrance. With this object in view, he has long shared in your toils and mingled in your dangers—he has felt the cold hand of poverty without a murmur, and has seen the insolence of wealth without a sigh. But too much under the direction of his wishes, and sometimes weak enough to mistake desire for opinion, he has, till lately, very lately, believed in the justice of his country. He hoped that, as the clouds of adversity scattered, and as the sunshine of peace and better fortune broke in upon us, the coldness and severity of government would relax, and that more than justice, that gratitude, would blaze forth upon those hands which had upheld her in the darkest stages of her passage from impending servitude to acknowledged independence.

3. But faith has its limits, as well as temper; and there are points beyond which neither can be stretched without sinking into cowardice or plunging into credulity. This, my friends, I conceive to be your situation—hurried to the very verge of both, another step would ruin you forever. To be tame and unprovoked, when injuries press hard upon you, is more than weakness; but to look up for kinder usage without one manly effort of your own, would fix your character, and show the world how richly you deserve those chains you broke. To guard against this evil, let us take a view of the ground upon which we now stand, and from thence carry our thoughts forward, for a moment, into the unexplored field of expedient.

4. After a pursuit of seven long years, the object for which we set out is at length brought within our reach. Yes, my friends, that suffering courage of yours was active once; it has conducted the United States of America through a doubtful and bloody war—it has placed her in the chair of independence, and peace returns again to bless—whom? A country willing to redress your wrongs, cherish your worth, and reward your services? A country courting your return to private life with tears of gratitude and smiles of admiration? Longing to divide with you that independency which your gallantry has given, and those riches which your swords have preserved? Is

this the case? Or is it, rather, a country that tramples upon your rights, disdains your cries, and insults your distresses?

5. Have you not more than once suggested your wishes, and made known your wants to Congress (wants and wishes which gratitude and policy should have anticipated, rather than have evaded), and have you not lately, in the meek language of entreating memorials, begged from their justice what you could no longer expect from their favor? How have you been answered? Let the letter which you are called upon to consider to-morrow make reply!

6. If this, then, be your treatment, while the swords you wear are necessary for the defense of America, what have you to expect from peace, when your voice shall sink, and your strength dissipate by division—when those very swords, the instruments and companions of your glory, shall be taken from your sides, and no remaining mark of military distinction be left but your wants, infirmities, and fears? Can you then consent to be the only sufferers by this revolution, and, retiring from the field, grow old in poverty, wretchedness, and contempt? Can you consent to wade through the vile mire of dependency, and owe the miserable remnant of that life to charity, which has hitherto been spent in honor?

7. If you can, go, and carry with you the jest of tories and the scorn of whigs; the ridicule, and, what is worse, the pity of the world! Go, starve and be forgotten! But if your spirits should revolt at this, if you have sense enough to discover, and spirit sufficient to oppose tyranny, under whatever garb it may assume—whether it be the plain coat of republicanism or the splendid robe of royalty; if you have yet learned to discriminate between a people and a cause—between men and principles—awake, attend to your situation, and redress yourselves!

8. If the present moment be lost, every future effort is in vain; your threats then will be as empty as your entreaties now. I would advise you, therefore, to come to some final opinion of what you can bear and what you will suffer. If your determination be in any proportion to your wrongs, carry your appeal from the justice to the fears of government.

Change the milk-and-water style of your last memorial. Assume a bolder tone, decent but lively, spirited, and determined; and suspect the man who would advise you to moderation, and longer forbearance. Let two or three men, who can feel as well as write, be appointed to draw up your last *remonstrance*, (for I would no longer give it the suing, soft, unsuccessful epithet of *memorial*). Let it represent, in language that will neither dishonor you by its rudeness, nor betray you by its fears, what has been promised by Congress, and what has been performed;—how long and how patiently you have suffered, how little you have asked, and how much of that little has been denied.

9. Tell them, that though you were the first, and would wish to be the last, to encounter danger,—though despair itself can never drive you into dishonor, it may drive you from the field; that the wound, often irritated and never healed, may at length become incurable, and that the slightest mark of indignity from Congress now must operate like the grave, and part you forever; that, in any political event, the army has its alternative,—if peace, that nothing shall separate you from your arms but death; if war, that, courting the auspices and inviting the direction of your illustrious leader, you will retire to some yet unsettled country, smile in your turn, "and mock when their fear cometh on." But let it represent, also, that should they comply with the request of your late memorial, it would make you more happy, and them more respectable; that while the war should continue, you would follow their standard in the field, and that when it came to an end, you would withdraw into the shade of private life, and give the world another subject of wonder and applause—an army victorious over its enemies—victorious over itself.

[The address was accompanied by a call for a meeting of the general and field officers of the army, to "consider the late letter from our representatives in Philadelphia, and what measure (if any) should be adopted, to obtain that redress of grievances which they seem to have solicited in vain." This call and address led to the publication of an order from Washington, disapproving of "such disorderly proceedings," and summoning the officers to assemble at a

stated time, to hear the report of the Committee of the Army to Congress. In pursuance of this call, a meeting was held, and there was a full attendance of officers. The following is an extract from the address delivered by Washington on that occasion.]

Washington's Address to the Officers of the Army.

1. As I was among the first who embarked in the cause of our common country; as I have never left your side one moment, but when called from you on public duty; as I have been the constant companion and witness of your distresses, and not among the last to feel and acknowledge your merits; as I have ever considered my own military reputation as inseparably connected with that of the army; as my heart has ever expanded with joy when I have heard its praises, and my indignation has arisen when the mouth of detraction has been opened against it—it can scarcely be supposed, at this last stage of the war, that I am indifferent to its interests.

2. But how are they to be promoted? The way is plain, says the anonymous addresser. "If war continues, remove into the unsettled country; there establish yourselves, and leave an ungrateful country to defend itself." But whom are they to defend? Our wives, our children, our farms, and other property which we leave behind us? Or, in this state of hostile separation, are we to take the two first (the latter cannot be removed) to perish in a wilderness, with hunger, cold, and nakedness?

3. "If peace takes place, never sheathe your swords," says he, "until you have obtained full and ample justice." This dreadful alternative of either deserting our country in the extremest hour of her distress, or turning our arms against it—which is the apparent object, unless Congress can be compelled into instant compliance,—has something so shocking in it, that humanity revolts at the idea. My God! what can this writer have in view by recommending such measures? Can he be a friend to the army? Can he be a friend to the country? Rather, is he not an insidious foe? Some emissary, perhaps, from New York, plotting the ruin of both, by sowing the seeds

of discord and separation between the civil and military powers of the continent? And what a compliment does he pay to our understandings, when he recommends measures, in either alternative, impracticable in their nature. . . . .

4. There might, gentlemen, be an impropriety in my taking notice, in this address to you, of an anonymous production; but the manner in which that performance has been introduced to the army, the effect it was intended to have, together with some other circumstances, will amply justify my observations on the tendency of that writing. With respect to the advice given by the author, to suspect the man who shall recommend moderate measures and longer forbearance, I spurn it, as every man who regards the liberty and reveres the justice for which we contend, undoubtedly must; for, if men are to be precluded from offering their sentiments on a matter which may involve the most serious and alarming consequences that can invite the consideration of mankind, reason is of no use to us; the freedom of speech may be taken away, and, dumb and silent, we may be led like sheep to the slaughter. . . . .

5. Let me request you to rely on the plighted faith of your country, and place a full confidence in the purity of the intentions of Congress, that, previous to your dissolution as an army, they will cause all your accounts to be fairly liquidated, as directed in the resolutions which were published to you two days ago, and that they will adopt the most effectual measures in their power, to render ample justice to you for your faithful and meritorious services. And let me conjure you, in the name of our common country, as you value your own sacred honor, as you respect the rights of humanity, and as you regard the military and national character of America, to express your utmost horror and detestation of the man who wishes, under any specious pretenses, to overturn the liberties of our country, and who wickedly attempts to open the flood-gates of civil discord, and deluge our rising empire in blood.

6. By thus determining and thus acting, you will pursue the plain and direct road to the attainment of your wishes; you will defeat the insidious designs of our enemies, who are com-

pelled to resort from open force to secret artifice; you will give one more distinguished proof of unexampled patriotism and patient virtue rising superior to the pressure of the most complicated sufferings; and you will, by the dignity of your conduct, afford occasion for posterity to say, when speaking of the glorious example you have exhibited to mankind, "Had this day been wanting, the world had never seen the last stage of perfection to which human nature is capable of attaining."

[After reading this address, Washington immediately retired, and left the officers to their free deliberations. At the close of a very brief conference, they unanimously adopted resolutions, thanking their commander for the course he had pursued, and adopting the views which he had expressed. General Gates presided over this interesting meeting. A statement of all these proceedings was transmitted to Congress, and entered in full on its journals.]

Disbandment of the Army.—In conformity with general orders of Congress, the army was disbanded on the 3d of November, 1783; and on the 25th of the same month, Sir Guy Carleton, who had succeeded Sir Henry Clinton, evacuated New York. After the retirement of the British from the city, Washington met his officers there, and, "with a heart full of love and gratitude," took leave of them.

Retirement of Washington.—Washington then repaired to Annapolis, where Congress was in session, and, on the 23d of December, 1783, resigned to that body his commission as commander-in-chief. He then hastened to his home at Mount Vernon, where, in the retirement of private life, he hoped to spend the remainder of his days.

Washington Resigning his Commission.—*Ramsay.*

1. The hour now approached in which it became necessary for the American chief to take leave of his officers, who had been endeared to him by a long series of common sufferings and dangers. This was done in a solemn manner. The officers having previously assembled for the purpose, General Washington joined them, and, calling for a glass of wine, thus addressed them: "With a heart full of love and gratitude, I now take leave of you. I most devoutly wish that your latter days may be as prosperous and happy as your former ones have been glorious and honorable." Having drank, he added, "I cannot come to each of you to take my leave, but shall be obliged to you if each of you will come and take me by the hand."

2. General Knox, being next, turned to him. Incapable of

utterance, Washington grasped his hand, and embraced him. The officers came up successively, and he took an affectionate leave of each of them. Not a word was articulated on either side. A majestic silence prevailed. The tear of sensibility glistened in every eye. The tenderness of the scene exceeded all description.

3. When the last of the officers had taken his leave, Washington left the room, and passed through the corps of light-infantry to the place of embarkation. The officers followed in a solemn, mute procession, with dejected countenances. On his entering the barge to cross the North River, he turned toward the companions of his glory, and by waving his hat bid them a silent adieu. Some of them answered this last signal of respect and affection with tears; and all of them gazed upon the barge which conveyed him from their sight, till they could no longer distinguish in it the person of their beloved commander-in-chief.

4. The army being disbanded, Washington proceeded to Annapolis, then the seat of Congress, to resign his commission. On his way thither, he of his own accord delivered to the comptroller of accounts in Philadelphia an account of the expenditures of all the public money he had ever received. This was in his own hand-writing, and every entry was made in a very particular manner. Vouchers were produced for every item, except for secret intelligence and services, which amounted to no more than £1,982 10s. sterling. The whole which, in the course of eight years of war, had passed through his hands, amounted only to £14,479 18s. 9d. sterling. Nothing was charged or retained for personal services; and actual disbursements had been managed with such economy and fidelity, that they were all covered by the above moderate sum.

5. After accounting for all his expenditures of public money (secret service money, for obvious reasons, excepted), with all the exactness which established forms required from the inferior officers of his army, he hastened to resign into the hands of the fathers of his country the powers with which they had invested him. This was done in a public audience.

Congress received him as the founder and guardian of the republic.

6. While he appeared before them, they silently retraced the scenes of danger and distress through which they had passed together. They recalled to mind the blessings of freedom and peace purchased by his arm. They gazed with wonder on their fellow-citizen, who appeared more great and worthy of esteem in resigning his power than he had done in gloriously using it. Every heart was big with emotion. Tears of admiration and gratitude burst from every eye. The general sympathy was felt by the resigning hero, and wet his cheek with a manly tear. . . . .

7. His own sensations, after retiring from public business, are thus expressed in his letters: "I am just beginning to experience the ease and freedom from public cares, which, however desirable, it takes some time to realize; for, strange as it may seem, it is nevertheless true, that it was not until lately I could get the better of my usual custom of ruminating, as soon as I woke in the morning, on the business of the ensuing day; and of my surprise on finding, after revolving many things in my mind, that I was no longer a public man, or had anything to do with public transactions.

8. "I feel as I conceive a wearied traveller must do, who, after treading many a painful step with a heavy burden on his shoulders, is eased of the latter, having reached the haven to which all the former were directed, and from his housetop is looking back, and tracing with an eager eye the meanders by which he escaped the quicksands and mires which lay in his way, and into which none but the all-powerful Guide and Dispenser of human events could have prevented his falling." —*Life of Washington.*

Eminent Statesmen of the Revolution.—*Sparks.*

1. The acts of the Revolution derive dignity and interest from the character of the actors, and the nature and magnitude of the events. It has been remarked, that, in all great political revolutions, men have arisen possessed of extraordinary endow-

ments, adequate to the exigency of the time; and no period has been adorned with examples more illustrious, or more perfectly adapted to the high destiny awaiting them, than that of the American Revolution.

2. Statesmen were at hand, who, if not skilled in the art of governing empires, were thoroughly imbued with the principles of just government, intimately acquainted with the history of former ages, and, above all, with the condition, sentiments, and feelings of their countrymen. The eloquence and the internal counsels of the old Congress were never recorded; we know them only in their results; but that assembly, with no other power than that conferred by the suffrages of the people, with no other influence than that of their public virtue and talents, and without precedent to guide their deliberations, unsupported, even by the arm of law or of ancient usages,—that assembly levied troops, imposed taxes, and, for years, not only retained the confidence and upheld the civil existence of a distracted country, but carried through a perilous war under its most aggravating burdens of sacrifice and suffering.

3. Can we imagine a situation in which were required higher moral courage, more intelligence and talent, a deeper insight into human nature and the principles of social and political organization, or, indeed, any of those qualities which constitute greatness of character in a statesman? See, likewise, that work of wonder, the Confederation, a Union of independent States, constructed in the very heat of a desolating war, but with a beauty and strength, imperfect as it was, of which the ancient leagues of the Amphictyons, the Achæans, the Lycians, and the modern confederacies of Germany, and Switzerland, afford neither exemplar[y] nor parallel!

4. Happy was it for America, happy for the world, that a great name, a guardian genius, presided over her destinies in war, combining more than the virtues of the Roman Fabius and the Theban Epaminondas; and compared with whom, the conquerors of the world, the Alexanders and Cæsars, are but pageants crimsoned with blood, and decked with the trophies of slaughter,—objects equally of the wonder and of the execra-

tion of mankind. The hero of America was the conqueror only of his country's foes, and the hearts of his countrymen. To the one, he was a terror; and, in the other, he gained an ascendency, supreme, unrivalled,—the tribute of admiring gratitude, the reward of a nation's love.—*Life of Washington.*

Mount Vernon.—*Rev. Wm. Jay.*

THERE dwelt the Man, the flower of human kind,
Whose visage mild bespoke his noble mind;
There dwelt the Soldier, who his sword ne'er drew
But in a righteous cause, to Freedom true;
There dwelt the Hero, who ne'er fought for fame,
Yet gained more glory than a Cæsar's name;
There dwelt the Statesman, who, devoid of art,
Gave soundest counsels from an upright heart;
And oh, Columbia, by thy sons caressed,
There dwelt the Father of the realms he blessed,
Who no wish felt to make his mighty praise,
Like other chiefs, the means himself to raise;
But *there* retiring, breathed in pure renown,
And felt a grandeur that disdained a crown.

Weakness of the Confederacy.—It was found that, by the ARTICLES OF CONFEDERATION, under which the United States had existed since 1781, Congress had no power to raise money and pay the debts incurred by the war. The individual States were therefore called upon for funds; but their efforts to raise them by direct taxation produced great opposition, especially in Massachusetts, where it grew to an open insurrection, known as Shays's Rebellion. This, however, was suppressed in 1787.

Adoption of the Constitution.—This rebellion and other circumstances convinced the people that a more powerful general government was needed. Accordingly, a national convention was held at Philadelphia, with Washington as president, and after four months' deliberation, the CONSTITUTION was adopted, September 17th, 1787. After being ratified by the requisite number of States, though not without great opposition, it went into operation on the 4th of March, 1789.

Insufficiency of the Confederation.—*Hamilton.*

1. ONE of the most palpable defects of the subsisting confederation, is the total want of a *sanction*[v] to its laws. The United States, as now (1787) composed, have no powers to exact obedience, or punish disobedience to their resolutions, either by pecuni-

ary mulcts[v], by a suspension or divestiture[v] of privileges, or by any other constitutional mode. There is no express delegation of authority to them to use force against delinquent members; and if such a right should be ascribed to the Federal head, as resulting from the nature of the social compact between the States, it must be by inference and construction, in the face of that part of the second article, by which it is declared, "that each State should retain every power, jurisdiction, and right, not *expressly* delegated to the United States in Congress assembled."

2. There is, doubtless, a striking absurdity in supposing that a right of this kind does not exist; but we are reduced to the dilemma[v] either of embracing that supposition, preposterous[v] as it may seem, or of contravening or explaining away a provision, which has been of late a repeated theme of the eulogies of those who oppose the new Constitution; and the want of which, in that plan, has been the subject of much plausible animadversion[v] and severe criticism.

3. If we are unwilling to impair the force of this applauded provision, we shall be obliged to conclude, that the United States afford the extraordinary spectacle of a government destitute even of the shadow of constitutional power to enforce the execution of its own laws. It will appear, from the specimens which have been cited, that the American Confederacy, in this particular, stands discriminated from every other institution of a similar kind, and exhibits a new and unexampled phenomenon[v] in the political world.

4. The want of a mutual guaranty[v] of the State Governments is another capital imperfection in the Federal plan. There is nothing of this kind declared in the Articles that compose it; and to imply a tacit guaranty from consideration of utility, would be a still more flagrant departure from the clause which has been mentioned, than to imply a tacit power of coercion[v] from the like considerations. The want of a guaranty, though it might in its consequences endanger the Union, does not so immediately attack its existence, as the want of a constitutional sanction to its laws.

5. Without a guaranty, the assistance to be derived from the Union in repelling those domestic dangers which may sometimes threaten the existence of the State Constitutions, must be renounced. Usurpation[v] may rear its crest in each State, and trample upon the liberties of the people; while the National Government could legally do nothing more than behold its encroachments with indignation and regret. A successful faction may erect a tyranny on the ruins of order and law, while no succor could constitutionally be afforded by the Union to the friends and supporters of the Government.

6. The tempestuous situation from which Massachusetts has scarcely emerged, evinces that dangers of this kind are not merely speculative. Who can determine what might have been the issue of her late convulsions, if the malcontents[v] had been headed by a Cæsar or by a Cromwell? Who can predict what effect a despotism, established in Massachusetts, would have upon the liberties of New Hampshire or Rhode Island, of Connecticut or New York?—*The Federalist.*

Motion for Prayers in the Convention.—*Franklin.*

[The following address was delivered by Dr. Franklin in the Constitutional Convention of 1787.]

1. Mr. President: The small progress we have made after four or five weeks' close attendance and continued reasonings with one another; our different sentiments on almost every question, several of the last producing as many noes as ayes, are, methinks, melancholy proofs of the imperfection of the human understanding. We, indeed, seem to feel our own want of political wisdom, since we have been running all about in search of it. We have gone back to ancient history for models of government, and examined the different forms of those republics which, having been formed with the seeds of their own dissolution, now no longer exist. And we have viewed modern states all around Europe, but find none of their constitutions suitable to our circumstances. In this situation of this assembly, groping, as it were, in the dark, to find political truth, and scarce able to distinguish it when presented to us,

how has it happened, sir, that we have not hitherto once thought of humbly applying to the Father of Lights, to illuminate our understandings? In the beginning of the contest with Great Britain, when we were sensible of danger, we had daily prayers in this room for divine protection. Our prayers, sir, were heard, and they were graciously answered.

2. All of us who were engaged in the struggle must have observed frequent instances of a superintending Providence in our favor. To that kind Providence we owe this happy opportunity of consulting in peace on the means of establishing our future national felicity. And have we now forgotten that powerful Friend, or do we imagine that we no longer need His assistance?

3. I have lived, sir, a long time; and the longer I live the more convincing proofs I see of this truth—*that God governs in the affairs of men.* And if a sparrow cannot fall to the ground without his notice, is it probable that an empire can rise without his aid? We have been assured, sir, in the Sacred Writings, that "except the Lord build the house, they labor in vain who build it."

4. I firmly believe this; and I also believe that, without His concurring aid, we shall succeed in this political building no better than the builders of Babel; we shall be divided by our little, partial, local interests; our projects will be confounded; and we ourselves shall become a reproach and a by-word down to future ages. And, what is worse, mankind may hereafter, from this unfortunate instance, despair of establishing governments by human wisdom, and leave it to chance, war, and conquest.

5. I therefore beg leave to move, that henceforth, prayers, imploring the assistance of Heaven, and its blessing on our deliberations, be held in this assembly every morning before we proceed to business; and that one or more of the clergy of this city be requested to officiate in that service.

"The motion was evaded by an adjournment. It was feared, according to Madison, lest prayers for the first time, at that late day, might alarm the public, by giving an impression that matters were already desperate."—*Hildreth.*

Election of President and Vice-President.—The first election for President of the United States resulted in the choice of George Washington, who received the whole number of electoral votes. At the same time John Adams, of Massachusetts, was elected Vice-President. New York was then the capital; and in that city Washington appeared before the first constitutional Congress, and was inaugurated on the 30th of April, 1789.

SECTION V.

THE NATION.

Inauguration of Washington.—*Hildreth.*

1. FROM the moment it had become certain that the Constitution was to go into effect, Washington had been very warmly pressed by numerous correspondents not to decline that post, for which he was so singularly qualified by the choice and the confidence of the entire nation. The general expectation that he would be president had contributed not a little to calm down the excitement against the new Constitution, and to give to its friends so decided a predominance in the choice of members of the first Congress. Fortunate, indeed, it was for the nation to possess, at this crisis of its fate, a man not only fit to fill the office of president, but one in whose fitness the whole people were agreed. . . . .

2. Washington desired to proceed to New York in the most private manner, but the flow of veneration and gratitude could not be suppressed. Having been entertained at a public dinner by his neighbors of Alexandria, he was welcomed to Maryland by a collection of citizens assembled at Georgetown. At the frontier of Pennsylvania he was met by a large escort, headed by Mifflin, recently elected president of that State, to whom it thus again fell, to be the instrument of paying honors to the man he had once wronged. A magnificent reception and a splendid entertainment were prepared at Philadelphia,

where the Executive Council, the trustees of the University, the judges of the Supreme Court, the officers of the Cincinnati,* and the mayor and common council of the city, hastened to wait on the president elect with their congratulations.

3. Ascending the left bank of the Delaware, Washington crossed the next day into New Jersey. The people of Trenton remembered the battles fought in their neighborhood twelve years before, and if his reception at other places was more splendid, nowhere was it so graceful and touching. On the bridge across the Assumpink, which flows through the town into the Delaware—the same bridge across which Washington had retreated before Cornwallis's army on the eve of the battle of Princeton—a triumphal arch had been erected, supported on thirteen pillars, twined with evergreens, flowers, and laurel.

4. Beneath this arch, which bore for inscription "The Defender of the Mothers will be the Protector of the Daughters," were assembled a party of matrons, mixed with young girls dressed in white, and holding baskets of flowers in their hands. As Washington approached they began to sing a little ode prepared for the occasion:

Welcome, mighty chief, once more;
Welcome to this grateful shore;
Now no mercenary foe
Aims again the fatal blow,
Aims at thee the fatal blow.

Virgins fair and matrons grave,
Those thy conquering arm did save,
Build for thee triumphal bowers;
Strew, ye fair, his way with flowers!
Strew your hero's way with flowers.

Suiting the action to the words, they ended the chant in strewing their flowers before him.

* The "Society of the Cincinnati" was an association formed by some of the officers of the army a short time before it was disbanded, at Newburg, in 1783. Its objects were, to cultivate friendship among themselves, to commemorate the events in which they had been engaged in the great struggle just closed, to promote the cause of free government in the country, and to afford benevolent assistance to such of their members as might need it. Washington was elected the first president.

5. Having crossed New Jersey, Washington was received at Elizabethtown Point early in the morning, in accordance with a previous arrangement, by a committee of both Houses of Congress, with whom were Jay, Secretary for Foreign Affairs, General Knox, Secretary of War, Samuel Osgood, Arthur Lee, and Walter Livingston, Commissioners of the Treasury, and Ebenezer Hazard, Postmaster-General, then heads of departments, still continuing to act under their appointments from the Continental Congress, until new arrangements could be made.

6. A barge splendidly fitted up, and manned by thirteen pilots in white uniforms, had been provided to convey the president to New York; and quite a naval procession was formed out of a multitude of other boats and barges. After a voyage of several hours, the approach to New York was welcomed by artillery salutes from the battery and the ships in the harbor. At the landing-place at the foot of Wall-street, appropriately decorated for the occasion, Governor Clinton was in waiting, with the principal State officers and those of the city corporation, and a vast concourse of citizens.

7. A procession, headed by a numerous detachment of the city militia, having been formed under a salute of cannon, the president elect was escorted to the house lately occupied by the President of the Continental Congress, and which the new Federal Congress had ordered to be fitted up for his reception. Thence he proceeded to Governor Clinton's, where he was entertained at dinner. The evening closed with a brilliant display of fireworks.

8. As the new Federal Hall was not yet entirely finished, a week elapsed before preparations were completed for administering to the president elect the oath of office. The place selected for that purpose was the outer gallery or balcony of the Senate Chamber,* visible for a long distance down Broad-street, which it fronted, thus affording opportunity to witness the ceremony to a large number of eager spectators. At nine o'clock all the

* The United States Treasury building now occupies the site.

churches in the city were opened for prayer and religious services. A little after noon, the president elect left his house, escorted by the city cavalry, and attended by a committee of Congress and the heads of departments in carriages, followed by the two or three resident foreign ministers, and by a long procession of citizens.

9. Having entered the Senate Chamber, where the two Houses were assembled to receive him, he was conducted to an elevated seat at the head of the room. After a momentary silence, all being seated, the vice-president rose and stated to the president elect that all was ready for the administration of the oath, whenever he was prepared to receive it. Upon this intimation, Washington proceeded to the balcony, followed by the senators and representatives. The oath was administered by the Chancellor of New York, Robert R. Livingston, Jay's predecessor as Secretary for Foreign Affairs. As he finished the ceremony, he exclaimed aloud, "Long live George Washington, President of the United States!" to which the assembled multitude responded in long and enthusiastic shouts.—*History of the United States.*

The Launching of the Ship.—*Longfellow.*

[In these lines the poet graphically describes the launching of a ship, to which he compares the commencement of our national government — the completion of the Union—the launching of the Ship of State.]

All is finished! and at length
Has come the bridal day
Of beauty and of strength.
To-day the vessel shall be launched!
With fleecy clouds the sky is blanched,
And o'er the bay,
Slowly, in all his splendors dight
The great sun rises to behold the sight.

The ocean old,—centuries old,
Strong as youth, and as uncontrolled,
Paces restless to and fro,
Up and down the sands of gold.

His beating heart is not at rest;
And far and wide,
With ceaseless flow,
His beard of snow
Heaves with the heaving of his breast.

He waits impatient for his bride.
There she stands,
With her foot upon the sands,
Decked with flags and streamers gay,
In honor of her marriage-day,
Her snow-white signals fluttering, blending,
Round her like a veil descending,
Ready to be
The bride of the gray old sea.

Then the Master,
With a gesture of command,
Waved his hand;
And at the word,
Loud and sudden there was heard,
All around them and below,
The sound of hammers, blow on blow,
Knocking away the shores and spurs.
And see! she stirs!
She starts,—she moves,—she seems to feel
The thrill of life along her keel,
And spurning with her foot the ground,
With one exulting, joyous bound
She leaps into the ocean's arms!

And lo! from the assembled crowd
There rose a shout prolonged and loud,
That to the ocean seemed to say,
"Take her, O bridegroom, old and gray;
Take her to thy protecting arms,
With all her youth and all her charms."
Sail forth into the sea, O ship!
Through wind and wave, right onward steer!
The moistened eye, the trembling lip,
Are not the signs of doubt or fear.

Thou, too, sail on, O Ship of State!
Sail on, O Union, strong and great!

Humanity, with all its fears,
With all its hopes of future years,
Is hanging breathless on thy fate!
We know what Master laid thy keel,
What workmen wrought thy ribs of steel,
Who made each mast, and sail, and rope,
What anvils rang, what hammers beat,
In what a forge, and what a heat,
Were shaped the anchors of thy hope.

Fear not each sudden sound and shock;
'Tis of the wave, and not the rock;
'Tis but the flapping of the sail,
And not a rent made by the gale.
In spite of rock and tempest roar,
In spite of false lights on the shore,
Sail on, nor fear to breast the sea;
Our hearts, our hopes, are all with thee.
Our hearts, our hopes, our prayers, our tears,
Our faith triumphant o'er our fears,
Are all with thee—are all with thee.

Washington's Administration.—The First Cabinet.—Congress having created three executive departments,—of State, Treasury, and War,—the heads of which were to form the President's cabinet, Washington appointed Thomas Jefferson of Virginia, Secretary of State; Alexander Hamilton of New York, Secretary of the Treasury; and Henry Knox of Massachusetts, Secretary of War. Hamilton, by his wise measures and judicious management, placed the public finances in a good condition; and, upon his recommendation, the debts of the States, contracted during the war, were assumed by the general government.

Additional States.—Washington's administration began with only *eleven* States in the Union, Rhode Island and North Carolina not having ratified the Constitution. These States, however, soon ascertained that their interests required that they should not keep aloof from the national compact, and they accepted its provisions; North Carolina, in November, 1789, and Rhode Island in June, 1790. In 1791, Vermont * was admitted, being the first new State Kentucky† became a State in 1792, and Tennessee‡ in 1796.

Death of Franklin.—Among the notable events of this period was the death of Benjamin Franklin—the philanthropist, patriot, and philosopher

* Vermont derived its name from its principal range of mountains. The word is from the French words, *vert*, green, and *monts*, mountains.

† The Indians called the region Kentucky, because it had been the scene of savage warfare, the word, *kentucky*, meaning *the dark and bloody ground*.

‡ "The name of Tennessee is derived from Tannassee (meaning, river of the *big bend*), the Indian name applied to the Little Tennessee River."

(April 17th, 1790). This illustrious man was born at Boston in 1706, and, consequently, at his death, was eighty-four years of age. He was the son of a tallow-chandler, and in his autobiography he thus speaks of his early occupations: "At ten years of age I was called home to assist my father in his occupation, which was that of a soap-boiler and tallow-chandler,—a business to which he had served no apprenticeship, but which he embraced on his arrival in New England, because he found his own, that of dyer, in too little request to enable him to maintain his family. I was accordingly employed in cutting the wicks, filling the moulds, taking care of the shop, carrying messages, etc." Allusion has already been made to his connection with some of the most important events of the history of the country. His services as an ambassador to France during the Revolution were peculiarly effective and valuable.

Last Hours of Dr Franklin.—*Parton.*

1. His anguish was such, at times, that a groan escaped him, for which he would offer a kind of apology to those who stood around his bed. He said he feared he did not bear his pain as he ought, and that, no doubt, his present sufferings were designed to wean him from a world in which he was no longer competent to act his part. To a clerical friend who witnessed one of his paroxysms, and was about to retire, he said, "Oh, no; don't go away. These pains will soon be over. They are for my good; and, besides, what are the pains of a moment in comparison with the pleasures of eternity?"

2. He had a picture of Christ on the Cross placed so that he could conveniently look at it as he lay in bed. "That," he would say, "is the picture of One who came into the world to teach men to love one another." His anguish was not continuous; there were hours in which he conversed cheerfully with his friends, and attended to the requests of visitors. Nine days before he died, he wrote a letter of some length to Mr. Jefferson, in which he gave certain information desired by Jefferson respecting our northeastern boundary, as defined in the negotiations at Paris in 1783. The letter is written with all his wonted clearness and obliging fullness of detail, showing memory and other faculties of mind still unimpaired.

3. Five days before his death, the pain in the chest, the cough, and the difficulty of breathing, suddenly ceased. His

family hoped now that the crisis was passed, and that he would recover; but he was not himself deceived. He insisted on getting up that his bed might be made, in order, as he said, that he might "die in a decent manner." His daughter said that she hoped he would get well, and live many years. "I hope not," he replied. . . . .

4. Some one advising him to change his position so that he might breathe easier, he said, "A dying man can do nothing easy." These were the last of his words that have been recorded. He soon sunk into a lethargy from which he never revived. At eleven o'clock at night, April 17, 1790, surrounded by his family and nearest friends, he quietly expired, aged eighty-four years, three months, and eleven days.

5. His last look, it is recorded, was cast upon the picture of Christ. He died with his eyes fixed upon it. His countenance recovered. at once, all its wonted serenity and benignity, and he lay like a good old man in a gentle slumber. To use the ancient language, he had fallen asleep in Jesus, and rested in hope of a blessed immortality.—*Life and Times of Benjamin Franklin.*

Eulogy on Franklin.—*Mirabeau.*

[The following address was delivered by Mirabeau, then the leader of the National Assembly in Paris, on the announcement of the death of Franklin (June 11, 1790).]

1. FRANKLIN is dead! The genius that freed America and poured a flood of light over Europe, has returned to the bosom of the Divinity. The sage whom two worlds claim as their own—the man for whom the history of science and the history of empires contend with each other—held, without doubt, a high rank in the human race.

2. Too long have political cabinets taken formal note of the death of those who were great only in their funeral panegyrics[v]. Too long has the etiquette[v] of courts prescribed hypocritical mourning. Nations should wear mourning only for their benefactors. The representatives of nations should recommend to their homage none but the heroes of humanity.

3. The Congress has ordained, throughout the United States,

a mourning of one month for the death of Franklin, and, at this moment, America is paying the tribute of veneration and gratitude to one of the fathers of her Constitution. Would it not become us, gentlemen, to join in this religious act, to bear a part in this homage, rendered, in the face of the world, both to the rights of man, and to the philosopher who has most contributed to extend their sway over the whole earth?

4. Antiquity would have raised altars to this mighty genius, who, to the advantage of mankind, compassing in his mind the heavens and the earth, was able to restrain alike thunderbolts and tyrants. Europe, enlightened and free, owes at least a token of remembrance and regret to one of the greatest men who have ever been engaged in the service of philosophy and of liberty. I propose that it be decreed that the National Assembly, during three days, shall wear mourning for Benjamin Franklin.

[Several, among them Lafayette, sprang at once to second the proposal, and it was carried immediately by acclamation.]

Character of Franklin.—*Mackintosh.*

1. The cause of the Americans in France owed part of its success to the peculiar character, as well as extraordinary talents, of their agent at Paris, Benjamin Franklin. Bred a printer, he had raised himself to a respectable station by the most ingenious industry and frugality; and, having acquired celebrity by his philosophical discourses, he had occupied a considerable office in the colonies at the commencement of the disturbance.

2. This singular man long labored to avert a rupture; and, notwithstanding his cold and cautious character, he shed tears at the prospect of separation; but he was too wise to deliberate after decision. Having once made his determination, he adhered to it with a firmness which neither the advances of England nor the adversity of America could shake. He considered a return to the ancient friendship as impossible, and every conciliatory proposal as a snare to divide America, and to betray her into absolute submission.

3. At Paris he was preceded and aided by his philosophical fame. His steady and downright character was a singularity which the accomplished diplomatists of France had not learned how to conquer. The simplicity of a republican, a Presbyterian, and a printer, transported at the age of seventy to the most polished court of Europe, by amusing the frivolous and interesting the romantic, excited a disposition at Versailles favorable to his cause.

4. Early accustomed to contemplate infant societies and uncultivated nature, his mind was original and independent. He derived neither aid nor encumbrance from learning, which enslaves every mind not powerful to master and govern it. He was, therefore, exempt from those prejudices of nation and age which every learned education fosters. Reared in colonies struggling into existence, when necessity so often calls out ingenious contrivance, he adapted even philosophical experiment to the direct convenience of mankind.

5. The same spirit is still more conspicuous in his moral and political writings. An independence of thought, a constant and direct reference to utility, a consequent abstinence from whatever is merely curious and ornamental, or even remotely useful, a talent for ingeniously betraying vice and prejudice into an admission of reason, and for exhibiting their sophisms in that state of undisguised absurdity in which they are ludicrous, with a singular power of striking illustration from homely objects, would justify us in calling Franklin the American Socrates.—*Life of Sir James Mackintosh.*

Franklin and Washington.—*Greeley.*

1. I THINK I adequately appreciate the greatness of Washington; yet I must place Franklin above him as the consummate type and flowering of human nature under the skies of colonial America. Not that Washington was born to competence and all needful facilities for instruction, so that he began responsible life on vantage-ground that Franklin toiled twenty arduous, precious years to reach: I cannot feel that this fact has undue weight with me.

2. I realize that there are elements of dignity, of grandeur, in the character of Washington for which that of Franklin affords no parallel. But when I contemplate the immense variety and versatility[v] of Franklin's services to his country and to mankind —when I think of him as a writer whose first effusions commanded attention in his early boyhood—as the monitor and teacher of his fellow-journeymen in a London printing-office—as, almost from the outset, a prosperous and influential editor, when journalism had never before been a source of power—as taking his place naturally at the head of the postal service in America, and of the earliest attempts to form a practical confederation of the colonies—when I see him, never an enthusiast, and now, nearly threescore-and-ten, renouncing office, hazarding fame, fortune, everything, to struggle for the independence of his country—he having most to lose by failure of any American—his only son a bitter loyalist—he cheerfully and repeatedly braving the dangers of an ocean swarming with enemies, to render his country the service as ambassador which no other man could perform—and finally, when more than eighty years old, crowning a life of duty and honor by helping to frame that immortal Constitution which made us one nation forever—I cannot place Franklin second to any other American.

3. He could not have done the work of Washington—no other man could; but then he did so many admirable things which Washington had too sound judgment even to attempt. And, great as Washington was, he was not great enough to write and print, after he had achieved power and world-wide fame, a frank, ingenuous confession of his youthful follies and sins, for the instruction and admonition of others. Many a man can look calmly down the throats of roaring cannon who lacks the courage and true philanthropy essential to those called to render this service to mankind.—*Lecture on Self-Made Men.*

Harmar's Expedition against the Indians.—In the summer of 1790 an Indian war was commenced by the tribes north of the Ohio. Washington at first used pacific means; but, these failing, he sent an expedition, under Gen. Harmar, against the hostile tribes. Harmar destroyed several of

their villages, but, in two battles, near the present village of Fort Wayne, Indiana, he was defeated with severe loss.

St. Clair's Expedition.—In the following year, St. Clair marched against the Indians; but, while encamped at a place in the western part of Ohio, he was surprised and defeated, with the loss of six hundred men. During the war, Kentucky, which had been previously claimed by Virginia, was admitted into the Union; and, in the same year, 1792, Washington was again elected president. Adams was also re-chosen vice-president.

Wayne's Expedition.—Gen. Wayne was finally sent against the Indians. In August, 1794, he met them near the rapids of the Mau-mee', and gained a complete victory. This success, followed up by vigorous measures, compelled the Indians to sue for peace; and, in 1795, a treaty was made at Greenville, Ohio, by which a large tract of territory was ceded to the United States.

Trouble with the French Minister.—When France, during her great revolution, declared war against England, a large part of the people of this country were in favor of helping their old ally of the Revolution. M. Genet (*zhe-nā'*), the French minister in the United States, presuming upon the feeling in favor of his country, began to fit out privateers in American ports to cruise against British vessels. Washington, deeming it best to preserve a position of strict neutrality between the two countries, demanded his recall, and another minister was sent in his place.

Whisky Insurrection.—The first measure adopted by the United States government for raising a revenue by internal taxation, was the law of 1791, imposing a duty on domestic liquors. It met with considerable opposition, especially in the Western part of Pennsylvania, where, in 1794, the resistance grew to an open rebellion, known as the Whisky Insurrection. Upon the approach of a force sent by Washington, the insurgents yielded.

Jay's Treaty.—It was not long after the making of the treaty of 1783, at the close of the Revolution, before the American and British governments began to accuse each other of violating its stipulations. To avert a war, which seemed inevitable, John Jay* was sent as a special envoy to England, where, in 1794, a treaty was made. This new treaty met with considerable opposition in the United States, because its provisions were regarded as being too favorable to the English; but it was at length ratified.

Washington's Successor.—Washington, having declined a nomination for a third term, John Adams was elected to succeed him; and the new president was inaugurated at Philadelphia, on the 4th of March, 1797. Washington then retired to the quietude of his home at Mount Vernon.†

* John Jay was born in the city of New York, in 1745. In 1789, when Washington became President of the United States, so exalted was his opinion of Jay's honesty and fitness, that he tendered him a choice of the offices in his gift. Jay preferred the bench, and, consequently, was the first Chief-Justice of the United States. His death occurred in 1829, at Bedford, Westchester Co., New York.

† Mount Vernon, the home of Washington and the place of his burial, is situated on the western bank of the Potomac, fifteen miles below Washington city. The place, comprising the mansion, the tomb, and two hundred acres of the original estate, was sold, in 1858, by John A. Washington, a nephew of George Washington, to the "Ladies' Mount Vernon Association," for $200,000. "It is the design of the Association to hold it in perpetuity as a place of public resort and pilgrimage."

Washington at Mount Vernon.—*Irving.*

1. His official career being terminated, Washington set off for Mount Vernon, accompanied by Mrs. Washington, her grand-daughter Miss Nelly Custis, and George Washington Lafayette (son of the marquis), with his preceptors. Of the enthusiastic devotion manifested toward him wherever he passed, he takes the following brief and characteristic notice: "The attentions we met with on our journey were very flattering, and to some, whose minds are differently formed from mine, would have been highly relished; but I avoided, in every instance where I had any previous notice of the intention, and could, by earnest entreaties, prevail, all parade and escorts."

2. He is at length at Mount Vernon, that haven of repose to which he had so often turned a wistful eye, throughout his agitated and anxious life, and where he trusted to pass quietly and serenely the remainder of his days. He finds himself, however, "in the situation of a new beginner; almost everything about him required considerable repairs, and a house is immediately to be built for the reception and safe-keeping of his military, civil, and private papers." "In a word," writes he, "I am already surrounded by joiners, masons, and painters; and such is my anxiety to be out of their hands, that I have scarcely a room to put a friend into, or to sit in myself, without the music of hammers and the odoriferous scent of paint."

3. Still he is at Mount Vernon; and, as the Spring opens, the rural beauties of the country exert their sweetening influence. In a letter to his friend Oliver Wolcott, who, as Secretary of the Treasury, was still acting on "the great theatre," he adverts but briefly to public affairs. "For myself," adds he, exultingly, "having turned aside from the broad walks of political into the narrow paths of private life, I shall leave it with those whose duty it is to consider subjects of this sort, and, as every good citizen ought to do, conform to whatsoever the ruling powers shall decide.

4. "To make and sell a little flour annually, to repair houses

going fast to ruin, to build one for the security of my papers of a public nature, and to amuse myself in agricultural[v] and rural pursuits, will constitute employment for the few years I have to remain on this terrestrial[v] globe. If, also, I could now and then meet the friends I esteem, it would fill the measure, and add zest to my enjoyments; but, if ever this happens, it must be under my own vine and fig-tree, as I do not think it probable that I shall go beyond twenty miles from them."

5. And again, to another friend he indulges in pleasant anticipations: "Retired from noise myself and the responsibility attached to public employment, my hours will glide smoothly on. My best wishes, however, for the prosperity of our country will always have the first place in my thoughts; while to repair buildings and to cultivate my farms, which require close attention, will occupy the few years, perhaps days, I may be a sojourner here, as I am now in the sixty-fifth year of my peregrination[v] through life."—*Life of Washington.*

The Retirement of Washington.—*Guizot.*

1. WASHINGTON did well to withdraw from public business. He had entered upon it at one of those moments, at once difficult and favorable, when nations, surrounded by perils, summon all their virtue and all their wisdom to surmount them. He was admirably suited to this position. He held the sentiments and opinions of his age without slavishness or fanaticism. The past, its institutions, its interests, its manners, inspired him with neither hatred nor regret. His thoughts and his ambition did not impatiently reach forward into the future. The society in the midst of which he lived, suited his tastes and his judgment. He had confidence in its principles and its destiny, but a confidence enlightened and qualified by an accurate, instinctive perception of the eternal principles of social order.

2. He served it with heartiness and independence, with that combination of faith and fear which is wisdom in the affairs of the world, as well as before God. On this account, especially, he was qualified to govern it; for democracy requires two things for its tranquillity and its success: it must feel itself to be

trusted and yet restrained, and must believe alike in the genuine devotedness and the moral superiority of its leaders. On these conditions alone can it govern itself while in a process of development, and hope to take a place among the durable and glorious forms of human society. It is the honor of the American people to have, at this period, understood and accepted these conditions. It is the glory of Washington to have been their interpreter and instrument.

3. He did the two greatest things which, in politics, man can have the privilege of attempting. He maintained, by peace, that independence of his country which he had acquired by war. He founded a free government, in the name of the principles of order, and by re-establishing their sway. When he retired from public life, both tasks were accomplished, and he could enjoy the result. For, in such high enterprises, the labor which they have cost matters but little. The sweat of any toil is dried at once on the brow where God places such laurels.

4. He retired voluntarily and a conqueror. To the very last, his policy had prevailed. If he had wished, he could still have kept the direction of it. His successor was one of his most attached friends, one whom he had himself designated. Still the epoch[y] was a critical one. He had governed successfully for eight years—a long period in a democratic state, and that in its infancy. For some time, a policy opposed to his own had been gaining ground. American society seemed disposed to make a trial of new paths, more in conformity, perhaps, with its bias. Perhaps the hour had come for Washington to quit the arena. His successor was there overcome. Mr. Adams was succeeded by Mr. Jefferson, the leader of the opposition. Since that time the democratic party has governed the United States.*

5. Is this a good or an evil? Could it be otherwise? Had the government continued in the hands of the federal party, would it have done better? Was this possible? What have been the consequences, to the United States, of the triumph of

* This was written during Van Buren's administration.

the democratic party? Have they been carried out to the end, or have they only begun? What changes have the society and constitution of America undergone, what have they yet to undergo, under their influence? These are great questions; difficult, if I mistake not, for natives to solve, and certainly impossible for a foreigner.

6. However it may be, one thing is certain; that which Washington did—the founding of a free government, by order and peace, at the close of the Revolution—no other policy than his could have accomplished. He has had this true glory—of triumphing so long as he governed; and of rendering the triumph of his adversaries possible, after him, without disturbance to the State.

7. More than once, perhaps, this result presented itself to his mind without disturbing his composure. "With me a predominant motive has been to endeavor to gain time to our country to settle and mature its yet recent institutions; and to proceed without interruption to that degree of strength and consistency which is necessary to give it, humanly speaking, the command of its own fortunes." The people of the United States are virtually the arbiters of their own fortunes. Washington had aimed at that high object. He reached his mark. Who has succeeded like him? Who has seen his own success so near and so soon? Who has enjoyed to such a degree, and to the last, the confidence and gratitude of his country?

8. Still, at the close of his life, in the delightful and honorable retirement at Mount Vernon which he had so longed for, this great man, serene as he was, was inwardly conscious of a slight feeling of lassitude and melancholy; a feeling very natural at the close of a long life employed in the affairs of men. Power is an oppressive burden; and men are hard to serve, when one is struggling virtuously and strenuously against their passions and their errors. Even success does not efface the sad impressions to which the contest has given birth, and the exhaustion which succeeds the struggle is still felt in the quiet of repose. . . . Washington deserved and enjoyed both

success and repose. Of all great men, he was the most virtuous and the most fortunate. In this world God has no higher favors to bestow.—*Essay on Washington.*

John Adams's Administration.—Troubles with France.—The neutral position taken by the United States in the war between France and England gave offense to the former government; and "Jay's Treaty," which had been ratified in 1795, by the American Senate, considerably augmented the unfriendly feeling. This was boldly made manifest by the act of the French government, in authorizing depredations to be committed upon the commerce of the United States, and in ordering our Minister, Mr. Pinckney, to leave France.

One of the first acts of President Adams was to convene Congress in extra session, to consider these outrages. Three envoys were sent to France, with authority to adjust all difficulties; but the French government refused to receive them, and even ordered two of them to quit the country. This insult excited great indignation in the United States; and Congress at once adopted measures for putting the country in a state of defense by authorizing a standing army and a naval armament, and appointed Washington commander-in-chief of the entire land-forces.

Hostilities at sea soon afterward commenced. In one case, an American schooner was taken, and, in another, a French frigate was captured by the United States frigate Constellation. The decided stand taken by the Americans had its effect upon the French government; and overtures of peace were made, which resulted in a treaty, concluded in 1800, with Napoleon Bonaparte, who had become First Consul of France.

Hail, Columbia.—*Hopkinson.*

[The national ode, "Hail, Columbia," was composed in 1798, during the troubles with France, by Joseph Hopkinson, the son of one of the signers of the Declaration, and subsequently a United States judge in Pennsylvania. The following account of the circumstances attending its composition was given by himself, a few months before his death, in 1842.]

1. This song was written in the summer of 1798, when war with France was thought to be inevitable. Congress was then in session in Philadelphia, deliberating upon that important subject, and acts of hostility had actually taken place. The contest between England and France was raging, and the people of the United States were divided into parties for the one side or the other, some thinking that policy and duty required us to espouse the cause of republican France, as she was called, while others were for connecting ourselves with England, under

the belief that she was the great conservative power of good principles and safe government.

2. The violation of our rights by both belligerents was forcing us from the just and wise policy of President Washington, which was to do equal justice to both, to take part with neither, but to preserve a strict and honest neutrality between them. The prospect of a rupture with France was exceedingly offensive to the portion of the people who espoused her cause; and the violence of the spirit of party has never risen higher, I think not so high, in our country, as it did at that time upon that question.

3. The theatre was then open in our city. A young man belonging to it, whose talent was as a singer, was about to take his benefit. I had known him when he was at school. On this acquaintance, he called on me one Saturday afternoon, his benefit being announced for the following Monday. His prospects were very disheartening; but he said that if he could get a patriotic song adapted to the tune of the "President's March," he did not doubt of a full house; that the poets of the theatrical corps had been trying to accomplish it, but had not succeeded. I told him I would try what I could do. He came the next afternoon, and the song, such as it is, was ready for him.

4. The object of the author was to get up an *American spirit*, which should be independent of, and above, the interests, passions, and policy of both belligerents, and look and feel exclusively for our own honor and rights. No allusion is made to France or England, or the quarrel between them, or to the question which was most in fault in their treatment of us. Of course, the song found favor with both parties, for both were Americans; at least, neither could disavow the sentiments and feelings it inculcated. Such is the history of this song, which has endured infinitely beyond the expectation of the author, as it has beyond any merit it can boast of, except that of being truly and exclusively patriotic in its sentiments and spirit.

[The last stanza, in its allusion to Washington, is particularly impressive.]

Behold the chief who now commands,
Once more to serve his country stands—

The rock on which the storm will beat,
The rock on which the storm will beat;
But armed in virtue, firm and true,
His hopes are fixed on heaven and you.
When hope was sinking in dismay,
And gloom obscured Columbia's day,
His sturdy mind, from danger free,
Resolved on death or liberty.
Firm—united, etc.

Death of Washington.—Washington did not live to see the troubles with France terminated: he died, after a brief illness of a few hours, at Mount Vernon, on the 14th of December, 1799. His death was universally lamented as a national bereavement, and ceremonies of the most solemn and impressive character were observed by Congress, before whom General Henry Lee, of Virginia, delivered an eloquent funeral oration (Dec. 26).

Tribute to Washington.—*Mason.*

[Extract from a eulogy on Washington, by John M. Mason, D.D.]

1. The death of Washington, Americans, has revealed the extent of our loss. It has given us the final proof that we never mistook him. Take his affecting instrument, and read the secrets of his soul. Read all the power of domestic virtue. Read his strong love of letters and of liberty. Read his fidelity to republican principles, and his jealousy of national character. Read his devotedness to you in his military bequests to near relations. "These swords,"—they are the words of Washington,—"these swords are accompanied with an injunction not to unsheathe them for the purpose of shedding blood, except it be for self-defense, or in defense of their country and its rights; and, in the latter case, to keep them unsheathed, and prefer falling with them in their hands to the relinquishment thereof."

2. In his acts, Americans, you have seen the man. In the complicated excellence of character, he stands alone. Let no future Plutarch attempt the iniquity of parallel. Let no soldier of fortune, let no usurping conqueror, let not Alexander or Cæsar, let not Cromwell or Bonaparte, let none among the dead or living, appear in the same picture with Washington; or let them appear as the shade to his light.

3. On this subject, my countrymen, it is for others to

speculate, but it is for us to feel. Yet, in proportion to the severity of the stroke, ought to be our thankfulness that it was not inflicted sooner. Through a long series of years has God preserved our Washington a public blessing; and now, that he has removed him forever, shall we presume to say, "What doest thou?" Never did the tomb preach more powerfully the dependence of all things on the Most High. The greatest of mortals crumble into dust the moment He commands, Return, ye children of men. Washington was but the instrument of a benignant God. He sickens, he dies, that we may learn not to trust in men, nor to make flesh our arm. But though Washington is dead, Jehovah lives. God of our fathers! be our God and the God of our children! Thou art our refuge and our hope; the pillar of our strength; the wall of our defense, and our unfading glory.

4. Americans! this God who raised up Washington, and gave you liberty, exacts from you the duty of cherishing it with a zeal according to knowledge. Never sully, by apathy or by outrage, your fair inheritance. Risk not, for one moment, on visionary theories, the solid blessings of your lot. To you particularly, O youth of America! applies the solemn charge. In all the perils of your country, remember Washington. The freedom of reason and of right has been handed down to you on the point of the hero's sword. Guard with veneration the sacred deposit. The curse of ages will rest upon you, O youth of America! if ever you surrender to foreign ambition or domestic lawlessness the precious liberties for which Washington fought and your fathers bled.

5. I cannot part with you, fellow-citizens, without urging the long remembrance of our present assembly. This day we wipe away the reproach of republics, that they know not how to be grateful. In your treatment of living patriots, recall your love and your respect of Washington. Let not future inconsistency charge this day with hypocrisy. Happy America, if she gives an instance of universal principle in her sorrows for the man "first in war, first in peace, and first in the hearts of his countrymen!"

Character of Washington.—*Marshall.*

1. General Washington was rather above the common size. His frame was robust, and his constitution vigorous. His figure created in the beholder the idea of strength united with manly gracefulness. His manners were rather reserved than free; though on all proper occasions he could relax sufficiently to show how highly he was gratified by the charms of conversation, and the pleasures of society. His person and whole deportment exhibited an unaffected and indescribable dignity, unmingled with haughtiness, of which all who approached him were sensible; and the attachment of those who possessed his friendship and enjoyed his intimacy, though ardent, was always respectful.

2. His temper was humane, benevolent, and conciliatory; but there was a quickness in his sensibility to anything apparently offensive, which experience had taught him to watch and to correct. In the management of his private affairs, he exhibited an exact yet liberal economy. His funds were not wasted on capricious and ill-examined schemes, nor refused to beneficial, though costly improvements. They remained, therefore, competent to that expensive establishment which his reputation, added to a hospitable temper, had, in some measure, imposed upon him; and to those donations which real distress had a right to claim from opulence.

3. He had no pretensions to that vivacity which fascinates, or to that wit which dazzles and frequently imposes on the understanding. More solid than brilliant, judgment rather than genius constituted the prominent feature of his character. Without making ostentatious professions of religion, he was a sincere believer in the Christian faith, and a truly devout man.

4. As a soldier he was brave, enterprising, and cautious. That malignity which has sought to strip him of the higher qualities of a general, has conceded to him personal courage, and a firmness of resolution which danger could not appal nor difficulties shake. But candor must allow him greater and higher endowments. If his military course does not abound

with splendid achievements, it exhibits a series of judicious measures adapted to circumstances, which probably saved his country.

5. Placed, without having studied the theory or being taught in the school of experience the practice of war, at the head of an undisciplined, ill-organized multitude, which was impatient of the restraints, and unacquainted with the ordinary duties, of a camp, without the aid of officers possessing those lights which the commander-in-chief was yet to acquire, it would have been a miracle, indeed, had his conduct been absolutely faultless. But, possessing an energetic and distinguished mind, on which the lessons of experience were never lost, his errors, if he committed any, were quickly repaired; and those measures which the state of things rendered advisable were seldom, if ever, neglected.

6. Inferior to his adversary in the numbers, the equipment, and in the discipline of his troops, it is evidence of real merit that no decisive advantages were ever obtained over him, and that the opportunity to strike an important blow never passed away unused. He has been termed the American Fabius; but those who compare his actions with his means, will perceive as much of Marcellus as of Fabius in his character.

7. In his civil administration as in his military career, ample and repeated proofs were exhibited of that practical good sense and of that sound judgment, which is perhaps the most rare, and is certainly the most valuable quality of the human mind. Devoting himself to the duties of his station, and pursuing no object distinct from the public good, he was accustomed to contemplate at a distance those situations in which the United States might probably be placed; and to digest, before the occasion required action, the line of conduct which it would be proper to observe.

8. Taught to distrust first impressions, he sought all the information which was attainable, and heard, without prejudice, all the reasons which could be urged for or against particular measures. His judgment was suspended until it became necessary to determine; and his decisions, thus ma-

turely made, were seldom, if ever, to be shaken. His conduct, therefore, was systematic, and the great objects of his administration were readily pursued.

9. Respecting, as the first in a free government must ever do, the real and deliberate sentiments of the people, their gusts of passion passed over without ruffling the smooth surface of his mind. Trusting to the reflecting good sense of the nation, he had the magnanimity to pursue its real interests in opposition to its temporary prejudices; and, in more instances than one, we find him committing his whole popularity to hazard, and pursuing steadily the course dictated by a sense of duty, in opposition to a torrent which would have overwhelmed a man of ordinary firmness.

10. In speculation, he was a real republican, devoted to the constitution of his country, and to that system of equal political rights on which it is founded. But, between a balanced republic and democracy, the difference is like that between order and chaos. Real liberty, he thought, was to be preserved only by upholding the authority of the laws, and maintaining the energy of government. Scarcely did society present two characters, which, in his opinion, less resembled each other than a patriot and a demagogue.

11. No man has ever appeared upon the theatre of human action whose integrity was more incorruptible, or whose principles were more perfectly free from the contamination of those selfish and unworthy passions which find their nourishment in the conflicts of party. His ends were always upright, and his means always pure. He exhibits the rare example of a politician to whom wiles were absolutely unknown. In him was fully exemplified the real distinction between wisdom and cunning, and the truth of the maxim that "honesty is the best policy."

12. Neither the extraordinary partiality of the American people, the extravagant praises which were bestowed upon him, nor the inveterate opposition and malignant calumnies which he encountered, had any visible influence on his conduct. The cause is to be looked for in the texture of his mind. In him,

that innate and unassuming modesty which adulation would have offended, which the voluntary plaudits of millions could not betray into indiscretion, and which never obtruded upon others his claims to superior consideration, was happily blended with a high and correct sense of personal dignity, and with a just consciousness of that respect which is due to station. Without exertion, he could maintain the happy medium between that arrogance which wounds, and that facility which allows the office to be degraded in the person who fills it.

13. It is impossible to contemplate the great events which have occurred in the United States, under the auspices of Washington, without ascribing them, in some measure, to him. If we ask the causes of the prosperous issue of a war, against the successful termination of which there were so many probabilities,—of the good which was produced, and the ill which was avoided, during an administration fated to contend with the strongest prejudices that a combination of circumstances and of passions could produce,—of the constant favor of the great mass of his fellow-citizens, and of the confidence which to the last moment of his life they reposed in him,—the answer will furnish a lesson well meriting the attention of those who are candidates for political fame.

14. Endowed by nature with a sound judgment, and an accurate, discriminating mind, he feared not that laborious attention which made him perfectly master of those subjects on which he was to decide; and this essential quality was guided by an unvarying sense of moral right, which would tolerate the employment of those means only that would bear the most rigid examination; by a fairness of intention which neither sought nor required disguise; and by a purity of virtue which was not only untainted, but unsuspected.—*Life of Washington.*

Removal of the Capitol, etc.—Few events of interest occurred during the remainder of Adams's administration. During the summer of 1800, the national Capitol was removed from Philadelphia to Washington, a location selected, it is said, by Washington himself. The District of Columbia—a tract ten miles square—had been ceded to the United States by Maryland and Virginia in 1790; and the city was laid out the next year. The building of the Capitol was

not commenced till two years later. During the same year (1800), the territory situated between the western frontier of Georgia and the Mississippi River was organized by Congress as the *Mississippi Territory.*

John Adams's Successor.—Toward the close of Adams's administration of four years, a fierce struggle took place between the two great parties of the day—Federal and Republican—in relation to the presidential succession. Upon counting the electoral votes it was found that no candidate had the requisite majority; therefore the election went to the House of Representatives, by whom Jefferson was chosen president, and Aaron Burr, of New York, vice-president.

The Election of Jefferson.—*Randall.*

[The election of Thomas Jefferson by the House of Representatives was accomplished after a struggle unparalleled in the political history of the country. The balloting commenced on the 11th of February, and was continued until the 17th, (1801), when, on the thirty-sixth ballot, ten States voted for Jefferson, four (New England) for Burr, and two (Delaware and South Carolina) cast blank ballots. Previous to this there had been eight States for Jefferson, six for Burr, and two (Vermont and Maryland) were divided. On the first ballot fifty-four members voted for Burr, and fifty-one for Jefferson; but the latter had the greater number of States.]

1. Two weeks more would have ended the constitutional government. In the event of interregnum[v] and anarchy[v], what hopes would there have been for the authors of the evil? In Maryland, where the Presidential vote had been balanced, the republicans had carried the legislature elected since the acting members of Congress. New Jersey, nearly balanced in the present House, had been triumphantly swept by the republicans in the last Congressional elections. The popular majority in Pennsylvania was large. New York had been carried by the same party. The southern and western States were overwhelmingly republican.

2. Nor were election statistics[v] any real test of relative strength. During that week of dread suspense, as mail after mail spread the intelligence of the scene going on at the capital, the light snow never wasted under the sun of June as wasted away the Federal party. The people west and south of the Hudson, with almost united voice, declared the conduct of the Federal members of Congress a most gross, dangerous, and wanton violation of the spirit of our Constitution and system of government. Astonishment, alarm, and rage swept like succeeding waves over the land. If the effect was less appar-

ent on the compact federal masses of New England, there, too, it had weakened that party most seriously, and created a formidable minority.

3. And the republicans were fortunately situated for the crisis in some incidental particulars. The two great central States which held the capital wedged between them—containing more population than all New England, and considerably upwards of one-fourth of the entire population of the Union—were not only strongly republican, but they had executives as well adapted to such an emergency as if it had been foreseen, and had formed the especial ground of their selection.

4. For intellectual and executive ability, combined with iron will and that high energy which always takes the initiative when contest is unavoidable, Governor McKean [of Pennsylvania] probably had not his superior in the United States. Governor Monroe [of Virginia] was of milder frame, but was as resolute a man as there was on earth when his judgment bade him act. He had military experience; he had the profound love and confidence of his people. When either of these executives unfurled the banner of his State against a usurpation, there would be left no minority in that State.

5. It would be vain to deny that both parties had the arbitration of arms distinctly in contemplation as the sequel to a usurpation, or to settle, if necessary, the anarchy of an interregnum. We find Porcupine's Gazette abounding in extracts from Federal newspapers, exhorting their partisans to stand firm and defy the threats of the Republicans, declaring that any member of their party "would consecrate his name to infamy" who should "meanly and inconsistently lend his aid to promote Jefferson's election." One Federal statistician, after enumerating the Massachusetts militia, declaring that Connecticut and New Hampshire are united almost to a man, and that at least half the citizens of eleven other States are "ranged under the Federal banner in support of the Constitution," wishes to know "what could Pennsylvania, aided by Virginia," do under such circumstances? . . . .

6. The president-elect was anxious that the ceremonies of his

inauguration should be as few and simple as practicable; but the feelings of his friends who had flocked to the capital, would not permit him to go unattended to the Senate Chamber to take the oath of office. An English eye-witness thus describes his appearance on the occasion: "His dress was of plain cloth, and he rode on horseback to the capitol without a single guard or servant in his train, dismounted without assistance, and hitched the bridle of his horse to the palisades." On his entering the Senate Chamber, Burr, who had already taken the oath of office, gave up his chair, and took his seat on the right. On the left sat the Chief-Justice. Two imposing and usual figures on such occasions were absent—the late President and the late Speaker of the House of Representatives. Mr. Adams had made an abrupt and ungraceful departure from the city early in the morning.—*Life of Thomas Jefferson.*

Advice to the Nation.—*Jefferson.*

[The following is an extract from the Inaugural Address, delivered by Thomas Jefferson on assuming the Presidential chair, March 4th, 1801.]

1. During the contest of opinion through which we have passed, the animation of discussion and of exertions has sometimes worn an aspect which might impose on strangers unused to think freely and to speak and write what they think; but this being now decided by the voice of the nation, announced according to the rules of the Constitution, all will, of course, arrange themselves under the will of the law, and unite in common efforts for the common good. All, too, will bear in mind this sacred principle, that though the will of the majority is in all cases to prevail, that will, to be rightful, must be reasonable; that the minority possess their equal rights, which equal laws must protect, and to violate which would be oppression.

2. Let us then, fellow-citizens, unite with one heart and one mind. Let us restore to social intercourse that harmony and affection without which liberty and even life itself are but dreary things. And let us reflect that, having banished from our land that religious intolerance under which mankind so long bled and suffered, we have yet gained little, if we counte-

nance a political intolerance as despotic, as wicked, and capable of as bitter and bloody persecutions.

3. During the throes and convulsions of the ancient world, during the agonizing spasms of infuriated man, seeking through blood and slaughter his long-lost liberty, it was not wonderful that the agitation of the billows should reach even this distant and peaceful shore; that this should be more felt and feared by some, and less by others; that this should divide opinions as to measures of safety. But every difference of opinion is not a difference of principle. We are all republicans —we are all federalists. If there be any among us who would wish to dissolve this Union, or to change its republican form, let them stand undisturbed as monuments of the safety with which error of opinion may be tolerated when reason is left free to combat it.

4. I know, indeed, that some honest men fear that a republican government cannot be strong; that this government is not strong enough. But would the honest patriot, in the full tide of successful experiment, abandon a government which has so far kept us free and firm, on the theoretic and visionary fear that this government, the world's best hope, may by possibility want the energy to preserve itself? I trust not. I believe this, on the contrary, the strongest government on earth. I believe it the only one where every man, at the call of the laws, would fly to the standard of the law, and would meet invasions of the public order as his own personal concern. Sometimes it is said that man cannot be trusted with the government of himself. Can he then be trusted with the government of others? Or have we found angels in the form of kings to govern him? Let history answer this question.

5. Let us, then, with courage and confidence pursue our own federal and republican principles, our attachment to our union and representative government. Kindly separated by nature and a wide ocean from the exterminating havoc of one quarter of the globe; too high-minded to endure the degradations of the others; possessing a chosen country, with room enough for our descendants to the hundredth and thousandth generation;

entertaining a due sense of our equal rights to the use of our own faculties, to the acquisitions of our industry, to honor and confidence from our fellow-citizens, resulting, not from birth, but from our actions and their sense of them; enlightened by a benign religion, professed, indeed, and practised in various forms, yet all of them including honesty, truth, temperance, gratitude, and the love of man; acknowledging and adoring an overruling Providence, which by all its dispensations proves that it delights in the happiness of man here and his greater happiness hereafter; with all these blessings, what more is necessary to make us a happy and prosperous people?

6. Still one thing more, fellow-citizens—a wise and frugal government, which shall restrain men from injuring one another, which shall leave them otherwise free to regulate their own pursuits of industry and improvement, and shall not take from the mouth of labor the bread it has earned. This is the sum of good government, and this alone is necessary to close the circle of our felicities.

Jefferson's Administration.—Admission of Ohio.—In 1802 the Ohio Territory, which had previously formed the eastern part of the Northwest Territory, adopted a State government, and was admitted into the Union as the State of Ohio.* This made seventeen States belonging to the Union.

Purchase of Louisiana.—In 1803 a most important addition was made to the national domain of the United States, by the purchase of an immense tract of land lying principally between the Mississippi River and the Rocky Mountains, and called by the French Louisiana, after one of their kings (Louis XIV.). This territory was purchased from the French government, at the head of which was Napoleon Bonaparte, for the sum of fifteen millions of dollars. One of the most important advantages secured by this purchase, and that for which it was chiefly made, was the free navigation of the Mississippi River to the Gulf of Mexico. Considerable opposition was made to the ratification of the treaty by which the cession was obtained, particularly from the Federalists, on the ground that the Constitution gave no power to annex foreign territory; and Jefferson himself considered that he had transcended the limits of the Constitution; others, however, took different ground, and the treaty was ratified. Louisiana was afterward divided into two territories, called respectively the Territory of New Orleans and the District of Louisiana.

* The Ohio River was so called by the Indians, the word signifying *beautiful.*

War with Tripoli.—In the same year, 1803, Commodore Preble (*preb'el*) was sent against the pirates of the Barbary States, who were constantly committing depredations upon the commerce of the United States. One of his vessels, the frigate Philadelphia, while reconnoitering the enemy's fortification in the harbor of Tripoli (*trip'o-le*), struck on a rock, and was captured, her crew being made slaves.

The recapture of the frigate being considered impracticable, her destruction was determined upon. Accordingly, on the night of February 15, 1804, Lieutenant Decatur (*dē-kā'tur*), in a small vessel, with about eighty companions, entered the harbor, boarded the Philadelphia, killed or drove into the sea every one of the Tripolitan crew, and, after setting the frigate on fire, escaped without losing a man.

About a year later, Mr. Eaton, an agent of the United States, concerted an expedition with Hamet, the exiled though rightful heir to the throne of Tripoli. He marched from Egypt across the desert, and captured Der'ne; but, in the midst of his successes, a treaty of peace was concluded between the bashaw and Mr. Lear, American Consul-General.

Duel between Hamilton and Burr.—In 1804 (July 12), occurred a duel between Alexander Hamilton * and the vice-president, Aaron Burr,† in which Hamilton was mortally wounded. The challenge came from Burr, who had been informed that Hamilton had publicly made remarks which reflected upon his character, and demanded, in an offensive way, that they should be withdrawn. This was refused by Hamilton. The meeting took place at Hoboken; Hamilton discharged his pistol in the air, but Burr took deliberate aim, and his antagonist fell. The death of Hamilton occurred the next day, and was universally lamented; while Burr was obliged to flee from the storm of indignation which his act had produced.

Eulogy on Hamilton.—*Dr. Nott.*

[From a discourse delivered in Albany, July, 1804.]

I. O THAT I possessed the talent of eulogy, and that I might be permitted to indulge the tenderness of friendship, in paying the last tribute to the memory of Hamilton! O that I were capable of placing this great man before you! Could I do this,

* Hamilton was born in the Island of Nevis, West Indies, in 1757. At the age of thirteen, he was sent to New York to be educated. He was one of the first to take up arms at the beginning of the Revolution, and, as captain of an artillery company, performed a creditable part in the battle of Long Island. By his activity and intelligence he attracted the attention of Washington, and, after the battles of Trenton and Princeton, in which he took part, he accepted an invitation from the commander-in-chief to take a place on his staff as aid-de-camp. He afterward participated in the battles of Brandywine, Germantown, and Monmouth.

† Burr was born at Newark, New Jersey, in 1756. In 1775, he was engaged in the expedition against Canada, and accompanied Arnold upon his toilsome march through the wilderness. He was in the battles of Quebec and Monmouth. His death occurred at Staten Island, N. Y., in 1836.

I should furnish you with an argument, the most practical, the most plain, the most convincing, except that drawn from the mandate of God, that was ever furnished against duelling —that horrid practice which has, in an awful moment, robbed the world of such exalted worth. But I cannot do this; I can only hint at the variety and exuberance of his excellence.

2. The Man, on whom nature seems originally to have impressed the stamp of greatness; whose genius beamed, from the retirement of collegiate life, with a radiance which dazzled, and a loveliness which charmed the eye of sages. The Hero, called from his sequestered retreat, whose first appearance in the field, though a stripling, conciliated the esteem of Washington, our good old father. Moving by whose side, during all the perils of the Revolution, our young chieftain was a contributor to the veteran's glory, the guardian of his person, and the copartner of his toils.

3. The Conqueror, who, sparing of human blood, when victory favored, stayed the uplifted arm, and nobly said to the vanquished enemy, "Live!" The Statesman, the correctness of whose principles and the strength of whose mind are inscribed on the records of Congress, and on the annals of the council-chamber; whose genius impressed itself on the Constitution of his country; and whose memory, the government, illustrious fabric, resting on this basis, will perpetuate while it lasts; and, shaken by the violence of party, should it fall, which may Heaven avert, his prophetic declarations will be found inscribed on its ruins.

4. The Counsellor, who was at once the pride of the bar and the admiration of the court; whose apprehensions were as quick as lightning, and whose development of truth was luminous as its path; whose argument no change of circumstances could embarrass; whose knowledge appeared intuitive; and who, by a single glance, and with as much facility as the eye of an eagle passes over the landscape, surveyed the whole field of controversy; saw in what way truth might be most successfully defended, and how error must be approached; and who, without ever stopping, ever hesitating, by a rapid and

manly march, led the listening judge and the fascinated juror, step by step, through a delightsome region, brightening as he advanced, till his argument rose to demonstration, and eloquence was rendered useless by conviction; whose talents were employed on the side of righteousness; whose voice, whether in the council-chamber or at the bar of justice, was virtue's consolation; at whose approach oppressed humanity felt a secret rapture, and the heart of injured innocence leapt for joy.

5. Where Hamilton was—in whatever sphere he moved, the friendless had a friend, the fatherless a father, and the poor man, though unable to reward his kindness, found an advocate. It was when the rich oppressed the poor, when the powerful menaced the defenseless, when truth was disregarded, or the eternal principles of justice violated—it was on these occasions that he sometimes soared so high and shone with a radiance so transcendent, I had almost said, so "heavenly, as filled those around him with awe, and gave to him the force and authority of a prophet."

6. The Patriot, whose integrity baffled the scrutiny of inquisition; whose manly virtue never shaped itself to circumstances; who, always great, always himself, stood amidst the varying tides of party, firm like the rock which, far from land, lifts its majestic top above the waves, and remains unshaken by the storms which agitate the ocean. The Friend, who knew no guile—whose bosom was transparent and deep; on the bottom of whose heart was rooted every tender and sympathetic virtue; whose various worth opposing parties acknowledged while alive, and on whose tomb they unite, with equal sympathy and grief, to heap their honors. . . . .

7. He yielded to the force of an imperious custom; and yielding, he sacrificed a life in which all had an interest—and he is lost—lost to his country, lost to his family, lost to us. For this act, because he disclaimed it and was penitent, I forgive him. But there are those whom I cannot forgive. I mean not his antagonist, over whose erring steps, if there be tears in Heaven, a pious mother looks down and weeps. If he be capa-

ble of feeling, he suffers already all that humanity can suffer,—suffers, and, wherever he may fly, will suffer—with the poignant recollection of having taken the life of one who was too magnanimous, in return, to attempt his own. Had he known this, it must have paralyzed his arm while it pointed at so incorruptible a bosom the instrument of death. Does he know this now, his heart, if it be not adamant, must soften—if it be not ice, it must melt. . . . .

8. Approach, and behold, while I lift from the sepulchre its covering! Ye admirers of his greatness, ye emulous of his talents and his fame, approach, and behold him now! How pale! How silent! No martial bands admire the adroitness of his movements; no fascinated throng weep, and melt, and tremble, at his eloquence. Amazing change! a shroud—a coffin—a narrow subterraneous cabin—this is all that now remains of Hamilton! And is this all that remains of him? During a life so transitory, what lasting monument, then, can our fondest hopes erect?

Re-election of Jefferson.—Thomas Jefferson was re-elected president in 1805; but Burr, having lost all political influence by his connection with the duel just referred to, was succeeded as vice-president by George Clinton, of New York.

Burr's Subsequent History.—After his retirement from the vice-presidency, Burr made a journey to the southwest, and there his conduct subjected him to strange suspicion. He made considerable progress in the organization of an expedition which, it was alleged, was designed for the invasion of Mexico. His ultimate purpose, it was further alleged, was to establish an empire which should embrace one or more of the southwestern States of the Union.

By order of the president of the United States he was arrested, taken to Richmond, Virginia, and there tried on a charge of treason. The trial was a protracted one; but, under a ruling of the court, which did not involve the determination of the guilt or innocence of the accused, he was acquitted. He was, however, believed to be guilty of a design to dismember the Union, with the view to establish an independent state west of the Alleghanies, with himself at its head. He subsequently had no connection with the public affairs of the country.

Troubles with England.—The wars in Europe, growing out of the French revolution, continued during Jefferson's administration. That between England and France, though it at first proved profitable to the American ship-

ping interests engaged in the carrying trade between the ports of the two hostile nations, resulted in the adoption of measures injurious to our commerce. To annoy and cripple her adversary, England declared the whole northern coast of France in a state of blockade. Napoleon retaliated by the "Berlin Decree," in which he pronounced the British Islands in a state of blockade. But the crowning grievance was the "right of search," asserted by Great Britain, under which claim American vessels were boarded, and all sailors of English birth found on board, were impressed as subjects of the king.

Affair of the Chesapeake and Leopard.—An event occurred, in June, 1807, which occasioned great excitement throughout the country. The frigate Chesapeake, when off the capes of Virginia, was fired into by the British frigate Leopard. The American vessel, being unprepared for action, struck her colors, after having twenty-one of her crew killed or wounded. Four alleged deserters were then transferred to the Leopard, three of whom, it was afterward proved, were native Americans.

This outrage provoked the president to issue a proclamation forbidding British armed vessels to enter the ports or waters of the United States. Although the act of the Leopard was not approved by the British government, no reparation was made till four years afterward.

The Embargo Act.—In consequence of the policy of the two European nations, so destructive to our commerce, Congress passed the Embargo Act, forbidding American vessels to leave the ports of the United States. As this act not only failed to produce any change in the policy of the two powers at war, but was ruinous in its effects upon the shipping interests, it became very unpopular, and was repealed—a law, prohibiting all intercourse with those countries, being substituted for it.

Jefferson's Successor.—Thomas Jefferson was succeeded on the 4th of March, 1809, by James Madison of Virginia.

Cotton Culture and Steam Navigation.—Among the most important sources of advancement in material prosperity during the administration of Jefferson, were the improvements in steam navigation and the cultivation of cotton. The former was brought to a practical success by Robert Fulton, in 1807.

Steam Navigation.—*Timbs.*

1. In 1778, the notorious Thomas Paine, the republican, proposed in America the propulsion of vessels by steam. Paine, at one period, employed himself much in mechanical speculations. In 1787, he submitted to the Academy of Sciences at Paris a plan for the construction of iron bridges, which he afterward explained in a letter printed in Rotherham. He published four or five treatises—on iron bridges, the yellow fever, the building of ships of war, etc.

2. The enterprising spirit of the Americans was not likely to suffer them to be wanting in efforts to bring that to pass which had caused so much sensation on this side of the Atlantic, and which, even at that time, promised such immense results. Accordingly, we find that two individuals, named Rumsey and Fitch, were engaged in active rivalry in the United States, in applying the steam-engine to the propulsion of vessels.

3. The latter of these two gentlemen, as early as 1783, was occupied in the construction of a boat which he afterward contrived to move with paddles, by the aid of a steam-engine, on the Delaware; and, in 1785, he had so far completed his design, that he presented a model of his apparatus to Congress. He was encouraged by the support of several wealthy men, who provided the means for his experiments, and was so sanguine of success, as to express his firm conviction that the ocean would ultimately be crossed by steam-vessels—a declaration which, when it was made, must have appeared to be little else than the notion of a visionary, but which many of Fitch's generation have lived to see so wonderfully realized.

4. Rumsey, his rival, was also backed by a company; and, in 1784, succeeded in the construction of a boat, a model of which, in that year, he exhibited to General Washington. This vessel was about fifty feet long, and was carried along the Potomac by means of a stream of water, which, with a pump worked by a steam-engine, entered at the bow and was carried out at the stern, the reaction of the water being the propelling agent.

5. The boiler only held about five gallons, and the fuel consumed was about six bushels of coal in twelve hours. Yet, with this imperfect apparatus—when the boat was loaded with three tons weight, besides the engine, which was about a third of a ton more—Rumsey succeeded in attaining a rate of three or four miles an hour. He afterward came to England, and, by the assistance of some capitalists, built another vessel, which was tried on the Thames in the month of February, 1793; and in several trials made afterward, one attained a speed, against wind and tide, of upward of four miles an hour. . .

6. Chancellor Livingston having supplied the means, a vessel was launched upon the Hudson, by Robert Fulton, early in the spring of 1807. Fulton thus described to a friend the disheartening circumstances under which the construction of the first steamboat — nicknamed by the Americans "Fulton's Folly"—was patiently persevered in by himself. He records as follows: "When I was building my first steamboat at New York, the project was viewed by the public with indifference or with contempt, as a visionary scheme. My friends, indeed, were civil, but they were shy. They listened with patience to my explanations, but with a settled cast of incredulity on their countenances. Never did a single encouraging remark, a bright hope, a warm wish, cross my path. Silence itself was but politeness veiling its doubts or hiding its reproaches."

7. Fulton's biographer describes the trial: "Before the boat had made the progress of a quarter of a mile, the greatest unbeliever was converted, and Fulton was received with shouts and acclamations of congratulation and applause. The vessel, *Clermont*, made the first voyage from New York to Albany, 145 miles, at the average rate of five miles an hour, stopping some time at Clermont to take in water and fuel. The whole progress up the Hudson was a continued triumph."

8. The vessel is described as having the most terrific appearance. The dry pine-wood fuel sent up many feet above the flue a column of ignited vapor, and when the fire was stirred, tremendous showers of sparks. The wind and tide were adverse to them, but the crowds saw with astonishment the vessel rapidly coming toward them; and when it came so near that the noise of the machinery and paddles was heard, the crew, in some instances, shrunk beneath their decks from the terrific sight; while others prostrated themselves, and besought Providence to protect them from the approach of the horrible monster which was marching on the tide, and lighting its path by the fire that it vomited.

9. But the Clermont soon had a competitor. Within a few weeks, Mr. Stevens, of Hoboken, launched a steam-vessel, which, as she could not ply on the waters of the Hudson, in consequence

of the exclusive patent of Fulton and Livingston, he took round to the Delaware; and this was the first steamer that ever braved the tides of ocean.—*History of Wonderful Inventions.*

King Cotton.—*Robt. Mackenzie.*

1. When Europeans first visited the southern parts of North America, they found in abundant growth there a plant destined to such eminence in the future history of the world as no other member of the vegetable family ever attained. It was an unimportant-looking plant two or three feet in height, studded with pods somewhat larger than a walnut. In the appropriate season these pods opened, revealing a wealth of soft, white fibre, embedded in which lay the seeds of the plant.

2. This was Cotton. It was not unknown to the Old World. The Romans used cotton fabrics before the Christian era. India did so from a still more remote period, but the extent to which its use had been carried was trivial. Men clothed themselves as best they might, in linen or woolen cloth, or simply in the skins of the beasts which they slew. The time was now at hand when an ampler provision for their wants was to be disclosed to them.

3. Socially and politically, cotton has deeply influenced the course of human affairs. The mightiest conquerors sink into insignificance in presence of King Cotton. The English began to cultivate a little cotton very soon after their settlement in America. But it was a difficult crop for them to handle. The plants grew luxuriantly. When autumn came the opening pods revealed a most satisfactory opulence. The quantity of cotton produced excited the wonder of the planters. But the seeds of the plant adhered tenaciously to the fibre. Before the fibre could be used the seeds had to be removed.

4. This was a slow, and therefore a costly, process. It was as much as a man could do in a day to separate one pound of cotton from the seeds. Cotton could never be abundant or cheap while this was the case. But in course of time, things came to pass in England which made it indispensable that cotton should be both abundant and cheap.

5. In 1768, Richard Arkwright invented a machine for spinning cotton, vastly superior to anything hitherto in use. Next year, a greater than he—James Watt—announced a greater invention—his steam-engine. England was now ready to begin her great work of weaving cotton for the world; but where was the cotton to be found?

6. Three or four years before Watt patented his engine and Arkwright his spinning-frame, there was born in a New England farmhouse a boy whose work was needed to complete theirs. His name was Eli Whitney. Eli was a born mechanic. It was a necessity of his nature to invent and construct. As a mere boy he made nails, pins, and walking-canes by novel processes, and thus earned money to support himself at college. In 1792 he went to Georgia to visit Mrs. Greene, the widow of that General Greene who so troubled Lord Cornwallis in the closing years of the war.

7. In that primitive society, where few of the comforts of civilized life were yet enjoyed, no visits were so like those of the angels as the visits of a skillful mechanic. Eli constructed marvellous amusements for Mrs. Greene's children. He overcame all household difficulties by some ingenious contrivance. Mrs. Greene learned to wonder at him, and to believe nothing was impossible for him.

8. One day, Mrs. Greene entertained a party of her neighbors. The conversation turned upon the sorrows of the planter. That unhappy tenacity with which the seeds of the cotton adhered to the fibre was elaborately bemoaned. With an urgent demand from England for cotton, with boundless lands which grew nothing so well as cotton, it was hard to be so utterly baffled.

9. Mrs. Greene had unlimited faith in her friend Eli. She begged him to invent a machine which should separate the seeds of cotton from the fibre. Eli was of northern upbringing, and had never even seen cotton in seed. He walked in to Savannah, and there, with some trouble, obtained a quantity of uncleaned cotton. He shut himself in his room, and brooded over the difficulty which he had undertaken to conquer.

10. All that winter Eli labored, devising, hammering, building up, rejecting, beginning afresh. He had no help. He could not even buy tools, but had to make them with his own hands. At length his machine was completed, rude-looking, but visibly effective. Mrs. Greene invited the leading men of the State to her house. She conducted them in triumph to the building in which the machine stood. The owners of unprofitable cotton-lands looked on, with a wild flash of hope lighting up their desponding hearts. Possibilities of untold wealth to each of them lay in that clumsy structure. The machine was put in motion. It was evident to all that it could perform the work of hundreds of men. Eli had gained a great victory for mankind. In that rude log-hut of Georgia, Cotton was crowned King, and a new era was opened for America and the world.

11. Ten years after Whitney's cotton-gin was invented, a huge addition was made to the cotton-growing districts of America. In 1803, Europe enjoyed a short respite from the mad Napoleon wars. France had recently acquired from Spain vast regions bordering on the Gulf of Mexico, and stretching far up the valley of the Mississippi, and westward to the Pacific. It was certain that peace in Europe would not last long. It was equally certain that when war was resumed France could not hold these possessions against the fleets of England. America wished to acquire, and was willing to pay for them. It was better to sell to the Americans, and equip soldiers with the price, than wait till England was ready to conquer. Napoleon sold, and America added Louisiana to her vast possessions.

12. Mark well these two events—the invention of a machine for cheaply separating the seeds of cotton from the fibre, and the purchase of Louisiana from the French. Out of those two events flows the American history of the next half century. Not any other event since the War of Independence, not all other events put together, have done so much to shape and determine the career of the American people.—*United States of America.*

Madison's Administration.—War of 1812.—The fourth President of the United States, James Madison of Virginia, was inaugurated at Washington, on the 4th of March, 1809, at a crisis in the affairs of the nation which required, on the part of the administration, the utmost caution, prudence, and resolution.

Affair between the Little Belt and the President.—In May, 1811, an affair occurred which tended to increase the ill feeling which then existed between Great Britain and the United States. The British sloop-of-war Little Belt, while cruising off the coast of Virginia, fired into the American frigate President; but her fire was returned with such heavy broadsides, that, in a few minutes, thirty-two of her crew were killed or wounded.

Battle of Tippecanoe.—About the year 1804, the Indians on the western frontiers, incited by British emissaries and influenced by the appeals of Tecumseh,* one of their boldest and most active warriors, began to form a confederacy against the people of the United States. A brother of Tecumseh, known as the "Prophet," who, by his predictions and promises, had acquired great influence over the tribes along the Wabash, was a leading agent in the business of bringing about an alliance.

General Harrison, governor of the Indian territory, marched (in 1811) towards the western frontier and approached Tippecanoe, the town of the Prophet, situated at the junction of the Tippecanoe and Wabash Rivers, in the present State of Indiana. The Prophet, in the absence of Tecumseh, at once proposed a conference, to take place the next day, and requested the Americans to encamp for the night at a place which he designated. Harrison, suspecting treachery, ordered his troops to sleep on their arms. This proved a fortunate precaution, for, early on the following morning (Nov. 7th,), the Indians made a furious attack upon the American camp; but, after a desperate and bloody contest of two hours, they were repulsed. This battle ruined the plans which Tecumseh had formed; and his next attempt against the Americans was through the alliance which he formed with the English, in 1812.

War declared against Great Britain.—The United States had endeavored to induce the British government to abrogate its "Orders in Council," and to negotiate terms for suspending the impressment of American seamen, but in vain. That government absolutely refused, and nothing remained but war. Accordingly, in June, 1812, the President of the United States, in conformity with an act of Congress, issued a proclamation declaring war against Great Britain; and preparations were at once made for raising a large army. General Dearborn, of Massachusetts, an officer who had served with credit in the Revolution, was appointed commander-in-chief. Before hostilities actually commenced, the British government had revoked its "Orders in Council," but the "right of impressment" was still insisted upon.

* Tecumseh, or, as the name is sometimes written, Tecumtha, was a chief of the Shawnee Indians. He was born on the banks of the Scioto River, in Ohio, about 1770. The "Prophet's" name was Elkswatawa.

First Events of the War.—At the time of the declaration of war, General Hull, the governor of Michigan Territory, was marching with two thousand men from Ohio to Detroit, his purpose being to accomplish the reduction of the hostile Indians of the northwest. In anticipation of the war with England, he had been invested with discretionary power to invade Canada. Learning, while on the march, that war had been declared, he crossed the Detroit River, with the avowed intention of attacking Fort Malden; but, instead of at once proceeding, he encamped at Sandwich, eighteen miles distant, and thus gave the enemy an opportunity to prepare for defense. In the mean time, Fort Mackinaw, an American post situated on an island at the outlet of Lake Michigan, was surprised by a force of British and Indians, and captured before the garrison had even heard of the declaration of war.

Surrender of Detroit.—A detachment which Hull had sent to convoy a supply-train for his army, was met near Brownstown (Aug. 5th) and utterly defeated; but four days later, a second detachment, under Colonel Miller, encountered and routed the enemy. In the meantime Hull, after nearly a month's idleness in Canada, recrossed the river, and took post at Detroit. To this place he was, in a few days, followed by General Brock, commanding thirteen hundred British and Indians. The Americans were confident of victory in the battle which seemed about to take place, yet, to their great indignation, Hull ordered the white flag to be shown, in token of submission (Aug. 16). By this act, not only Detroit, but the whole territory of Michigan, passed into the hands of the enemy.

Trial of Hull.—Hull's conduct, two years after, underwent examination by a court-martial, and thoughhe was acquitted of treason, the court pronounced him guilty of cowardice, and he was sentenced to be shot; but, in consideration of his age and revolutionary services, the sentence was remitted by President Madison. Hull's* conduct was severely criticised at the time, as well as in after years; but a series of letters which he published in 1824, and a volume which appeared at a still later period, together form a complete vindication of his surrender, as regards either the charge of treason or cowardice.

Battle of Queenstown.—*J. T. Headley.*

1. The northern army, numbering between eight and ten thousand soldiers, was principally concentrated at two points. One portion was encamped near Plattsburg and Greenbush, commanded by General Dearborn in person; the other, at Lewistown, was under the direction of General Stephen Van Rensselaer, of the New York militia, while one thousand five

* William Hull was born in Connecticut, in 1753. He was in the battles of White Plains, Trenton, Princeton, Bemis Heights, Saratoga, Monmouth, and Stony Point; and in all of them fought with courage. His death occurred in Massachusetts, in 1825.

hundred regulars, under General Smythe, lay at Buffalo, a few miles distant. There were a few troops stationed also at Ogdensburg, Sackett's Harbor, and Black Rock.

2. The discontent produced by Hull's surrender, and the loud complaints against the inaction of the northern army, together with the consciousness that something must be done to prevent the first year of war from closing in unmixed gloom, induced General Van Rensselaer to make a bold push into Canada, and by a sudden blow attempt to wrest Jamestown from the enemy, and there establish his winter quarters. The cutting out of two English brigs from under the guns of Fort Erie, by Lieutenant Elliot, with some fifty volunteers, created an enthusiasm in the American camp, of which General Van Rensselaer determined to avail himself.

3. The command of the expedition was given to his cousin, Colonel Solomon Van Rensselaer, a brave and chivalric officer, who, on the 13th of October, at the head of three hundred militia, accompanied by Colonel Chrystie with three hundred regular troops, prepared to cross the river. It wanted still an hour to daylight when the two columns stood in battle array on the shore. Through carelessness, or inability to obtain them, there were not sufficient boats to take all over at once, and they were compelled to cross in detachments. The boat which carried Colonel Chrystie being badly managed, was swept away by the current, and finally compelled to re-land on the American shore. This gallant officer was wounded while thus drifting in the stream, yet soon after he made another attempt to cross, and, succeeding, led his troops nobly until the close of the action.

4. Colonel Van Rensselaer, having effected a landing, formed on the shore and marched forward. The whole force at this time did not exceed one hundred men. These, however, were led up the bank, where they halted to wait the junction of the other troops, that kept arriving, a few boat-loads at a time. But daylight now having dawned, the exposed position of this detachment rendered it a fair mark for the enemy, who immediately opened their fire upon it. In a few minutes every com-

missioned officer was either killed or wounded. Colonel Van Rensselaer, finding that the bank of the river afforded very little shelter, determined, with the handful under him, to storm the heights. But he had now received four wounds, and was compelled to surrender the command to Captains Ogilvie and Wool, who gallantly moved forward, and carried the fort and heights.

5. The enemy were driven into a strong stone house, from which they made two unsuccessful attempts to recover the ground they had lost. Brock, flushed with the easy victory he had gained over Hull, rallied them by his presence, and, while attempting to lead on the grenadiers of the 49th, fell mortally wounded. This, for a time, gave the Americans undisturbed possession of the heights, and great efforts were made to bring over other troops. General Van Rensselaer, after the fall of his cousin, crossed and took the command, but hastening back to urge on the embarkation of the militia, it devolved on General Wadsworth.

6. Daylight had seen this brave little band form on the shores of the river under a galling fire; the morning sun glittered on their bayonets from the heights of Queenstown, and the victory seemed won. The day so gloriously begun would have closed in brighter effulgence, had not the militia on the farther side refused to cross over to the assistance of their hard-pressed comrades. A stone house near the bank, defended by two light pieces of artillery, still played on the boats that attempted to cross; and the Americans on the Canada side, having no heavy artillery, were unable to take it.

7. The firing from this, and soon after the appearance of a large body of Indians on the field of battle, so frightened the militia, that neither entreaties nor threats could induce them to embark. Through utter want of orderly management, half of the twenty boats had been destroyed or lost; still it was not the lack of means of transportation that held them back, but *conscientious scruples about invading an enemy's territory.* Attempting to mask their cowardice under this ridiculous plea, they stood and saw the dangers thicken around their comrades

who had relied on their support, without making a single effort to save them from destruction.

8. Lieutenant-Colonel Scott, by a forced march through mud and rain, had arrived at Lewistown with his regiment at four o'clock in the morning, just as the troops were embarking. He begged permission to take part in the expedition, but the arrangements having all been made, his request was denied. He therefore planted his guns on the shore and opened his fire upon the enemy. But seeing how small a proportion of the troops were got across, and perceiving also the peril of Van Rensselaer's detachment, his young and gallant heart could not allow him to remain an idle spectator; and, taking one piece of artillery, he jumped into a boat with his adjutant, Roach, and pushed for the opposite shore.

9. Wadsworth immediately gave the command of the troops to him, and his chivalric bearing and enthusiastic language soon animated every heart with new courage. Six feet five inches in height and in full uniform, he presented a conspicuous mark for the enemy and a rallying-point to the troops. Had his regiment been with him, Queenstown would have been a second Chippewa.

10. Considerable reinforcements, however, had arrived, swelling the number to six hundred, of whom three hundred and fifty were regular troops. These, Scott, assisted by the cool and skillful Captain Zitten, soon placed in the most commanding positions, and waited for further reinforcements. Just before, a body of five hundred Indians, whom the firing had suddenly collected, joined the beaten light-troops of the English. Encouraged by this accession of strength, the latter moved again to the assault, but were driven back in confusion.

11. Still the enemy kept up a desultory engagement. On one occasion, the Indians, issuing suddenly from the forest, surprised a picket of militia, and following hard on their flying traces, carried consternation into that part of the line. Scott, who was in the rear, showing the men how to unspike a gun, hearing the tumult, hastened to the front, and rallying a few platoons[v], scattered those wild warriors with a single blow. But

while the day was wearing away in this doubtful manner, a more formidable foe appeared on the field.

12. General Sheaffe, commanding at Fort George, had heard the firing in the morning; and, a little later, the news of the death of Brock was brought him. His forces were immediately put in motion; and, soon after mid-day, the little band that had from day-dawn bravely breasted the storm, saw from the heights they had so bravely won, a column, eight hundred and fifty strong, approaching the scene of combat—not in haste or confusion, but with the slow and measured tread of disciplined troops. These few hundred Americans watched its progress with undaunted hearts, and turned to catch the outlines of their own advancing regiments, but not a bayonet was moving to their help.

13. At this critical moment news arrived of the shameful mutiny that had broken out on the opposite shore. The entreaties of Van Rensselaer, and the noble example of Wadsworth, and the increasing peril of their comrades, were wholly unavailing—not a soul would stir. This sealed the fate of the American detachment. A few hundred, sustained by only one piece of artillery, against the thirteen hundred of the enemy—their number when the junction of the advancing column with the remaining troops and the Indian allies should be effected—constituted hopeless odds.

14. General Van Rensselaer, from the opposite shore, saw this, and sent word to Wadsworth to retreat at once, and he would send every boat he could lay hands on to receive the fugitives. He, however, left everything to the judgment of the latter. Colonels Chrystie and Scott, of the regulars, and Mead, Strahan, and Allan of the militia, and officers Ogilvie, Wool, Totten, and Gibson, McChesney, and others, presented a noble yet sorrowful group, as they took council over this message of the commander-in-chief. Their case was evidently a hopeless one, yet they could not make up their minds to retreat.

15. Colonel Scott, mounting a log in front of his troops, harangued them in a strain worthy of the days of chivalry. He told them their condition was desperate, but that Hull's

surrender must be redeemed. "Let us then die," he exclaimed, "arms in hand. Our country demands the sacrifice. The example will not be lost. The blood of the slain will make heroes of the living. Those who follow will avenge our fall, and our country's wrongs. Who dare to stand?" A loud "ALL!" rang sternly along the line. In the meantime General Sheaffe had arrived, but instead of advancing immediately to the attack, slowly marched his column the whole length of the American line, then countermarched it, as if to make sure that the little band in front of him was the only force he had to overcome.

16. All saw at a glance that resistance was useless, and retreat almost hopeless. The latter, however, was resolved upon; but the moment the order was given to retire, the whole broke in disorderly flight toward the river. To their dismay, no boats were there to receive them, and a flag of truce was therefore sent to the enemy. The messenger, however, never returned; another and another shared the same fate. At last Scott tied a white handkerchief to his sword, and, accompanied by Captains Totten and Gibson, crept under one of the precipices, down the river, till he arrived where a gentle slope gave an easy ascent, when the three made a push for the road, which led from the valley to the heights.

17. On the way they were met by Indians, who, firing on them, rushed forward with their tomahawks, to kill them. They would soon have shared the fate of the other messengers, but for the timely arrival of a British officer, with some soldiers, who took them to General Sheaffe, to whom Scott surrendered his whole force. Two hundred and ninety-three were all that survived of the brave band who had struggled so long and so nobly for victory. Several hundred militia, however, were found concealed along the shore, who had crossed over, but skulked away in confusion. The entire loss of the Americans in this unfortunate expedition, killed and captured, was about one thousand men. General Van Rensselaer, disgusted with the conduct of the militia, soon after sent in his resignation.

18. Brock was buried the following day, "under one of the

bastions of Fort George;" and, at the request of Scott, then a prisoner, minute-guns were fired from Fort Niagara during the funeral ceremonies. Above the dull roar of the cataract, the minute-guns of friends and foes pealed over the dead, as, with shrouded banners, the slowly-marching column bore him to his last resting-place. Cannon that but a few hours before had been exploding in angry strife on each other, now joined their peaceful echoes over his grave. Such an act was characteristic of Scott, who, fierce and fearless in battle, was chivalrous and kind in all his feelings.

19. While a prisoner in an inn at Niagara, Scott was told that some one wished to see the "tall American." He immediately passed through into the entry, when to his astonishment he saw standing before him two savage Indian chiefs, the same who had attempted to kill him when he surrendered himself a prisoner of war. They wished to look on the man at whom they had so often fired with a deliberate aim. In broken English, and by gestures, they inquired where he was hit, for they believed it impossible that out of fifteen or twenty shots not one had taken effect. The elder chief, named Jacobs, a tall, powerful savage, became furious at Scott's asserting that not a ball had touched him, and seizing his shoulders rudely, turned him round to examine his back.

20. The young and fiery colonel did not like to have such freedom taken with his person by a savage, and, hurling him fiercely aside, exclaimed: "Off, villain! you fired like a squaw." "We kill you now," was the quick and startling reply, as knives and tomahawks gleamed in their hands. Scott was not a man to beg or run, though either would have been preferable to taking his chances against these armed savages. Luckily for him, the swords of the American officers who had been taken prisoners were stacked under the staircase, beside which he was standing.

21. Quick as thought, he snatched up the largest, a long sabre, and the next moment it glittered unsheathed above his head. One leap backward, to get scope for play, and he stood towering even above the gigantic chieftain, who glared in sav-

age hate upon him. The Indians were in the wider part of the hall, between the foot of the stairs and the door, while Scott stood farther in, where it was narrower. The former, therefore, could not get in the rear, and were compelled to face their enemy. They manœuvred to close, but at every turn that sabre flashed in their eyes. The moment they should come to blows, one, they knew, was sure to die; and although it was equally certain that Scott would fall under the knife of the survivor before he could regain his position, yet neither Indian seemed anxious to be the sacrifice.

22. While they thus stood watching each other, a British officer chanced to enter, and, on beholding the terrific tableau, cried out, "The guard!" and at the same instant seized the tallest chieftain by the arm, and presented a cocked pistol to his head. The next moment the blade of Scott quivered over the head of the other savage, to protect his deliverer. In a few seconds the guard entered with leveled bayonets, and the two chieftains were secured. One of them was the son of Brant, of Revolutionary notoriety.

23. The prisoners were all taken to Quebec, whence they were sent in a cartel to Boston. As they were about to sail, Scott, who was in the cabin of the transport, hearing a noise on deck, went up to ascertain the cause, and found that the British officers were separating the Irishmen, to exclude them from mercy due to the other prisoners, and have them taken to England and tried for treason. Twenty-three had thus been set apart when he arrived. Indignant at this outrage, he peremptorily ordered the rest of the men to keep silent, and not answer a question of any kind, so that neither by their replies nor voice could they give any evidence of the place of their birth. He then turned to the doomed twenty-three, and denounced the act of the officers, and declared most solemnly that if a hair of their heads were touched he would avenge it, even if he were compelled to refuse quarter in battle.

24. Soon after he reached Boston, he was sent to Washington, and in a short time was exchanged. He then drew up a report of the whole affair to the Secretary of War, and it was pre-

sented the same day to Congress. The result was the passage of an act of retaliation[v] (March 3d, 1813).—*History of the Second War with England.*

Naval Events.—The triumphs of the Americans on the ocean during 1812 were as decided as their reverses on the land. There were five important naval battles, in every one of which the Americans were victorious. The first was the capture (Aug. 13th) of the sloop Alert, by the frigate Essex, Captain Porter. Six days after, the frigate Constitution, Captain Hull, captured the Guerriere (*gāre-e-āre'*), after an action of about forty minutes.

Capture of the Guerriere by the Constitution.

Cooper.

1. In the meanwhile, the Constitution was not idle. Remaining at Boston a short time, Captain Hull sailed again on the 2d of August, standing along the land to the eastward, in the hope of falling in with some of the enemy's cruisers, that were thought to be hovering on the coast. The ship ran down, near the land, as far as the Bay of Fundy, without seeing anything, when she went off Halifax and Cape Sable, with the same want of success. Captain Hull now determined to go farther east, and he went near the isle of Sables, and thence to the mouth of the Gulf of St. Lawrence, to intercept vessels bound to Halifax or Quebec.

2. Here two prizes, of little value, were taken and burned. On the morning of the 15th, five sail were made, one of which was a sloop-of-war. The Constitution followed a ship, which turned out to be an Englishman, already a prize to an American privateer. This vessel had been spoken by the sloop-of-war, but the appearance of the Constitution prevented her recapture. A brig was next chased to leeward, and proved to be an American, with a prize-crew on board. She was retaken, and sent in. The remainder of the vessels escaped.

3. The Constitution next stood to the southward, and on the 19th, at two P.M., in lat. 41°41′, long. 55° 48′, a sail was made from the mast-heads, bearing E.S.E., and to leeward, though the distance prevented her character from being discovered. The Constitution immediately made sail in chase, and at three, the

stranger was ascertained to be a ship on the starboard tack, under easy canvas, and close-hauled. Half an hour later, she was distinctly made out to be a frigate, and no doubts were entertained of her being an enemy. The American ship kept running free until she was within a league of the frigate to leeward, when she began to shorten sail. By this time, the enemy had laid his main-topsail aback, in waiting for the Constitution to come down, with everything ready to engage.

4. Perceiving that the Englishman sought a combat, Captain Hull made his own preparations with the greater deliberation. The Constitution, consequently, furled her top-gallant-sails, and stowed all her light stay-sails and flying-jib. Soon after, she took a second reef in the top-sails, hauled up the courses, sent down royal yards, cleared for action, and beat to quarters. At five, the chase hoisted three English ensigns, and immediately after she opened her fire at long gun-shot, wearing[v] several times, to rake and prevent being raked. The Constitution occasionally yawed[v] as she approached, to avoid being raked, and she fired a few guns as they bore, but her object was not to commence the action seriously, until quite close.

5. At six o'clock the enemy bore up and ran off, under his three top-sails and jib, with the wind on his quarter. As this was an indication of a readiness to receive his antagonist in a fair yard-arm and yard-arm fight, the Constitution immediately set her main-top-gallant-sail and foresail, to get alongside. At a little after six, the bows of the American frigate began to double on the quarter of the English ship, when she opened with her forward guns, drawing slowly ahead, with her greater way, both vessels keeping up a close and heavy fire, as their guns bore.

6. In about ten minutes, or just as the ships were fairly side by side, the mizzen-mast of the Englishman was shot away, when the American passed slowly ahead, keeping up a tremendous fire, and luffed[v] short round on her bows, to prevent being raked. In executing this manœuvre, the ship shot into the wind, got sternway, and fell foul of her antagonist. While in this situation, the cabin of the Constitution took fire from the

close explosion of the forward guns of the enemy, who obtained a small, but momentary advantage from his position. The good conduct of Mr. Hoffman, who commanded in the cabin, soon repaired this accident, and a gun of the enemy's, that threatened further injury, was disabled.

7. As the vessels touched, both parties prepared to board. The English turned all hands up from below, and mustered forward, with that object, while Mr. Morris, the first lieutenant[v], with his own hands endeavored to lash the ships together. Mr. Alwyn, the master, and Mr. Bush, the lieutenant of the marines, were upon the taffrail[v] of the Constitution, to be ready to spring. Both sides now suffered by the closeness of the musketry; the English much the more, however. Mr. Morris was shot through the body, the bullet fortunately missing the vitals. Mr. Alwyn was wounded in the shoulder, and Mr. Bush fell dead by a bullet through the head. It being found impossible for either party to board, in the face of such fire, and with the heavy sea that was on, the sails were filled, and just as the Constitution shot ahead, the foremast of the enemy fell, carrying down with it his mainmast, and leaving him wallowing in the trough of the sea, a helpless wreck.

8. The Constitution now hauled aboard her tacks, ran off a short distance, secured her masts, and rove new rigging. At seven, she wore round, and taking a favorable position for raking, a jack, that had been kept flying on the stump of the mizzen-mast of the enemy, was lowered. Mr. George Campbell Read, the third lieutenant, was sent on board the prize, and the boat soon returned with the report that the captured vessel was the Guerriere, 38 guns, Captain Dacres, one of the ships that had so lately chased the Constitution, off New York.

9. The Constitution kept wearing to remain near her prize, and at two A.M. a strange sail was seen closing, when she cleared for action; but at three the stranger stood off. At daylight, the officer in charge hailed, to say that the Guerriere had four feet of water in her hold, and that there was danger of her sinking. On receiving this information, Captain Hull sent all his boats to remove the prisoners. Fortunately, the

weather was moderate, and by noon this duty was nearly ended. At three P.M. the prize-crew was recalled, having set the wreck on fire, and in a quarter of an hour she blew up. Finding his ship filled with wounded prisoners, Captain Hull now returned to Boston, where he arrived on the 30th of the same month.

10. It is not easy, at this distant day, to convey to the reader the full force of the moral impression created in America by this victory of one frigate over another. So deep had been the effect produced on the public mind by the constant accounts of the successes of the English over their enemies at sea, that the opinion, already mentioned, of their invincibility on that element, generally prevailed; and it had been publicly predicted that, before the contest had continued six months, British sloops-of-war would lie alongside of American frigates with comparative impunity. Perhaps the only portion of even the American population that expected different results was that which composed the little body of officers on whom the trial would fall; and they looked forward to the struggle with a manly resolution, rather than with a very confident hope.

11. But the termination of the combat just related far exceeded the expectations of even the most sanguine. After making all proper allowance for the difference of force, which certainly existed in favor of the Constitution, as well as for the excuses that the defeated party freely offered to the world, men on both sides of the Atlantic, who were competent to form intelligent opinions on such subjects, saw the promise of many future successes in this. The style in which the Constitution had been handled; the deliberate and yet earnest manner in which she had been carried into battle; the extraordinary execution that had been made in a short time by her fire; the readiness and gallantry with which she had cleared for action, so soon after destroying one British frigate, in which was manifested a disposition to meet another, united to produce a deep conviction of self-reliance, coolness, and skill, that was of infinitely more weight than the transient feeling which might result from any accidental triumph.—*Naval History of the United States.*

Other Naval Victories.—In October the sloop Wasp, Captain Jones, captured the Frolic; but scarcely had the prize been taken possession of, when an English ship of 74 guns hove in sight, and captured both vessels.

Just one week after (Oct. 25th), the frigate United States, Commodore Decatur, after an action of nearly two hours, west of the Canary Islands, compelled the Macedonian to surrender. A little more than two months later, the Constitution, then commanded by Commodore Bainbridge,* gained her second victory, in the capture of the Java. The action took place off the coast of Brazil (Dec. 29th), and lasted nearly two hours.

The Constitution.—The gallant Constitution, or "Old Ironsides," as she was affectionately called in the navy, continued in active service during this war. Cooper remarks, "In the course of two years and nine months, this ship had been in three actions, had been twice critically chased, and had captured five vessels-of-war, two of which were frigates, and a third frigate-built. In all her service, as well before Tripoli as in this war, her good fortune was remarkable. She never was dismasted, never got ashore, or scarcely ever suffered any of the usual accidents of the sea. Though so often in battle, no very serious slaughter ever took place on board her. One of her commanders was wounded, and four of her lieutenants had been killed, two on her own decks, and two in the Intrepid; but, on the whole, her entire career had been that of what is usually called a 'lucky ship.' Her fortune, however, may perhaps be explained in the simple fact, that she had always been well commanded. In her two last cruises, she had probably possessed as fine a crew as ever manned a frigate. They were principally New England men, and it has been said of them, that they were almost qualified to fight the ship without her officers."

Old Ironsides.—*O. W. Holmes.*

[The following lines were called forth by a rumor that the frigate Constitution was about to be broken up as unfit for service.]

1. Ay, tear her tattered ensign down!
   Long has it waved on high,
   And many an eye has danced to see
   That banner in the sky:
   Beneath it rung the battle-shout,
   And burst the cannon's roar;
   The meteor of the ocean-air
   Shall sweep the clouds no more.

* William Bainbridge was born in Princeton, N. J., in 1774. In 1803 he was in command of the frigate Philadelphia when that vessel struck on a rock and was captured in the harbor of Tripoli. He and his crew, of more than three hundred persons, were taken prisoners by the Tripolitans and held in captivity nineteen months. He died in Philadelphia, in 1833.

2. Her deck, once red with heroes' blood,
Where knelt the vanquished foe,
When winds were hurrying o'er the flood,
And waves were white below,
No more shall feel the victor's tread,
Or know the conquered knee;
The harpies of the shore shall pluck
The eagle of the sea.

3. Oh, better that her shattered hulk
Should sink beneath the wave;
Her thunders shook the mighty deep,
And there should be her grave.
Nail to the mast her holy flag,
Set every threadbare sail,
And give her to the god of storms—
The lightning and the gale.

Operations of American Privateers.—In the belief that the navy of the United States would be entirely destroyed or captured by that of England, it had been decided, at the beginning of the war, to lay up our ships to save them. But, happily, that policy was soon departed from. American privateers, too, scoured the ocean, and British commerce suffered in every direction. During the year 1812, more than three hundred vessels, with not less than three thousands prisoners, besides valuable cargoes, were taken by the Americans.

Opposition to the War.—The war was unpopular with very many, particularly the Federalists, who thought that the administration could have avoided it; and that it greatly imperilled the interests and safety of the country without any corresponding advantage. In February, 1813, a resolution offered in the House of Representatives to raise twenty additional regiments in order to prosecute the war, met with considerable opposition. Henry Clay, then a member of the House, however, sustained the administration and defended the policy of the war with all his characteristic eloquence. The following is an extract from his great speech on that occasion.

Necessity of the War of 1812.—*Henry Clay.*

1. This war was declared because Great Britain arrogated to herself the pretension of regulating our foreign trade, under the delusive name of Retaliatory Orders in Council—a pretension by which she undertook to proclaim to American enterprise, "thus far shalt thou go, and no farther"—orders which she

refused to revoke, after the alleged cause of their enactment had ceased; because she persisted in the practice of impressing American seamen; because she had instigated the Indians to commit hostilities against us; and because she refused indemnity for her past injuries upon our commerce.

2. I throw out of the question other wrongs. The war, in fact, was announced, on our part, to meet the war which she was waging on her part. So undeniable were the causes of the war, so powerfully did they address themselves to the feelings of the whole American people, that when the bill was pending before this House, gentlemen in the opposition, although provoked to debate, would not, or could not, utter one syllable against it. . . . .

3. I have no hesitation in saying that I have always considered the impressment of American seamen as much the most serious aggression. But, sir, how have those Orders at last been repealed? Great Britain, it is true, has intimated a willingness to suspend their practical operation, but she still arrogates to herself the right to revive them upon certain contingencies, of which she constitutes herself the sole judge. She temporarily waives the use of the rod, but she suspends it, *in terrorem*, over our heads.

4. Supposing it to be conceded to gentlemen, that such an appeal of the Orders in Council as took place on the twenty-third of June last, exceptionable as it is, being known before the war was proclaimed, would have prevented it, does it follow that it ought to induce us to lay down our arms without the redress of any other injury of which we complain? Does it follow, in all cases, that that which would in the first instance have prevented the war, would also terminate it? By no means. It requires a strong and powerful effort in a nation prone to peace as this is, to burst through its habits, and encounter the difficulties and privations of war. Such a nation ought but seldom to embark in a belligerent contest; but when it does, it should be for obvious and essential rights alone, and it should firmly resolve to extort, at all hazards, their recognition.

5. The War of the Revolution is an example of a war begun

for one object and prosecuted for another. It was waged, in its commencement, against the right asserted by the parent country to tax the Colonies. Then, no one thought of absolute independence. The idea of independence was repelled. Subsequently, the British government would have relinquished the principle of taxation. The founders of our liberties saw, however, that there was no security short of independence, and they achieved that independence.

6. When nations are engaged in war, those rights in controversy, which are not acknowledged by the treaty of peace, are abandoned. And who is prepared to say, that American seamen shall be surrendered as victims to the British principle of impressment? And, sir, what is this principle? She contends that she has a right to the services of her own subjects; and that, in the exercise of this right, she may lawfully impress them, even although she finds them in American vessels, upon the high seas, without her jurisdiction.

7. Now, I deny that she has any right, beyond her jurisdiction, to come on board our vessels, upon the high seas, for any other purpose than in the pursuit of enemies, or their goods, or goods contraband[v] of war. But she further contends that her subjects cannot renounce their allegiance[v] to her, and contract a new obligation to other sovereigns. I do not mean to go into the general question of expatriation[v]. If, as is contended, all nations deny it, all nations, at the same time, admit and practice the right of naturalization. Great Britain herself does this. Great Britain, in the very case of foreign seamen, imposes, perhaps, fewer restraints upon naturalization than any other nation.

8. Then, if subjects cannot break their original allegiance, they may, according to universal usage, contract a new allegiance. What is the effect of this double obligation? Undoubtedly, that the sovereign, having pre-possession of the subject, would have the right to the services of the subject. If he return within the jurisdiction of his primitive sovereign, he may resume his right to his services, of which the subject, by his own act, could not divest himself. But his primitive sov-

ereign can have no right to go in quest of him, out of his own jurisdiction, into the jurisdiction of another sovereign, or upon the high seas, where there exists either no jurisdiction, or it is pre-possessed by the nation owning the ship navigating them.

9. But, sir, this discussion is altogether useless. It is not to the British principle, objectionable as it is, that we are alone to look; it is to her practice, no matter what guise she puts on. It is in vain to assert the inviolability of the obligation of allegiance. It is in vain to set up the plea of necessity, and to allege that she cannot exist without the impressment of *her* seamen. The naked truth is, she comes, by her press-gangs, on board of our vessels, seizes *our* native as well as naturalized seamen, and drags them into her service. . . . .

10. We are told, by gentlemen in the opposition, that government has not done all that was incumbent on it to do, to avoid just cause of complaint on the part of Great Britain; that, in particular, the certificates of protection, authorized by the Act of 1796, are fraudulently used. Sir, government has done too much in granting those paper protections. I can never think of them without being shocked. They resemble the passes which the master grants to his negro-slave: "Let the bearer, Mungo, pass and repass without molestation."

11. What do they imply? That Great Britain has a right to seize all who are not provided with them. From their very nature, they must be liable to abuse on both sides. If Great Britain desires a mark by which she can know her own subjects, let her give them an ear-mark. The colors that float from the mast-head should be the credentials of our seamen. There is no safety to us, and the gentlemen have shown it, but in the rule that all who sail under the flag (not being enemies) are protected by the flag.

12. It is impossible that this country should ever abandon the gallant tars who have won for us such splendid trophies. Let me suppose that the genius of Columbia should visit one of them in the oppressor's prison, and attempt to reconcile him to his forlorn and wretched condition. She would say to him, in the language of gentlemen on the other side, "Great Britain

intends you no harm; she did not mean to impress you, but one of her own subjects. Having taken you by mistake, I will remonstrate, and try to prevail upon her, by peaceable means, to release you; but I cannot, my son, fight for you."

13. If he did not consider this mere mockery, the poor tar would address her judgment, and say: "You owe me, my country, protection; I owe you, in return, obedience. I am no British subject; I am a native of old Massachusetts, where lived my aged father, my wife, my children. I have faithfully discharged my duty. Will you refuse to do yours?" Appealing to her passions, he would continue: "I lost this eye in fighting under Truxton, with the Insurgente; I got this scar before Tripoli; I broke this leg on board the Constitution, when the Guerriere struck." If she remained still unmoved, he would break out in the accents of mingled distress and despair:

> "Hard, hard is my fate! Once I freedom enjoyed,
> Was as happy as happy could be!
> Oh! how hard is my fate, how galling these chains!"

I will not imagine the dreadful catastrophe to which he would be driven by an abandonment of him to his oppressor. It will not be, it cannot be, that his country will refuse him protection. . . . .

14. An honorable peace is attainable only by an efficient war. My plan would be, to call out the ample resources of the country, give them a judicious direction, prosecute the war with the utmost vigor, strike wherever we can reach the enemy, at sea or on land, and negotiate the terms of a peace at Quebec or at Halifax. We are told that England is a proud and lofty nation, which, disdaining to wait for danger, meets it half-way. Haughty as she is, we once triumphed over her; and, if we do not listen to the counsels of timidity and despair, we shall again prevail. In such a cause, with the aid of Providence, we must come out crowned with success; but if we fail, let us fail like men, lash ourselves to our gallant tars, and expire together in one common struggle, fighting for FREE TRADE AND SEAMENS' RIGHTS.

Campaign of 1813.—Winchester's Defeat.—For the campaign of 1813 three armies were raised. That of the West, near the head of Lake Erie, was commanded by General Harrison; that of the Centre, between Lakes Erie and Ontario, by General Dearborn; and that of the North, near Lake Champlain, by General Hampton. The leading object of the army of the West was to recover Michigan and avenge the defeat of Hull. A division of the army, composed mostly of Kentuckians, commanded by General Winchester, reached the Maumee, whence a detachment was sent forward, which drove a body of British and Indians from Frenchtown. Winchester soon after arrived, and was attacked (Jan. 22d) by fifteen hundred British and Indians, under General Proctor. The Americans made a brave defense; but Winchester, who had been made a prisoner, agreed upon a capitulation, though at the time he was in the hands of the enemy, and his troops surrendered upon condition that they should be protected. But Proctor failed to keep his promise, and many of the wounded Americans were murdered by his savage allies.

Siege of Fort Meigs.—Harrison, who was at the rapids of the Maumee when the news of Winchester's defeat reached him, selected a position for defense, and there built Fort Meigs (*megz*). On the 1st of May, a large force of British and Indians appeared before the place, and at once commenced a siege. Four days after, General Clay * arrived with twelve hundred Kentuckians, and successfully attacked the besiegers; but Proctor continued operations until the 9th, when, deserted by his Indian allies, he made a disorderly retreat.

Defense of Fort Stephenson.—His next important move was against Fort Stephenson, then garrisoned by one hundred and fifty men, under the command of Major Croghan (*krog'an*)†, a young man not twenty-two years old. Croghan had but one cannon, a six-pounder. A cannonade was directed against the fort until a breach was made, when the enemy (Aug. 2d) attempted to carry the place by assault; but they were met by a volley of musketry and a discharge from the six-pounder with such terrible effect, that, panic-struck, they fled in confusion, leaving one hundred and fifty of their number killed or wounded.

Perry's Victory on Lake Erie.—During the summer, an American and an English squadron were fitted out on Lake Erie—the former commanded by Commodore Perry,‡ and the latter by Commodore Barclay. They met (Sept. 10th) near the western extremity of the lake, when a hard-fought battle of four hours took place, resulting in a brilliant victory to the Americans, every vessel of the enemy having surrendered. In dispatching information of his vic-

* Green Clay was born in Virginia, in 1757. After his success in driving the British and Indians from Fort Meigs, he was left in command there, and prepared to defend the fort when it was a second time threatened. He died in 1826.

† George Croghan was born in Kentucky, in 1791. He was in the battles of Tippecanoe and Fort Meigs (May 5), and served with Taylor in Mexico. His death occurred in New Orleans, in 1849.

‡ Oliver Hazard Perry was born at Newport, R. I., in 1785. He died in 1819, near Port Spain, Island of Trinidad, of yellow fever, contracted while he was engaged on government service up the Orinoco River, in South America.

tory to Harrison, Perry wrote: "We have met the enemy and they are ours." The consequences of the victory were highly important. The Americans established their naval supremacy on Lake Erie, Detroit was evacuated by the British, and the Indians of Michigan were intimidated.

Battle of the Thames.—Death of Tecumseh.—Harrison, seeing his opportunity for success, crossed the lake in Perry's fleet, and landed near Fort Malden. But the fort was deserted, and Proctor and Tecumseh were in full retreat. Harrison followed in eager pursuit, and, on the 5th of October, overtook the enemy at a place on the Thames (*temz*). The Americans charged, breaking the lines of the British, and soon compelling them to surrender; but the contest with the Indians was more obstinate. At length Tecumseh * fell, and the savage warriors fled. The war on the western frontier was terminated.

Massacre at Fort Mims.—In the spring of 1813, the Indians of the South were visited by Tecumseh, and persuaded by him to take up arms against the whites. Accordingly, on the last day of August, fifteen hundred Indian warriors surprised Fort Mims, on the Alabama River, and massacred nearly three hundred men, women, and children.

Defeat of the Creek Indians.—This sanguinary attack aroused the whole South, and a large force, under Generals Jackson and Coffee, marched into the country of the Creeks, to avenge the deed of horror. Several victories were gained over them in quick succession; till, at length, a thousand warriors, with their women and children, made a final stand at Tohopéka, or, as the whites called it, the Horse-Shoe Bend of the Tallapoosa River, where they had established a camp, skillfully fortified. Here, on the 27th of March, 1814, they were attacked by a force of three thousand men, under Jackson. The doomed Creeks, being hemmed in on all sides by their assailants, fought with the energy of despair, and not till almost six hundred of their number were slain did the battle cease: their defeat was complete.

Campaign in Canada.—Toward the latter part of April, 1813, General Dearborn, commanding the *Army of the Centre*, left Sackett's Harbor, in Commodore Chauncey's (*chahn'se's*) fleet, crossed Lake Ontario, and proceeded to attack York, now Toronto. On the 27th, the troops landed, led by General Pike, and were carrying everything before them, when the enemy's magazine exploded, mortally wounding Pike, and making sad havoc among his men. After a moment's panic they moved on, and were soon in possession of the town. Just one month later (May 27th), the fleet, with Dearborn and his army, appeared off Fort George. The British made but a brief defense of the place, and then fled. A detachment under Generals Chandler and Win'der, sent in pursuit, was unsuccessfully attacked on the night of the 6th of June, though both generals were made prisoners.

* Tecumseh was in the 44th year of his age. He was five feet ten inches high, of a fine form and well-proportioned limbs. His carriage was erect and lofty. His eloquence was nervous, concise, impressive, figurative, and sarcastic. His words, however, were generally few, but always directly to the purpose. His ruling maxim was to take no prisoners, neither giving nor accepting quarter.

Attack on Sackett's Harbor.—The British in Canada, on being informed that Dearborn, with a large body of troops, had sailed from Sackett's Harbor, sent a thousand men across the lake to attack the place. General Prevost', the commander, effected a landing; but was met (May 29th) by a small body of regulars and some militia, under General Brown, and repulsed.

Invasion of Canada.—Dearborn,* having resigned his command, was succeeded by General Wilkinson, and a plan for the invasion of Canada was soon devised, by which the *Army of the Centre*, under Wilkinson, and the *Army of the North*, under Hampton, were to form a junction on the St. Lawrence, and proceed against Montreal.

Battle of Chrysler's Field.—In passing down the St. Lawrence, Wilkinson landed a detachment near Williamsburg, to cover the descent of the fleet. On the 11th of November, a severe though indecisive engagement took place, known as the battle of Chrysler's (*kris'ler's*) Field, in which the Americans were the greater sufferers. Wilkinson proceeded some distance further, but, Hampton failing to co-operate with him, the design against Montreal was abandoned.

The Hornet and the Peacock.—Though the American seamen, during 1813, were not uniformly successful, their gallantry continued to be the theme of admiration. The sloop-of-war Hornet, Captain Lawrence,† encountered the British brig Peacock, off the coast of Guiana (*ge-ah'nah*), and in fifteen minutes compelled her to strike her colors (Feb. 24th). The captured vessel sank in a few minutes after, carrying down with her nine of her own crew and three of the Hornet's.

The Chesapeake and the Shannon.—On his return to the United States, Lawrence was promoted to the command of the frigate Chesapeake, then lying in Boston harbor. In the forenoon of June 1st, the British frigate Shannon, Captain Broke, appeared off the harbor to meet the Chesapeake. Though the American vessel had imperfect equipments, and an ill-assorted crew, while the British ship had a select crew and was in the best possible condition, Lawrence still felt impelled to go out and engage her. Toward evening the two vessels met, and a terrific contest of fifteen minutes ensued. Lawrence was mortally wounded in the early part of the action, but his last injunction as he was borne below was, "Don't give up the ship." The Chesapeake, after having all her superior officers either killed or wounded, was boarded by the enemy, and her flag hauled down.

The Argus and the Pelican.—The brig Argus, Captain Allen,‡

* Henry Dearborn was born in New Hampshire, in 1751. He was in the battle of Bunker Hill, was with Arnold in the expedition through the wilderness of Maine, and participated in the battle of Quebec, where he was taken prisoner. Being exchanged, he served under Gates in the Northern campaign, and did good service at the battle of Monmouth, in Sullivan's expedition against the Indians, and in the successful operations before Yorktown. He died in Massachusetts, in 1829.

† James Lawrence was born in Burlington, New Jersey, in 1781. He was one of Decatur's party that boarded and destroyed the frigate Philadelphia in the harbor of Tripoli in 1803.

‡ William Henry Allen was born in Rhode Island, in 1784. He was the first lieutenant of the frigate United States, when that vessel captured the Macedonian.

made a daring cruise in the waters about England, capturing a large number of vessels. While in the English Channel, Allen fell in with the brig Pelican; and, in the action which ensued, and which resulted in the capture of the Argus, was mortally wounded.

The Enterprise and the Boxer.—Fortune next favored the Americans. Off the coast of Maine (Sept. 5th), the brig Enterprise, Lieutenant Burrows, met the British brig Boxer, Captain Blythe, and, after an action of forty minutes, captured her. Both commanders fell in the engagement, and their bodies were buried side by side, at Portland, with the honors of war.

Campaign of 1814.—Second Invasion of Canada.—During the winter of 1813–14, the army of Gen. Wilkinson* was quartered at French Mills. Early in 1814, a detachment under General Brown was sent to Sackett's Harbor; and, toward March, the main body removed to Plattsburg. In the same month (March), Wilkinson marched into Canada, but being repulsed at La Colle, he returned to Plattsburg, and was soon after superseded in the command by Gen. Iz'ard.

Brown did not remain long at Sackett's Harbor, but, having been appointed to the command of an army on the Niagara frontier, he hastened to carry out the views of the Secretary of War for another invasion of Canada. On the 3d of July his advance, consisting of two brigades under Generals Scott and Ripley, crossed the Niagara, and captured Fort Erie without a struggle.

Battles of Chippewa and Lundy's Lane.—The Americans, with Brown in command, pushed forward along the western bank of the river, and, at Chippewa (*chip'pē-waw*) on the 5th, gained a brilliant victory over the enemy, under Gen. Ri'all. The British retired to the shores of Lake Ontario, and there were re-enforced by Gen. Drummond, who took the command.

Drummond marched against the Americans, and, on the 25th, the battle of Lundy's Lane, the most obstinate of the war, occurred. Scott, who led the advance, bravely contended against superior numbers, until the arrival of Brown; but, it soon becoming evident that a battery which the enemy held on a height, and which swept all parts of the field, must be captured or the Americans be defeated, Col. Miller was asked if he could take it. He promptly answered, "I'll try, sir." He did try, and was successful. Three times the British attempted to regain their lost battery, but were repulsed at every assault. Finally, at midnight, after a contest of six hours, they withdrew, each party losing about eight hundred men. Brown and Scott being severely wounded, Gen. Ripley conducted the army to Fort Erie, where Gen. Gaines soon after took command.

Battles of Plattsburg and Lake Champlain.—General Macomb (*ma-komb'*) had been left at Plattsburg by General Izard, with a small force consisting of a few hundred men. In September, Sir George Prevost, at

* James Wilkinson was born in Maryland, in 1757. He served in Canada under Arnold, in 1776, and on the staff of Gates, in 1777. During Washington's administration, he was engaged on the northwestern frontier against the Indians, and commanded one of the divisions of Wayne's army in the battle of the Maumee. He subsequently was governor of the Louisiana territory, and an active agent in exposing the plans of Burr, in 1806. He died in Mexico, in 1825.

the head of fourteen thousand men, marched against Macomb, and, at the same time, the British fleet on Lake Champlain, commanded by Commodore Downie, sailed to attack the American fleet under Commodore MacDonough.* The battles of Plattsburg and Lake Champlain took place on the 11th. While the British, from their batteries, commenced the one on the land, their fleet engaged MacDonough's vessels, which were at anchor in the bay of Plattsburg. In a little more than two hours MacDonough gained a complete victory. The fire from the land-batteries then slackened, and, at nightfall, Prevost made a hasty retreat, having lost in killed, wounded, and desertions, about twenty-five hundred men.

Ross's Expedition.—Capture of Washington. — During the greater part of 1814, the whole Atlantic seaboard was locked up by British cruisers, from which descents were often made upon small towns. About the middle of August, a squadron of the enemy arrived in Chesapeake Bay, bringing a large body of troops, commanded by General Ross. This force, it was evident, was intended to strike a heavy blow at some of the important cities.

Ross, with five thousand men, landed at Benedict, on the Patuxent River, but met with no opposition. An American flotilla, under Commodore Barney,† was burnt to prevent its falling into the hands of the British. Ross then proceeded to Washington by way of Bladensburg, where he met with some opposition from the militia under General Winder. He reached Washington on the 24th of August; and, after burning the public buildings and committing a great destruction of property, hastily retreated to the shipping in the Patuxent.

Burning of Washington.—*J. T. Headley.*

1. Cockburn ‡ and Ross, leaving the main army to repose itself, took a body-guard, and rode into Washington. No resistance was offered—a single shot only was fired, which killed the horse of General Ross. The house from which it issued was formerly occupied by Mr. Gallatin. In a few moments it was in flames. Halting in front of the Capitol, they fired a volley at the edifice and took possession of it in the name of the king.

2. The troops were then marched in, and entering the Hall of Representatives, piled together chairs, desks, and whatever was combustible, and applied the torch. The flames passing

* Thomas MacDonough was born in New Castle Co., Delaware, in 1783. He was one of Decatur's party which boarded and destroyed the frigate Philadelphia in the harbor of Tripoli, in 1803. He died at sea, in 1815.

† Joshua Barney was born in Baltimore, in 1759. Though he was but a youth at the beginning of the Revolution, he was appointed master's mate in a sloop-of-war, in which vessel he aided in capturing the town of New Providence, on one of the Bahama Islands. He was engaged in several naval enterprises, and was three times made prisoner. His death occurred at Pittsburg, Pa., in 1818.

‡ Rear-admiral Cockburn commanded a part of the British fleet; but the chief command of the naval force was held by Sir Alexander Cochrane, as Vice-admiral.

from room to room, soon wrapped the noble library, and bursting forth from the windows leaped to the roof, enveloping the whole edifice in fire, and illuminating the country for miles around. The house of Washington and other buildings were also set on fire. The remaining British force, lighted by the ruddy glow that illuminated the landscape and road along which they were marching, entered the city to assist in the work of destruction.

3. In the mean time, the navy-yard was set on fire by order of the Secretary of War, mingling its flames and explosions with the light and roar of the burning Capitol. The gallant officer in command of it had offered to defend it, but was refused permission. Whether the refusal was discreet or not, one thing is certain, the enemy could have accomplished no more than the destruction of the materials collected there, and it was not worth while to save them the labor.

4. The Capitol being in flames, Ross and Cockburn led their troops along Pennsylvania Avenue to the President's house, a mile distant, and soon the blazing pile beaconed back to the burning Capitol. The Treasury building swelled the conflagration; and, by the light of the flames, Cockburn and Ross sat down to supper at the house of Mrs. Suter, whom they had compelled to furnish it. Pillage and devastation moved side by side through the streets; while, to give still greater terror and sublimity to the scene, a heavy thunder-storm burst over the city. From the lurid bosom of the clouds leaped flashes brighter than the flames below, followed by crashes that drowned the roar and tumult which swelled up from the thronged streets, making the night wild and appalling as the last day of time.

5. While these things were transpiring in the city, the President and his Cabinet were fleeing into Virginia. During the battle of Bladensburg, Mrs. Madison had sat in the Presidential mansion, listening to the roar of cannon in the distance, and anxiously sweeping the road with her spy-glass, to catch the first approach of her husband, but saw instead, "groups of military, wandering in all directions, as if there was a lack of

arms or of spirit, to fight for their own firesides." A carriage stood waiting at the door, filled with plate and other valuables, ready to leave at a moment's warning. The Mayor of the city waited on her, urging her to depart; but she bravely refused, saying she would not stir till she heard from her husband.

6. At length, a note from him, in pencil-marks, arrived, bidding her flee. Still delaying, till she could detach a portrait of Washington, by Stuart, from the wall, her friends remonstrated with her. Finding it would take too long to unscrew the painting from the walls, she seized a carving-knife, and cutting the canvas out, hurried away. At Georgetown she met her husband, who, with his Cabinet, in trepidation and alarm, was en route for Virginia. Just as the flames were kindling in the Capitol, the President, Mr. Monroe, Mr. Rush, Mr. Mason, and Carroll, were assembled on the shores of the Potomac, where but one little boat could be found to transport them.

7. Desponding and sad, they were rowed across in gloom, a part at a time, and, mounting their horses, rode hurriedly and sadly away. Mrs. Madison returned toward Georgetown, accompanied by nine troopers, and stopped ten miles and a half from the town. Trembling from the anxiety and fright of the day—separated from her husband, now a fugitive in the darkness—oppressed with fears and gloomy forebodings, she sat down by an open window, and through the tears that streamed from her eyes, gazed forth on the flames of the burning city, and listened with palpitating heart to the muffled shouts and tumult that rose in the distance. Before daylight, she, with her lady companions, started for a place of rendezvous[v] appointed by her husband, sixteen miles from Georgetown.

8. The 25th of August dawned gloomily over the smouldering city, and the red sun, as he rolled into view, looked on a scene of devastation and ruin. From their drunken orgies[v], negroes and soldiers crawled forth to the light of day, roused by the reveille[v] from the hill of the Capitol, and the morning-gun that sent its echoes through the sultry air.—*Second War with England.*

Attack on Baltimore.—Ross next proceeded against Baltimore. On the 12th of September, he landed his troops at North Point, several miles from the city, while sixteen of the enemy's ships sailed up the Patapsco to bombard Fort McHenry. On his march, Ross was killed in a skirmish, and the progress of the troops was then disputed for more than an hour by a body of militia under General Strick'er. Next day the enemy encamped near the defenses of the city, to await the movements of the fleet. The bombardment of Fort Mc Henry commenced on the morning of the 13th, and continued till near the following morning, but without making any serious impression. General Brooke, Ross's successor, seeing no prospect of success against the city, embarked his troops, and the whole force of the enemy withdrew.

The Star-Spangled Banner.—*Key.*

[Francis S. Key, the author of this national ode, accompanied by a Mr. Skinner, had been sent with a flag of truce to the British fleet to obtain the release of some prisoners taken in Washington. He was obliged to await the bombardment of Fort McHenry; and all night long, he and his companion watched from the deck of their vessel, with the deepest anxiety, the terrific scene. The bombardment ceased during the night, and it was uncertain whether the fort had surrendered or not; when, however, "by the dawn's early light," they saw that "our flag was still there." they knew that the attack had failed; and Key, in the enthusiasm of the moment, took an old letter from his pocket, upon which he wrote most of this celebrated song. It was completed as soon as he reached Baltimore, and being circulated through the city, was sung with patriotic fervor by the inhabitants, becoming soon afterwards one of the national songs of the country.]

Oh, say, can you see, by the dawn's early light,
What so proudly we hailed at the twilight's last gleaming?
Whose broad stripes and bright stars, through the perilous fight,
O'er the ramparts we watched, were so gallantly streaming:
And the rocket's red glare, the bombs bursting in air,
Gave proof through the night that our flag was still there:
Oh, say, does that Star-Spangled Banner yet wave
O'er the land of the free and the home of the brave?

On that shore dimly seen through the mists of the deep,
Where the foe's haughty host in dread silence reposes,
What is that which the breeze, o'er the towering steep,
As it fitfully blows, now conceals, now discloses?
Now it catches the gleam of the morning's first beam,
In full glory reflected now shines in the stream:
'Tis the Star-Spangled Banner; oh, long may it wave
O'er the land of the free and the home of the brave!

And where are the foes who so vauntingly swore
That the havoc of war, and the battle's confusion,
A home and a country should leave us no more?
Their blood has washed out their foul footsteps' pollution;

No refuge could save the hireling and slave
From the terror of flight, or the gloom of the grave:
And the Star-Spangled Banner in triumph doth wave
O'er the land of the free and the home of the brave!

Oh, thus be it ever, when freemen shall stand
Between their loved homes and the war's desolation!
Blest with victory and peace, may the heaven-rescued land
Praise the Power that hath made and preserved us a nation!
Then conquer we must, when our cause it is just,
And this be our motto, "In God is our trust;"
And the Star-Spangled Banner in triumph shall wave
O'er the land of the free and the home of the brave!

The Flag of Washington.—*F. W. Gillett.*

1. Dear banner of my native land! ye gleaming, silver stars,
Broad spotless ground of purity, crossed with your azure bars—
Clasped by the hero-father's hand—watched over in his might,
Through battle-hour and day of peace, bright morn and moonless night,
Because, within your clustering folds, he knew you surely bore
Dear Freedom's hope for human souls to every sea and shore!
O precious Flag! beneath whose folds such noble deeds are done—
The dear old Flag! the starry Flag! the Flag of Washington!

2. Unfurl, bright stripes—shine forth, dear stars—swing outward to the breeze—
Go bear your message to the wilds—go tell it on the seas,
That poor men sit within your shade, and rich men in their pride—
That beggar-boys and statemen's sons walk 'neath you, side by side
You guard the school-house on the green, the church upon the hill,
And fold your precious blessings round the cabin by the rill,
While weary hearts from every land beneath the shining sun,
Find work, and rest, and home beneath the flag of Washington.

3. And never, never on the earth, however brave they be,
Shall friends or foes bear down this great, proud standard of the Free,
Though they around its staff may pour red blood in rushing waves,
And build beneath its starry folds great pyramids of graves:
For God looks out, with sleepless eye, upon his children's deeds,
And sees, through all their good and ill, their sufferings and their needs;
And he will watch, and he will keep, till human rights are won,
The dear old Flag! the starry Flag! the Flag of Washington!

Surrender of the Essex.—During 1814, the Americans were generally victorious on the ocean; yet the frigate Essex, Captain Porter,* after a successful cruise of more than a year, was attacked in the harbor of Valparaiso (*vahl-pah-rī'so*), March 28th, by two British vessels, and forced to surrender. The conflict was one of the most desperate of the war.

Seizure of Pensacola by Jackson.—During the summer, the authorities of Pensacola, then a Spanish port, allowed the British to take possession of their forts and fit out expeditions against the United States. General Jackson, being in command at Mobile, marched to Pensacola at the head of three thousand men; and, negotiations failing, seized the town and compelled the British to leave. He then returned to Mobile, whence, learning that the British were preparing to invade Louisiana, he hastened to put New Orleans in a condition of defense.

Expedition against New Orleans.—Toward the middle of December, a British squadron entered Lake Borgne (*born*), carrying twelve thousand troops, commanded by Sir Edward Pakenham (*pak'n-am*), the first object of the expedition being to capture New Orleans. On the 14th, a flotilla of American gunboats was compelled to surrender; and, on the 23d, Jackson made a spirited though ineffectual attack upon an encampment of the enemy's vanguard. On the 28th, and again on the first day of the new year, the British were unsuccessful in cannonading the intrenchments which Jackson had thrown up four miles from the city.

Battle of New Orleans.—On the 8th of January, 1815, the British made a general advance against the American intrenchments; but volley after volley was poured upon them with such terrible effect, that they were compelled to flee. Pakenham was slain, and two thousand of his men were killed, wounded, or taken prisoners. The Americans lost only seven killed and six wounded.

Battle of New Orleans.—*Parton.*

1. At one o'clock on the morning of this memorable day (January 8th, 1815), on a couch in a room of the McCarty Mansion-house, General Jackson lay asleep, in his worn uniform. Several of his aids slept upon the floor in the same apartment, all equipped for the field, except that their sword-belts were unbuckled, and their swords and pistols laid aside. A sentinel paced the adjacent passage, sentinels moved noiselessly about the building, which loomed up large, dim, and

* David Porter was born in Boston, Mass., in 1780. When the frigate Philadelphia was captured by the Tripolitans, in 1803, Porter was made captive and held nineteen months. In 1824, he commanded an expedition against the pirates of the West Indies. He subsequently entered the service of Mexico, as commander-in-chief of her naval forces; but, in 1829, returned to the United States. At the time of his death, which occurred at Constantinople, in 1843, he was resident minister of the United States in that city.

silent in the foggy night, among the darkening trees. Most of those who slept at all that night were still asleep, and there was as yet little stir in either camp to disturb their slumbers.

2. Dreaming of their Scottish hills and homes, their English fields and friends, may have been many brave Britons in their cold and wet bivouac. O tardy science, O Oersted (*ur'sted*), O Morse, O Cyrus Field, why were you not ready with your Oceanic Telegraph then, to tell those men of both armies, when they woke, that they were not enemies, but friends and brothers, and send them joyful into each other's arms, not in madness against each other's arms? The ship that bore this blessed news was still in mid-ocean, contending with its wintry winds and waves. How much would have gone differently in our history if those tidings had arrived a few weeks sooner! But it was not to be. This fight, it was the decree of Providence, was to be fought out. . . . .

3. The suspense was soon over. Daylight struggled through the mist. About six o'clock both columns were advancing at the steady, solid, British pace to the attack; the Forty-Fourth nowhere, straggling in the rear with the fascines[v] and ladders. The column soon came up with the American outposts, who at first retreated slowly before it, but soon quickened their pace, and ran in, bearing their great news, and putting every man in the works intensely on the alert; each commander anxious for the honor of first getting a glimpse of the foe, and opening fire upon him.

4. Lieutenant Spotts, of battery number six, was the first man in the American lines who descried through the fog the dim, red line of General Gibbs's advancing column, far away down the plain, close to the forest. The thunder of his great guns broke the dead stillness. Then there was silence again; for the shifting fog, or the altered position of the enemy, concealed him from view once more. The fog lifted again, and soon revealed both divisions, which, with their detached companies, seemed to cover two-thirds of the plain, and gave the Americans a repetition of the splendid military spectacle which they had witnessed on the 28th of December. Three cheers

from Carroll's men; three cheers from the Kentuckians behind them; cheers continued from the advancing column, not heard yet in the American lines.

5. Steadily and fast the column of General Gibbs marched toward batteries numbered six, seven, and eight, which played upon it, at first with but occasional effect, often missing, sometimes throwing a ball right into its midst, and causing it to reel and pause for a moment. Promptly were the gaps filled up; bravely the column came on. As they neared the lines, the well-aimed shot made more dreadful havoc, "cutting great lanes in the column from front to rear," and tossing men and parts of men aloft, or hurling them far on one side.

6. At length, still steady and unbroken, they came within range of the small-arms, the rifles of Carroll's Tennesseans, the muskets of Adair's Kentuckians, four lines of sharpshooters, one behind the other. General Carroll, coolly waiting for the right moment, held his fire till the enemy were within two hundred yards, and then gave the word—FIRE! At first, with a certain deliberation, afterwards in hottest haste, always with deadly effect, the riflemen plied their terrible weapon.

7. The summit of the embankment was a line of spurting fire, except when the great guns showed their liquid, belching flash. The noise was peculiar, and altogether indescribable;—a rolling, bursting, echoing noise, never to be forgotten by a man that heard it. Along the whole line it blazed and rolled; the British batteries showering rockets over the scene, Patterson's batteries on the other side of the river joining in the hellish concert. Imagine it; ask no one to describe it. Our words were mostly made before such a scene had become possible.

8. The column of General Gibbs, mowed by the fire of the riflemen, still advanced, Gibbs at its head. As they caught sight of the ditch, some of the officers cried out, "Where are the Forty-Fourth? If we get to the ditch, we have no means of crossing and scaling the lines!"—"Here come the Forty-Fourth!" shouted the general; adding, in an undertone, for his own private solace, that if he lived till to-morrow, he would hang Mullens on the highest tree in the cypress-wood.

9. Reassured, these heroic men again pressed on, in the face of that murderous, slaughtering fire. But this could not last. With half its numbers fallen, and all its commanding officers disabled except the general, its pathway strewed with dead and wounded, and the men falling ever faster and faster, the column wavered and reeled (so the American riflemen thought) like a red ship on a tempestuous sea. At about a hundred yards from the lines, the front ranks halted, and so threw the column into disorder, Gibbs shouting in the madness of vexation for them to re-form and advance. There was no re-forming under such a fire. Once checked, the column could not but break and retreat in confusion. . . . .

10. Just as the troops began to falter, General Pakenham rode up from his post in the rear, toward the head of the column. Meeting parties of the Forty-Fourth running about distracted, some carrying fascines, others firing, others in headlong flight, their leader nowhere to be seen, Pakenham strove to restore them to order, and to urge them on the way they were to go. "For shame!" he cried bitterly; "recollect that you are British soldiers. This is the road you ought to take," pointing to the flashing and roaring scene in front.

11. Riding on, he was soon met by General Gibbs, who said, "I am sorry to have to report to you that the troops will not obey me. They will not follow me." Taking off his hat, General Pakenham spurred his horse to the very front of the wavering column, amid a torrent of rifle-balls, cheering on the troops by voice, by gesture, by example. At that moment a ball shattered his right arm, and it fell powerless to his side. The next, his horse fell dead upon the field.

12. His aid, Captain McDougal, dismounted from his black creole pony, and Pakenham, apparently unconscious of his dangling arm, mounted again, and followed the retreating column, still calling upon them to halt and re-form. A few gallant spirits ran in toward the lines, threw themselves into the ditch, plunged across it, and fell scrambling up the sides of the soft and slippery breastwork.

13. Once out of the reach of those terrible rifles, the column

halted, and regained its self-possession. Laying aside their heavy knapsacks, the men prepared for a second and more resolute advance. They were encouraged, too, by seeing the superb Highlanders marching up in solid phalanx[v] to their support, with a front of a hundred men, their bayonets glittering in the sun, which had then begun to pierce the morning mist. Now for an irresistible onset!

14. At a quicker step, with General Gibbs on its right, General Pakenham on the left, the Highlanders in clear and imposing view, the column again advanced into the fire. Oh! the slaughter that then ensued! There was one moment, when that thirty-two pounder, loaded to the muzzle with musket-balls, poured its charge directly, at point-blank range, right into the head of the column, literally levelling it with the plain; laying low, as was afterwards computed, two hundred men. The American line, as one of the British officers remarked, looked like a row of fiery furnaces.

15. The heroic Pakenham had not far to go to meet his doom. He was three hundred yards from the lines when the real nature of his enterprise seemed to flash upon him, and he turned to Sir John Tilden and said: "Order up the reserve." Then, seeing the Highlanders advancing to the support of General Gibbs, he, still waving his hat, but waving it now with his left hand, cried out: "Hurrah! brave Highlanders!"

16. At that moment a mass of grape-shot, with a terrible crash, struck the group of which he was the central figure. One of the shots tore open the general's thigh, killed his horse, and brought horse and rider to the ground. Captain McDougal caught the general in his arms, removed him from the fallen horse, and was supporting him from the field, when a second shot struck the wounded man in the groin, depriving him instantly of consciousness. He was borne to the rear, and placed in the shade of an old live-oak, which still stands; and there, after gasping a few minutes, yielded up his life without a word, happily ignorant of the sad issue of all his plans and toils.

17. A more painful fate was that of General Gibbs. A few

moments after Pakenham fell, Gibbs received his death-wound, and was carried off the field, writhing in agony, and uttering fierce imprecations. He lingered all that day and the succeeding night, dying in torment on the morrow. Nearly at the same moment, General Keane was painfully wounded in the neck and thigh, and was also borne to the rear. Colonel Dale, of the Highlanders, fulfilled his prophecy, and fell at the head of his regiment.

18. The Highlanders, under Major Creagh, wavered not, but advanced steadily, and too slowly, into the very tempest of General Carroll's fire, until they were within one hundred yards of the lines. There, for cause unknown, they halted and stood, a huge and glittering target, until five hundred and forty-four of their number had fallen, then broke and fled, in horror and amazement, to the rear. The column of General Gibbs did not advance after the fall of their leader. Leaving heaps of slain behind them, they, too, forsook the bloody field, rushed in utter confusion out of the fire, and took refuge at the bottom of wet ditches and behind trees and bushes on the borders of the swamp. . . . .

19. The whole was like a dream. How long a time, does the reader think, elapsed between the fire of the first American gun and the total rout of the attacking columns? *Twenty-five minutes!* Not that the American fire ceased, or even slackened at the expiration of that period. The riflemen on the left, and the troops on the right, continued to discharge their weapons into the smoke that hung over the plain for two hours. But in the space of twenty-five minutes, the discomfiture of the enemy in the open field was complete. The battery alone still made resistance. It required two hours of a tremendous cannonade to silence its great guns, and drive its defenders to the rear.—*Life of Andrew Jackson.*

The Hartford Convention.—A large number of citizens of the United States, belonging to the Federal party, had been opposed to the war from its very commencement, and they continued to oppose its prosecution till the close. These persons were mostly residents of New England. They regarded the war as unnecessary and impolitic; the losses, too, which they were

sustaining in their commerce and fisheries, were not without influence upon them.

For the purpose of considering their grievances, and devising means of redress, a convention was held at Hartford, Connecticut, in December, 1814. The friends of President Madison and of the war looked upon this assemblage of delegates, commonly known as the "Hartford Convention," as a treasonable body; but their doings were, to say the least, harmless, their principal act being the adoption of a document which presented a statement of grievances, and recommended several amendments to the Constitution. After three weeks of secret session, the convention adjourned.

Objects of the Hartford Convention.—*Noah Webster.*

1. FEW transactions of the Federalists, during the early periods of our government, excited so much the angry passions of their opposers as the Hartford Convention—so called—during the presidency of Mr. Madison. As I was present at the first meeting of the gentlemen who suggested such a convention; as I was a member of the House of Representatives in Massachusetts when the resolve was passed for appointing delegates, and advocated that resolve; and, further, as I have copies of the documents, which no other person may have preserved, it seems to be incumbent on me to present to the public the real facts in regard to the origin of the measure, which have been vilely falsified and misrepresented.

2. After the war of 1812 had continued two years, our public affairs were reduced to a deplorable condition. The troops of the United States, intended for defending the sea-coast, had been withdrawn to carry on the war in Canada; a British squadron was stationed in the Sound to prevent the escape of a frigate from the harbor of New London, and to intercept our coasting trade; one town in Maine was in possession of the British forces; the banks south of New England had all suspended the payment of specie; our shipping lay in our harbors, embargoed, dismantled, and perishing; the treasury of the United States was exhausted to the last cent; and a general gloom was spread over the country.

3. In this condition of affairs, a number of gentlemen in Northampton, in Massachusetts, after consultation, determined

to invite some of the principal inhabitants of the three counties on the river, formerly composing the old county of Hampshire, to meet and consider whether any measure could be taken to arrest the continuance of the war, and provide for the public safety.

4. Many town-meetings were held, and with great unanimity addresses and memorials were transmitted to the General Court, then in session; but, as commissioners had been sent to Europe for the purpose of negotiating a treaty of peace, it was judged advisable not to have any action upon them till the result of the negotiation should be known. But during the following summer no news of peace arrived; and, the distresses of the country increasing, and the sea-coast remaining defenseless, Governor Strong summoned a special meeting of the Legislature in October, in which the petitions of the towns were taken into consideration, and a resolve was passed appointing delegates to a convention to be held in Hartford. The subsequent history of that convention is known by their report.

5. The measure of resorting to a convention for the purpose of arresting the evils of a bad administration, roused the jealousy of the advocates of the war, and called forth the bitterest invectives. The convention was represented as a treasonable combination, originating in Boston, for the purpose of dissolving the Union. But citizens of Boston had no concern in originating the proposal for a convention; it was wholly the project of people in old Hampshire county,—as respectable and patriotic republicans as ever trod the soil of a free country.

6. The citizens who first assembled in Northampton, convened under the authority of the *Bill of Rights*, which declares that the people have a right to meet in a peaceable manner and consult for the public safety. The citizens had the same right then to meet in convention as they have now; the distresses of the country demanded extraordinary measures for redress; the thought of dissolving the Union never entered into the head of any of the projectors, or of the members of the convention; the gentlemen who composed it, for talents and patriotism.

have never been surpassed by any assembly in the United States; and beyond a question the appointment of the Hartford Convention had a very favorable effect in hastening the conclusion of a treaty of peace.

7. All the reports which have been circulated respecting the evil designs of that convention, I know to be the foulest misrepresentations. Indeed, respecting the views of the disciples of Washington and the supporters of his policy, many, and probably most, of the people of the United States in this generation, are made to believe more falsehood than truth. I speak of facts within my own personal knowledge. We may well say, with the prophet, "Truth is fallen in the street, and equity cannot enter."

8. Party spirit produces an unwholesome zeal to depreciate one class of men for the purpose of exalting another. It becomes rampant in propagating slander, which engenders contempt for personal worth and superior excellence; it blunts the sensibility of men to injured reputation; impairs a sense of honor; banishes the charities of life; debases the moral sense of the community; weakens the motives that prompt men to aim at high attainments and patriotic achievements; degrades national character, and exposes it to the scorn of the civilized world.—*Sketches of American Policy.*

Treaty of Peace between the United States and England. —In February, 1815, the joyful tidings reached the United States that a treaty of peace had been signed at Ghent on the 24th of December, 1814. The two great points of dispute—the encroachments upon American commerce, and the impressment of American seamen—were left untouched by the treaty. The omission, however, was not important, inasmuch as, by the termination of the European war, all encroachments upon American commerce ceased; and, by the great success of the American navy, the impressment question was effectually disposed of.

War with Algiers.—In 1795, a treaty was made with Algiers, in which it was stipulated that an annual tribute should be paid to that power, to secure American vessels from seizure by the Algerines. The tribute was accordingly paid until 1812, when the Algerines, believing that the Americans, because of their war with the English, would not be able to protect their commerce, resumed their old practice of piracy against United States vessels. After peace with England was established, a naval force, commanded by Commodore Decatur, was

sent to the Mediterranean. Decatur captured the largest frigate in the Algerine navy, and another vessel with more than five hundred prisoners, and then appeared before Algiers. The terrified Dey was compelled to liberate the American prisoners then in his hands, and relinquish all claim to tribute from the United States for the future. Decatur also made satisfactory treaties with Tunis and Tripoli.

New States.—During Madison's administration two States were added to the Union: Louisiana, previously the Territory of Orleans, in 1812; and Indiana, formerly a part of the Northwest Territory, in 1816.

Monroe's Administration.—Condition of the Country.—James Monroe, of Virginia, Madison's successor in the presidency, was inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1817; and his administration commenced under very favorable circumstances. We were at peace with all foreign powers; our commerce rode every sea; and the strife at home, between the two great political parties, Democrats and Federalists, had entirely ceased.

War with the Seminoles.—Toward the close of 1817, the Seminoles (*sem'i-nōlz*) of Florida, joined by other Indians, commenced depredations on the frontier settlements of Georgia. At first Gen. Gaines, and, afterward, Gen. Jackson, was sent against them. Being convinced that the Indians had been instigated to hostilities by persons in Florida, Jackson marched into that province, though, at the time, it belonged to Spain; seized the fort at St. Mark's; executed two instigators of the war, both British subjects; and sent the authorities of Pensacola to Havana. Jackson's invasion of Florida, a territory belonging to a nation at peace with the United States, and his summary proceedings in the prosecution of the war, were condemned by many persons; but they were approved by the President and Congress.

Cession of Florida to the United States.—This having led to difficulties between the governments of Spain and the United States, a treaty was finally made in 1819, by which Florida was ceded to the United States, but Spain did not surrender possession of the Territory until 1821.

New States.—In 1817, the Mississippi Territory, embracing the present States of Alabama and Mississippi, was divided, and the western portion admitted into the Union as the State of Mississippi. Illinois, which, up to 1800, was a part of the Northwest Territory; and then, till 1809, formed with Indiana the Indiana Territory; and subsequently, by itself, was the Illinois Territory; became a State in 1818. Alabama * was admitted in 1819. In 1820, Maine,† which had up to that time been a district of Massachusetts, was organized as a State, and admitted into the Union.

---

* The territory now known as Alabama was originally a part of Georgia. In 1798, all the region comprising the present States of Alabama and Mississippi was organized as the Territory of Mississippi. In 1817, its western portion became the State of Mississippi, while the other part continued to be the Territory of Alabama until its admission as a State. The word Mississippi is of Indian origin, signifying, according to some writers, the *Great River*, according to others, the *Great Father of Waters*. The word Alabama is also of Indian origin, signifying *Here we rest*.

† Authors are not agreed with regard to the derivation of the name of this State. The prevailing opinion is, that Maine was so called in compliment to Henrietta Maria, wife of Charles I. of England who, it was supposed, owned the province of Maine, in France.

Missouri Compromise.—The most important event during Monroe's administration was the controversy preceding the admission of Missouri into the Union. The States of the North opposed its admission as a slave-State, while those of the South favored such admission. In Congress the debate was long and violent; but at length, in 1820, a bill known as the "Missouri Compromise" was passed, by which it was declared that, with the exception of Missouri, slavery should be prohibited in the territory of the United States north of the parallel 36° 30′, and west of the Mississippi. Under this compromise, Missouri, with a constitution permitting slavery, was admitted into the Union in 1821.

Death of Commodore Decatur.—*Cooper.*

1. But a few months after the death of Perry,* the navy experienced another severe loss, the attending circumstances of which were so melancholy as to affect the entire nation with painful emotions. The event which thus awakened general regret and grief was the death of Commodore Stephen Decatur, occasioned by a wound received in a duel with Commodore James Barron. The latter had been suspended from the service for five years, in consequence of his conduct in connection with the attack of the Leopard on the Chesapeake in 1807.

2. During his suspension he engaged in mercantile business, and remained away from his country throughout the war with Great Britain. On his return, and some time after the close of the war, he sought a command according to his rank in the navy. Commodore Decatur opposed his application, and expressed his opinion very freely respecting Barron's absence during the war, and his subsequent conduct. Reports, as usual in such a case, incorrectly representing Decatur's language and feelings, were conveyed to Barron's ears, and led to a correspondence between them, which was opened by Barron in June, 1819, and continued at intervals for several months, and up to the time of their hostile meeting.

3. The course of this correspondence evinced increased exasperation of feeling on both sides; Decatur still reiterating his opinion that Barron had rendered himself unworthy of his station in the navy, and of the privilege of honorable service; and Barron, while defending himself against Decatur's severe

* See note on page 286.

charges, refusing to explain to his antagonist the real cause of his remaining abroad, while his country was engaged in a war to so great an extent maritime in its character. It afterward appeared that pecuniary embarrassment was the real reason of Barron's singular conduct.

4. Had this been known, the generous Decatur would have been the last person to taunt a fellow-officer who had already endured so much as Barron had. The correspondence, however, led to a challenge from Barron to Decatur; both yielding to the bloody and barbarous maxims of a most fallacious code of honor, which, they admitted, was repulsive to their moral sentiments and better feelings. Commodore Elliot was selected by Barron as his second, and Commodore Bainbridge appeared on behalf of Decatur.

5. The arrangements having been very quietly made, the parties met early on the morning of the 22d of March, 1820, between Washington and Bladensburg, near the latter place. When they had taken their positions, and were ready to fire, Barron said to Decatur: "I hope, on meeting in another world, we will be better friends;" and Decatur replied, "I have never been your enemy, sir." Commodore Bainbridge gave the word to fire, and both pistols went off at the same instant. The two antagonists fell, Barron being severely wounded in the hip, and Decatur having received a mortal wound in the abdomen.

6. As they lay upon the ground, Decatur exclaimed: "I am mortally wounded, at least, I believe so, and I wish I had fallen in defense of my country." Barron, also considering his wound mortal, remarked that he "forgave his enemy from the bottom of his heart." Decatur was then removed to his residence in Washington, and lingered in great agony until half-past ten o'clock in the evening, when he expired.

7. He was but forty-one years of age, and had spent twenty-two years of his life in the naval service, his warrant as a midshipman bearing the date of April 30th, 1798. Without detracting from the high merit of other officers, there were certain very favorable circumstances in the history of Perry and

Decatur, which rendered them peculiar favorites with the entire nation; and their death, occurring in the very prime of their days, and with attending incidents of a very aggravating character, was felt with universal and keen regret and sorrow.—*Naval History of the United States.*

Monroe Doctrine.—An important event of Monroe's administration was the recognition of the independence of the South American republics. In his annual message of 1823, Monroe declared that the American continents "are henceforth not to be considered as subject to future colonization by any European power." This is known as the "Monroe Doctrine."

Visit of Lafayette.—In the summer of 1824, Lafayette arrived on a visit to this country, as a guest of the nation. His tour through the States was everywhere signalized by tokens of respect from a grateful people.

Address to Lafayette.—*Webster.*

[Extract from an oration delivered by Daniel Webster at the laying of the corner stone of Bunker Hill monument, June 17, 1825; on which occasion the ceremony was performed by Lafayette, and the orator, during the course of his address, thus apostrophized the distinguished guest of the nation.]

1. SIR, we are assembled to commemorate the establishment of great public principles of liberty, and to do honor to the distinguished dead. The occasion is too severe for eulogy of the living. But, sir, your interesting relation to this country, the peculiar circumstances which surround you and surround us, call on me to express the happiness which we derive from your presence and aid in this solemn commemoration.

2. Fortunate, fortunate man! With what measure of devotion will you not thank God for the circumstances of your extraordinary life! You are connected with both hemispheres and with two generations. Heaven saw fit to ordain that the electric spark of liberty should be conducted, through you, from the New World to the Old; and we, who are now here to perform this duty of patriotism, have all of us long ago received it in charge from our fathers to cherish your name and your virtues. You will account it an instance of your good fortune, sir, that you crossed the seas to visit us at a time which enables you to be present at this solemnity.

3. You now behold the field, the renown of which reached you in the heart of France, and caused a thrill in your ardent

bosom. You see the lines of the little redoubt thrown up by the incredible diligence of Prescott; defended, to the last extremity, by his lion-hearted valor; and within which the corner-stone of our monument has now taken its position. You see where Warren fell, and where Parker, Gardner, McCleary, Moore, and other early patriots fell with him. Those who survived that day, and whose lives have been prolonged to the present hour, are now around you. Some of them you have known in the trying scenes of the war. Behold! they now stretch forth their feeble arms to embrace you. Behold! they raise their trembling voices to invoke the blessing of God on you and yours forever.

4. Sir, you have assisted us in laying the foundation of this structure. You have heard us rehearse, with our feeble commendation, the names of departed patriots. Monuments and eulogy belong to the dead. We give them this day to Warren and his associates. On other occasions they have been given to your more immediate companions in arms, to Washington, to Greene, to Gates, to Sullivan, and to Lincoln. We have become reluctant to grant these, our highest and last honors, further. We would gladly hold them yet back from the little remnant of that immortal band. *Serus in cœlum redeas.* [Late may you return to the skies.] Illustrious as are your merits, yet far, oh, very distant be the day when any inscription shall bear your name, or any tongue pronounce its eulogy!

Lafayette at Mount Vernon.—*Levasseur.*

[From an account by Lafayette's secretary.]

1. After a voyage of two hours, the guns of Fort Washington announced that we were approaching the last abode of the Father of his Country. At this solemn signal, to which the military band accompanying us responded by military strains, we went on deck, and the venerable soil of Mount Vernon was before us. At this view, an involuntary and spontaneous movement made us kneel. We landed in boats, and trod upon the ground so often trod by the feet of Washington.

2. A carriage received General Lafayette, and the other visitors silently ascended the precipitous[v] path which conducted to the solitary habitation of Mount Vernon. In re-entering beneath this hospitable roof, which had sheltered him when the reign of terror tore him violently from his country and family, George Lafayette felt his heart sink within him, at no more finding him whose paternal care had softened his misfortunes; while his father sought with emotion for everything which reminded him of the companion of his glorious toils.

3. Three nephews of General Washington took Lafayette, his son, and myself, to conduct us to the tomb of their uncle; our numerous companions remained in the house. In a few minutes the cannon, thundering anew, announced that Lafayette rendered homage to the ashes of Washington. Simple and modest as he was during life, the tomb of the citizen-hero is scarcely perceived among the sombre cypresses by which it is surrounded.

4. A vault slightly elevated and clodded over,—a wooden door without inscriptions,—some withered and green garlands, indicate to the traveller who visits the spot, where rest in peace the puissant[v] arms which broke the chains of his country. As we approached, the door was opened. Lafayette descended alone into the vault, and in a few minutes after reappeared, with his eyes overflowing with tears. He took his son and me by the hand, and led us into the tomb, where, by a sign, he indicated the coffin. We knelt reverentially, and rising, threw ourselves into the arms of Lafayette, mingling our tears with his.

Death and Character of Lafayette.—*Sumner.*

1. The time was now at hand when Lafayette's great career was to close. Being taken ill, at first with a cold, the Chamber of Deputies inquired of his son after his health; and upon the next day, May 20, 1834, he died, at the age of seventy-seven. The ruling passion was strong to the last. As at the beginning, so at the end, he was all for freedom; and the last lines traced by his hand, which he rose from his deathbed to write, attest his joy at that great act of emancipation[v] by which England,

at an expense of a hundred million dollars, had given freedom to eight hundred thousand slaves.

2. "Nobly," he writes—and these were the last words of your benefactor—"nobly has the public treasure been employed." And these last words, speaking from the tomb, still sound in our ears. Such was Lafayette. At the tidings of his death, there was mourning in two hemispheres; and the saying of Pericles (*per'i-kleez*) was again fulfilled, for the whole earth was the sepulchre of the illustrious man.

> "Not to those chambers where the mighty rest,
> Since their foundation came a nobler guest;
> Not e'er was to the bowers of bliss conveyed
> A purer spirit, or a fairer shade."

3. Judge him by what he did throughout a long life, and you must confess his greatness. Judge him by the principles of his life, and you must bend with reverence before him. In all history he stands alone. There is no one who has done so much for human freedom. In youth showing the firmness of age, and in age showing the ardor of youth; trampling upon the prejudices of birth, upon the seductions of power, upon the blandishments of wealth, setting aside the favor even of that people whom he loved so well; whether placed at the height of worldly ambition, or plunged in the vaults of a dungeon, always true to the same principle.

4. Great he was, indeed; not as an author, although he has written what we are all glad to read; not as an orator, although he has spoken often and well; not as a soldier, although always brave, and often working miracles of genius; not as a statesman, although versed in government, and intuitively[v] perceiving the relations of men and nations;—not on these accounts is he great: but he is great as one of the world's benefactors, who possessed the largest measure of that greatest gift of God to man—the genius of beneficence. And great he is as an example, which, so long as history endures, shall teach all—the author, the orator, the soldier, the statesman,—all alike to labor, and, if need be, to suffer, for human right. The fame of

such a character, brightening with the advance of civilization, can find no limit except in earthly gratitude.—*Oration on Lafayette.*

John Quincy Adams's Administration.—Election and Inauguration.—Four candidates were put in nomination to succeed President Monroe, and the consequence was that none of them had a majority of the electoral votes. The election then went to the House of Representatives, for the second time, Jefferson having been thus elected, in 1801; and John Quincy Adams was chosen the sixth President of the United States. His inauguration took place at Washington, on the 4th of March, 1825.

Death of Adams and Jefferson.—On the fiftieth anniversary of American Independence, July 4th, 1826, occurred the death of the two venerable ex-presidents, John Adams and Thomas Jefferson. As this remarkable coincidence took place more than a year after the commencement of the tenth presidential term, John Adams lived to see his son president. When it is recollected that Adams and Jefferson were members of the committee that framed the Declaration of Independence; that both signed that important document; that both had been foreign ministers, vice-presidents, and presidents of the United States; and that each had lived to a venerable age, the coincidence of their deaths is indeed remarkable.

Death of John Adams.—*Theodore Parker.*

1. ABLE-BODIED, able-minded, Mr. Adams gradually faded away. His hearing decayed, his eyes failed him, his hands were tremulous; but still the brave old soul held on, making the most of the wreck of life now drifting alone to the Islands of the Blessed. Independence Day, the great day of his life, drew near. It was its fiftieth anniversary. The Nation was to keep its solemn Jubilee, grateful to God and to his servants here below, for the blessings of the smiling and happy land.

2. A few days before the time, the town orator asked him for a "sentiment" to suit the approaching occasion. The old man, in his ninety-first year, infirm, feeble, and mortally sick in his bed, answered, "INDEPENDENCE FOREVER!" The day came and found him living, but fast losing his hold upon earth. "Thomas Jefferson still survives," said the old man—his coadjutor and his rival, yet his friend. These were his last words.

3. Soon after, while the land rang with cannons jubilant

over his great deed, he passed onward, and ceased to be mortal. Jefferson had gone an hour or two before. How fortunate the occasion of his death! His son was then president of this mighty nation; and on its fiftieth birth-day, calmly, quietly, he shook off the worn-out body, and, following his sentiment, went forth to "INDEPENDENCE FOREVER."—*Historic Americans.*

Adams and Jefferson.—*Wirt.*

1. THE scenes which have been lately passing in our country are full of moral instruction. They hold up to the world a lesson of wisdom, by which all may profit. In the structure of their characters; in the course of their action; in the striking coincidences which marked their high career; in the lives and in the deaths of the illustrious men whose virtues and services we have met to commemorate; and in that voice of admiration and gratitude which has since burst with one accord from the millions of freemen who people these United States,—there is a moral sublimity which overwhelms the mind, and hushes all its powers into silent amazement!

2. The European, who should have heard the sound without apprehending the cause, would be apt to inquire, "What is the meaning of all this? What had these men done to elicit this unanimous and splendid acclamation? Why has the whole American nation risen up, as one man, to do them honor, and offer to them this enthusiastic homage of the heart? Were they mighty warriors; and was the peal that we have heard, the shout of victory? Were they great commanders, returning from their distant conquests, surrounded with the spoils of war; and was this the sound of their triumphal procession? Were they covered with martial glory in any form; and was this the noisy wave of the multitudes, rolling back at their approach?" Nothing of all this: no; they were peaceful and aged patriots, who, having served their country together through their long and useful lives, had now sunk together to the tomb.

3. They had not fought battles; but they had formed and moved the great machinery of which battles were only a small

and comparatively trivial consequence. They had not commanded armies; but they had commanded the master-springs of the nation, on which all its great political as well as military movements depended. By the wisdom and energy of their counsels, and by the potent mastery of their spirits, they had contributed pre-eminently to produce a mighty revolution, which has changed the aspect of the world.

4. And this, be it remembered, has been the fruit of intellectual exertions,—the triumph of mind! What a proud testimony does it bear to the character of our nation, that it is able to make a proper estimate of services like these; that, while in other countries the senseless mob fall down in stupid admiration before the bloody wheels of the conqueror—even of the conqueror by accident,—in this, our people rise with one accord to pay homage to intellect and virtue! This is a spectacle of which we may be permitted to be proud. It honors our country no less than the illustrious dead. And could these great patriots speak to us from the tomb, they would tell us that they have more pleasure in the testimony which these honors bear to the character of their country, than in that which they bear to their individual services.

5. Jefferson and Adams were great men by nature; not great and eccentric minds, "shot madly from their spheres" to affright the world and scatter pestilence in their course; but minds whose strong and steady lights, restrained within their proper orbits by the happy poise of their characters, came to cheer and gladden a world that had been buried for ages in political night. They were heaven-called avengers of degraded man. They came to lift him to the station for which God had formed him, and to put to flight those idiot superstitions, with which tyrants had contrived to inthrall his reason and his liberty.

6. That Being, who had sent them upon this mission, had fitted them pre-eminently for his glorious work. He filled their hearts with a love of country, which burned strong within them even in death. He gave them a power of understanding which no sophistry could baffle, no art elude; and a moral

heroism which no dangers could appal. Careless of themselves, reckless of all personal consequences, trampling under foot that petty ambition of office and honor which constitutes the master passion of little minds, they bent all their mighty powers to the task for which they had been delegated—the freedom of their beloved country, and the restoration of fallen man.

7. They felt that they were apostles of human liberty; and well did they fulfill their high commission. They rested not until they had accomplished their work at home, and given such an impulse to the great ocean of mind, that they saw the waves rolling on the furthest shore before they were called to their reward; and then left the world, hand in hand, exulting, as they rose, in the success of their labors.—*Oration on Adams and Jefferson.*

The American System.—The subject of domestic manufactures engaged a large share of the president's attention. In 1828, a tariff-law was passed, based upon the principle of protecting home manufactures, by imposing heavy duties upon imported articles of the same kind. This policy, known as the *American System*, had its friends and opponents then as it has now.

Election of Andrew Jackson.—Toward the close of the presidential term, the contest for the succession was carried on with great bitterness of party feeling. Adams was a candidate for a second term, but was defeated by Andrew Jackson, of Tennessee. John C. Calhoun, of South Carolina, then vice-president, having been elected four years before, was again chosen to that office.

Jackson's Administration.—Veto of the United States Bank.—Jackson's inauguration took place on the 4th of March, 1829. In his first annual message to Congress, the new president took ground against the renewal of the charter of the United States Bank. Notwithstanding the objection, Congress, in 1832, passed a bill to re-charter it, but Jackson vetoed the bill, and the bank consequently ceased to be a national institution when the charter expired.

Black Hawk War.—In 1832, the northwest frontier suffered from Indian hostilities. Black Hawk, the most noted of the savages, and from whom the contest that followed took its name, was taken prisoner. After a detention of some months, during which he was conducted through Washington and other cities, for the purpose of convincing him that resistance to the power of the whites was useless, he was allowed to rejoin his people. The Indians finally gave up a large tract of territory and removed further west.

Nullification.—The tariff-law of 1828 caused dissatisfaction among the people of the cotton-growing States; and although, in 1832, an act was passed removing some of the duties on foreign goods, the feeling was greatly increased. A

convention in South Carolina declared the tariff-acts unconstitutional, and therefore null; and proclaimed, that, if any attempts were made to collect the duties, the State would secede from the Union. Jackson acted with promptness and firmness. He sent General Scott to Charleston, and issued a proclamation against the "nullifiers," an extract from which is given below. A "compromise bill," providing for the gradual reduction of the duties, was offered by Henry Clay, and passed by Congress. It was accepted by Calhoun, Hayne, and the other South Carolina leaders, and thus quiet was restored.

Proclamation to South Carolina.—*Jackson.*

1. FELLOW-CITIZENS of my native State! let me not only admonish you, as the first magistrate of our common country, not to incur the penalty of its laws, but let me use the influence that a father would over his children, whom he saw rushing to certain ruin. In that paternal language, with that paternal feeling, let me tell you, my countrymen, that you are deluded by men who either are deceived themselves, or wish to deceive you. Mark under what pretenses you have been led on to the brink of insurrection and treason on which you stand! Look back at the acts which have brought you to this state!—look forward to the consequences to which they must inevitably lead!

2. And something more is necessary. Contemplate the condition of that country of which you still form an important part! Consider its government, uniting in one band of common interest and general protection so many different States; giving to all their inhabitants the proud title of American citizens; protecting their commerce, securing their literature and their arts, facilitating their intercommunication, defending their frontiers, and making their name respected in the remotest parts of the earth!

3. Consider the extent of its territory; its increasing and happy population; its advance in the arts which render life agreeable, and the sciences which elevate the mind! See education spreading the light of religion, humanity, and general information into every cottage in this wide extent of our territories and States! Behold it as the asylum where the wretched and the oppressed find a refuge and support!

4. Look on this picture of happiness and honor, and say, "We, too, are citizens of America! Carolina is one of these proud States. Her arms have defended, her best blood has cemented this happy Union!" And then add, if you can, without horror and remorse, "This happy Union we will dissolve; this picture of peace and prosperity we will deface; this free intercourse we will interrupt; these fertile fields we will deluge with blood; the protection of that glorious flag we renounce; and the very name of Americans we discard!"

5. And for what, mistaken men! For what do you throw away these inestimable blessings? For what would you exchange your share in the advantages and honor of the Union? For the dream of a separate independence;—a dream interrupted by bloody conflicts with your neighbors, and a vile dependence on foreign power? If your leaders could succeed in establishing a separation, what would be your situation? Are you united at home? Are you free from the apprehensions of civil discord, with all its fearful consequences? Do our neighboring republics, every day suffering some new revolution, or contending with some new insurrection,—do they excite your envy?

6. But the dictates of a high duty oblige me solemnly to announce that you cannot succeed. The laws of the United States must be executed. I have no discretionary power on the subject: my duty is emphatically pronounced in the Constitution. Those who told you that you might peaceably prevent their execution, deceived you; they could not have been deceived themselves. They know that a forcible opposition could alone prevent the execution of the laws; and they know that such opposition must be repelled. Their object is disunion; but be not deceived by names: disunion by armed force is *treason!*

7. Are you really ready to incur its guilt? If you are, on the heads of the instigators of this act be the dreadful consequences,—on their heads be the dishonor; but on yours may fall the punishment; and on your unhappy State will inevitably fall all the evils of the conflict you force upon the government of your country.

8. But there is yet time to show that the descendants of the Pinckneys, the Sumters, the Rutledges, and of the thousand other names which adorn the pages of your Revolutionary history will not abandon that Union, to support which, so many of them fought, and bled, and died. I therefore adjure you, as you honor their memory; as you love the cause of freedom, to which they dedicated their lives; as you prize the peace of your country, the lives of its best citizens, and your own fair fame,—to retrace your steps.

9. Snatch from the archives of your State the disorganizing edict of its convention: bid its members to reassemble and promulgate the decided expressions of your will to remain in the path which alone can conduct you to safety, prosperity, and honor: tell them, that compared to disunion, all other evils are light; because that brings with it an accumulation of all: declare that you will never take the field, unless the star-spangled banner of your country shall float over you; that you will not be stigmatized when dead, and dishonored and scorned while you live, as the authors of the first attack on the Constitution of your country!—its destroyers you cannot be.

10. Fellow-citizens, the momentous case is before you. On your undivided support of the government depends the decision of the great question it involves, whether our sacred Union shall be preserved, and the blessings it secures to us as one people shall be perpetuated. No one can doubt that the unanimity with which that decision will be expressed, will be such as to inspire new confidence in republican institutions; and that the prudence, the wisdom, and the courage, which it will bring to their defense, will transmit them unimpaired and invigorated to our children.

War with the Seminoles.—Captivity of Osceola.—Toward the close of 1835, the Seminoles became hostile, in consequence of an attempt to remove them to lands west of the Mississippi, in accordance with a treaty which had been made with some of the chiefs, but which others did not consider binding. Osceola (*os-e-o'lah*), their most noted chief, having, in his opposition, used threatening language, Gen. Thompson, the government agent, put him in irons; but, by feigning penitence and making promises, he soon obtained his liberty.

Atrocities of the Indians.—On the 28th of December, Osceola, resolved upon vengeance, approached a house in which Thompson and others were dining, and, making a sudden attack, killed five of the party, including Thompson. On the same day, Major Dade, while marching with more than a hundred men to join Gen. Clinch, at Fort Drane, was attacked, and, with his whole force except four men, was massacred.

Defeat of the Indians.—A number of battles were fought during the following year; but in none could the Americans claim a decided victory. In October, 1837, Osceola appeared in the American camp with a flag of truce, when Gen. Jessup seized the chief, and sent him to Fort Moultrie. Two months later, Col. Taylor, afterward President of the United States, defeated the Indians near Lake O-kee-cho'bee, in the most desperate battle of the war; and though they continued hostile till 1842, they never again rallied in large force.

Osceola.—*Lucy Hooper.*

Not on the battle-field,
As when thy thousand warriors joy'd to meet thee,
Sounding the fierce war-cry,
Leading them forth to die,—
Not thus, not thus we greet thee.

But in a hostile camp,
Lonely amidst thy foes,
Thine arrows spent,
Thy brow unbent,—
Yet wearing record of thy people's woes.

Chief! for thy memories now,
While the tall palm against this quiet sky
Her branches waves,
And the soft river laves
The green and flower-crowned banks it wanders by;

While in this golden sun
The burnished rifle gleameth with strange light,
And sword and spear
Rest harmless here,
Yet flash with startling radiance on the sight;

Wake they thy glance of scorn,
Thou of the folded arms and aspect stern,—
Thou of the deep low tone,
For whose rich music gone,
Kindred and friends alike may vainly yearn?

Woe for the trusting hour!
Oh, kingly stag! no hand hath brought thee down;
'Twas with a patriot's heart,
Where fear usurped no part,
Thou camest, a noble offering, and alone!

For vain you army's might,
While for thy band the wide plain own'd a tree,
Or the wild vine's tangled shoots
On the gnarl'd oak's mossy roots
Their trysting-place might be!

Woe for thy hapless fate!
Woe for thine evil times and lot, brave chief!
Thy sadly-closing story,
Thy short and mournful glory,
Thy high but hopeless struggle, brave and brief!

Woe for the bitter stain
That from our country's banner may not part!
Woe for the captive, woe!
For burning pains and slow
Are his who dieth of the fever'd heart.

Oh! in that spirit-land,
Where never yet the oppressor's foot hath past,
Chief, by those sparkling streams,
Whose beauty mocks our dreams,
May that high heart have won its rest at last!

Van Buren's Administration.—Inauguration.—Martin Van Buren, of New York, who succeeded Jackson in the presidency, was inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1837. He served only one term.

Monetary Revolution.—Soon after his inauguration, a revolution in monetary affairs took place, which produced great distress in all branches of business throughout the country. Merchants failed, commerce and manufactures were prostrated, and the crash was finally consummated by the suspension of specie payments on the part of the banks.

Rebellion in Canada.—In the latter part of 1837 a rebellion broke out in Canada, which enlisted the sympathies and engaged the active co-operation of many citizens of the United States. A proclamation issued by the president, forbidding interference in the affairs of Canada, together with the decided measures of the British authorities, had the effect intended, and the attempt at insurrection was suppressed.

Harrison's and Tyler's Administration.—Van Buren's successor in office was William Henry Harrison, of Ohio, the "hero of Tippecanoe and the Thames." The cabinet of the new president was judiciously chosen, and the people anticipated for him a successful administration; but, on the 4th of April, 1841, just one month after his inauguration, he died; and the vice-president, John Tyler, on taking the oath of office two days after, became president.

Annexation of Texas.—A proposition for the admission of Texas into the Union caused an excited discussion throughout the country during the closing months of Tyler's administration. Those who objected to an increase of the slave-power in the government, opposed the proposition; while those who favored such increase, advocated it. Three days before the expiration of his term of office, the president signed a bill for the annexation of Texas to the United States.

Texas.—*Robert Mackenzie.*

1. THE decaying energies of Spain were sorely wasted by the wars which Napoleon forced upon her. Invaded, conquered, occupied, fought for during years by great armies, Spain issued from the struggle in a state of utter exhaustion. It was impossible that a country so enfeebled could maintain a great colonial dominion. Not long after the Battle of Waterloo, all her American dependencies chose to be independent, and Spain could do nothing to prevent it. Among the rest, Mexico won for herself the privilege of self-government, of which she has thus far proved herself so incapable.

2. Lying between the Mississippi and the Rio Grande, was a vast wilderness of undefined extent and uncertain ownership, which the United States, with some hesitation, recognized as belonging to Mexico. It was called *Texas*.* The climate was genial; the soil was of wondrous fertility. The United States coveted this fair region, and offered to buy it from Mexico. Her offer was declined.

3. The great natural wealth of Texas, combined with the almost total absence of government, was a powerful attraction to the lawless adventurers who abounded in the southwestern

* "La Harpe, in a letter dated Nasonite (eastern Texas), July 8, 1719, calls the country the province of *Los Tekas;* and this is the first mention of the name in any published works. It may have been the appellation of some petty tribe of Indians living in eastern Texas."

States. A tide of vagrant blackguardism streamed into Texas. Safe from the grasp of justice, the murderer, the thief, the fraudulent debtor, opened in Texas a new and more hopeful career. Founded by these conscript fathers, Texan society grew apace. In a few years, Texas felt herself strong enough to be independent. Her connection with Mexico was declared to be at an end (1836).

4. The leader in this revolution was Samuel Houston (*hews'-ton*), a Virginian of massive frame—energetic, audacious, unscrupulous,—in no mean degree fitted to direct the storm he had helped to raise. For Houston was a Southerner, and it was his ambition to gain Texas for the purpose of the slave-owners. Mexico had abolished slavery. Texas could be no home for the possessor of slaves till she was severed from Mexico.

5. When independence was declared, Texas had to defend her newly-claimed liberties by the sword. General Houston headed the patriot forces, not quite four hundred in number, and imperfectly armed. Santa Anna came against them with an army of five thousand. The Texans retreated, and, having nothing to carry, easily distanced their pursuers. At the San Jacinto (*jah-sin'to*), Houston was strengthened by the arrival of two field-pieces. He turned like a lion upon the unexpectant Mexicans, whom he caught in the very act of crossing the river. He fired grapeshot into their quaking ranks. His unconquerable Texans clubbed their muskets—they had no bayonets—and rushed upon the foe. The Mexicans fled in helpless rout, and Texas was free. The grateful Texans elected General Houston president of the republic which he had thus saved.

6. No sooner was Texas independent than she offered to join herself to the United States. Her proposals were at first declined; but the South warmly espoused her cause, and urged her claims. Once more North and South met in fiery debate. Slavery had already a sure footing in Texas. If Texas entered the Union, it was as a slave-State. On that ground the South avowedly urged the annexation; on that ground the North resisted it.

7. "We all see," said Daniel Webster, "that Texas will be a

slave-holding country; and I frankly avow my unwillingness to do anything which shall extend the slavery of the African race on this continent, or add another slave-holding State to the Union." "The South," said the legislature of Mississippi, speaking of slavery, "does not possess a blessing with which the affections of her people are so closely entwined, and whose value is more highly appreciated. By the annexation of Texas, an equipoise of influence in the halls of Congress will be secured, which will furnish us a permanent guarantee of protection."

8. It was the battle-ground on which all the recent great battles of American political history have been fought. It ended, as such battles at that time usually did, in Southern victory. In March, 1845, Texas was received into the Union. The slave-power gained new votes in Congress, and room for a vast extension of the slave-system.—*History of the United States.*

Polk's Administration.—War with Mexico.—Tyler's successor in office was James K. Polk, who was inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1845. His administration continued during only one term, but it was an eventful one. On the 4th of July, 1845, the Legislature of Texas approved the "Annexation Bill" passed by the United States Congress, and, by this act of approval, Texas became one of the United States.

Capture of Thornton's Party.—For the protection of the new State, General Taylor proceeded, by order of President Polk, to the Rio Grande (*rē'o grahn'dā*) opposite Mat-a-mo'ras, where he erected a fort, which was afterward named Fort Brown. Learning that the Mexicans were assembling troops at a point higher up the river, Taylor sent Captain Thornton, with sixty-three dragoons, to reconnoitre. This little force was attacked (April 26th, 1846), and, after a loss of sixteen men, was compelled to surrender.

Battles of Palo Alto and Resaca de la Palma.—The Mexicans, in large force, having crossed the Rio Grande, for the purpose, as was supposed, of moving against Point Isabel, where the Americans had established a depot of supplies, Taylor marched to the relief of that place. After putting the Point in a good state of defense, he set out on his return to the river. His progress was disputed at Palo Alto (*pah'lō ahl'tō*) and Resaca de la Palma (*rā sah'kah dā lah-pahl'mah*)* by General Arista (*ah-rees'tah*); but in both battles the Mexicans were defeated with severe loss. In the first (May 8th), the Mexi-

* Palo Alto, a Spanish term, signifying "tall timber." Resaca de la Palma is also a Spanish term, and signifies "a ravine of palm-trees.

cans numbered six thousand men, while the Americans consisted of but twenty-three hundred. The loss of the former exceeded five hundred. That of the latter was scarcely fifty, but among their mortally wounded was the brave Major Ringgold.

The battle of Resaca de la Palma took place on the following day (May 9th). The action was commenced on both sides by the artillery; but the Mexican guns, well-aimed and rapidly discharged, were holding the Americans in check, when Captain May was ordered to silence them. At the head of his dragoons he charged with great fury, killed or dispersed the gunners, and captured General La Vega (*lah vā'gah*).

Battle of Resaca de la Palma.—*R. S. Ripley.*

1. General Arista had been re-enforced during the morning by nearly two thousand infantry and a strong body of cavalry. His infantry occupied the northern crest of Resaca de la Palma, which ravine is crossed by the mainroad from Point Isabel to Matamoras, at a point some four miles from the latter place. The general outline of the ravine is an irregular curve, of which the convexity is given to the south. The road running toward the south crosses the ravine about the centre of its length. Three guns on the northern crest defended the point of passage, and two on each side of the road south of the ravine supported the first battery with a flank and cross fire.

2. Along the southern crest was posted a second line of infantry; and the cavalry, which were necessarily unable to act, was in strong masses to the rear. The position and disposition of the Mexican forces were exceedingly strong against an enemy advancing by the road; and the thick growth of chaparral rendered such an advance the one most probable, if not absolutely necessary. But the same cause rendered a complete view of the operations impracticable, and made any action at the point one of detail on both sides, with the advantage, however, of a knowledge of locality on the part of the Mexicans, not possessed by their enemy.

3. McCall's and Smith's skirmishers pressed forward on the left and right, driving the Mexican troops of the first line from their positions at the northern extremities of the ravine. Ridgely's guns were planted at a point on the right of the path,

within three hundred yards of the Mexican artillery, and thence opened a lively fire; it was briskly returned from the Mexican advanced battery; but the chaparral prevented accurate aim, and the consequent full effect of artillery on either side.

4. The fifth regiment and the left wing of the fourth, deployed[v] as skirmishers, were sent into action on the left; while the third, with the right wing, displayed on the right, and supported the advanced parties; these troops pressed on through the thicket, and the action became general. The nature of the ground prevented the use of any other artillery than Ridgely's battery; there was no position in which a line could be arrayed, nor was it attempted.

5. The enemy's shot fell thick and fast from his positions on the crest of the ravine, and each captain and subaltern[v] led his command as an independent body. All was apparently in confusion; but, confident in the courage and discipline of those around them, there was a general harmony in the attack: none thought of retreat; and, with loud shouts, each small party of the American troops pressed vigorously forward, and the fire of small-arms was incessant.

6. While the action continued in this manner, the Mexican artillery continued its fire upon the advancing American troops, although that of the advanced battery had slackened under the quick discharges of Ridgely's guns. To finish the action as soon as possible, by its capture, General Taylor sent Captain May's squadron of dragoons directly against it. May started down the road at a gallop, in obedience to his order, and pulling up for a moment, as he passed Ridgely's position, the latter poured in a discharge of canister[v], which drew the Mexican fire in reply.

7. May continued his course, and, though his command was in confusion, rode over the whole battery. The Mexican infantry, however, from the second line, drove him, and the six men whom he was able to rally from his whole squadron, back under a severe fire; but he carried with him General de la Vega, who had been entangled in the mêlée[v] and taken prisoner. Ridgely had, meanwhile, followed at a gallop, and unlimbered[v]

on the northern crest, ready to defend the position without infantry support; but, although much exposed, the fear of injuring the dragoons prevented his firing.

8. When the action had fairly commenced, Gen. Taylor had sent orders to Lieutenant-colonel Belknap to advance one regiment from the guard of the train, and at this time he led the eighth infantry into action. Moving down the road in column at a charging pace, the eighth, joined by a portion of the fifth, which had beat through to the ravine on the left of the road, crossed the ravine, secured the guns, and, pushing into the chaparral, after a severe struggle drove the enemy from the vicinity.

9. The battle was won; but still, in small parties, the Mexicans disputed the American advance, until their last gun, which had been in position to their left, was captured, and their camp entered by the fourth infantry, and then the rout began. Kerr's squadron of dragoons, Duncan's and Ridgely's batteries, the artillery battalion, and the light companies under Captain C. F. Smith, were sent on the track of the fugitives.

10. Following closely in pursuit, they dispersed the routed Mexican army, driving its broken masses into the chaparral and beyond the Rio Grande. As the advance of the pursuing forces came in sight of the Mexican batteries at Matamoras, these opened fire. The American guns of Fort Brown also commenced firing on the upper ferry, at which the fugitives were crossing; but night coming on, rendered it impossible to distinguish friend and foe, and the cannonade ceased on both sides. The pursuing forces occupied the former American camp on the banks of the Rio Grande, but for the night the main army remained on the field of battle.— *War with Mexico.*

Taking of Matamoras and Monterey. — During the most of Taylor's absence from the fort on the Rio Grande, a period of nearly eight days, it had been subjected to a bombardment from the enemy's batteries at Matamoras. The garrison made a successful defense, though their heroic commander, Major Brown, was mortally wounded by the bursting of a shell. On the 18th of May, Taylor took possession of Matamoras, and in August he marched to attack Monterey (*mon-tā-rā'*), a city strong in its natural defenses, and then gar-

risoned by ten thousand troops under Gen. Ampudia (*am-poo'dē-ah*). After a series of assaults, in which Generals Worth and Quitman rendered brilliant service, Monterey capitulated (Sept. 24th), and Taylor agreed to an armistice.

The Martyr of Monterey.—*Rev. J. G. Lyons.*

["While I was stationed with our left wing in one of the forts, I saw a Mexican woman busily engaged in carrying bread and water to the wounded men of both armies. I saw the ministering angel raise the head of a wounded man, give him water and food, and then bind up his ghastly wound with a handkerchief she took from her own head. After having exhausted her supplies, she went back to her house, to get more bread and water for others. As she was returning on her mission of mercy, to comfort other wounded persons, I heard the report of a gun, and saw the poor innocent creature fall dead. I think it was an accidental shot that struck her. I would not be willing to believe otherwise. It made me sick at heart; and, turning from the scene, I involuntarily raised my eyes toward heaven, and thought, Great God! *is this war?* Passing the spot the next day, I saw her body still lying there, with the bread by her side, and the broken gourd, with a few drops of water in it,—emblems of her errand. We buried her; and while we were digging her grave, cannon-balls flew around us like hail."—*Letter to the "Louisville Courier," dated Monterey, October* 17, 1847.]

THE strife was stern at Monterey,
When those high towers were lost and won;
And, pealing through that mortal fray,
Flash'd the strong battery's vengeful gun;
Yet, heedless of its deadly rain,
She stood, in toil and danger first,
To bind the bleeding soldier's vein,
And slake the dying soldier's thirst.

She found a pale and stricken foe,
Sinking in nature's last eclipse,
And on the red earth kneeling low,
She wet his parch'd and fever'd lips;
When, thick as winter's driving sleet,
The booming shot and flaming shell
Swept with wild rage that gory street,
And she—the good and gentle—fell.

They laid her in her narrow bed—
The foemen of her land and race;
And sighs were breath'd and tears were shed
Above her lowly resting-place.
Ay! glory's crimson worshippers
Wept over her unkindly fall,
For deeds of mercy such as hers
Subdue the heart and eyes of all.

To sound her worth were guilt and shame
In us, who love but gold and ease;
They heed alike our praise or blame,
Who live and die in works like these.
Far greater than the wise or brave,
Far happier than the fair or gay,
Was she who found a martyr's grave
On that red field of Monterey.

General Kearney's Expedition.—In an expedition which set out from Leavenworth (June, 1846), General Kearney (*kar'ne*) entered Santa Fe and gained possession of the whole of New Mexico without opposition. After organizing a government, he left the main body of his army under Colonel Don'i-phan, and crossed the continent to California.

March of Colonel Doniphan.—*Mansfield.*

1. In the interval between the conquest of New Mexico by Kearney and the march of Scott from Vera Cruz, there occurred, in the northern provinces of Mexico, one of those grand military adventures which convert the realities of history into the brilliant and enticing scenes of romance. This was the march of Colonel Doniphan's corps through the wild and unknown regions of northern Mexico.

2. When the American army under Kearney had reached Santa Fe, it was already nine hundred miles from the point of its departure. The greater part of this distance had been passed over vast prairie-plains, over arid deserts, in the valleys of streams, where no town or habitation was seen, and over hills like the Raton, from whose lofty summit no signs of civilization could be seen, and the distant horizon was limited only by the towering peaks of the Rocky Mountains.

3. At Santa Fe, there was but little real interruption to this wilderness prospect. New Mexico contained 50,000 square miles, but only 100,000 inhabitants. The states of Chihuahua (*che-wah'wah*), Durango, and Coahuila (*co-ah-wee'lah*), below, scarcely contained a greater population in proportion. Here and there a Mexican town appeared, and at intervals spots of beautiful culture, of vineyards and fruits; but, for the most

part, there were uninhabited regions, unknown to the Americans, and almost untrodden by travellers.

4. In the early part of December, Colonel Doniphan left Santa Fe with eight hundred men, in three divisions, destined for Chihuahua. The object of the expedition was to join General Wool in the heart of northern Mexico. Wool, as has been detailed, marched with what was called the Army of the Centre, from San Antonio de Bexar for Chihuahua. The latter point he never reached; but Colonel Doniphan now supposed him either at Chihuahua or on his route.

5. Doniphan, accordingly, marched south to form a junction. On the 21st of December, his corps reached Bracito (*brah-se'to*), and the troops were dispersed getting wood, when a large force of the enemy, supposed to be a thousand strong, appeared in sight. The Americans immediately formed in line. The Mexicans were composed of lancers and infantry. A Mexican officer rode out on a fine charger, displaying a black flag. Their columns immediately charged, and were received by the Americans with a well-directed fire of rifles. This determined the engagement. The Mexicans fled. Doniphan then pursued his march at his leisure.

6. On the 27th of December, Doniphan's corps entered El Paso del Norte without opposition. This is a considerable town on the Rio del Norte, or rather the Rio Grande, the former being the name of that river in New Mexico. This town contains about five thousand inhabitants; but there are about eleven thousand settled along the river for twenty-five miles. It is on the road to Chihuahua, and at one of the crossings of the Rio Grande.

7. Here Colonel Doniphan was compelled to wait for re-enforcements, and also to hear from General Wool. The Americans were surrounded with a hostile population, and continually expecting an attack. One who was present writes, "Here we have spent a month in anxiety, drudgery, and toil." Nothing, however, was heard from Wool; and it was long before re-enforcements arrived. At length, on the 1st of February, Captain Weightman arrived with artillery, and Doniphan's command was increased to the amount of about nine hundred men.

8. In the latter part of February, he set out from El Paso, and on the 23d the American forces were at Carmen, one hundred miles from Chihuahua. In the mean time, General Heredia, who commanded the Mexican forces at Chihuahua, having heard of the approach of the American army, dispatched General Conde with eight hundred cavalry to watch the Americans. On the 21st, General Heredia himself took position, with additional troops, near the Sacramento River, and waited the approach of Colonel Doniphan. . . . .

9. On the 28th of February, the American army discovered the enemy entrenched near the Rancho Sacramento, on the river Sacramento. The position was a very strong one. It was in a valley about four miles in width, having a range of mountains on each side. The Rio Sacramento and Arroyo Seco both crossed the valley here; and the main road to Chihuahua, pursuing the valley, crosses the Sacramento at the Rancho Sacramento.

10. The Mexican intrenchments were on a ridge between these streams, and completely commanded the road. Their right rested on the Cerro Fryoles (*fre-yo'les*), with high precipitous sides, on which was a battery commanding the surrounding country and the pass leading to Chihuahua, through the Arroyo Seco. On their left was the Cerro Sacramento, a pile of immense volcanic rocks, surmounted by a battery which commanded the main road to Chihuahua.

11. A passage was found practicable across the Arroyo Seco, within reach of the enemy's fire; and the American column, having reached the ground between the Seco and the Sacramento, commenced deploying toward the table-land occupied by the Mexicans. The column of General Conde's cavalry, opposed to the American right, now commenced a charge, which was returned by the fire of the artillery-battery, consisting of six pieces, under the command of Major Clark. At the third fire, the enemy's cavalry gave way and dispersed. They fell back to the Mexican camp, and rallied behind a redoubt. This the Americans attacked with artillery, Captain Weightman rapidly advancing with two howitzers', supported by Captain

Reed's company of horse, and then by Lieutenant-Colonel Mitchell, delivering his fire with great effect, the enemy were driven from the redoubt.

12. The Mexicans were pursued toward the mountains by Lieutenant-Colonel Mitchell, Lieutenant-Colonel Jackson, and Major Gilpin, accompanied by Weightman, with his section of howitzers. In the mean time, the Mexicans had carried their cannon to the Cerro Sacramento, to cover their retreat. The fire of the American artillery soon silenced these, and the Rancho Sacramento was then attacked. At length the Mexicans were driven from this last position, and the victory was complete. The Mexicans lost one hundred men and ten pieces of artillery.

13. Colonel Doniphan and his little army entered the city of Chihuahua, the fruit of this victory, in divisions, on the 1st and 2d of March. This town is the capital of one of the most important States of Mexico, and contains more than forty thousand inhabitants. It lies on a branch of the Conchas River, two hundred and fifty miles south of El Paso. On the east lies the Rio Grande, and on the west the lofty summits of the Sierra Madre. The country is diversified with mountains and vales.

14. The army passed rugged cliffs of basaltic rock on one side, and, on the other, fields rich with the finest wheat. In the clear atmosphere of this elevated region, the mountain-tops would seem, in the distance, blue as the skies above; or, near by, would darkly frown in the cold, gray aspect of its granite rock. Chihuahua, too, is the centre of rich and various mines. Not more than twelve miles from it are silver mines, supposed to be the richest in Mexico. These mines are generally owned by private companies, composed of English or Spanish proprietors.

15. At Chihuahua, in this rich country and pleasant climate, the army of Doniphan rested in the bright days of spring. They had departed so far from the American lines of intelligence, as to be ignorant of the situation or place of the American forces. The expedition had been planned with the idea that

the corps of Doniphan would find the army of Wool at Chihuahua; but that army was not there. Wool had encountered, beyond Monclova, the lofty ridges of the Sierra Madre, and been compelled to change his course to the south, and eventually to Saltillo (*sahl-teel'yo*).

16. After waiting in vain for any appearance of Wool, and having remained six weeks at Chihuahua, the army at last took its line of march. Colonel Doniphan moved his corps from Chihuahua in three divisions, on the 25th, 26th, and 28th of April. Marching southwardly through Cerro Gordo, Mapimi, (*mah-pe'me*), and Parras, they reached Saltillo, three hundred and fifty miles further, on the 22d of May, 1847. Remaining but three days, on the 25th of May they marched to Monterey. Pursuing their journey with rapid step, they descended the Rio Grande, navigated the Gulf of Mexico, and arrived at New Orleans on the 15th of June.

17. Here the volunteers were mustered out of the service of the United States, embarked on steamboats, and were soon returned to their homes in Missouri. In a little more than a year, this corps of volunteers, mustered from private life, had, by land and by water,—over mountain-tops and sandy plains,—in snow, and in rain, and in hot deserts,—amidst the homes of civilization and the wilds of savages,—amidst the fires of battle, the sports of the camp, and the adventures of the wild wilderness, pursued their unchecked career for five thousand miles! —*History of the Mexican War.*

Conquest of California.—Before the breaking out of the war, Captain Fremont' was sent to make western explorations. After suffering great hardships, he made his way into California,* then a department of Mexico. Learning that Gen. Cas'tro, the governor of the province, was mustering a force to come against him, he took a position on a mountain-peak, thirty miles east of Monterey, where, in March, 1846, he built a fort and hoisted the American flag. But the governor made threats instead of attacks. Taking a northern route, Fremont passed through the valley of the Sacramento, but was overtaken by an order from Washington, directing him to protect the interests of

* "A romance was published in Spain, in 1510, in which the word California, applied to an imaginary island, for the first time occurred. Cortez had read the book, it is supposed, when he sailed along the west coast of Mexico, in 1535, and supposing he was in the region of the island, called the country California." The word, it is supposed, was derived from the word *Calif.*

the United States in California. Retracing his steps, he found Castro already marching against the American settlements on the Sacramento. The settlers flocked to his standard with such alacrity, that he soon found himself able to confront the Mexicans, whom he defeated in several skirmishes, and finally compelled to retreat toward the southern part of the province. On the 5th of July, 1846, California was declared to be independent.

A few days later, Commodore Sloat, commanding the Pacific fleet, having received information that hostilities had commenced on the Rio Grande, took possession of Monterey. Toward the latter part of the month, Commodore Stockton superseded Sloat in command; and, with Fremont's co-operation, in a few months gained possession of the whole of California. Kearny arrived and took part in the final battle (Jan. 8th, 1847).

Battle of Buena Vista.—General Taylor had been deprived of a large portion of his best troops, in order to supply General Scott with the requisite forces to proceed on the expedition which had been decided on at Washington, against the Mexican capital. In this condition, his force of less than five thousand men was attacked at Buena Vista (*bwa'nah vees'tah*), by an army nearly four times as large, under Santa Anna; but, after a contest which lasted from morning till night, the Mexicans were driven in disorder from the field (Feb. 23d, 1847).

The Angels of Buena Vista.—*Whittier.*

[A letter-writer from Mexico states, that, at the terrible fight of Buena Vista, Mexican women were seen hovering near the field of death, for the purpose of giving aid and succor to the wounded. One poor woman was surrounded by the maimed and suffering of both armies, ministering to the wants of Americans as well as Mexicans, with impartial tenderness. The following are the concluding stanzas of Whittier's beautiful poem, bearing the above title.]

"Look forth once more, Ximena!" "Like a cloud before the wind
Rolls the battle down the mountains, leaving blood and death behind;
Ah! they plead in vain for mercy; in the dust the wounded strive;
Hide your faces, holy angels! Oh, thou Christ of God, forgive!

"Sink, O Night, among thy mountains; let thy cool, gray shadows fall;
Dying brothers, fighting demons—drop thy curtain over all!
Through the quickening winter twilight, wide apart the battle rolled;
In his sheath the sabre rested, and the cannon's lips grew cold.

"But the holy Mexic women still their holy task pursued,
Through that long, dark night of sorrow, worn, and faint, and lacking food;
Over weak and suffering brothers with a tender care they hung,
And the dying foeman blessed them in a strange and Northern tongue

"Not wholly lost, O Father, is this evil world of ours;
Upward through its blood and ashes spring afresh the Eden flowers;

From its smoking hell of battle, Love and Pity send their prayer,
And still thy white-winged angels hover dimly in our air!"

General Scott's Expedition.—Taking of Vera Cruz.—On the 9th of March (1847), Scott landed his army of twelve thousand men near Vera Cruz, and, on the 22d, aided by the fleet, he opened so destructive a fire upon the city and fortress of San Juan de Ulloa (*san whahn dā ool-yo'ah*), that, on the 27th, both places were compelled to surrender.

Battle of Cerro Gordo.—The march toward the interior was commenced on the 7th of April, but, at the mountain pass of Cerro Gordo (*sār-rō gor'do*), Scott found Santa Anna prepared to resist his advance. On the morning of the 18th, a daring assault was made upon the works of the enemy; and before noon the whole were in possession of the Americans. Besides losing their artillery, the Mexicans had one thousand of their number killed or wounded.

Occupation of Puebla.—On the next day, the Americans entered Jalapa (*hah-lah'pah*); further on they took without opposition the strong castle of Perote (*pā-rō'tā*); and, on the 15th of May, they occupied the ancient and populous city of Puebla (*poo-ā'blah*). Here they halted nearly three months for re-enforcements, and then resumed their march, reaching Ayotla (*ah-yot'lah*), a town fifteen miles from the city of Mexico.

Occupation of Mexico.—Finding that the direct route thence was strongly fortified, and anxious to spare the lives of his men, Scott turned southward, and encamped about ten miles from the capital. The approaches to the city of Mexico were guarded by batteries at Contreras (*con-trā'rahs*) and San Antonio, and by the strong forts of Churubusco (*choo-roo-boos'ko*) and Chapultepec (*chah-pool-ta-pek'*). All these places were taken in succession, after severe conflicts, the American soldiers showing the greatest perseverance and daring. The last of them was taken by assault on the 13th of September; and Santa Anna and his army fled from the capital during the night succeeding. The next morning, General Scott, at the head of the American troops, made a triumphal entry into the city. The Americans were subsequently attacked from the housetops by the Mexican populace, but in a few days every disturbance was quieted.

American Conquest of Mexico.—*Mansfield.*

1. On the morning of the 18th of September all was quiet. Mexico, the capital of the ancient Aztecs, the seat of the Spanish-American empire in America—had passed from Aztec and from Spaniard to the Anglo-American—the Northman of the Goths, the Saxon of Germany, the Englishman of America—the same bold, hardy, energetic, ingenious, invincible, ambitious, and adventurous being, whose genius the forms of civil-

ization cannot confine, and to whose dominion continents are inadequate.

2. In what hour of time, or limit of space, shall this man of the moderns—this conqueror over land and seas, nations and governments—find rest, in the completion of his mighty progress? Commencing his march in the cold regions of Scandinavia, no ice chilled his blood—no wilderness delayed his steps—no labor wearied his industry—no armies arrested his march—no empire subdued his power. Over armies and over empires—over lands and over seas—in heat, and cold, and wilderness, and flood—amidst the desolations of death and the decays of disease—this Northman has moved on in might and majesty, steady as the footsteps of Time, and fixed as the decrees of Fate!

3. How singular—how romantically strange is this—his wild adventure and marvellous conquest in the valley of valleys! How came the Northman and the Moorish Celt here to meet, and here to battle, in this North-American valley? Look at it! Inquire! Ask yourself how they came here! Are they the citizens, by nature, of this continent? Are they the aborigines of these wild and wonderful forests? Never! How came they, then, to be contending for the lands and groves of those whose children they are not?

4. In the beginning of the sixteenth century, Hernando Cortez landed on the coast of Mexico, and, at the head of Spanish troops, marched on to the conquest of Mexico, over whose effeminate[v] inhabitants the Spaniard has, for three hundred years, held undivided dominion. Not many years after, the Anglo-Saxon landed on the coasts of the northern Atlantic. He, too, marched on to conquest. The native citizens of the forest disappeared before him. Forests, mountains, and Indians, were ineffectual to oppose him. From the banks of the St. Lawrence to the Sabine of Texas, he is a conqueror over nature.

5. In the south the natives die, or become slaves to the Spaniard. In the north, they fade and perish before the Anglo-American. The one spreads his empire from the Gulf of Mex-

ico to the far shore of California; the other, from the hills of St. Francis to the mountains of Oregon. Both extend over breadths of land and power of resources unknown to the widest empire of antiquity. Egypt and her millions, with the famed Valley of the Nile, fade before the broad magnificence, the mighty growth of these American empires! Even the terrible and far-seeing eagles of Rome grow dizzy and dim in their sight, as they look down from the summits of history upon these continental nations—these colossal[v] giants of the modern world!

6. And now, this Spaniard and this Northman meet, in battle panoply[v], in this valley of volcanoes, by the ancient graves of unknown nations, on the lava-covered soil where nature once poured forth her awe-inspiring flames, and the brave Tlascalan once sung of glory and of greatness! Three centuries since, these warrior-nations had left their homes beyond the wide Atlantic. Two thousand miles from each other, they had planted the seats of their empire; and now, as if time, in the moral world, had completed another of its grand revolutions, they have met in mortal conflict.

7. Like the EAGLE and the VULTURE, who had long pursued different circles in the heavens, and long made prey of the weak tenants of the air, their circles have been enlarged till they cross each other. They shriek! They fight! The victorious eagle bears the vulture to the earth, and screams forth through the clouds his triumphant song! Has the bold bird received no wound? Has no blood tinged the feathers of his wing? Is there no secret flow of life from the portals of his heart? Will he continue to look, with unblenched eye, on the blazing glories of the sun? Hid in the eternal decrees of God is the life of nations; and not till He has drawn away the curtains of time, will mortals know the secrets of His will in the government of nations.—*History of the Mexican War.*

Treaty of Peace with Mexico.—On the 2d of February, 1848, a treaty of peace was signed, by which all the territory north of the Rio Grande, together with the whole of New Mexico and California, was relinquished to the United States. On the part of the United States, it was agreed that $15,000,000

should be paid for the territory acquired, and that debts due from Mexico to American citizens, amounting to $3,000,000, should be assumed. Peace was proclaimed by President Polk, on the 4th of July, 1848.

Taylor's and Fillmore's Administrations.—Inauguration of Taylor.—Polk's successor in the presidency was Gen. Zachary Taylor, the hero who had achieved such brilliant victories in the war with Mexico. His inauguration took place on the 5th of March, 1849, the 4th being Sunday.

Discovery of Gold in California.—During the early part of 1848, gold began to be found in California in large quantities. The news at once spread with wonderful rapidity, and thousands of emigrants from all parts of the world rushed thither. So rapidly did the territory become populated, that in the fall of 1849 there was a sufficient number of settlers there to constitute a State; and an application for admission into the Union was consequently made.

Admission of California.—Death of Taylor.—The application met with violent opposition from the southern States, because the Constitution of the proposed State excluded slavery; but a compromise having been effected through the efforts of Henry Clay, California was admitted as a free State (Sept. 9, 1850). Meantime, Gen. Taylor died (July 9, 1850), and was succeeded by the vice-president, Millard Fillmore.

Compromise Measures of 1850.—The compromise measures adopted by Congress, simultaneously with the admission of California as a free State, consisted of four acts, which provided for the organization of territorial governments for New Mexico and Utah (*yoo'tah*), without mention of slavery; the establishment of the boundary of Texas; the abolition of the slave-trade in the District of Columbia; and the surrender to their masters of slaves escaping to free States—this last bill being known as the "Fugitive Slave Law."

Eulogy on Zachary Taylor.—*R. C. Winthrop.*

[From a speech delivered in the House of Representatives, July 10, 1850, the day succeeding that on which the subject of this beautiful and impressive eulogy expired. General Taylor's last words were consistent with his character—"I am not afraid to die; I have done my duty."]

1. Mr. Speaker.—A most momentous and mysterious Providence has been manifested in our midst. At a moment when the destinies of our country seemed to be inseparably associated with the character and conduct of its chief executive magistrate, that magistrate has been summoned from his post, by the only messenger whose mandates he might not have defied, and has been withdrawn forever from the sphere of human existence. And, as we now behold him, borne away by the hand

of God from our sight, we can hardly repress the exclamation which was addressed to the departing prophet of old: "My father, my father, the chariot of Israel, and the horsemen thereof!"

2. I hazard nothing, sir, in saying, that the roll of our chief magistrates, since 1789, illustrious as it is, presents the name of no man who has enjoyed a higher reputation with his contemporaries, or who will enjoy a higher reputation with posterity, for some of the best and noblest qualities which adorn our nature, than Zachary Taylor.

3. His indomitable courage, his unimpeachable honesty, his Spartan simplicity and sagacity, his frankness, kindness, moderation, and magnanimity, his fidelity to his friends, his generosity and humanity to his enemies, the purity of his private life, the patriotism of his public principles, will never cease to be cherished in the grateful remembrance of all just men and all true-hearted Americans. As a soldier and a general, his fame is associated with some of the proudest and most thrilling scenes of our military history. He may be literally said to have conquered every enemy he has met, save only that *last enemy*, to which we must all, in turn, surrender.

4. As a civilian and statesman, during the brief period in which he has been permitted to enjoy the transcendent honors which a grateful country had awarded him, he has given proof of a devotion to duty, of an attachment to the Constitution and the Union, of a patriotic determination to maintain the peace of our country, which no trials or temptations could shake. He has borne his faculties meekly, but firmly. He has been "clear in his great office." He has known no local partialities or prejudices, but has proved himself capable of embracing his whole country in the comprehensive affections and regards of a large and generous heart.

5. But he has fallen almost at the threshold of his civil career, and at a moment when we were looking to him to render essential services to the country. Certainly, sir, he has died too soon for everybody but himself. We can hardly find it in our hearts to repine, that the good old man has gone to his rest. We would

not disturb the repose in which the brave old soldier sleeps. His part in life had been long and faithfully performed. In his own last words, "he had always done his duty, and he was not afraid to die." But our regrets for ourselves and for our country are deep, strong, and unfeigned. "He should have died hereafter."

6. Sir, it was a fit and beautiful circumstance in the close of such a career, that his last official appearance was at the celebration of the birthday of our national independence, and, more especially, that his last public act was an act of homage to the memory of *him*, whose example he had revered and followed, and who, as he himself so well said, "was, by so many titles, the Father of his country."

7. And now, Mr. Speaker, let us hope that this event may teach us all how vain is our reliance upon any arm of flesh. Let us hope that it may impress us with a solemn sense of our national, as well as individual dependence on a higher than human power. Let us remember, sir, that "the Lord is King, be the people never so impatient; that He sitteth between the Cherubim, be the earth never so unquiet."

8. Let us, in language which is now hallowed to us all, as having been the closing and crowning sentiment of the brief but admirable inangural address with which this illustrious patriot opened his presidential term, and which it is my privilege to read at this moment from the very copy from which it was originally read by himself to the American people, on the 5th day of March, 1849,—let us, in language in which "he, being dead, yet speaketh"—

9. "Let us invoke a continuance of the same protecting care which has led us from small beginnings to the eminence we this day occupy; and let us seek to deserve that continuance by prudence and moderation in our councils; by well-directed attempts to assuage the bitterness which too often marks unavoidable differences of opinion; by the promulgation and practice of just and liberal principles; and by an enlarged patriotism, which shall acknowledge no limits but those of our own wide-spread Republic."

Death of John C. Calhoun.—In the same year, 1850, the death of John C. Calhoun occurred. This distinguished man was born in South Carolina, in 1782. He was for six years a representative in Congress; for a number of years was a United States Senator; was Secretary of War in Monroe's Cabinet; and was twice elected Vice-President of the United States. In 1845, while Secretary of State in Tyler's Cabinet, he was "the author of the annexation of Texas."

Eulogy on John C. Calhoun.—*Webster.*

1. Mr. President, I hope the Senate will indulge me in adding a very few words to what has already been said. My apology for this is the very long acquaintance which has subsisted between Mr. Calhoun and myself. We were of the same age. I made my first entrance into the House of Representatives in May, 1813. I there found Mr. Calhoun. He had already been a member of that body for two or three years. I found him then an active and efficient member of the assembly to which he belonged, taking a decided part, and exercising a decided influence, in all its deliberations.

2. He was a man of undoubted genius and commanding talent. All the country and all the world admit that. His mind was both perceptive and vigorous. It was clear, quick, and strong. Sir, the eloquence of Mr. Calhoun, or the manner of his exhibition of his sentiments in public bodies, was part of his intellectual character. It grew out of the qualities of his mind. It was plain, strong, terse, condensed, concise; sometimes impassioned,—still always severe. Rejecting ornament, not often seeking far for illustration, his power consisted in the plainness of his propositions, in the closeness of his logic, and in the earnestness and energy of his manner.

3. These are the qualities, as I think, which have enabled him, through such a long course of years, to speak often, and yet always command attention. His demeanor as a senator is well known to us all; is appreciated, venerated, by us all. No man was more respectful to others; no man carried himself with greater decorum; no man with superior dignity. I think there is not one of us but felt, when he last addressed us from his seat in the Senate—his form still erect, with a voice by no

means indicating such a degree of physical weakness as did in fact possess him, with clear tones, and an impressive, and I may say an imposing, manner,—who did not feel that he might imagine that we saw before us a senator of Rome, when Rome survived.

4. Sir, I have not, in public nor in private life, known a more assiduous person in the discharge of his appropriate duties. I have known no man who wasted less of life in what is called recreation, or employed less of it in any pursuits not connected with the immediate discharge of his duty. He seemed to have no recreation but the pleasure of conversation with his friends.

5. There was a charm in his conversation not often found. He delighted, especially, in conversation and intercourse with young men. I suppose that there has been no man among us, who had more winning manners, in such an intercourse and such conversation, with men comparatively young, than Mr. Calhoun. I believe one great power of his character in general, was his conversational talent. I believe it is that, as well as a consciousness of his high integrity, and the greatest reverence for his talents and ability, that has made him so endeared an object to the people of the State to which he belonged.

6. Mr. President, he had the basis, the indispensable basis, of all high character; and that was unspotted integrity, unimpeached honor. If he had aspirations, they were high, and honorable, and noble. There was nothing groveling, or low, or meanly selfish, that came near the head or the heart of Mr. Calhoun. However, sir, he may have differed from others of us in his political opinions or his political principles, those principles and those opinions will now descend to posterity under the sanction of a great name.

7. He has lived long enough; he has done enough; and he has done it so well, so successfully, so honorably, as to connect himself for all time with the records of his country. He is now a historical character. Those of us who have known him here will find that he has left upon our minds and upon our hearts a strong and lasting impression, of his person, his char-

acter, and his public performances, which, while we live, will never be obliterated.

8. We shall, hereafter, I am sure, indulge in it as a grateful recollection, that we have lived in his age; that we have been his cotemporaries; that we have seen him, and heard him, and known him. We shall delight to speak of him to those who are rising up to fill our places. And, when the time shall come that we ourselves shall go, one after another, in succession, to our graves, we shall carry with us a deep sense of his genius and character; his honor and integrity; his amiable deportment in private life; and the purity of his exalted patriotism.—*Speech in the U. S. Senate.*

Death of Henry Clay.—This illustrious statesman and orator died at Washington, on the 29th of June, 1852, in the 76th year of his age. For fervid and impassioned eloquence he has had few equals in the history of the country. The compromise measures of 1850, as already stated, were earnestly advocated by him as the means of saving the country from the peril of disunion and civil war. Unhappily, his efforts to prevent the latter subsequently proved unavailing.

Oratory of Henry Clay.—*S. N. Sweet.*

1. It is generally believed that Greece and Rome produced the greatest orators the world has ever seen; but it seems to me that some of the moderns are equal, if not superior, to the most renowned orators of ancient times. All who have had the pleasure of listening to *Henry Clay*, have had a good opportunity to

> "Hear and learn the secret power
> Of harmony, in tone and numbers."

2. In the spring of 1836, the writer heard Mr. Clay address the Senate of the United States four hours on the Land Bill; and it appears to me that he was distinguished for those rhetorical qualities by means of which Demosthenes, Cicero, and Pericles immortalized their names. It is a truth, equally proclaimed by the voice of antiquity and of modern times, that the orator must stand or fall by his delivery. Mr. Clay's most excellent elocution was the principal part of his eloquence. In

concluding the great speech adverted to, he said: "I shall soon lie cold and lifeless in the grave," in such a pathetic manner, that most of his hearers, including the leading members of the Senate, were in tears. His intonations of voice, and his gestures, were such

> "As skill and graceful nature might suggest,
> To a proficient of the tragic scene."

3. Heaven, indeed, seems particularly to have fitted Mr. Clay's physical, mental, and moral faculties for a statesman and orator. He did not acquire a collegiate education, nor was he the less eloquent on that account. Mr. Fowler, a distinguished writer in the city of New York, well observes: "Eloquence can never be dug up among Latin rubbish or Grecian mythology[v]."

4. It is equally true that it can never be written. It must be *felt* and spoken. It has also been truthfully said, that "thoughts are in the brain, like flowers in their native soil; but on paper they are like exotics[v] in the greenhouse, probably maintaining a dwarf existence, but oftener killed by transplanting." By dispensing with notes, and following the suggestions of imagination and emotion, the immortal Clay was enabled to

> "Snatch a grace beyond the reach of art."

5. Although he was capable of speaking, and that, too, most eloquently, on the impulse of the moment, he did not often appear before an audience, unaided by the advantages of premeditation and study. It does not follow that a train of thought which is prepared, must be written. President Wayland, of Brown University, expresses the opinion, in his discourse on the "Apostolic Ministry," that "the value of written discourses has been, in this country, greatly overrated. Speaking an unwritten train of thought, is, by far, the noblest and most effective exercise of mind, provided the labor of preparation, in a written and unwritten train of thought, be the same."

6. It is hoped that the days of eloquence are not passed, but are yet to come. It cannot, however, reasonably be anticipated, that any age or country will ever produce a more graceful, impressive, and captivating speaker than Henry Clay.

"He, on whose name each distant eye shall gaze,
The mighty sea-mark of those troubled days;
He, grand of soul, of genius unconfined,
Born to delight, instruct, and mend mankind;
Clay! in whose breast a Roman ardor glowed,
Whose copious tongue with Grecian richness flowed."

Death of Daniel Webster.—Webster, the third of the great American triumvirate[v] (Calhoun, Clay, Webster), expired but a few months after the death of his distinguished compeer, Clay (Oct. 24, 1852). President Fillmore, in his message to Congress in the following December, thus alluded to this event: "Within a few weeks the public mind has been deeply affected by the death of Daniel Webster, filling, at his decease, the office of Secretary of State. His commanding talent, his great political and professional eminence, his well-tried patriotism, and his long and faithful services in the most important public trusts, have caused his death to be lamented throughout the country, and have earned for him a lasting place in our history."

Eulogy on Daniel Webster.—*Clark.*

1. DANIEL WEBSTER was great in all the elements of his character:—great in original mental strength; great in varied and vast acquirements; great in quick and keen perception; great in subtle, logical discrimination; great in force of thought; great in power of intense and rigid analysis; great in rare and beautiful combination of talent; great in ability to make an effort to command his powers; great in range and acuteness of vision, for he could see like a prophet. Hence his decision of character; his bold, manly, independent thought; his whole sovereignty of mind.

2. No man, probably, ever lived, who could calculate, with such mathematical certainty, the separate effect of human actions, or the intricate, combined, and complicated influence of every movement, social, political, or personal. He could define and determine the very destiny of influence. This is the key to the problem of his greatness, an explanation to the miracle of his power. We are proud of his greatness, because it is American—wholly American! The very impulses of his heart were American.

3. The spirit of American institutions had infused itself into his life—had become a part of his being. He was proud of his

country; proud of her commerce; proud of her manufactures; proud of her agriculture; proud of her institutions of art and science; and proud of her wealth, her resources, and her labor; and all in turn were proud of him. His patriotism was not bounded by the narrow limits of sectional interest nor hemmed in by state lines, nor regulated and biased by local policies. It was as broad as his country. He knew a North and a South, an East and a West; but he knew them only as one,—"One and inseparable!"

4. As a forensic[v] orator, I know of no age, past or present, which can boast his superior. He united the boldness and energy of the Grecian, and the grandeur and strength of the Roman, to an original simplicity which neither Grecian nor Roman possessed. He did not deal in idle declamation and lofty expression; his ideas were not embalmed in rhetorical embellishments, nor buried up in the superfluous tinselry of metaphor and trope. He clothed them for the occasion; and, if the crisis demanded, they stood forth naked in all their native majesty, and with a power which would not bend to the passion, but only stooped to conquer the reason.

5. Sublime, indeed, it was to see that giant mind, when roused in all its grandeur, sweep over the fields of reason and imagination, bearing down all opposition, as with the steady and resistless power of the ocean-billows; to see the eye, the brow, the gesture, the whole man, speaking with an utterance too sublime for language,—a logic too lofty for speech.

Pierce's Administration.—Kansas-Nebraska Bill.—During the administration of Franklin Pierce, who succeeded to the presidency on the 4th of March, 1853, the controversy between the slaveholding and non-slaveholding sections of the Union was renewed, the one being in favor of and the other opposed to the extension of slavery into the territories of the United States. This fresh outbreak had its origin mainly in the introduction, in Congress, of what is known as the "Kansas-Nebraska Bill." By the "Missouri Compromise Bill," passed in 1820, slavery was prohibited in all the territory bought of France (in 1803), north of the southern boundary of Missouri—Missouri excepted. By the "Kansas-Nebraska Bill," which Congress passed in 1854, this prohibition was repealed, and the two territories of Kansas* and Nebraska were duly organized.

* The name Kansas, said to signify *smoky water*, was that of a tribe of Indians.

Civil War in Kansas.—No sooner had this bill passed than emigrants from both sections of the Union began to pour into Kansas, those from the North being determined to make it a free State, while those from the South were equally resolved the other way; and with such undue zeal was the strife carried on, that frequent collisions took place, in which blood was sometimes shed. While these things were in progress, Pierce was succeeded in office by James Buchanan of Pennsylvania.

Buchanan's Administration. — Inauguration. — New States.—The inauguration of Buchanan took place on the 4th of March, 1857. During his administration of four years, three States—all free—were added to the Union: Minnesota was admitted in 1858; Oregon, in 1859; and Kansas, in 1861.

Slavery Question.—Brown's Raid.—The slavery question continued to be the prominent topic of discussion; and an event, which occurred in the fall of 1859, and which created intense excitement throughout the country, not only gave increased impulse to the discussion, but greatly aggravated the feeling then prevailing at the South against the North. This was "John Brown's raid." Brown's object was the liberation of slaves. With that in view, he and twenty-one associates seized the arsenal at Harper's Ferry, for the purpose of making it a rendezvous; but the movement was a total failure. Those engaged in it were overpowered by state and national troops; thirteen of their number were killed, two escaped, and the rest, including Brown, were tried and hung.

Election of Abraham Lincoln.—As Buchanan's term of office drew toward its close, no less than four candidates were nominated to succeed him; and after an exciting canvass, in which the slavery question was the all-absorbing one, the election resulted in favor of Abraham Lincoln, the candidate of the Republican party.

Action of South Carolina.—When it became known that the party opposed to the further extension of slavery had been successful, and that Lincoln would be the next president, public meetings were held in South Carolina to bring about a secession of that State from the Union: and, on the 20th of December, 1860, an ordinance of secession was passed by a state convention held in Charleston.

Hostilities at Charleston.—Six days after, Major Anderson, commanding at Fort Moultrie, withdrew his force of eighty men from that fort, and established himself at Fort Sumter, a place of greater security. This being regarded by the South Carolinians as a hostile act, they at once seized the custom-house at Charleston, as well as other property belonging to the general government, and began to make preparations to drive Anderson from his new position. The steamer, Star of the West, sent from New York with supplies and re-enforcements for Fort Sumter, arrived off Charleston, January 10th, 1861; but, being fired upon by batteries which had been erected and manned by authority of South Carolina, she was compelled to put back.

Ordinances of Secession.—During the month of January, five of the slave-States,—Mississippi, Florida, Alabama, Georgia, and Louisiana,—following the lead of South Carolina, passed secession ordinances; and, on the first of February, Texas did the same.

Further Acts of the Secessionists.—On the 4th of February, a Congress, composed of delegates from all these States, except Texas, met at Montgomery, and, four days after, organized a government by the adoption of a "Provisional Constitution," assuming the title of the "Confederate States of America." On the 9th, this Congress elected Jefferson Davis "President of the Confederacy;" and, on the 18th, Texas being represented, he was duly inaugurated.

Forts, arsenals, navy-yards, custom-houses, and other property belonging to the general government, within the boundaries of these States, were seized by state authority for the Confederacy. Fort Pickens, near Pensacola, which had been saved by Lieut. Slemmer, with Fort Sumter, and the forts at the southern extremity of Florida, alone remained in the possession of the United States. In such a sad and distracted condition were the affairs of the country when Abraham Lincoln entered upon the office of president.

LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION.

The Inauguration of Abraham Lincoln.—*Greeley.*

1. The 4th of March, 1861, though its early morning had been cloudy and chilly, was a remarkably bright and genial day at Washington. To the children of harsh New England, it seemed more like May than March. Expectations and threats of convulsion had rather increased than lessened the throng, wherein all sections of the unseceded States were liberally represented; though the Federal District, and the adjacent counties of Maryland and Virginia, doubtless supplied by far the larger share of it.

2. Menaces that the president elect would never be permitted to take the oath of office—that he would be assassinated in the act, if no other mode of preventing it should promise success—had been so freely and loudly made, that apprehensions of some concerted attempt at violence or tumult were widely entertained and fully justified. Lieutenant-General Scott had taken the fullest military precautions that his limited force of regulars—perhaps one thousand in all—would permit; and there was a considerable muster of uniformed militia. The proces-

PART OF
THE
SOUTHERN STATES
MISSOURI
ILLINOIS
INDIANA
OHIO
KENTUCKY
TENNESSEE
ARKANSAS
MISSISSIPPI
ALABAMA
GEORGIA
FLORIDA
SOUTH CAROLINA
NORTH CAROLINA
VIRGINIA
W. VIRGINIA
MARYLAND
DELAWARE
NEW JERSEY
ATLANTIC OCEAN
Lexington
Boonville
JEFFERSON CITY
ST. LOUIS
Alton
SPRINGFIELD
Rolla
Carthage
Dug Spring
Springfield
Pea Ridge
Batesville
Cairo
Belmont
New Madrid
Paducah
Isld. No.10
Ft. Henry
Ft. Donelson
Franklin
NASHVILLE
Murfreesboro
Ft. Pillow
Shiloh
MEMPHIS
Pittsburgh L.
CHATTANOOGA
Corinth
Iuka
Knoxville
Resaca
Elyton
Meridian
VICKSBURG
JACKSON
NATCHEZ
Shreveport
Ft. De Russy
Bayou Sara
Port Hudson
BATON ROUGE
Donaldson V.
NEW ORLEANS
MOBILE
MONTGOMERY
Andersonville
Jacksonville
Irwinville
TALLAHASSEE
Olustee
ATLANTA
Jonesboro
MILLEDGEVILLE
COLUMBUS
SAVANNAH
Hilton Head
CHARLESTON
COLUMBIA
WILMINGTON
Ft. Fisher
C. Fear
C. Hatteras
Greensboro
RALEIGH
Averysboro
Chambersburg
Hagerstown
Monocacy
Antietam
Harper's Ferry
Annapolis
BALTIMORE
WASHINGTON
Alexandria
Fredericksburg
Bowling Green
Williamsburg
RICHMOND
PETERSBURG
YORKTOWN
NORFOLK
FT. MONROE
Lynchburg
Philippi
CHARLESTON
Perryville
LOUISVILLE
New Albany
INDIANAPOLIS
CINCINNATI
COLUMBUS
FRANKFORT
Missouri Riv.
Mississippi Riv.
Wabash R.
Ohio River
Cumberland River
Mill Spring
Tennessee Riv.
Tombigbee R.
Alabama R.
Chattahoochee Riv.
Flint R.
Savannah R.
Oconee R.
Altamaha R.
Santee R.
Great Pedee R.
Cape Fear R.
Neuse R.
Pumbco S.
Roanoke R.
Albemarle Sd.
Chesapeake B.
Delaware R.
Potomac R.
James R.
Red Riv.
Pearl R.
White R.
Arkansas River
Mississippi River
Ft. Henry
Ft. Donelson
Ft. Pillow
Ft. De Russy
Mississippi
Alabama
Chattahoochee
Roanoke
Delaware
C. May

sion, partly civic, which escorted the retiring and incoming presidents, who rode in the same carriage to the Capitol, was quite respectable—unusually so for that non-enthusiastic, and, as yet, strongly pro-slavery metropolis.

3. The Senate had been sitting through most of the preceding forty-eight hours, though this was Monday, and barely concluded the labors of the session in time to allow vice-president Breckenridge to resign the Chair in a few courteous words, and take his seat on the floor as a member, while vice-president Hamlin left the floor to take the Chair with as little parade—the two thus exchanging places. This done, and several new Senators besides Mr. Breckenridge having been sworn in, the space in the chamber allotted for this occasion to the Embassadors of Foreign Powers ("Dixie"* not included) was promptly filled by the diplomatic body in full-dress; the magnates blazing with stars and orders. Soon, the Justices of the Supreme Court entered in a body, and the assemblage rose in silent homage, and stood till they were seated.

4. The remaining space on the floor was now filled to its utmost capacity by members of the House, just adjourned; and it was soon afterward announced that the presidential party had entered the edifice. On its appearance, the whole assemblage proceeded to the magnificent and spacious eastern portico of the Capitol, on which a platform had been erected, and in front of which a considerable space had been cleared, and was held by the military.

5. The president elect was barely introduced to the vast concourse by Colonel Edward D. Baker, Senator from Oregon, and received with cheers from perhaps a fourth of the thirty thousand persons confronting him. Silence having succeeded, Mr. Lincoln unrolled a manuscript, and, in a firm, clear, penetrating voice, read his inaugural address.—*The American Conflict.*

* The term *Dixie*, applied to the South, is supposed to be derived from the geographical line, drawn by Mason and *Dixon*, which separated the free from the slave-holding States. Negro melodies, sung in all parts of the country, have given a wide currency to the name.

The Constitution and the People.—*Lincoln.*

[From the Inaugural Address, March 4th, 1861.]

1. This country, with its institutions, belongs to the people who inhabit it. Whenever they shall grow weary of the existing government, they can exercise their constitutional right of amending, or their revolutionary right to dismember or overthrow it. I cannot be ignorant of the fact that many worthy and patriotic citizens are desirous of having the national Constitution amended. While I make no recommendation of amendment, I fully recognize the full authority of the people over the whole subject, to be exercised in either of the modes prescribed in the instrument itself; and I should, under existing circumstances, favor, rather than oppose, a fair opportunity's being afforded the people to act upon it.

2. I will venture to add, that to me the convention mode seems preferable, in that it allows amendments to originate with the people themselves, instead of only permitting them to take or reject propositions originated by others not especially chosen for the purpose, and which might not be precisely such as they would wish either to accept or refuse. I understand that a proposed amendment to the Constitution (which amendment, however, I have not seen) has passed Congress, to the effect that the Federal Government shall never interfere with the domestic institutions of States, including that of persons held to service. To avoid misconstruction of what I have said, I depart from my purpose not to speak of particular amendments, so far as to say, that, holding such a provision to be now implied constitutional law, I have no objection to its being made express and irrevocable.

3. The chief magistrate derives all his authority from the people, and they have conferred none upon him to fix the terms for the separation of the States. The people themselves, also, can do this if they choose; but the executive, as such, has nothing to do with it. His duty is to administer the present government as it came to his hands, and to transmit it,

unimpaired by him, to his successor. Why should there not be a patient confidence in the ultimate justice of the people? Is there any better or any equal hope in the world?

4. In our present differences, is either party without faith of being in the right? If the Almighty Ruler of nations, with His eternal truth and justice, be on your side of the North, or on yours of the South, that truth and that justice will surely prevail by the judgment of this great tribunal—the American people. By the frame of the government under which we live, this same people have wisely given their public servants but little power for mischief, and have with equal wisdom provided for the return of that little to their own hands at very short intervals. While the people retain their virtue and vigilance, no administration, by any extreme wickedness or folly, can very seriously injure the government in the short space of four years.

5. My countrymen, one and all, think calmly and well upon this whole subject. Nothing valuable can be lost by taking time. If there be an object to hurry any of you, in hot haste, to a step which you would never take deliberately, that object will be frustrated by taking time; but no good object can be frustrated by it. Such of you as are now dissatisfied still have the old Constitution unimpaired, and, on the sensitive point, the laws of your own framing under it; while the new administration will have no immediate power, if it would, to change either.

6. If it were admitted that you who are dissatisfied hold the right side in the dispute, there is still no single reason for precipitate action. Intelligence, patriotism, Christianity, and a firm reliance on Him who has never yet forsaken this favored land, are still competent to adjust, in the best way, all our present difficulties. In your hands, my dissatisfied fellow-countrymen, and not in mine, is the momentous issue of civil war. The government will not assail you. You can have no conflict without being yourselves the aggressors. You can have no oath registered in heaven to destroy the government; while I shall have the most solemn one to "preserve, protect, and defend it."

7. I am loath to close. We are not enemies, but friends. We must not be enemies. Though passion may have strained, it must not break, our bonds of affection. The mystic chords of memory, stretching from every battle-field and patriot-grave to every living heart and hearthstone all over this broad land, will yet swell the chorus of the Union, when again touched, as surely they will be, by the better angels of our nature.

Capture of Fort Sumter.—The assurance of the president that there was no disposition on the part of the new administration to interfere with the vested constitutional rights of any of the States, had no effect whatever upon the Southern leaders. Regarding their duty to the general government as secondary to the obligation they owed to their respective States, they organized an army, and ordered Gen. Beauregard (*bō'rē-gard*) to reduce Fort Sumter. Accordingly, on the morning of the 12th of April, the first shot was fired upon the fort. After a bombardment of thirty-four hours, the defense being but feeble, in consequence of the smallness of the garrison and the poor supply of ammunition, Anderson was compelled to capitulate. On the following day (April 14th) he departed with his command, and sailed for New York.

Uprising of the North.—The news of this event produced an almost uncontrollable excitement throughout the country; and the president's proclamation, issued on the 15th, calling for troops, was responded to at once by all the free States. A Massachusetts regiment, while on its way to defend the national capital, was attacked (April 19th) in Baltimore by a mob of Southern sympathizers. Two of the soldiers were killed and a number wounded.

Conduct of the Slave-States.—With the exception of Delaware, not one of the slave-States arrayed itself promptly and decidedly on the side of the Union. Before June, Virginia, Arkansas, Tennessee, and North Carolina, passed secession ordinances. Virginians seized the armory at Harper's Ferry and the navy-yard at Norfolk, both places having been abandoned by the Union officers in charge, after a large part of the property contained therein had been destroyed.

Movements of the National Army.—It can hardly be said that the national government made any offensive movement before the 24th of May. Then Gen. Scott, commanding the Union army, sent troops into Virginia; and Arlington Heights, opposite Washington, as well as the town of Alexandria, were occupied. Some days after (June 10th), a force was sent by Gen. Butler, commanding at Fortress Monroe, to capture a body of Confederate troops posted at Little Bethel, a village on the North side of the James river. During the night, two of the Union regiments fired on each other by mistake; and the Confederates, being thus made aware of their approach, escaped. The Union troops then pushed on, and were severely repulsed in an attack upon the Confederate works at Big Bethel.

Bethel.—*A. J. H. Duganne.*

We mustered at midnight, in darkness we formed,
And the whisper went round of a fort to be stormed;
But no drum-beat had called us, no trumpet we heard,
And no voice of command, but our colonel's low word,—
"Column! Forward!"

And out, through the mist and the murk of the moon,
From the beaches of Hampton our barges were borne;
And we heard not a sound, save the sweep of the oar,
Till the word of our colonel came up from the shore,—
"Column! Forward!"

Through green-tasselled cornfields our columns were thrown,
And like corn by the red scythe of fire we were mown;
While the cannon's fierce ploughings new-furrowed the plain,
That our blood might be planted for Liberty's grain,—
"Column! Forward!"

Oh! the fields of fair June have no lack of sweet flowers,
But their rarest and best breathe no fragrance like ours;
And the sunshine of June, sprinkling gold on the corn,
Hath no harvest that ripeneth like Bethel's red morn,—
"Column! Forward!"

When our heroes, like bridegrooms, with lips and with breath
Drank the first kiss of Danger, and clasped her in death;
And the heart of brave Winthrop* grew mute with his lyre,
When the plumes of his genius lay moulting in fire,—
"Column! Forward!"

Where he fell shall be sunshine as bright as his name,
And the grass where he slept shall be green as his fame;
For the gold of the Pen and the steel of the Sword
Write his deeds—in his blood—on the land he adored,—
"Column! Forward!"

And the soul of our comrade shall sweeten the air,
And the flowers and the grass-blades his memory upbear;
While the breath of his genius, like music in leaves,
With the corn-tassels whisper, and sings in the sheaves,—
"Column! Forward!"

* Major Theodore Winthrop fell while cheering on his men and was left on the battle-field Lieutenant Greble was also killed in this battle.

Battle of Bull Run.—The Confederate army, to the number of about one hundred thousand men, occupied a line through Virginia, from Harper's Ferry to Norfolk; their strongest position being on the road from Washington to Richmond, at a place called Manassas Junction. Richmond was then the capital of the Southern Confederacy, the transfer from Montgomery having been decided upon in May. About the middle of July, a large army, commanded by Gen. McDowell, marched to attack the Confederates, under Beauregard, at Manassas Junction. On the 18th, a conflict took place near Centreville. On the 21st, occurred the battle of Bull Run, a desperate conflict, in which more than forty thousand men were engaged. At length the Confederates, being largely re-enforced, prevailed; and the Union troops, panic-stricken, fled in disorder toward Washington. The Union loss reached nearly three thousand men, while that of the Confederates did not much exceed half that number.

McClellan's Army.—War in Missouri.—General McClellan was then called to take the chief command, General Scott having resigned on account of physical infirmities; and an immense army was collected at Washington, with the purpose of invading Virginia, and capturing Richmond. This army did not set out until April, 1862. Meanwhile, an active warfare had been carried on in Missouri, with varying success.

Union Naval Victories.—The Federal navy had been greatly increased, and, by means of it, strong positions were wrested from the Confederates. Two coast expeditions—one to North Carolina, and the other to South Carolina—were completely successful. In the first, Commodore Stringham and General Butler, commanding a naval and military force, captured the Confederate forts at Hatteras Inlet. In the second, Commodore Du-pont', with a fleet of about fifty vessels, captured the forts at Port Royal entrance.

Capture of Confederate Commissioners.—On the sea an event occurred in November, which produced great excitement both in the United States and Great Britain. Captain Wilkes (*wilks*), in command of the frigate San Jacinto, intercepted an English steamer, and took from her Messrs. Mason and Sli-dell', Confederate commissioners to Europe; but as the seizure was contrary to the rights of neutral vessels, and the British government resented the act as illegal, the two prisoners were given up. This affair tended to make still less amicable the relations which, at the time, existed between the United States and England; for, before the last of the States that passed secession ordinances joined the Confederacy, Queen Victoria (May 13th, 1861) had acknowledged the South as a belligerent power; and France, soon after, pursued the same course.

Capture of Forts Henry and Donelson.—In February (1862), Commodore Foote, commanding a fleet of gunboats, sailed up the Tennessee, and, on the 6th, reduced Fort Henry. Bowling Green was soon after abandoned. On the 16th, General Grant, with the co-operation of the fleet, effected the important capture of Fort Donelson, on the Cumberland, with sixteen thou-

sand prisoners. The Confederates thereupon evacuated Columbus and Nashville.

Other Union Victories.—An important success, meanwhile, attended the efforts of the Unionists on the Atlantic coast. A land and naval expedition, sailing from Hampton Roads, under General Burnside and Commodore Goldsborough, captured Roanoke Island (Feb. 8th). This success was followed by the destruction of the Confederate flotilla at Elizabeth City, by the capture of that and other places, and by a victory gained by Burnside at Newbern. An expedition fitted out at Port Royal captured Fort Pulaski.

The Ram Merrimac, or Virginia.—The Merrimac, which had been sunk at Norfolk by the Union commander there at the beginning of the war, had been subsequently raised by the Confederates, cut down almost to the water's edge, covered with a plating of iron, and named the Virginia. On the 8th of March * she steamed out from Norfolk to Hampton Roads, and destroyed the United States vessels Cumberland and Congress. The night set in, and it was anticipated that next day all the national vessels in the vicinity of Fortress Monroe would be destroyed. But, during the night, the Monitor, a newly invented floating battery, commanded by Lieutenant Worden (*wur'den*), arrived from New York, and on the following day encountered the Virginia. After a contest of several hours, the latter, in a disabled condition, returned to Norfolk.

The Merrimac and the Monitor.—*Estvàn.*

[The author of the work from which this piece is an extract, was a colonel of cavalry in the Confederate army.]

1. GREAT activity was now observable on board the enemy's two frigates [Cumberland and Congress]. Their ports opened, and their formidable guns showed their angry mouths, as if in defiance of the approaching foe. As soon as our vessels had got within range, all the gunboats kept some distance astern, and the Merrimac passed on steadily by herself. As soon as she got alongside of the Congress, she fired a broadside into her, which was immediately replied to by that frigate, and by all the land batteries as well, but with literally no effect, for the shot glided harmlessly off the Merrimac's iron sides like so many hailstones.

2. Thus unhurt, she steamed toward the Cumberland, without taking the slightest notice of the fire directed upon her by the unfortunate ship which she had doomed to destruction. · When

* On the same day, General Curtis, ably seconded by General Sigel, defeated the Confederates under Van Dorn, at Pea Ridge, Arkansas, after three days' hard fighting.

within forty yards of the Cumberland, the crew of the Merrimac could distinctly hear the orders that were given on board that frigate, and the remarks made by her crew, "What is this coming? What can she be about?"

3. The commander of the Merrimac now raked the Cumberland's decks with an enormous cylinder shell, and this fearful missile dealt tremendous havoc amongst her crew. The Merrimac then swept round in a half circle, running her pointed beak straight into the sides of the Cumberland. The captain of that frigate, meanwhile, directed a heavy fire upon the Merrimac from every gun which could be brought to bear upon her at such close quarters; the shots, however, glanced harmlessly off the deck and sides of this sea-monster, which continued its course, and the Merrimac's sharp point was soon buried in the frigate's stalwart hull. A stunning crash is heard, and the next minute the magnificent frigate is seen reeling about like a drunken man. Her brave captain, unwilling to yield, continues his fire in spite of the desperate condition of the ship.

4. Gradually the ship settles down deeper and deeper in the water, and the waves are seen pouring in at the portholes; once more she rises and vomits forth fire on her assailant, and then, finally heeling over, the fine ship sinks to rise no more, carrying a large number of her ill-fated crew along with her. She went down noiselessly, her brave crew emulating her in this respect by meeting their fate without uttering a cry. For a few moments after she sank, the waters were disturbed where she had but so lately been riding in all the pride of conscious strength, and then settled calmly over her.

5. The destruction of this splendid ship, with so many of her crew, in broad daylight and the calmest weather, in the midst of this beautiful bay, must have caused a panic among the remainder of the enemy's squadron. Nevertheless, the Congress kept her ground, and prepared to defend the honor of her flag against the redoubtable iron-clad. The Merrimac now steered straight for that frigate; but her career was presently checked by getting into shoal water. Her captain, judging that it would be impracticable for him to get any closer to the Con-

gress, then opened a heavy fire upon that ship. Ere long the Merrimac's projectiles pierced through the frigate's wooden walls, and caused such destruction on board that her commander was obliged to strike his flag and surrender.

6. Captain Buchanan then ceased firing, and signalled the gunboat Beaufort, ordering Lieutenant Parker, her commander, to go on board the Congress and receive her flag, and to bring away all the officers and crew. Captain Smith and Lieutenant Prendergast, of the Congress, in reply to this latter summons, requested permission to remain on board their ship, in order to take care of the wounded, which was readily granted by Captain Buchanan.

7. At this juncture, however, the land batteries most injudiciously again opened fire upon the gunboat Beaufort, and although no casualty ensued therefrom, Captain Buchanan was so incensed that he ordered red-hot shot to be fired into the Congress to effect her total destruction. Just about this time, however, he was struck on the foot by a Minié bullet, and was obliged to hand over the command to his first lieutenant, Jones, to whom he gave stringent orders to sink the unfortunate Congress. The lieutenant executed this command to the letter; and, in spite of all the efforts of the enemy's frigate Minnesota, and of the Roanoke and Lawrence, to assist their stricken consort, the Congress was utterly destroyed.

8. Meanwhile, a feeling of prodigious excitement pervaded the crowd of spectators on shore. Two of the enemy's formidable frigates had already been destroyed by our iron scourge, and the next day, no doubt, she would effect the demolition of the enemy's remaining ships. Our sanguine people already indulged in pleasant anticipations of a re-opened intercourse with Europe. So certain, indeed, did many feel of the realization of their hopes, that they at once set about taking measures for the opening of the port preparatory to various mercantile speculations. They complacently dilated, too, upon the consequences that might be expected to ensue from the triumphal progress of the Merrimac to Washington, not doubting that she would destroy everything in her way thither. Probably

but few were composed enough to sleep that night. Thousands, indeed, encamped on the shores of the bay, eagerly awaiting the dawn of day and the recommencement of the naval battle.

9. The day broke at last, and discovered an enormous assemblage of people awaiting the coming event in eager expectation. The enemy's frigates Roanoke and Lawrence had sought protection under the guns of Fort Monroe, but the colossal frigate Minnesota still lay quietly at anchor in the bay. Alongside of her, however, was to be seen a curious little craft of no particular form, resembling more a capsized whaler than anything else. By and by, the Merrimac steamed out into the bay toward her antagonist, amidst the vociferous cheers of the thousands collected on the shores.

10. Captain Buchanan had sent his gunboats Jamestown and Yorktown ahead to reconnoitre the strange-looking little craft. They approached her with the utmost caution, and, as they gradually drew near, she fired two shots at them from the enormous guns that now peeped from the turret on her deck, by way of welcome or warning; they received the compliment in the latter sense, and hastily retreated. The Merrimac now put on full steam, and bore down on her little enemy with the object of running her beak into her so as to sink her by sheer weight.

11. She had already got to within thirty yards' distance, and was preparing for the fatal thrust, when the Monitor twisted suddenly round, like a fish, and at the same moment discharged one of her heavy guns point blank at the Merrimac, to let her know that she had now to encounter a foe as formidable as herself. The Merrimac then slowly ranged alongside her diminutive antagonist, and both opened fire with ordnance of a more destructive character than had ever before been employed in naval encounters; 100 and 120 pound Armstrong and other equally powerful guns, discharging their fire at a distance of one hundred and fifty yards. But it was to little purpose, the balls glancing off equally from the iron sides of both ships.

This useless cannonade continued for more than two hours, when another attempt was made by the Merrimac to

run down her enemy; but the Monitor again skillfully avoided the intended shock, and managed, moreover, to send a shell through one of the port-holes of her antagonist, spreading death and destruction among the crew. The Merrimac now continued her fire with redoubled fury, but it was steadily replied to; and the commander of the Merrimac, seeing the impossibility of seriously damaging his opponent, at last veered round, and steamed away toward Norfolk, leaving the Monitor in possession of the waters which had been the scene of this unparalleled conflict.— *War-Pictures from the South.*

The Last Broadside.—*Elizabeth T. P. Beach.*

[These verses were written to commemorate the heroism of the crew of the "Cumberland," who bravely fired a last broadside while the ship was sinking, in answer to the gallant hero, Lieutenant Morris, who shouted: "Shall we give them a broadside as she goes?"]

SHALL we give them a broadside, my boys, as she goes?
Shall we send yet another to tell,
In iron-tongued words, to Columbia's foes,
How bravely her sons say Farewell?

Ay! what though we sink 'neath the turbulent wave,
'Tis with DUTY and RIGHT at the helm;
And over the form should the fierce waters rave,
No tide can the spirit o'erwhelm!

For swift o'er the billows of Charon's dark stream
We'll pass to the immortal shore,
Where the waters of life in brilliancy beam,
And the pure float in peace evermore.

"Shall we give them a broadside once more, my brave men?"
"Ay! Ay!" was the full, earnest cry;
"A broadside! A broadside! we'll give them again!
Then for God and the Right nobly die!"

"Haste! Haste!"—for amid all that battling din
Comes a gurgling sound fraught with fear,
As swift flowing waters pour rushingly in;
Up! up! till her port-holes they near.

No blanching!—no faltering!—still fearless all seem;
Each man firm to duty doth bide;
A flash! and a "Broadside!" a shout! a careen!
And the Cumberland sinks 'neath the tide!

The "Star-Spangled Banner" still floating above!
As a beacon upon the dark wave!
Our Ensign of Glory, proud streaming in love,
O'er the tomb of the "Loyal and Brave!"

Bold hearts! mighty spirits! "tried gold" of our land!
A halo of glory your meed!
All honored, the noble-souled Cumberland band!
So true in Columbia's need!

Victories on the Mississippi.—The Union forces at the West, under General Pope, were victorious in March, taking New Madrid. Again they were victorious (April 7th), co-operating with Foote's gunboat fleet in the capture of Island No. 10, with six thousand prisoners. The gunboats then descended the Mississippi, defeating the Confederate fleet, near Fort Pillow. On the 6th of June, Commodore Davis, Foote's successor, gained a victory over the Confederate fleet at Memphis, the town in consequence falling into his hands.

Battle of Shiloh.—Gen. Grant, after his victory at Fort Donelson, proceeded up the Tennessee. On the morning of the 6th of April, his army, while encamped at Shiloh (*shī'lo*), near Pittsburg Landing, was suddenly attacked by Gen. A. S. Johnston's army; and, after a contest which raged till near nightfall, the Union troops were driven to the river, where the gunboats aided them to keep the enemy in check. Gen. Johnston was killed. The arrival of reenforcements under Gen. Buell, enabled Grant to assume the offensive on the following day, and the Confederates, commanded by Beauregard, were driven toward Corinth. The forces engaged in this battle, on both sides, numbered more than a hundred thousand men; and the losses were severe, being not less than twenty thousand.*

Capture of New Orleans.—In Louisiana, the Union cause met with a success of great importance. This was the capture of New Orleans, on the 25th of April. The Union fleet, commanded by Far'ra-gut and Porter, ascended the Mississippi, bombarding and then running past the Confederate forts. The city was reached, and Gen. Butler, taking formal possession, placed it under martial law.

Defeat of General McClellan.—These great victories were counterbalanced by the ill success of McClellan, who had attempted to reach Richmond by the peninsula between the York and James Rivers.† Having arrived within a short distance of the city, he was suddenly attacked, at Fair Oaks, by the Confederates, where a bloody but indecisive contest took place (May 31). A movement of McClellan's to change his base of operations to the James River,

* Rosecrans (*roze'krants*), commanding a division of Grant's army, defeated the Confederates in the battle of I-u-ka (Sept. 19), and in the battle of Corinth (Oct. 4).

† The battle of Williamsburg was fought during the march (May 5).

brought on a series of destructive battles, lasting through seven days (June 25–July 1), the result of which was to leave the Union army in a very weakened condition. In these conflicts the contending armies numbered together not less than two hundred thousand men; and their joint losses amounted to at least thirty thousand.

Invasion of Maryland.—McClellan superseded.—Taking advantage of the weak condition of the Union army, the Confederates, under Gen. Lee, marched toward Washington; but were confronted by the forces of Gen. Banks and Gen. Pope. These were defeated, the latter in the second battle of Bull Run (Aug. 29th and 30th); and Lee crossed the Potomac into Maryland. Meanwhile, McClellan had been recalled from the James, and having assumed the command of the army in Maryland, defeated Lee, in the battle of South Mountain and in the greater conflict of Antietam (*an-te'tam*) (Sept. 17). Lee at once withdrew across the Potomac; but McClellan made no pursuit, and in November was superseded by Burnside.

Barbara Frietchie.—*Whittier.*

[It was during this invasion of Maryland, at the town of Frederick, in that State, that the interesting incident described in the following poem, by Whittier, occurred. It illustrated very impressively the affection at that period universally evinced by the loyal citizens of the Republic, for the national flag.]

Up from the meadows rich with corn,
Clear in the cool September morn,

The cluster'd spires of Frederick stand,
Green-wall'd by the hills of Maryland.

Round about them orchards sweep,
Apple and peach-tree fruited deep,

Fair as a garden of the Lord,
To the eyes of the famish'd rebel horde,

On that pleasant morn of the early Fall,
When Lee march'd over the mountain wall,

Over the mountains winding down,
Horse and foot, into Frederick town.

Forty flags with their silver stars,
Forty flags with their crimson bars,

Flapp'd in the morning wind: the sun
Of noon look'd down, and saw not one.

Up rose old Barbara Frietchie then,
Bow'd with her fourscore years and ten;

Bravest of all in Frederick town,
She took up the flag the men haul'd down;

In her attic window the staff she set,
To show that one heart was loyal yet.

Up the street came the rebel tread,
Stonewall Jackson riding ahead.

Under his slouch'd hat, left and right,
He glanced; the old flag met his sight:

"Halt!"—the dust-brown ranks stood fast;
"Fire!"—out blazed the rifle-blast.

It shivered the window, pane and sash;
It rent the banner with seam and gash.

Quick, as it fell, from the broken staff
Dame Barbara snatched the silken scarf;

She leaned far out on the window-sill,
And shook it forth with a royal will:

"Shoot, if you must, this old gray head,
But spare your country's flag!" she said.

A shade of sadness, a blush of shame,
Over the face of the leader came;

The nobler nature within him stirred
To life, at that woman's deed and word:

"Who touches a hair of yon gray head
Dies like a dog! March on!" he said.

All day long through Frederick street
Sounded the tread of marching feet;

All day long that free flag toss'd
Over the heads of the rebel host.

Ever its torn folds rose and fell
On the loyal winds that loved it well;

And through the hill-gaps, sunset light
Shone over it with a warm good-night.

Barbara Frietchie's work is o'er,
And the rebel rides on his raids no more.

Honor to her! and let a tear
Fall, for her sake, on Stonewall's bier.

Over Barbara Frietchie's grave,
Flag of Freedom and Union, wave!

Peace, and order, and beauty, draw
Round thy symbol of light and law;

And ever the stars above look down
On thy stars below in Frederick town!

History of Our Flag.—*Rev. A. P. Putnam.*

[From a discourse delivered at Roxbury, Mass.]

1. THE history of our glorious old flag is of exceeding interest, and brings back to us a throng of sacred and thrilling associations. The banner of St. Andrew was blue, charged with a white altier or cross, in the form of the letter X, and was used in Scotland as early as the eleventh century. The banner of St. George was white, charged with the red cross, and was used in England as early as the first part of the fourteenth century. By a royal proclamation, dated April 12, 1700, these two crosses were joined together upon the same banner, forming the ancient national flag of England.

2. It was not until Ireland, in 1801, was made a part of Great Britain, that the present national flag of England, so well known as the Union Jack, was completed. But it was the ancient flag of England that constituted the basis of our American banner. Various other flags had indeed been raised at other times by our colonial ancestors. But they were not particularly associated with, or, at least, were not incorporated into and made a part of the destined "Stars and Stripes."

3. It was after Washington had taken command of the first army of the Revolution, at Cambridge, that (January 2, 1776) he unfolded before them the new flag of thirteen stripes of alternate red and white, having upon one of its corners the red and white crosses of St. George and St. Andrew, on a field of blue. And this was the standard which was borne into the city

of Boston when it was evacuated by the British troops, and was entered by the American army.

4. Uniting, as it did, the flags of England and America, it showed that the colonists were not yet prepared to sever the tie that bound them to the mother-country. By that union of flags, they claimed to be a vital and substantial part of the empire of Great Britain, and demanded the rights and privileges which such a relation implied. Yet it was by these thirteen stripes that they made known the union also of the thirteen colonies, the stripes of white declaring the purity and innocence of their cause, and the stripes of red giving forth defiance to cruelty and opposition.

5. On the 14th day of June, 1777, it was resolved by Congress, "That the flag of the thirteen United States be thirteen stripes, alternate red and white, and the Union be thirteen white stars in the blue field." This resolution was made public September 3, 1777, and the flag that was first made and used in pursuance of it was that which led the Americans to victory at Saratoga. Here the thirteen stars were arranged in a circle, as we sometimes see them now, in order better to express the union of the States.

6. In 1794, there having been two more new States added to the Union, it was voted that the alternate stripes, as well as the circling stars, be fifteen in number, and the flag, as thus altered and enlarged, was the one which was borne through all the contests of the war of 1812. But it was thought that the flag would at length become too large if a new stripe should be added with every freshly-admitted State. It was therefore enacted, in 1818, that a permanent return should be made to the original number of thirteen stripes, and that the number of stars should henceforth correspond to the growing number of States.

7. Thus the flag would symbolize the Union as it might be at any given period of its history, and also as it was at the very hour of its birth. It was at the same time suggested that these stars, instead of being arranged in a circle, should be formed into a single star—a suggestion which we occasionally see

adopted. In fine, no particular order seems now to be observed with respect to the arrangement of the constellation. It is enough if only the whole number be there upon that azure field —the blue to be emblematical of perseverance, vigilance, and justice, each star to signify the glory of the State it may represent, and the whole to be eloquent forever of a Union that must be "one and inseparable."

8. What precious associations cluster around our flag! Not alone have our fathers set up this banner in the name of God over the well-won battle-fields of the Revolution, and over the cities and towns which they rescued from despotic rule; but think where also their descendants have carried it, and raised it in conquest or protection! Through what clouds of dust and smoke has it passed—what storms of shot and shell—what scenes of fire and blood! Not only at Saratoga, at Monmouth, and at Yorktown, but at Lundy's Lane and New Orleans, at Buena Vista and Chapultepec. It is the same glorious old flag which, inscribed with the dying words of Lawrence, "Don't give up the ship," was hoisted on Lake Erie by Commodore Perry just on the eve of his great naval victory—the same old flag which our great chieftain bore in triumph to the proud city of the Aztecs, and planted upon the heights of her national palace. Brave hands raised it above the eternal regions of ice in the Arctic seas, and have set it upon the summits of the lofty mountains of the distant West.

9. Where has it not gone, the pride of its friends and the terror of its foes? What countries and what seas has it not visited? Where has not the American citizen been able to stand beneath its guardian folds and defy the world? With what joy and exultation seamen and tourists have gazed upon its stars and stripes, read in it the history of their nation's glory, received from it the full sense of security, and drawn from it the inspirations of patriotism! By it, how many have sworn fealty to their country!

10. What bursts of magnificent eloquence it has called forth from Webster and from Everett! What lyric strains of poetry from Drake and Holmes! How many heroes its folds have

covered in death! How many have lived for it, and how many have died for it! How many, living and dying, have said, in their enthusiastic devotion to its honor, like that young wounded sufferer in the streets of Baltimore, "Oh, the flag! the Stars and Stripes!" and, wherever that flag has gone, it has been the herald of a better day—it has been the pledge of freedom, of justice, of order, of civilization, and of Christianity. Tyrants only have hated it, and the enemies of mankind alone have trampled it to the earth. All who sigh for the triumph of truth and righteousness love and salute it.

Battle of Fredericksburg.—Led by General Burnside, their new commander, the Union army crossed the Rappahannock, the design being to march against Richmond by the route from Fredericksburg. Fredericksburg was taken (Dec. 12th), but, after a disastrous attempt to carry the works behind the city, the river was recrossed.

Emancipation Proclamation.—On the first of January, 1863, President Lincoln issued his memorable proclamation, declaring free all the slaves within the borders of the States at war with the general government. By this measure more than three millions of slaves were declared free. On the same day Gal'ves-ton was taken; and the naval force before the place was captured, destroyed, or dispersed by the Confederates.

Battle of Chancellorsville.—Burnside having, at his own request, been relieved of the command of the Army of the Potomac, was succeeded by Gen. Hooker, who, toward the latter part of April, crossed the Rappahannock, and, encountering Lee (May 3d and 4th) at Chancellorsville, was disastrously defeated, losing more than eleven thousand men, in killed and wounded. He then recrossed the river. In this battle, the Confederate army lost its most brilliant general, Thomas J. Jackson, commonly known as "Stonewall Jackson," * who, toward the close of the action, was mortally wounded, it is said, by the fire of his own men, being, with his staff and escort, mistaken, in the darkness, for a company of Union cavalry.

Second Invasion of Maryland.—Battle of Gettysburg.—On the 9th of June, Lee, whose army numbered nearly a hundred thousand men, began a northward movement; and Hooker followed the invaders into Maryland, where (June 28th) his command was transferred to Gen. Meade. At Gettysburg (*get'tiz-burg*), Pennsylvania, one of the most important conflicts of the war took place during the first three days of July. Lee was finally defeated, and his army being reduced one-third, he made a rapid retreat.†

* He received this name at the first battle of Bull Run, from his firmness and intrepidity when defeat seemed imminent, one of the Confederate generals exclaiming, "Here stands Jackson like a *stone wall*, and here let us conquer or die!"

† The battle of Gettysburg is generally regarded as the greatest of the war. It was a "turning point" in the long conflict between the North and the South.

National Cemetery at Gettysburg.—*Lincoln.*

[One of the most interesting events of the year 1863 was the inauguration of the National Cemetery at Gettysburg (Nov. 19). It took place in the presence of a vast concourse of visitors, and an oration was delivered by Edward Everett. The brief address of President Lincoln, on that occasion, was especially admired for the touching pathos of its sentiment and the simple beauty of its diction. Of all his utterances, this is doubtless the most expressive of the purity and loftiness of his character.]

1. FOURSCORE and seven years ago, our fathers brought forth upon this continent a new nation, conceived in liberty, and dedicated to the proposition that all men are created equal. Now, we are engaged in a great civil war, testing whether that nation, or any nation so conceived and so dedicated, can long endure. We are met on a great battle-field of that war. We have come to dedicate a portion of that field as a final resting-place for those who here gave their lives that that nation might live.

2. It is altogether fitting and proper that we should do this. But, in a larger sense, we cannot hallow this ground. The brave men, living and dead, who struggled here, have consecrated it far above our power to add or detract. The world will little note, nor long remember, what we *say* here; but it can never forget what they *did* here.

3. It is for us, the living, rather to be dedicated here to the unfinished work which they who fought here have thus far so nobly advanced. It is rather for us to be here dedicated to the great task remaining before us; that from these honored dead we take increased devotion to that cause for which they gave the last full measure of devotion; that we here highly resolve that these dead shall not have died in vain; that this nation, under God, shall have a new birth of freedom; and that government *of* the people, *by* the people, and *for* the people, shall not perish from the earth.

Union Victories in the South.—In the mean time, General Grant, having gained a series of victories over the Confederate forces in the southwest, succeeded in taking Vicksburg, after a siege of several months (July 4th); and Port Hudson having soon afterward surrendered to Gen. Banks, the Mississippi was completely opened. Gen. Rosecrans, who, in the beginning of the year, had gained an important victory over a large Confederate army under

Gen. Bragg, at Mur'frees-bo-ro (Jan. 2, 1863), was attacked near Chick-a-mau'-ga Creek by Bragg, and compelled to fall back (Sept. 20.) The timely arrival of Hooker and Grant, the latter of whom took the command, enabled the Union army to gain a decided victory, after a three days' conflict; and Bragg was driven back into Georgia (Nov. 25).

Operations of Grant, Sherman, and Thomas.—Gen. Grant, having been appointed commander-in-chief of all the armies of the Union, arranged, in the spring of 1864, two campaigns—one against Richmond, under his own direction, and the other against Atlanta, under Gen. Sherman. The latter, by a series of masterly movements, compelled the Confederates to retreat, and finally succeeded in taking Atlanta (Sept. 2), which having destroyed, he made his memorable march through Georgia to the sea-coast, and occupied Savannah (Dec. 21). Meanwhile, Gen. Thomas, who had been left by Sherman with a considerable force in Tennessee, attacked the Confederate army under Hood, and, after a battle of two days, routed it with great slaughter (Dec. 15).

Grant's Campaign in Virginia.—In Virginia, Gen. Grant had in the mean time encountered the Confederate army under Lee; and after a series of terrific battles, compelled it to retreat toward Richmond; but Grant, having transferred his army to the south bank of the James, Lee, whose movements had been conducted with consummate skill, occupied Petersburg, and thus compelled the Unionists to lay siege to that city (June).

Operations in the Shenandoah Valley.—The valley of the Shenandoah River was the scene of frequent and severe conflicts. During the siege of Petersburg, Lee detached twenty thousand men, under Gen. Early, to invade Maryland. Having defeated the Union forces under Gen. Wallace, he crossed the Potomac and threatened Washington and Baltimore. Grant hurried off troops for the defense of Washington, and a strong force was organized for Sheridan, who relieved Hunter from command. On the 19th of September, Sheridan attacked and routed Early near Winchester; and, three days after, at Fisher's Hill, he routed the Confederates again. Just a month after his victory at Winchester, his troops, then at Cedar Creek, were suddenly attacked and driven from the field, he, at the time, being absent. Arriving at this critical time, he arranged his lines, repulsed an attack, assailed in return, and, for the third time, routed Early's army. This incident is poetically described in the following lines.

Sheridan's Ride.—*Read.*

Up from the South at break of day,
Bringing to Winchester fresh dismay,
The affrighted air with a shudder bore,
Like a herald in haste to the chieftain's door,
The terrible grumble, and rumble, and roar,
Telling the battle was on once more,
And Sheridan twenty miles away.

And wider still those billows of war
Thundered along the horizon's bar;
And louder yet into Winchester rolled
The roar of that red sea uncontrolled,
Making the blood of the listener cold,
As he thought of the stake in that fiery fray,
And Sheridan twenty miles away.

But there is a road from Winchester town,
A good, broad highway leading down;
And there, through the flush of the morning light,
A steed as black as the steeds of night
Was seen to pass, as with eagle flight,
As if he knew the terrible need:
He stretched away with his utmost speed;
Hills rose and fell; but his heart was gay,
With Sheridan fifteen miles away.

Still sprung from those swift hoofs, thundering South,
The dust, like smoke from the cannon's mouth,
Or the trail of a comet, sweeping faster and faster,
Foreboding to traitors the doom of disaster.
The heart of the steed and the heart of the master
Were beating like prisoners assaulting their walls,
Impatient to be where the battle-field calls;
Every nerve of the charger was strained to full play,
With Sheridan only ten miles away.

Under his spurning feet the road
Like an arrowy Alpine river flowed,
And the landscape sped away behind
Like an ocean flying before the wind;
And the steed, like a bark fed with furnace ire,
Swept on, with his wild eyes full of fire.
But lo! he is nearing his heart's desire;
He is snuffing the smoke of the roaring fray,
With Sheridan only five miles away.

The first that the general saw were the groups
Of stragglers, and then the retreating troops;
What was done? what to do? a glance told him both.
Then, striking his spurs, with a terrible oath,
He dashed down the line, 'mid a storm of huzzas,
And the wave of retreat checked its course there, because
The sight of the master compelled it to pause.

With foam and with dust the black charger was gray;
By the flash of his eye, and the red nostril's play,
He seemed to the whole great army to say,
"I have brought you Sheridan all the way
From Winchester, down to save the day."

Hurrah! hurrah for Sheridan!
Hurrah! hurrah for horse and man!
And when their statues are placed on high,
Under the dome of the Union sky—
The American soldier's temple of fame—
There, with the glorious general's name,
Be it said, in letters both bold and bright,
"Here is the steed that saved the day,
By carrying Sheridan into the fight
From Winchester, twenty miles away!"

Destruction of the Alabama.—The Confederates, by means of English-built privateers, sailing under the Confederate flag, succeeded in destroying a large number of American merchantmen. Semmes, in the Alabama, resumed * his career of destruction, luring vessels by hoisting the British flag; but the Alabama was at last met (June 19) by the Kearsarge (*ke'ar-sarj*), Captain Winslow, and, after a short contest, was sunk.

Victory by Admiral Farragut.—Of all the achievements of the army or navy of the United States during the war, none were more brilliant than that of Admiral Farragut in Mobile Bay (Aug. 5th). He succeeded in passing Forts Morgan and Gaines, at the entrance of the bay, and then gained a complete victory over the Confederate fleet. The two forts were afterwards captured.

Occupation of Wilmington.—The active operations of 1865 began with the reduction of Fort Fisher, the main defense of Wilmington. This was accomplished (January 15th) by eight thousand men, under General Terry, aided by Admiral Porter's fleet. About a month before, Butler had made a demonstration against the fort, but deeming the works too strong to be carried by his force, returned to Fortress Monroe. Wilmington was occupied by the Federal troops a few days after the capture of the fort (Feb. 22d).

Victories gained by Sherman.—Sherman, having halted at Savannah only long enough to refit his army, was again in motion by the 1st of February. On the 17th he captured Columbia, compelling the Confederates, by this achievement, to evacuate Charleston. He next entered North Carolina, fought and defeated General Hardee (March 16th), and, four days later, gained a victory over General J. E. Johnston.

Occupation of Richmond.—Surrender of Lee.—On the 29th of March (1865) the final movement of the national forces, which Gen. Grant had

* He had previously commanded the steamer Sumter, and captured a great many vessels.

gathered around Richmond commenced; and, after ten days' marching and fighting, the campaign was ended. On the 3d of April, both Petersburg and Richmond were occupied by the nation's victorious troops. The retreating army was hotly pursued by Sheridan; and, on the 9th, Lee, overtaken and surrounded, surrendered to Grant near Appomattox Court-House.

Evacuation of Richmond.—*Pollard.*

[When Lee found that his position at Petersburg was no longer tenable, he immediately sent a telegram to Davis in Richmond, containing very nearly the following words: "My lines are broken in three places, Richmond must be evacuated this evening." This occurred on Sunday, April 2d, and the dispatch reached Mr. Davis while he sat in church, where it was handed to him amid the fearful silence and apprehension of the congregation. The Confederate President hurried from the church, and a rumor was immediately circulated that the city was to be abandoned. The following description is from E. A. Pollard's *Southern History of the War.*]

1. MEN, women, and children rushed from the churches, passing from lip to lip news of the impending fall of Richmond. And yet it was difficult to believe it. To look up to the calm, beautiful sky of that spring day, unassailed by one single noise of battle; to watch the streets unvexed by artillery or troops, stretching away into the quiet, hazy atmosphere, and believe that the capital of the Confederacy, so peaceful, so apparently secure, was in a few hours to be the prey of the enemy, and to be wrapped in the infernal horrors of a conflagration!

2. It was late in the afternoon when the signs of evacuation became apparent to the incredulous. Wagons on the streets were being hastily loaded at the departments with boxes, trunks, etc., and driven to the Danville dépôt. Those who had determined to leave with the fugitive government looked on with amazement; then, convinced of the fact, rushed to follow the government's example. Vehicles suddenly rose to a premium value that was astounding; and ten, fifteen, and even a hundred dollars, in gold or Federal currency, was offered for a conveyance.

3. Suddenly, as if by magic, the streets became filled with men, walking as though for a wager, and behind them excited negroes with trunks, bundles, and luggage of every description. All over the city it was the same—wagons, trunks, bandboxes, and their owners, a mass of hurrying fugitives, filling the streets.

The banks were all open, and depositors were as busy as bees removing their specie deposits; and the directors were equally active in getting off their bullion. Hundreds of thousands of dollars of paper-money were destroyed, both State and Confederate.

4. Night came; and with it came confusion worse confounded. There was no sleep for human eyes in Richmond that night. The City Council had met in the evening, and resolved to destroy all the liquor in the city, to avoid the disorder consequent on the temptation to drink at such a time. About the hour of midnight the work commenced, under the direction of committees of citizens in all the wards. Hundreds of barrels of liquor were rolled into the street, and the heads knocked in. The gutters ran with a liquor-freshet, and the fumes filled and impregnated the air. Fine cases of bottled liquors were tossed into the street from third-story windows, and wrecked into a thousand pieces.

5. As the work progressed, some straggling soldiers, retreating through the city, managed to get hold of a quantity of the liquor. From that moment, law and order ceased to exist. Many of the stores were pillaged; and the sidewalks were encumbered with broken glass, where the thieves had smashed the windows in their reckless haste to lay hands on the plunder within. The air was filled with wild cries of distress, or the yells of roving pillagers.

6. But a more terrible element was to appear upon the scene. An order had been issued from General Ewell's headquarters, to fire the four principal tobacco warehouses of the city—namely, the public warehouse, situated at the head of the basin, near the Petersburg railroad dépôt; Shockoe warehouse, situated near the centre of the city, side by side with the Gallego flour-mills; Mayo's warehouse; and Debrell's warehouse, on Cary-street, a square below Libby prison.

7. Late in the night, Mayor Mayo had dispatched, by a committee of citizens, a remonstrance against this reckless military order, which plainly put in jeopardy the whole business portion of Richmond. It was not heeded. Nothing was left for the

citizens but to submit to the destruction of their property. The warehouses were fired. The rams on the James River were blown up. The Richmond, Virginia, and another one were all blown to the four winds of heaven. The Patrick Henry, a receiving-ship, was scuttled. Such shipping, very little in amount, as was lying at the Richmond wharves, was also fired, save the flag-of-truce steamer Allison. The bridges leading out of the city were also fired, and were soon wrapped in flames.

8. Morning broke upon a scene such as those who witnessed it can never forget. The roar of an immense conflagration sounded in their ears; tongues of flame leaped from street to street; and in this baleful glare were to be seen, as of demons, the figures of busy plunderers, moving, pushing, rioting, through the black smoke, and into the open street, bearing away every conceivable sort of plunder. The scene at the commissary dépôt, at the head of the dock, beggared description. Hundreds of government wagons were loaded with bacon, flour, and whiskey, and driven off in hot haste to join the retreating army.

9. Thronging about the dépôt were hundreds of men, women, and children, black and white, provided with capacious bags, baskets, tubs, buckets, tin pans, and aprons; cursing, pushing, and crowding; awaiting the throwing open of the doors, and the order for each to help himself. About sunrise, the doors were opened to the populace; and a rush that almost seemed to carry the building off its foundation was made, and hundreds of thousands of pounds of bacon, flour, etc., were soon swept away by a clamorous crowd.

Close of the War.—The surrender of Lee was soon followed by that of the other Confederate generals, and the great insurrection was at an end, having been crushed by a series of the most persevering and gigantic efforts ever put forth by any nation. Through all disasters and discouragements, the patriotic and high-minded president had resolutely striven to save the integrity of the country, and had won the esteem and affection of all by his conscientious devotion to this noble cause.

Assassination of the President.—Having been re-elected president in the fall of 1864, he had served but a few weeks of his second term, when, in

less than one week after Lee's surrender, he was assassinated by a desperado acting in sympathy with the Confederate cause (April 14). The intelligence of this sad event filled every loyal heart throughout the land with sorrow and dismay, and for several weeks all the great cities throughout the North were draped in badges and emblems of mourning. The funeral cortege was followed by hundreds of thousands of the citizens of the republic, as it wended its way from the capital to Springfield, the former home of the deceased president,—thenceforth to be rendered sacred as his burial-place.

United States Sanitary Commission.—*Dr. Bellows.*

[The efforts put forth by the North to sustain the Union cause in this great conflict were not confined to the Government or the army in the field. The patriotism and philanthropy of the people themselves, and particularly of the *women*, were splendidly illustrated by the organized measures taken to sustain the soldiers, by ministering, in the most efficient manner, to their necessities. Of these organizations, the Christian and Sanitary Commissions deserve particular mention. The latter, especially, was the most magnificent in its design and the most effective in its results. Foremost in the organization of this mighty engine of mercy, and taking the lead in its beneficent operations, was Rev. Henry W. Bellows, D.D., of New York City. Through his enlightened and large-hearted policy, and by his tact, judgment, and address, this powerful instrumentality was enabled to carry into effect its vast scheme of patriotism and humanity.]

1. In April, 1861, at the very opening of the war, the women of New York city and the neighboring towns were organized into an association called "The Women's Central Association," to reduce to system and energy the scattered and almost frantic desires and efforts of the American women to aid in preparing soldiers for the exposures of the field.

2. A committee went to Washington, as the representatives of this association, to confer with the Medical Bureau and the Government, upon the most efficient method of rendering this aid. They discovered such a want of largeness of view in the Medical Bureau, and so little preparation against the perils of sickness and wounds, that they were seized with the conviction that only a national movement, uniting the women of the whole country in a common organization, which should have the countenance and semi-official support or acceptance of the Government, with a freedom of its own not accorded to official bureaux, could meet the case.

3. Mindful of what the Sanitary Commissions of England had done in the Crimea and in China, they resolved to attempt the same thing, although under totally different conditions. They proposed to the Government to appoint a *Sanitary Com-*

mission, to supplement the labors and duties of the Medical Bureau, and be the channel of the charity, nursing, and solicitude of the people at home for the soldiers in the field.

4. The idea met with little favor. It was resisted by the Medical Bureau, the War Department, and the Cabinet, as likely to breed jealousy, to introduce conflicting elements, to mix up irresponsible with official duties, and to be regarded as intrusive and offensive by the military authorities. But so great was the pressure of all sorts of local Societies of Relief, that the Government soon saw that its only choice was between one great nuisance, and a thousand small ones; that possibly the Sanitary Commission might not be as bad as it looked, and that, in any case, while it was plainly dangerous to chill the people's enthusiasm by denying a regular vent to it, the Sanitary Commission would probably show, in a six months' trial, how troublesome and useless it was, and then be got rid of, without censure.

5. By steady pressure, the committee persuaded the Government to accept their idea, and the Commission was authorized, and began existence, June 10th, 1861—but only on condition that the committee would select their fellow-laborers in it, and take charge of the work. The Sanitary Commission was to have free access to the army, hospitals, and field; the right of sanitary inspection of camps, and the general duty of advising the Medical Bureau, and all army officers, in what pertained to the health and comfort of the soldiers.

6. It organized with a board composed partly of civilians, medical men, and men of general experience, from various parts of the country, and partly of military men in the army. This Board opened its central office in apartments furnished by the Government at Washington. It had from ten to twenty hired medical men, whom it employed as inspectors, or heads of detachments for the distribution of relief, who were placed with every army-corps on the whole field, from the beginning to the end of the war. These skilled men had each his force of assistants, his sanitary-tent, and his continually re-enforced supply of medicines, clothing, and soldiers' comforts.

7. Necessary teams were either owned by the Commission, or furnished by the Government; and from great sub-central depots at Louisville, New Orleans, Washington, Frederick, and a dozen other places, they transported the supplies constantly accumulated there to the army. The railroads and the Quartermaster's department always did their best to forward sanitary stores. But it required a prodigious foresight to know just where they were likely to be most needed; and as the very business of the Commission was to be where the government supplies might fail; to have ready what they lacked; to supplement their defects, or to guess better where battles and sickness would occur—little help could be derived from government information.

8. The Commission had its own sources of intelligence, and its own outlook, and usually acted upon its own independent judgment, both as to the neighborhood where to be and as to the kind of relief it should supply. This field and relief work involved inspection of camps; opening of houses for stragglers and people turned prematurely from the army hospitals, to give out on their way to their regiments; relief in food and clothing to men who had lost their knapsacks and their right to rations by the fortunes of war; and a continued visitation of all army hospitals, regimental or general. The Sanitary Commission was the people's attorney, with its ears open to every just complaint, its hand open to every real want of the poor soldier. And it meant to be everywhere, where a single Union regiment was found, from Mason and Dixon's line to Florida and Texas.

9. It followed up the army when it advanced, and allowed no corps to move without its deputies, fully provided with relief, medical and sanitary. An average of two thousand soldiers were every night in its houses—who would have been tentless and homeless but for its extra providence. It had steamboats converted into floating hospitals, whereon the army lay near navigable streams. It brought home thousands of wounded in this manner from the James River and the Pamunkey, under the tenderest care. It was on four-fifths of all the seven hundred

and odd battle-fields, or bloody skirmishes of the war, and often was on hand when the medical stores of the army were lost or inaccessible. It had its nurses and relief agents, wherever they were needed, and in precise proportion to the need. It accepted volunteers, but preferred hired agents, selected for merit and skill, and under rigid discipline.

10. But whence came the money and stores to meet this tremendous outlay? From the home organization of the Sanitary Commission. It endeavored, and with almost perfect success, to bring all the States of the north into one fellowship of labor. Branches, like the original stock—the Women's Central Association of New York, which became a branch only, after the Sanitary Commission was started—were planted in all the loyal States, and over seven thousand local relief societies became tributaries to them. The fingers of all the homes in the north and west moved as with one motion, in preparing garments, food, and canned fruits; the farmers sent forward potatoes and onions; the local societies forwarded them to the branches.

11. These hundreds of boxes, containing the strangest collection of articles, dry-goods and groceries, books and clothing, were overhauled, assorted, marked, repacked, and forwarded to Louisville or Washington, the western and eastern centres of supply. Held there, catalogued and re-assorted, they furnished a never-failing reservoir of nameless articles of clothing, food, and comforts—which, under the direction of the Secretary-in-chief (the admirable Frederick L. Olmsted, being the one who originally shaped the internal administration, which was never seriously changed), were sent out to the relief agents at their several stations, on or near the fields of coming battles.

12. The constancy, method, order, and business-like skill, with which these branches and local societies were conducted, not only redound to the patriotism and ability of the American people, but went far to develop unknown powers of usefulness, self-reliance, and administrative talent in thousands of women, and thus enriched the nation in all the departments of life. Nothing in the way of public reforms ever did as much to teach woman her rights and duties, her dignity, and her

capacity for the public service, as the Sanitary Commission. It was the spiritual birthplace to hundreds of women, who knew themselves and their dignity and duty in life from the awakening produced, and the opportunity afforded, by that service.

13. The money necessary to support this expensive arm of the public service,—the woman's arm, stretched out full of pity and help to the soldier in the field—her husband, brother, son—was supplied by the people, through great fairs, in Philadelphia, New York, Brooklyn, Boston, Chicago, and elsewhere; and through the spontaneous gifts of the people, who in all ways poured about five millions of dollars into the treasury of the Commission. Nearly a million and a half of this sum was the magnificent offering of the Pacific coast, and especially of California. To this, fifteen million dollars' worth of stores of all kinds, by a moderate estimate, entrusted to the Sanitary Commission, must be added. The Government probably furnished it in steamers, transportation, rent, rations, and facilities, five millions' worth more; so that twenty-five million dollars would not exceed the amount of which the Sanitary Commission were the trusted almoners in the war.

Johnson's Administration.—Andrew Johnson of Tennessee, the vice-president, succeeded Abraham Lincoln, being inaugurated on the 15th of April. He retained, without change, the cabinet of his predecessor. The assassin of the lamented president eluded pursuit until the 26th, when, having been tracked to his hiding-place and refusing to surrender, he was shot. Jefferson Davis, after abandoning Richmond, fled to Georgia, where he was captured. He was then conveyed a prisoner to Fortress Monroe; but, after a long confinement, was released (1867).

Amnesty.—Abolition of Slavery.—On the 29th of April, President Johnson issued a proclamation removing restrictions on commerce in the South; and, a month later, he addressed a proclamation of amnesty to all those who had been concerned in the war against the Union, excepting certain specified classes of persons. A resolution of Congress, proposing an amendment to the Constitution, abolishing slavery, having been approved by three-fourths of the States, slavery was declared constitutionally abolished on the 18th of December.

Reconstruction.—A Reconstruction Act was passed by Congress, notwithstanding the veto of the President, March 2d, 1867, and two Supplementary Reconstruction Acts were also passed, in like manner. Under these acts, the

states recently at war with the general government were, one after another, restored to their original positions in the Union.

New State and Territory.—During the year 1867, Nebraska* was admitted into the Union, and the territorial possessions of the United States were very much enlarged by the addition of Alas'ka, formerly known as Russian America. This vast tract of land was purchased of Russia, the price paid being $7,200,000, in gold.

Impeachment of the President.—The President having removed Edwin M. Stanton from his position as Secretary of War, without the consent of the Senate, that body passed a resolution notifying the president "that, under the Constitution and laws of the United States, he had no power to remove the Secretary of War and designate any other officer to perform the duties of that office." On the 24th of February, a resolution impeaching the president was adopted by the House of Representatives, and articles of impeachment were subsequently presented to the Senate. The trial was long and tedious, and resulted in the acquittal of the accused, although only one vote was wanting to complete the two-thirds majority required to convict him.

Amendment to the Constitution.—The *Fourteenth Amendment*, which had been proposed by Congress, guaranteeing equal civil rights to *all persons*, born or naturalized in the United States, was declared adopted on the 28th of July, 1868, having been ratified by the legislatures of three-fourths of all the States.

Grant's Administration.—Ulysses S. Grant, of Illinois, having been duly elected, was inaugurated as president on the 4th of March, 1869. Schuyler Colfax, of Indiana, became, at the same time, vice-president. Virginia, Mississippi, and Texas, not having complied with the "reconstruction" requirements of Congress, did not participate in the presidential election.

Reconstruction Completed.—During the first year, however, of the administration, these three States, having finally complied with the requirements of Congress, were restored to all their rights as States, and the "Reconstruction of the Union" was thus fully consummated.

Amendment to the Constitution.—The *Fifteenth Amendment* to the Constitution, guaranteeing to *all citizens* of the United States the right of suffrage, without regard to "race, color, or previous condition of servitude," was declared adopted, March 30, 1870.

Chicago Fire.—In October of the following year (1871), the most destructive fire in the history of this country occurred at Chicago. About eighteen thousand buildings were destroyed, and over one hundred thousand persons were, in consequence, rendered homeless and destitute. Within ten days after the conflagration, more than five million dollars were subscribed, in this country and Europe, for the relief of the sufferers; and the city was soon rebuilt.

* The word is of Indian origin, *ne*, signifying water, and *braska*, wide or shallow; and, being at first applied to the Platte River (which runs through the State), was afterward used as the name of the territory, and subsequently of the state.

Chicago.— *Whittier.*

Men said at vespers: "All is well!"
In one wild night the city fell;
Fell shrines of prayer and marts of gain
Before the fiery hurricane.
On threescore spires had sunset shone,
Where ghastly sunrise looked on none.
Men clasped each others' hands, and said,
"The City of the West is dead!"

Brave hearts who fought, in slow retreat,
The fiends of fire from street to street,
Turned powerless to the blinding glare,
The dumb defiance of despair.
A sudden impulse thrilled each wire
That signalled round that sea of fire;
Swift words of cheer, warm heart-throbs came;
In tears of pity died the flame.

From East, from West, from South and North,
The messages of hope shot forth,
And underneath the severing wave
The world, full-handed, reached to save.
Fair seemed the old, but fairer still
The new, the dreary void shall fill
With dearer homes than those o'erthrown,
For love shall lay each corner-stone.

Rise, stricken city! From thee throw
The ashen sackcloths of thy woe;
And build, as to Amphion's strain,
To songs of cheer, thy walls again!
How shrivelled in thy hot distress
The primal sin of selfishness!
How instant rose, to take thy part,
The angel in the human heart!

Ah! not in vain the flames that tossed
Above thy dreadful holocaust;
The Christ again has preached through thee
The Gospel of humanity!
Then lift once more thy towers on high,
And fret with spires the western sky,
To tell that God is yet with us,
And love is still miraculous!

Alabama Claims.—During the Civil War, great damage had been done to American commerce by the Alabama and other English-built privateers of the Confederates; and for this Great Britain at first refused to make any compensation. Much indignation was consequently felt by the people of the United States toward the British government; and, for a time, war was threatened. Wise counsels, however, prevailed, and a treaty settling all differences was agreed upon by commissioners of the two governments, at a meeting in Washington (1871).

Geneva Award.—This treaty having been duly ratified, five arbitrators were appointed in pursuance of its provisions, to examine into and decide upon the justice of all claims. These arbitrators consisted of one person from each of the following countries: the United States, Great Britain, Italy, Switzerland, and Brazil. They met at Geneva, in Switzerland; and the result of their deliberations was the award (September 14, 1872) to the United States of the sum of fifteen million five hundred thousand dollars, to be paid in gold, by Great Britain, in satisfaction of all claims. That amount was accordingly paid the next year.

The Nation's Centennial.—The one-hundredth anniversary of the Declaration of Independence (July 4th, 1876) was celebrated with great rejoicing in all parts of the country. As this year ended the first centennial period of the nation's existence, it was viewed with special interest, and marked by various events.

International Exhibition of 1876.—Prominent among these—indeed, the great event of the centennial—was the International Exhibition at Philadelphia, which was opened on the 10th of May, and continued during the following six months. For this "World's Fair," nearly two hundred buildings had been erected in Fairmount Park, the six principal ones covering an area of more than sixty acres. The main building was 1,880 feet in length and 464 feet in width, and covered an area of twenty acres. In these buildings were exhibited specimens of the farming products and the manufactured goods of nearly every State in the Union and of the most important foreign countries. Beautiful works of art, and other articles designed to show the progress made by different States and countries in science and education, were also exhibited. Thousands of visitors thronged the fair during the whole period of its continuance.

Centennial Address.—*W. M. Evarts.*

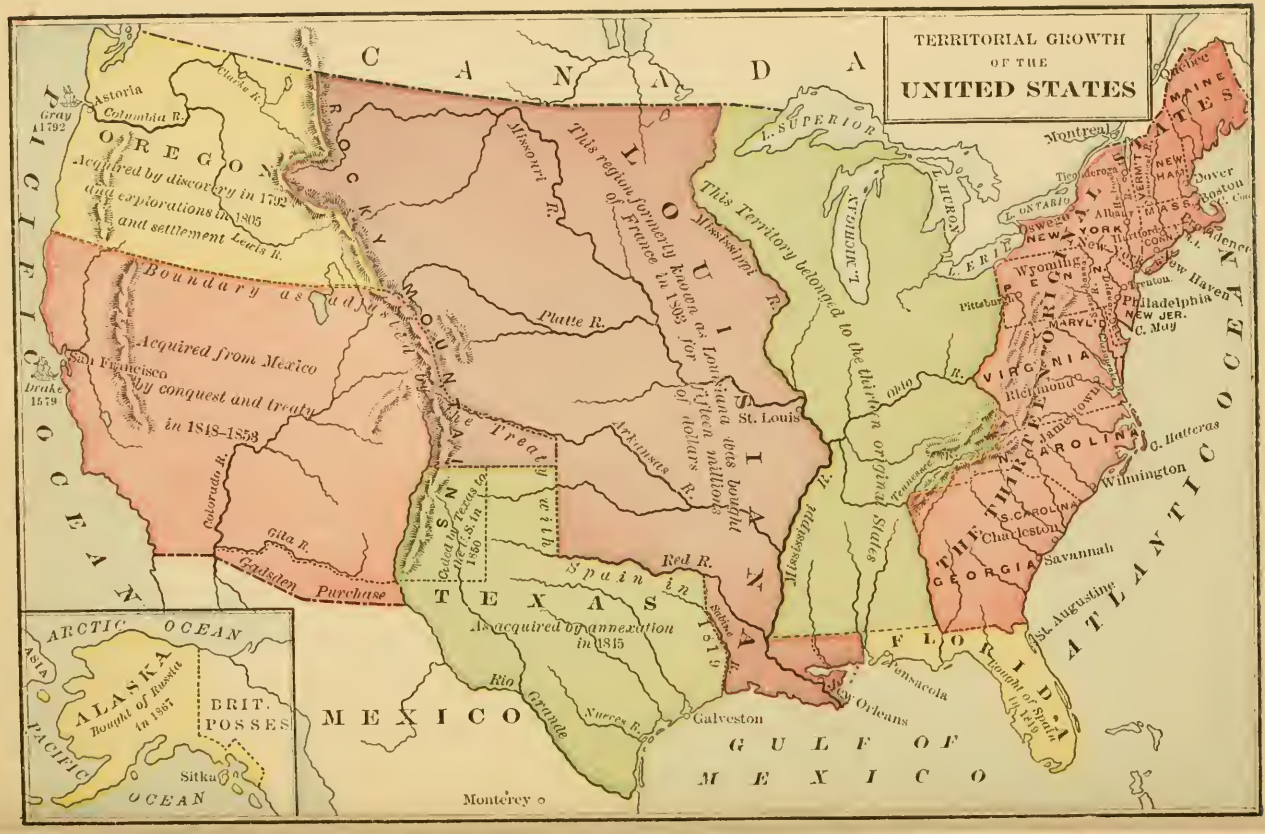
[Extract from an oration delivered at the Philadelphia Exhibition, by the Hon. William M. Evarts, on the 4th of July, 1876.]

1. Unity, liberty, power, prosperity—these are our possessions to-day. In the great procession of nations, in the great march of humanity, we hold our place. Peace is our duty,

peace is our policy. In its arts, its labors, and its victories, then, we find scope for all our energies, rewards for all our ambitions, renown enough for all our love and fame. In the august presence of so many nations, which, by their representatives, have done us the honor to be witnesses of our commemorative joy and gratulation, and in sight of the collected evidences of the greatness of their own civilization with which they grace our celebration, we may well confess how much we fall short, how much we have to make up, in the emulative competitions of the times.

2. Yet, even in this presence, and with a just deference to the age, the power, the greatness of the other nations of the earth, we do not fear to appeal to the opinion of mankind whether, as we point to our land, our people, and our laws, the contemplation should not inspire us with a lover's enthusiasm for our country. Time makes no pauses in his march. Even while I speak, the last hour of the receding, is replaced by the first hour of the coming century; and reverence for the past gives way to the joys and hopes, the activities and the responsibilities, of the future. A hundred years hence, the piety of that generation will recall the ancestral glory which we celebrate to-day, and crown it with the plaudits of a vast population which no man can number.

3. By the mere circumstance of this periodicity, our generation will be in the minds, in the hearts, on the lips, of our countrymen, at the next Centennial commemoration, in comparison with their own character and condition, and with the great founders of the nation. What shall they say of us? How shall they estimate the part we bear in the unbroken line of the nation's progress? And so on, in the long reach of time, forever and forever, our place in the secular roll of the ages must always bring us into observation and criticism. Under this double trust, then, from the past and for the future, let us take heed to our ways, and resolve that the great heritage we have received shall be handed down, through the long line of the advancing generations, the home of liberty, the abode of justice, the stronghold of faith among men.


TERRITORIAL GROWTH
OF THE
UNITED STATES
CANADA
PACIFIC OCEAN
ATLANTIC OCEAN
GULF OF MEXICO
MEXICO
OREGON
Acquired by discovery in 1792 and explorations in 1805 and settlement
Boundary as adjusted by the Treaty with Spain in 1819
Acquired from Mexico by conquest and treaty in 1848–1853
Ceded by Texas to the U.S. in 1850
As acquired by annexation in 1845
Gadsden Purchase
ROCKY MOUNTAINS
LOUISIANA
This region formerly known as Louisiana was bought of France in 1803 for fifteen millions of dollars
This Territory belonged to the thirteen original States
TEXAS
FLORIDA
Bought of Spain in 1819
THE THIRTEEN ORIGINAL STATES
MAINE
NEW HAM.
MASS.
CONN.
VERM'T
NEW YORK
PENN.
NEW JER.
MARYL'D
VIRGINIA
N. CAROLINA
S. CAROLINA
GEORGIA
Astoria
Columbia R.
Gray 1792
Drake 1579
San Francisco
Clarke R.
Lewis R.
Missouri R.
Platte R.
Arkansas R.
Mississippi R.
Ohio R.
Tennessee R.
Colorado R.
Gila R.
Red R.
Sabine R.
Rio Grande
Nueces R.
Galveston
Monterey
St. Louis
New Orleans
Pensacola
Charleston
Savannah
St. Augustine
Wilmington
C. Hatteras
Richmond
Jamestown
Pittsburgh
Wyoming
Philadelphia
Trenton
New Haven
Providence
Boston
Dover
Albany
Hartford
New York
Montreal
Quebec
Ticonderoga
Oswego
L. SUPERIOR
L. MICHIGAN
L. HURON
L. ERIE
L. ONTARIO
ARCTIC OCEAN
ASIA
ALASKA
Bought of Russia in 1867
BRIT. POSSES
PACIFIC OCEAN
Sitka

Centennial Hymn.—*Whittier.*

[Composed for the opening ceremonies of the great International Exhibition at Philadelphia, May 10, 1876.]

Our father's God ! from out whose hand
The centuries fall like grains of sand,
We meet to-day, united, free,
And loyal to our land and thee,
To thank thee for the era done,
And trust thee for the opening one.

Here, when of old, by Thy design,
The fathers spake that word of Thine,
Whose echo is the glad refrain
Of rended bolt and falling chain,
To grace our festal time, from all
The zones of earth our guests we call.

Be with us while the New World greets
The Old World thronging all its streets,
Unveiling all the triumphs won
By art or toil beneath the sun ;
And unto common good ordain
This rivalship of hand and brain.

Thou who hast here in concord furled
The war-flags of a gathered world,
Beneath our Western skies fulfill
The Orient's mission of good will ;
And, freighted with Love's golden fleece,
Send back the Argonauts of peace.

For art and labor met in tince,
For beauty made the bride of use,
We thank Thee, while withal we crave
The austere virtues, strong to save ;
The honor, proof to place or gold ;
The manhood, never bought or sold.

O, make Thou us, through centuries long,
In peace secure, in justice strong ;
Around our gift of freedom draw
The safeguards of Thy righteous law,
And, cast in some diviner mold,
Let the new cycle shame the old !

Admission of Colorado.—The admission of Colorado into the Union was another interesting event of 1876. The act of Congress enabling the Territory to form a State constitution had been approved by the President March 3, 1875; and, in pursuance of this act, a constitution framed by a territorial convention, was ratified by the people July 1, 1876. A proclamation declaring Colorado to be a State in the Union was issued by President Grant, August 1. Colorado thus acquired the honor of being the "Centennial State."

Presidential Election of 1876.—The presidential election which took place in the fall of 1876 was an exciting one. As President Grant's second term drew toward its close, the two great political parties made their nomination of candidates, that of the Democrats being Samuel J. Tilden, of New York, that of the Republicans, Rutherford B. Hayes, of Ohio. After the election (November 7, 1876), disputes of the most exciting character arose as to certain electoral votes, particularly those of South Carolina, Florida, Oregon, and Louisiana. The number of votes conceded by both parties to the Democratic candidate was one hundred and eighty-four; and only one more was necessary to a choice. The Republicans, however, claimed all the other electoral votes, which included those of the States in dispute.

Electoral Commission.—As the Constitution did not clearly provide any means for settling the dispute, an Electoral Commission was constituted by act of Congress to decide all the questions at issue, and thus enable the votes to be counted, as prescribed in the Constitution. The commission was composed of fifteen persons—five members of the Senate, five of the House of Representatives, and five of the justices of the Supreme Court. This body having given its decisions, the votes were duly counted in the presence of both houses of Congress; and Rutherford B. Hayes was declared to be the president elect, and William A. Wheeler, of New York, the vice-president. The inaugural ceremonies took place on the 5th of March, 1877, the 4th falling on Sunday.

Fishing Privileges in British Waters.—By the treaty of 1783, Great Britain conceded to the American republic the right to fish on the Banks of Newfoundland; and, disputes having arisen in regard to the exercise of this right, the treaty of 1871 provided for the appointment of three commissioners to settle "all causes of difference" between the two nations. Accordingly, the commissioners met in Halifax, Nova Scotia, and decided that the United States should pay five and a half million dollars for the fishery privilege, to last for a period of twelve years. Although not regarded as equitable by the American people, the award was nevertheless paid (1878).

Resumption of Specie Payments.—When the great Civil War broke out, the country was in a prosperous condition; but it was not long before the banks and the general government were compelled to stop the payment of gold and silver, being authorized to do so by act of Congress. Government notes ("greenbacks") were greatly depreciated, and gold became a marketable product. At the close of the war, however, it gradually declined; and on the first of January, 1879, the government and the banks resumed specie payments, gold and silver once more coming into general use.

Chinese Immigration.—The great influx of Chinese immigrants into the ports on the Pacific coast of the United States caused considerable alarm and dissatisfaction to the people of California and other parts of the West. They alleged that, in consequence of this, labor in certain departments of business was becoming so cheapened that American workmen were obliged to abandon them. A treaty was, accordingly, concluded with China (1880), by which the regulation of Chinese immigration was left to the United States government; and in 1882 it was, by act of Congress, prohibited for a period of ten years.

Election of Garfield and Arthur.—The presidential campaign of 1880 was unusually spirited, the Republicans having nominated James A. Garfield, of Ohio; and the Democrats, the distinguished soldier, General Winfield Scott Hancock, a native of Pennsylvania. The Republican candidate was elected, and was inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1881. Chester A. Arthur, of New York, having been elected vice-president, took his place as President of the Senate.

Assassination of the President.—Garfield had been in office less than four months, when he was shot by an assassin (Charles J. Guiteau), at the railroad depot, in Washington, as he was about to leave the capital for a summer trip to the East (July 2, 1881). The wounded president was conveyed to the White House, where, for two months, he was tenderly cared for, receiving the best surgical skill the nation could afford, while the whole people waited with grief-stricken anxiety the issue of his case. His death took place (September 19) at Long Branch, a summer resort on the New Jersey coast, whither he had been removed, with the hope that he might be benefited by the pure sea-breezes of the Atlantic. Never, perhaps, was there a popular sorrow more intense and general than that which followed the death of James A. Garfield, while words of sympathy came to the sorrowing nation from every part of the civilized world. After a trial, which lasted several weeks (January, 1882), the murderer was convicted and sentenced to death. The execution occurred several months later (June 30, 1882). On the death of Garfield, Chester Absalom Arthur, the vice-president, took the oath of office, and became president (September 20, 1881).

Character of Garfield.—This remarkable man, born in Ohio, November 19, 1831, had risen from a very humble position in life. In his boyhood, he drove the horses before the plough on his father's farm. Later, when not laboring in his neighbors' hay fields, he was employed in driving horses on the canal. But, nevertheless, he had a great love for books, and his cherished ambition was to obtain an education. In this, in spite of all obstacles, he succeeded; and, at the age of eighteen, became a school teacher; at twenty-four, a professor of Latin and Greek; at twenty-seven, a college president; at twenty-eight, a state senator; at thirty-one, a general in the army; at thirty-three, a member of Congress; and at fifty, President of the United States. Thus did he illustrate the possibility open to talent, in the lowliest grade of society, under the free institutions of this country.

Presidential Election of 1884.—In the summer of 1884 the Republican and Democratic conventions nominated respectively for president, James G. Blaine, of Maine, and Grover Cleveland, governor of the State of New York. The contest between the two great parties was unusually close and exciting, and resulted in the election of the Democratic candidate. Cleveland was inaugurated March 4, 1885, as president, and Thomas A. Hendricks, of Indiana, as vice-president.

The Work of Death.—On the 23d of July (1885) America lost her great military leader, General U. S. Grant. He died at Mount MacGregor, near Saratoga Springs. His remains were conveyed to the city of New York, and in solemn procession were taken to one of the city's beautiful parks, and there put to rest. In the procession, which numbered not less than fifty thousand men, were representatives from every part of the Union and from distant lands. Four months later (Nov. 25) the death of vice-president Hendricks occurred.

Harrison's Administration.—Cleveland's successor was Benjamin Harrison, of Indiana, grandson of the ninth president (March 4, 1889). Less than two months later the centennial of the first inauguration of the first president (p. 228) was celebrated in the city of New York and in other cities of the Union. Harrison's administration was noted for the large number of additions to the Union. North Dakota, South Dakota, Montana, and Washington were admitted in 1889, and Idaho and Wyoming in 1890. During the latter year a part of the Indian Territory was bought of the Indians and organized as the Territory of Oklahoma. In 1892 the four hundredth anniversary of the discovery of America by Columbus was celebrated by processions of men and children and by other demonstrations of rejoicing. Imposing ceremonies were observed in Chicago preparatory to a World's Fair to be held there the following year.

Presidential Election of 1892.—In 1892, as four years previous, Harrison was the candidate of the Republicans, and Cleveland of the Democrats. James B. Weaver, of Iowa, was the candidate of a new party styled the People's Party, the members of which, called Populists, advocated an income tax, unlimited coinage of gold and silver, and government ownership of railroads, telegraphs, and telephones. The contest was mainly between the two old parties, the protective tariff law, enacted by a Republican congress in 1890, being the chief question at issue. To this law the Democrats were opposed, declaring their opposition to "all tariff duties except for the purpose of revenue." The election resulted in favor of the Democrats, and on the 4th of March, 1893, Cleveland began his second term.

The Future of the Republic.—*Story.*

1. When we reflect on what has been, and is, how is it possible not to feel a profound sense of the responsibilities of this Republic to all future ages? What vast motives press upon us for lofty efforts! What brilliant prospects invite our enthusiasm! What solemn warnings at once demand our vigilance, and moderate our confidence!

2. The Old World has already revealed to us, in its unsealed books, the beginning and end of all its own marvellous struggles in the cause of liberty. Greece, lovely Greece, "the land of scholars and the nurse of arts," where sister republics, in fair processions, chanted the praises of liberty and the gods—where, and what is she? For two thousand years the oppressor has bound her to the earth. Her arts are no more. The last sad relics of her temple are but the barracks of a ruthless soldiery: the fragments of her columns and her palaces are in the dust, yet beautiful in ruin. . . . .

3. Where are the republics of modern times, which clustered around immortal Italy? Venice and Genoa exist but in name. The Alps, indeed, look down upon the brave and peaceful Swiss in their native fastnesses; but the guaranty of their freedom is in their weakness, and not in their strength. The mountains are not easily crossed, and the valleys are not easily retained. The country is too poor for plunder, and too rough for valuable conquest. . . . .

4. We stand, the latest, and, if we fail, probably the last, experiment of self-government by the people. We have begun it under circumstances of the most auspicious nature. We are in the vigor of youth. Our growth has never been checked by the oppressions of tyranny. Our constitutions have never been enfeebled by the vices or luxuries of the Old World. Such as we are, we have been from the beginning—simple, hardy, intelligent, accustomed to self-government and self-respect.

5. The Atlantic rolls between us and any formidable foe. Within our own territory, stretching through many degrees of latitude and longitude, we have the choice of many products,

and many means of independence. The government is mild. The Press is free. Religion is free. Knowledge reaches, or may reach, every home. What fairer prospect of success could be presented? What means more adequate to accomplish the sublime end? What more is necessary, than for the people to preserve what they themselves have created?

6. Already has the age caught the spirit of our institutions. It has already ascended the Andes, and snuffed the breezes of both oceans. It has infused itself into the life-blood of Europe, and warmed the sunny plains of France, and the lowlands of Holland. It has touched the philosophy of Germany and the north, and, moving onward to the south, has opened to Greece the lessons of her better days.

7. Can it be that America, under such circumstances, can betray herself; that she is to be added to the catalogue of republics, the inscription of whose ruin is, "They were, but they are not?" Forbid it, my countrymen; forbid it, Heaven! I call upon you, Fathers, by the shades of your ancestors, by the dear ashes which repose in this precious soil, by all you are, and all you hope to be,—resist every project of disunion: resist every encroachment upon your liberties: resist every attempt to fetter your consciences, or smother your public schools, or extinguish your system of public instruction.

8. I call upon you, Mothers, by that which never fails in woman—the love of your offspring,—teach them, as they climb your knees, or lean on your bosoms, the blessings of liberty. Swear them at the altar, as with their baptismal vows, to be true to their country, and never to forget or to forsake her. I call upon you, Young Men, to remember whose sons you are, —whose inheritance you possess. Life can never be too short, which brings nothing but disgrace and oppression. Death never comes too soon, if necessary in the defense of the liberties of your country. I call upon you, Old Men, for your counsels, and your prayers, and your benedictions. May not your gray hairs go down in sorrow to the grave, with the recollection that you have lived in vain. May not your last sun sink in the west upon a nation of slaves.—*Centennial Address.*

Territorial Growth of the United States.

1. ***Original Territory.***—The territory of the Republic, at the close of the War of the Revolution, was bounded by the Atlantic Ocean, the Mississippi River, the Great Lakes, and the Gulf of Mexico. Such were the limits conceded by the treaty with Great Britain (September 3d, 1783); but from the region lying within them, the Spanish province of Florida must be excluded, as well as that part of the present State of Louisiana which lies east of the Mississippi, in defining the original domain of the United States. Out of that domain many new States have been formed, and to it large accessions of new territory have been made.

2. ***Vermont.***—This was the first of the new States. It was formed from territory which had been claimed by New York and New Hampshire, the former founding its claim on the grants made by Charles II. to the Duke of York; the latter, on the colonial charter which it received at the commencement of its existence. New Hampshire was the most active in the settlement of the territory, her governor, during a period of eight years (from 1760 to 1768), having made more than a hundred township grants within its limits. These were subsequently known as the "New Hampshire Grants." Before the Revolution, however, New York succeeded in obtaining jurisdiction over the whole territory, through a decision of the king, to which the governor of New Hampshire assented. But the settlers refused to acknowledge the sway under which they were thus arbitrarily placed, and continued their resistance until 1791; when, New York having relinquished her claim on the payment to her of $30,000, Vermont was admitted into the Union, making the number of States *fourteen.*

3. ***The Northwest Territory.***—The western portion of several of the thirteen original States extended to the Mississippi River; their colonial charters, indeed, named the Atlantic Ocean as their eastern boundary, and the South Sea [the Pacific] as their western; but their limits were restricted by the Treaty of 1783. One after another, these States surrendered their western territories to the general government; and, in 1787, the region north of the Ohio River was organized under the name of the *Northwest Territory.* From this territory five States have been successively formed: *Ohio*, in 1802; *Indiana*, in 1816; *Illinois*, in 1818; *Michigan*, in 1837; and *Wisconsin*, in 1848.

4. ***The Southwest Territory.***—The region south of the Ohio, although never organized under one territorial government, was generally known as the *Southwest Territory.* From it have been formed four States: *Kentucky* (previously a part of Virginia), in 1792; *Tennessee* (previously a part of North Carolina), in 1796; *Mississippi*, in 1817; and *Alabama*, in 1819 (both the latter being previously a part of Georgia).

5. ***Maine.***—Maine, in 1783, was a district of Massachusetts, having been purchased in 1677, from the heirs of Gorges and Mason. Thus it remained till 1820, when it was organized and admitted as a State, in conformity with the formally expressed will of its inhabitants.

6. ***The Louisiana Purchase.***—Though the Spaniards, under De Soto, were the first to discover the Mississippi River, they made no attempts to explore it. This was first accomplished by the French, who traversed its entire length, and occupied certain portions of its valley on both sides, giving to the whole region the name of *Louisiana*, in honor of their King, Louis XIV. At the close of the French and Indian War (1763), France ceded to Great Britain all her American possessions east of the Mississippi and north of the Iberville River, having in the preceding year ceded to Spain all her possessions west of the Mississippi and south of the Iberville. The latter territory was retroceded to France in 1800; and three years later (1803), was purchased by the United States for $15,000,000. From this vast region, which extended from the Mississippi River to the Rocky Mountains, besides the State of *Louisiana* (admitted in 1812), have been formed *Missouri* (1821), *Arkansas* (1836), *Iowa* (1846), *Minnesota* (1858), *Kansas* (1861), *Nebraska* (1867), and the territories of *Colorado*, *Wyoming*, *Montana*, and *Dakota*, together with a reservation for the Indians, known as the *Indian Territory*.

7. ***Florida.***—This was a Spanish province up to 1763, when it was ceded to Great Britain in exchange for Cuba, which the English had recently taken from Spain. By the treaty of 1783, the province was given back to Spain, to which it continued to belong till 1819, when it was ceded to the United States, on condition that the latter country would pay the claims of American citizens against Spain, to the amount of $5,000,000. Owing, however, to a delay on the part of Spain to ratify the treaty, the title to the territory was not acquired by the United States till 1821.

8. ***Oregon.***—The entire region west of the Rocky Mountains, extending from latitude 42° to about 54°, was long known as Oregon.* It was claimed by the United States, because, among other reasons, its principal river had been discovered by Captain Gray, of the ship Columbia, of Boston, in 1792; and because, during the administration of Jefferson, it was explored by Captains Lewis and Clark, who commanded an overland expedition sent out by the United States Government. If, previous to 1819, Spain had possessed any title to this region, she abandoned it in that year; since, by a clause in the treaty ceding Florida, she relinquished all her "rights, claims, and pretensions" to such territory.

9. Great Britain also claimed Oregon until 1846, when, by treaty, the

* A writer of note says that the name *Oregon* was probably invented by Captain Carver, who made an early exploration of the region. Another writer gives it as his opinion that the name was derived from the Spanish *oregano*, wild sage, which grows in great abundance on the Pacific coast.

boundary-line between the possessions of the two nations was fixed at the 49th parallel, thus settling a controversy which had lasted several years, and which, at one time, threatened to produce a war between the two countries. The region thus finally yielded to the United States, was first organized as a territory, under the name of *Oregon* (admitted in 1859); but now includes the State of Oregon, and the Territories of Washington and Idaho.

10. ***Texas.***—This State was once a part of the Republic of Mexico; but, becoming dissatisfied with the Mexican rulers, the people revolted, and, in 1836, set up an independent government. In 1845, Texas was annexed to the United States.

11. ***California.***—The war with Mexico gave to the United States a vast region between Texas and the Pacific Ocean, which had previously belonged to the Mexican Republic. The conquest of this region having been effected during the war, its possession was confirmed by the treaty of Guadaloupe Hidalgo, made in 1848, as well as by a subsequent treaty, known as the "Gadsden Treaty," made in 1853. By the terms of the first treaty, the United States agreed to pay to Mexico $15,000,000, and to assume debts due from her to American citizens to the amount of $3,000,000. By the terms of the second treaty, the United States paid an additional sum of $10,000,000, in order to secure a more southerly boundary. From the region thus acquired from Mexico have been formed the States of California (1850) and Nevada (1864), and the Territories of New Mexico, Arizona, and Utah.

12. ***Alaska.***—The Territory of Alaska, formerly known as Russian America, was ceded to the United States, by Russia, in 1867, for $7,200,000. The name of Alaska having been given to it in the treaty, it has since retained it.

13. Thus has the national domain increased from time to time, spreading from one ocean to the other, and gradually enfolding within its embrace every district of country that lay as an obstacle to the mighty march of its destiny. That "league of love" which first only clasped within its folds an empire of *thirteen* sister States, with an area of 800,000 square miles, has been found sufficiently expansive to permit the embrace of a vast realm of *thirty-eight* States, and *ten* Territories; including altogether an area of more than 3,000,000 square miles.

"O God! look down upon the land which thou hast loved so well,
And grant that in unbroken truth her children still may dwell;
Nor while the grass grows on the hill, and streams flow through the vale,
May they forget their fathers' faith, or in their covenant fail!
God keep the fairest, noblest land that lies beneath the sun—
Our country, our whole country, and our country ever one!"

Civil Progress of the Nation.

1. ***Population.***—The first Census,—that of 1790,—showed a total population in the thirteen States, and the territory on each side of the Ohio River, of less than four millions (3,921,326). In the Northwest Territory the population was so small that no return was made; in the territory south of the Ohio, the number of inhabitants was about 37,000. The city of Philadelphia, then the largest city of the Union, contained only a population of 43,525, that of New York being more than 10,000 less (33,131); Cincinnati, settled in 1788, was but a small hamlet (in 1805 its population was only 500); Boston contained only about 18,000 inhabitants; and New Orleans, then a French settlement, less than 8,000. The great western cities of the present day were scarcely dreamed of.

2. The population of the Union, as shown by the Census of 1880, is more than fifty millions (50,442,066). There are twenty cities, the population of each of which exceeds 100,000, and ten in which the population is in excess of 200,000. The Metropolis contains about a million and a quarter of inhabitants, having grown, during our national existence, to that astonishing figure, from the small number mentioned above; while Cincinnati has grown from 500, in 1805, to more than 250,000. Chicago, which, in 1831, contained only about a dozen families, before the great fire of 1871 had a population of 298,000; and in 1880, over 500,000, being the fourth city of the Union, exceeded by New York, Philadelphia, and Brooklyn. St. Louis, a small trading-village in 1803, when it came under the United States Government, contained in 1880 about 350,000.

3. ***Commerce.***—The commercial progress of the country has kept pace with the vast increase in its population, and the amazing growth of its cities. In 1790, the total exports from all the ports of the United States amounted to about twenty millions of dollars, and the imports somewhat less; in 1880, the amount of exports was more than 760 millions of dollars; and the imports amounted to over 466 millions of dollars. About two thirds of all the imports of the United States arrive in New York, and about forty per cent. of all the exports are shipped from that port.

4. The tonnage of the United States has increased from 274,377, in 1790, to 4,068,035, in 1880; while the number of American vessels (registered or enrolled) has increased during the same period to 24,712, of which about 4,700 were steam-vessels. This is considerably less than the number reported previous to the Civil War, the total tonnage in 1862–3 being more than 5,000,000. The vast increase in population on the borders of the Great Lakes, and along the great navigable rivers, has led to the establishment of an inland and domestic trade, of greater proportions

than the foreign commerce immense as that is. The chief items of this trade are coal and lumber; but the cereals also constitute a considerable part.

5. ***Manufactures.***—During the Colonial period, the manufacturing industry of the American people was repressed by penal statutes, the selfish policy of the British government dictating agricultural pursuits for the purpose of benefiting the commerce of the mother-country. Hence, a free market was opened to all the agricultural products, including the raw materials of manufacture; and sometimes bounties were offered to stimulate still further their production. This policy was peculiarly fitted to increase the prosperity of the Southern Colonies, while those of the North were scarcely able to subsist.

6. When, therefore, the nation commenced its existence, the manufacturing interests were of very little importance; indeed, they had scarcely commenced to be developed. Before the war of 1812, nothing was accomplished on a great scale in this direction; the embargo, however, gave a great stimulus to this interest. Since that period, an amazing expansion has been reached in every department of manufactures, but especially in those of cottons, woollens, and iron,—the three great staples, in the first of which this country is now exceeded by Great Britain alone. The principal seats of this manufacture are in Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Pennsylvania, Connecticut, and New York.

7. The general use of furnaces, stoves, etc., for heating purposes, the innumerable applications of machinery, as a substitute for human labor, and for the propulsion of land-carriages, as well as for the purposes of navigation, render the *iron manufacture* of great importance in this country; and, accordingly, it has developed into vast proportions. Its kindred department, *mining*—particularly of coal and iron—has, of course, kept equal pace with it.

8. ***Ship-building.***—The first vessel built in New England was built in Medford, Massachusetts, for Governor Winthrop. She was launched on the fourth of July, 1631, and was called the "Blessing of the Bay,"—a name which indicated, in anticipation, the great benefits which that section of our country was to experience from this department of industry. Up to the commencement of the Civil War (1861) this branch of labor was among the most flourishing in the country; but the operations of Confederate cruisers, aided, as they were, by British influence and support, had the effect to paralyze this, as well as every other branch of industry dependent upon navigation.

9. ***Printing and Book-publishing.***—Under our system of free government and free schools, the various pursuits connected with the printing and publication of newspapers, books, etc., have reached a condition of great activity and extent. The wide-spread demand for informa

tion has stimulated the application of science and art to this branch of industry to the highest degree. The processes in use for the purpose a century ago would be, at the present time, comparatively valueless. One of the earliest inventions for improving the old printing-press was the *Columbian press*, invented by George Clymer of Philadelphia, in 1818; and, more recently, the powerful cylinder presses constructed by Richard M. Hoe, of New York, have rendered it possible to keep pace with the daily demand for newspapers and books. By the cylinder press worked by steam, in connection with the stereotype process, as many as 40,000 impressions of a newspaper can be taken in an hour.

10. ***Agriculture.***—This, the leading pursuit of our country during its entire history, has made vast and rapid strides, both in processes and results, since the commencement of our national union. The great demand for labor has furnished very strong inducements for the invention and use of labor-saving machinery and implements, and the ingenuity of the American people has been strikingly illustrated by its innumerable achievements in this direction. Of these, the cultivator, the mowing machine, the reaper, the horse rake, the threshing machine, etc., are examples. Steam has been applied to the working of many of these implements; and, in this way, the work of one man is often made more effective than that of a hundred a century ago.

11. In the northern sections of the country, the chief staples are the cereal grains, maize, wheat, rye, oats, barley, etc., together with potatoes and hay; in the South, cotton, rice, sugar, and tobacco take the lead. The increase in the production of these various articles since the formation of our government has been amazing. In 1790, the cotton raised amounted to less than 250,000 pounds; while in 1860, just previous to the great Civil War, the quantity cultivated reached the extraordinary amount of more than 2,000,000,000 pounds, or nearly 4,000,000 of bales. In 1870, the crop amounted to a little over one billion and three quarters of pounds; and in 1880, to nearly two billions and three quarters (2,729,500,000) pounds. Mississippi ranks first as a cotton-growing State.

12. ***Canals.***—In 1827, Edward Everett thus spoke of the internal improvements of that period: "A system of internal improvements has been commenced, which will have the effect, when a little further developed, of crowding within a few years the progress of generations. Already, Lake Champlain from the north and Lake Erie from the west have been connected with Albany. The Delaware and Chesapeake Bays have been united. A canal is nearly finished in the upper part of New Jersey, from the Delaware to the Hudson, by which coal is already dispatched to our market. Another route is laid out, across the same State, to connect New York by a railroad with Philadelphia. A water communication has been opened, by canals, half way from Philadelphia to

Pittsburg. Considerable progress is made, both on the railroad and the canal, which are to unite Baltimore and Washington with the Ohio River. A canal of sixty miles in length is open, from Cincinnati to Dayton, in the State of Ohio; and another, of more than three hundred miles in extent, to connect Lake Erie with the Ohio, is two-thirds completed."

13. The various enterprises here alluded to have all been completed. The *Grand Erie Canal*, in the State of New York, was opened in 1824 but not entirely completed till 1825. This magnificent public improvement owed its success to the genius of De Witt Clinton,* and contributed in a very great degree to make New York city what it is at present—the great emporium of the country. It is 363 miles in length, and was first estimated to cost $5,000,000. Since its completion, in 1825, it has been considerably enlarged. The total length of canals in the United States, in 1854, was over 4,000 miles; but since that period few undertakings of this kind, of any magnitude, have been commenced, their use as a means of communication having been superseded by the construction of railroads. Extensive river improvements have also been accomplished in many parts of the country.

14. ***Railroads.*** — The first great internal improvement in this country was the Philadelphia and Pittsburg Turnpike, which was completed near the close of the last century. The Cumberland Road, subsequently called the *Great National Road*, had its origin in an appropriation of $30,000 by Congress, in 1806, for the construction of a road over the Alleghany mountains, from Cumberland, in Maryland, to the Ohio River. Other appropriations for the construction of this road were made from time to time; and in 1820 it had been completed to Wheeling, at an expense of $1,700,000. Subsequently it was extended to Springfield, Ohio, and partially undertaken in Indiana and Illinois; but being superseded by railways, it was never completed to the extent at one time contemplated.

15. The first railroads constructed in the United States were the Quincy Railroad, used to transport granite from the quarries of Quincy, Massachusetts (1826), and the Mauch Chunk Railroad, for the conveyance of coal from the mines at that place to the Lehigh River in Pennsylvania (1827). The rapid construction of railroads in every part of the country since that time presents a very striking evidence of the activity and enterprise of the people, and the civil progress of the nation.

16. In 1848, the number of miles of completed railways amounted to 6,000; in 1860, this had increased to nearly 31,000, the construction and

* De Witt Clinton was born in March, 1769, and was the son of General James Clinton, of Orange County, New York. He was mayor of the city of New York ten years; and was elected governor of the State in 1817, and again in 1820 and 1826. His death occurred in February, 1828.

equipment of which cost more than one billion of dollars ($1,151,560,289). In 1870 it had increased to 53,000 ; and in 1880, to over 86,000.

Of all the enterprises of this character, the Pacific Railroad is the most stupendous. This road extends from Omaha in Nebraska to San Francisco, and connects with the great lines from the east, bringing the great eastern cities within a week's journey from San Francisco. It is 1,913 miles long between the two points above mentioned. This great undertaking was completed in 1869. Other railroads are also in contemplation across the western part of the country to the Pacific Ocean. The Northern Pacific, already commenced, has its eastern terminus at Lake Superior (Duluth) and its western at Puget's Sound, in Washington Territory.

17. Thus are the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans bound together by an iron band, by means of which, in connection with the Trans-Pacific lines of steamships, China, India, and Japan are brought within a few weeks' travel of the great American marts, and the rich products of those realms are poured into them in boundless profusion. New sources of enterprise and wealth are also developed in our own country by the same means, and additional incentives offered for settlement in the wild and uncultivated, but richly endowed, regions of our widely-extended domain.

18. ***Telegraphs.***—The demand for the rapid communication of intelligence was by no means supplied by the locomotive and railroad ; and the agency of electricity has been brought in to supplement the deficiencies of steam. The invention of the electro-magnetic telegraph is due to Prof. Morse, who, in 1844, erected the first line, between Baltimore and Washington, a distance of forty miles. This line was extended northward, through Philadelphia and New York, to Boston, in 1845. From this comparatively small beginning a vast system of telegraphic lines has been constructed, by means of which all the great centres of trade and population in the world have been brought into instantaneous communication. In 1850, the length of telegraph lines in the United States was 23,281 miles ; in 1854, it had increased to 41,392 miles ; in 1858, to more than 50,000 miles ; and in 1880, it amounted to over one hundred thousand miles (107,103).

19. ***Atlantic Telegraph.***—The first successful submarine telegraph was laid in 1851, across Dover Strait, connecting Dover and Calais. Three unsuccessful attempts to establish a telegraphic cable across the Atlantic Ocean were made in 1857, 1858, and 1865. In the first and last of these, the cable parted and was partially lost ; in the second, it was laid, but almost immediately failed to convey signals. A fourth attempt, in 1866, proved entirely successful. The success of this gigantic enterprise, persisted in under so many discouragements, was largely due to the

untiring energy of Cyrus W. Field. The successful cable of 1866 was made in England, and laid by the Great Eastern, the largest steam-vessel ever constructed. She was built in London, and made her first trip in 1859. The Atlantic cable is about 2,600 miles long, and contains no less than 25,000 miles of copper-wire in the conductor, 35,000 miles of iron wire in the outside covering, and upward of 400,000 miles of strands of hemp; more than enough in all to go twenty-four times round the world. Its strength is sufficient to bear a strain of nearly twenty-eight tons.

20. ***Education.***—The establishment of Common Schools, in which all classes could be educated, has been a distinguishing feature in the civil progress of the country. Several of the States have inserted in their Constitutions articles requiring the maintenance of public schools. In New England, the principle has been ever avowed and sustained, that it is the right and duty of government to provide the means for the instruction of the youth of all classes of society in the elements of learning. Other States have adopted this principle. In Massachusetts, by statute enacted in 1647, "each town, consisting of fifty householders, was directed to maintain a school to teach their children to read and write, and every town of one hundred families was to maintain a grammar-school to fit youth for college." In the early history of Connecticut, similar laws were passed.

21. It has been uniformly a part of the land system of the United States to provide for public schools. In the organization of territories and the admission of States, the condition has often been imposed, that a part of each township should be permanently applied for the use or support of such schools. In nearly all the States there is a large fund devoted to the support of common schools, under provisions of State law. The special instruction of teachers has become a prominent feature in the educational systems of most of the States. Several of the States have a Normal School fund. In most of the Slave-States, popular education was greatly neglected; but since the close of the Civil War, strenuous efforts have been made in many of the southern States to provide the means of educating all classes, including the children of the freedmen. The High Schools and Colleges of the country have also attained a high rank for scholarship and efficiency of education.

22. ***Literature.***—During the colonial period, America gained no prominence in any department of literary effort, except, perhaps, that of *theology*, religious disputation almost absorbing the intellectual energies of the age. Jonathan Edwards, by the publication of his masterly "Treatise on the Will," at once secured for himself the respectful attention of thinkers in the mother country; several of his sermons were republished in England. This distinguished man died in 1786. Since that time American literature has been enriched by many works of genius in al-

most every department. In oratory, no nation can claim to have surpassed the United States; and the speeches of Webster, Clay, and Everett will ever remain as monuments of the literary culture, as well as clearness and power of reasoning, of those distinguished men. These are but the *bright stars* in a cluster of very brilliant names.

23. Irving's writings were the first to make American literature popular abroad; their genial spirit, inimitable humor, and elegant style attracting all classes of readers. In history, independently of what has been done to illustrate specially the annals of every part of our own country by a host of worthy writers, the works of Bancroft, Hildreth, Prescott, and Motley have given our literature a high rank. In fiction, Cooper won for himself by his "Leather-stocking Tales," a very decided pre-eminence; but Hawthorne, as a literary artist, is doubtless decidedly superior. Paulding, Simms, Kennedy, Neal, Brown, and Poe, occupy conspicuous places in this field of literary effort.

24. The effusions of American poets have deservedly obtained very high commendation and favor. These writers are a legion in number; and in this brief sketch, even a partial enumeration is impossible. Halleck, Willis, Longfellow, Whittier, Bryant, have, however, won for themselves a conspicuous place in the popular esteem. James R. Lowell and Oliver W. Holmes, as humorous poets, have also attained a wide reputation. The two most prolific branches of American literature are educational works and journalism, in both of which the country has attained a rank which, without doubt, will compare favorably with that of any other nation.

CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE.

English.

— **Discoveries and Explorations.**

Henry VII.
1492. The West Indies were discovered by Columbus.
1497. North America was discovered by the Cabots.
1498. Coast of North America explored by Sebastian Cabot.
South America was discovered by Columbus.
1499. South America was visited by Amerigo Vespucci.
1512. Florida was discovered by Ponce de Leon.
1513. The Pacific Ocean was discovered by Balboa.
Henry VIII.
1517. Yucatan was discovered by Cordova.
1520. The coast of Carolina was visited by De Ayllon.
1521. Mexico was conquered by Cortez.
1524. Coast of North America explored by Verrazzani.
1528. Florida was explored by Narvaez.
1534. The St. Lawrence was discovered by Cartier.
1541. The Mississippi was discovered by De Soto.

— **Colonial History.**

1562. The Huguenots attempted to colonize Carolina.
1564. The second Huguenot colony was begun in Florida.
Elizabeth.
1565. Florida was settled at St. Augustine, by Spaniards.
1579. West coast of North America explored by Drake.
1584. The Carolina coast explored by Raleigh's expedition.
1585-7. Raleigh made two attempts to colonize Carolina.
1602. The Massachusetts coast was explored by Gosnold.
1606. The London and Plymouth Companies received charters.
1607. The London Company planted a colony at Jamestown.
1609. The Hudson River was discovered by Hudson.
James I.
1614. The New England coast was explored by Smith.
New York was settled by the Dutch.
1619. Negro slavery was introduced into Virginia.
1620. Plymouth was settled.
1623. New Hampshire was settled.

English.

Charles I.
1630. Boston was settled by the Massachusetts Bay colony.
1633. Connecticut was settled at Windsor.
1634. Maryland was settled at St. Mary's.
1635. Saybrook (2d colony in Connecticut) was settled.
1636. Providence (1st colony in Rhode Island) was settled.
1638. The Swedish colony in Delaware was established.
New Haven (3d colony in Connecticut) was settled.
1643. Four New England colonies formed a Union.

The Commonwealth
1650. North Carolina was settled on the Chowan.
1651. Parliament passed the "Navigation Act."
1655. New Sweden (Delaware) conquered by the Dutch.
1656. The "Persecution of Quakers" in Massachusetts.

Charles II.
1663. The grant of Carolina was made to Clarendon and others.
1664. New York was taken by the English from the Dutch.
New Jersey was settled at Elizabeth.
1665. The Connecticut colonies united under one charter.
1670. South Carolina was settled on the Ashley.
1673. Virginia was ceded to Culpepper and Arlington.
1675. King Philip's War in New England.
1682. Pennsylvania (at Philadelphia) was settled.
Delaware was granted by the Duke of York to Penn.

Wm. III.
1689. **King William's War** began in America.
1690. Port Royal (Nova Scotia) captured by the English.
1692. Plymouth was united with Massachusetts.
1697. The "Treaty of Ryswick" ended the war.

Anne.
1702. **Queen Anne's War** began in America.
1710. Port Royal captured (2d time) by the English.
1713. The "Treaty of Utrecht" ended the war.
1729. Carolina separated into North and South Carolina.
1732. Washington was born in Virginia.
1733. Georgia was settled at Savannah.

George II.
1744. **King George's War** began in America.
1745. Louisburg was taken (1st time) by the English.
1748. The "Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle" ended the war.
1754. **The French and Indian War** began in America.
1755. Braddock was defeated at the Monongahela.
1757. Fort William Henry surrendered to the French.
1758. Abercromby was defeated at Ticonderoga.
Louisburg was taken (2d time) by the English.
1759. Wolfe defeated Montcalm before Quebec.

G. III.
1760. Montreal was surrendered to the English.
1763. The "Treaty of Paris" ended the war.

Revolutionary History.

George III. was King of England from 1760 *to* 1820.

1765. Parliament passed the Stamp Act.....March 8.
The Colonial Congress met in New York.....Oct. 7.
1766. Parliament repealed the Stamp Act.....March 18.
1767. A bill taxing tea, glass, paper, etc., was passed.....June 29.
1773. The tea in Boston harbor was thrown overboard.....Dec. 16.
1774. The First Continental Congress met in Philadelphia.....Sept. 5.
1775. The war commenced with the battle of Lexington.....April 19.
Allen and Arnold captured Ticonderoga.....May 10.
Washington was elected commander-in-chief.....June 15.
The battle of Bunker Hill.....June 17.
Montgomery was defeated and slain at Quebec.....Dec. 31.
1776. Boston was evacuated by the British troops.....March 17.
The British were repulsed at Fort Moultrie, Charleston....June 28.
Congress adopted the Declaration of Independence.....July 4.
The Americans were defeated on Long Island.....Aug. 27.
Washington was defeated at White Plains.....Oct. 28.
The British captured Fort Washington.....Nov. 16.
Washington took a thousand prisoners at Trenton.....Dec. 26.
1777. Washington gained a victory at Princeton.....Jan. 3.
Burgoyne commenced his invasion of New York.....June 16.
Fort Schuyler was besieged by St. Leger.....Aug. 3.
Stark defeated Baum at Bennington.....Aug. 16.
Howe defeated Washington at the Brandywine.....Sept. 11.
Battle of Bemis Heights, or First Battle of Stillwater.....Sept. 19.
The British entered Philadelphia.....Sept. 26.
The British defeated the Americans at Germantown.....Oct. 4.
Battle of Saratoga, or Second Battle of Stillwater.....Oct. 7.
Burgoyne surrendered his army to Gates.....Oct. 17.
1778. France acknowledged the Independence of the U. S.. .....Feb. 6.
The British, under Clinton, evacuated Philadelphia.....June 18.
Washington defeated Clinton at Monmouth.....June 28.
The battle and massacre at Wyoming.....July 3, 4.
Sullivan defeated the British at Quaker Hill, R. I.....Aug. 29.
Tories and Indians massacred people at Cherry Valley....Nov. 11.
Campbell captured Savannah.....Dec. 29.
1779. The Americans, under Wayne, captured Stony Point.....July 15.
Paul Jones gained a victory off the coast of England.....Sept. 23.
D'Estaing and Lincoln were repulsed at Savannah.....Oct. 9.
1780. Lincoln surrendered Charleston to Clinton.....May 12.
Cornwallis defeated Gates at Sanders Creek.....Aug. 16.

1780. Arnold plotted to betray West Point to the British.
Andre was executed as a spy, at Tappan..... Oct. 2.
Ferguson was defeated and slain at King's Mountain .....Oct. 7.
1781. The Pennsylvania troops revolted..... .....Jan. 1.
Morgan defeated Tarleton at the Cowpens.....Jan. 17.
Cornwallis pursued Morgan and Greene..... ....Jan., Feb.
The Articles of Confederation were ratified by the States.
Cornwallis defeated Greene at Guilford Court-House.....March 15.
Rawdon defeated Greene at Hobkirk's Hill.....April 25.
Arnold made an expedition against New London.....Sept. 6.
The battle of Eutaw Springs.....Sept. 8.
Cornwallis surrendered at Yorktown.....Oct. 19.
1783. A definitive treaty of peace was signed at Paris.....Sept. 3.
The American army was disbanded. .....Nov. 3.
New York was evacuated by the British.....Nov. 25.
Washington resigned his commission to Congress.....Dec. 23.
1787. Shays's Rebellion occurred in Massachusetts.
Convention of delegates adopted Constitution of U. S.....Sept. 17.

National History.

1789. George Washington was inaugurated President.....April 30.
1790. The Indians defeated Harmar near Fort Wayne.....Oct. 17, 22.
1791. The United States Bank was established at Philadelphia.
Vermont was admitted into the Union.....March 4.
Indians defeated St. Clair in western part of Ohio.....Nov. 4.
1792. Kentucky was admitted into the Union.....June 1.
1793. Difficulties with France.
1794. Wayne defeated the Indians on the Maumee.....Aug. 20.
The Whiskey Insurrection in Pennsylvania occurred.
1795. Jay's treaty with Great Britain was ratified.....June 24.
1796. Tennessee was admitted into the Union.....June 1.
1797. John Adams was inaugurated President..... .....March 4.
1799. Washington died at Mount Vernon, Virginia.....Dec. 14.
1800. The city of Washington became the capital of the United States.
A treaty of peace was concluded with France.....Sept. 30.
1801. Thomas Jefferson was inaugurated President.....March 4.
Tripoli declared war against the United States.....June 10.
1803. Ohio was admitted into the Union.....Nov. 29.
1803. The "Louisiana Purchase" was made.....April 30.
Commodore Preble was sent against Tripoli.
1804. Decatur destroyed the frigate Philadelphia..... .....Feb. 15.
Hamilton and Burr fought a duel.....July 11.
1805. A treaty of peace was concluded with Tripoli.....June 3.

1807. The frigate Leopard attacked U. S. frigate Chesapeake....June 22.
Congress laid an embargo on American ships.....Dec. 22.
1809. James Madison was inaugurated President.....March 4.
1811. The U. S. frigate President defeated the Little Belt.....May 16.
Harrison gained a victory at Tippecanoe.....Nov. 7.
1812. Louisiana was admitted into the Union.....April 8.

Second War with England.

United States proclaimed war against Great Britain..... June 19.
Fort Mackinaw was surrendered to the British.....July 17.
Hull surrendered Detroit to Brock.....Aug. 16.
American frigate Constitution took the Guerriere.....Aug. 19.
The Americans were defeated at Queenstown.....Oct. 13.
American frigate United States took the Macedonian.....Oct. 25.
The American frigate Constitution took the Java.....Dec. 29.
1813. The Americans captured York (now Toronto).....April 27.
Harrison and Clay defeated Proctor at Fort Meigs.....May 5.
Brown repulsed the British at Sackett's Harbor.....May 29.
The British frigate Shannon took the Chesapeake.....June 1.
Croghan repulsed the British at Fort Stephenson.....Aug. 2.
Creek War began by the massacre at Fort Mims.....Aug. 30.
Perry gained his victory over Barclay on Lake Erie.....Sept. 10.
Harrison defeated Proctor at the battle of the Thames.....Oct. 5.
Battle of Williamsburg, or Chrysler's Field.....Nov. 11.
1814. The battle of Tohopeka ended the Creek war.....March 27.
Brown defeated the British at Chippewa.....July 5.
Battle of Lundy's Lane, or Bridgewater.....July 25.
Ross entered Washington and fired public buildings.....Aug. 24.
MacDonough defeated the British on Lake Champlain....Sept. 11.
Macomb defeated the British at Plattsburg.....Sept. 11.
The Americans repulsed British fleet at Fort McHenry...Sept. 13.
The Americans repulsed the British at Fort Bowyer.....Sept. 15.
Jackson compelled the British to leave Pensacola.....Nov. 7.
The delegates to the Hartford Convention met.....Dec. 15.
The treaty of peace was signed at Ghent.....Dec. 24.
1815. Jackson defeated the British at New Orleans.....Jan. 8.
Congress declared war against Algiers.....March 2.
1816. Bank of the U. S. was re-chartered for twenty years.....April 10.
Indiana was admitted into the Union..... Dec. 11.
1817. James Monroe was inaugurated President.....March 4.
Mississippi was admitted into the Union.....Dec. 10.
1818. Jackson marched against the Seminoles.....March.
Illinois was admitted into the Union.....Dec. 3

1819. Spain ceded Florida to the United States.
Alabama was admitted into the Union.....Dec. 14.
1820. The "Missouri Compromise Bill" was passed.....March 3.
Maine was admitted into the Union.....March 15.
1821. Missouri was admitted into the Union.....Aug. 20.
1824. Lafayette visited the United States.....Aug. 15.
1825. John Quincy Adams was inaugurated President.....March 4.
1826. John Adams and Thomas Jefferson died.....July 4.
1829. Andrew Jackson was inaugurated President.....March 4.
1832. The Black Hawk War.
South Carolina declared the doctrine of Nullification.....Nov. 24.
1836. Arkansas was admitted into the Union.....June 15.
1837. Michigan was admitted into the Union.....Jan. 26.
Martin Van Buren was inaugurated President.....March 4.
1841. William Henry Harrison was inaugurated President.....March 4.
The death of President Harrison.....April 4.
John Tyler was inaugurated President.....April 6.
1842. The Dorr rebellion in Rhode Island.
1845. Florida was admitted into the Union.....March 3.
James K. Polk was inaugurated President.....March 4.
Texas was admitted into the Union.....Dec. 29.

War with Mexico.

1846. Taylor defeated the Mexicans at Palo Alto.....May 8.
Taylor defeated the Mexicans at Resaca de la Palma.....May 9.
Taylor crossed the Rio Grande and took Matamoras.....May 18.
Taylor defeated the Mexicans at Monterey.....Sept. 24.
Doniphan defeated the Mexicans at Bracito.....Dec. 25.
Iowa was admitted into the Union.....Dec. 28.
1847. Taylor defeated the Mexicans at Buena Vista.....Feb. 23.
Doniphan defeated the Mexicans at Sacramento.....Feb. 28.
The Mexicans surrendered Vera Cruz to Scott.....March 27.
Scott defeated the Mexicans at Cerro Gordo.....April 18.
Scott entered the city of Mexico.....Sept. 14.
1848. A treaty was made between the U. S. and Mexico.....Feb. 2.
Wisconsin was admitted into the Union.....May 29.
1849. Zachary Taylor was inaugurated President.....March 5.
1850. The death of President Taylor occurred.....July 9.
Millard Fillmore was inaugurated President.....July 10.
California was admitted into the Union.....Sept. 9.
1853. Franklin Pierce was inaugurated President.....March 4.
1854. Congress passed the Kansas-Nebraska Bill.....May 31.
1857. James Buchanan was inaugurated President.....March 4.
1858. Minnesota was admitted into the Union.....May 11.

1859. Oregon was admitted into the Union.....Feb. 14.
John Brown made a raid into Virginia.....Oct. 16.

Great Civil War.

1860. South Carolina passed a secession ordinance.....Dec. 20.
1861. Mississippi (Jan. 9), Florida (Jan. 10), Alabama (Jan. 11), Georgia (Jan. 19), Louisiana (Jan. 26), Texas (Feb. 1), Virginia (April 17), Arkansas (May 6), Tennessee (May 7), and North Carolina (May 20), passed secession ordinances.
Kansas was admitted into the Union.....Jan. 29.
The "Southern Confederacy" was formed.....Feb.
Lincoln was inaugurated President of the United States..March 4.
The Confederates attacked Fort Sumter.....April 12, 13.
Lincoln proclaimed a blockade of Southern ports.....April 19.
Volunteer troops were attacked in Baltimore.....April 19.
England (May 13), France (June 10), Spain (June 17), and Portugal (July 29), acknowledged the Confederate States as belligerents.
Union troops were repulsed at Big Bethel.....June 10.
The Union army was routed at Bull Run.....July 21.
A Union force captured the forts at Hatteras Inlet.....Aug. 29.
Lexington, Mo., was surrendered to the Confederates.....Sept. 20.
A Union force captured forts at Port Royal entrance.....Nov. 7.
The Confederates were victorious at Belmont.....Nov. 7.
Mason and Slidell were taken from a British steamer.....Nov. 8.
1862. Fort Henry was captured by a fleet of U. S. gunboats.....Feb. 6.
Fort Donelson was captured by the Unionists.....Feb. 16.
The Confederates were defeated at Pea Ridge.....March 8.
Engagement between the Monitor and Merrimac.....March 9.
The Unionists gained a victory at Shiloh.....April 7.
Fort Pulaski was surrendered to the Unionists.....April 11.
New Orleans was captured by the Unionists.....April 25.
The battle of Fair Oaks.....May 51, June 1.
Memphis surrendered to the Unionists.....June 6.
"The Seven days' contest before Richmond".....June 25–July 1.
Battles between Manassas and Washington.....Aug. 23-30.
The Confederates, under Lee, invaded Maryland.....Sept. 5.
Lee's army was defeated at Antietam.....Sept. 17.
The Unionists were victorious at Iuka.....Sept. 19.
The Confederates were repulsed at Corinth.....Oct. 4.
The Confederates gained a victory at Fredericksburg.....Dec. 13.
1863. Lincoln issued the Emancipation Proclamation.....Jan. 1.

The Unionists gained a victory at Murfreesboro.....Jan. 2.
The Unionists were defeated in Chancellorsville.....May 3.
West Virginia was admitted into the Union.....June 20.
Lee made his second invasion of Maryland.....June 21.
The Union army was victorious at Gettysburg.....July 3.
Vicksburg was surrendered to the Unionists.....July 4.
Port Hudson was surrendered to the Unionists.....July 8.
The great riot in New York.....July 13–16.

1864. The Unionists were defeated at Olustee.....Feb. 20.
Grant was appointed Lieutenant-General.....March 3.
The battle of the Wilderness.....May 5, 6.
Sherman began his march against Atlanta.....May 7.
The Unionists gained a victory in Mobile Bay.....Aug. 5.
Sherman captured Atlanta.....Sept. 2.
The Unionists were victorious at Cedar Creek.....Oct. 10.
Nevada was admitted into the Union.....Oct. 31.
The Unionists gained a victory at Nashville.....Dec. 16.

1865. Union troops and fleet captured Fort Fisher.....Jan. 15.
Sherman captured Columbia.....Feb. 17.
Charleston was occupied by Union troops.....Feb. 18.
Union troops occupied Petersburg and Richmond.....April 3.
Lee surrendered to Grant.....April 9.
President Lincoln was assassinated .....April 14.
Andrew Johnson was inaugurated President.....April 15.

1867. Nebraska was admitted into the Union.....March 1.
Alaska was purchased for $7,200,000.....June 20.

1869. Ulysses S. Grant was inaugurated President.....March 4.

1876. Colorado was admitted into the Union .....Aug. 1.

1877. Rutherford B. Hayes was inaugurated President.....March 5.

1881. James A. Garfield was inaugurated President .....March 4.
Assassination of President Garfield.....July 2.
Chester A. Arthur was inaugurated President .....Sept. 20.

1885. Grover Cleveland was inaugurated President.....March 4.

1889. Benjamin Harrison was inaugurated President .....March 4.
North Dakota (Nov. 2), South Dakota (Nov. 2), Montana (Nov. 8), and Washington (Nov. 11), were admitted into the Union.

1890. Idaho (July 2) and Wyoming (July 10) were admitted into the Union.

1893. Cleveland began his second term as President.....March 4.

VOCABULARY

OF DIFFICULT AND UNUSUAL WORDS.

Ab'a-tis. Branches of trees sharpened and turned outward for defense.
Ab'di-cate. To give up (as, an office).
Ab-o-rig'i-nes (*-rij'e-neez*). The first inhabitants of a country.
Ab-o-rig'i-nal. First; primitive.
Ab'ro-gate. To repeal; to annul.
Ab-solve'. To clear from blame or guilt.
Ac-qui-esce' (*ac-kwe-es'*). To yield assent to.
Ac-ri-mo'ni-ous. Full of bitterness; severe.
Ad'e-quate. Equal to; sufficient.
Ad'junct. Something joined to; an appendage.
Ad-ven'tur-er. One who lives by bold and hazardous undertakings.
Af'fix. Something attached to; a syllable joined to a word.
Ag-gress'ive. Assailing; disposed to attack.
Ag-ri-cult'ūr-al. Pertaining to farming or tillage.
Aid-de-camp (*ād'e-kawng*). One who attends on a military officer to convey his orders.
Al'che-my. Chemistry as understood and practised in former times, one of its chief objects being to change the common metals into gold.
Al-le'giance (*-jance*). Obligation of a subject; loyalty.
Al-le-vi-a'tion. Act of lessening; mitigation.
Al-ter'nate-ly. By turns; one after the other.
Am-a-teur' (*-tūr*). A lover of any science or art; not a professor.
Am-mu-ni'tion. Military stores, as powder, balls, etc.
An'a-lyze. To separate into component parts.
An'ar-chy. Want of government; confusion.
An-i-mad-ver'sion. Unfavorable comment; censure.
An-nex-a'tion. Act of joining to; union.
An-ni-hi-la'tion. Act of destroying; reducing to nothing.
An-tag'o-nist. An opponent.
An-tip'o-des. Those who live on opposite sides of the earth.
An-ti-scor-bu'tic. Curing or preventing the scurvy.
A-pos'ta-sy. A falling from one's profession or faith.
A-pos'tate. One guilty of apostasy.
A-pos'tle. One sent to preach the gospel.
Ap-pa-ri'tion. An appearance of a preternatural character; a ghost.
Ap-pel-la'tion. A name; a title.
Aqua Vi'æ. Latin phrase, meaning *water of life;* brandy.
Ar-chi-pel-a'go (*ar-ke-pel'a'go*). A sea crowded with islands; a large group of islands.
Ar'chives (*ar'kives*). Records; place for records.
Ar'ma-ment. A land or naval force.
Ar'que-buse (*ar'kwe-bus*). A hand-gun.
Ar-que-bus-ier'. A soldier armed with an arquebuse.
Ar-til'le-ry. Weapons of war; troops that manage cannon, etc.
As-sim'i-late. To make similar to.
A-sy'lum. A refuge; a charitable institution.
A-tone'ment. Satisfaction for crime; expiation.
Au'gu-ry. Foretelling events by signs or omens.
Aus-pi'cious. Having omens of success; favorable.

Ban-do-leer'. A small case for powder.
Bar'o-ny. The territory or dignity of a baron.
Bar-ri-cade'. An obstruction formed hurriedly against an attack.
Bar'racks. Buildings for soldiers to lodge in.
Ba-salt'ic (*ba-zawlt'ic*). Consisting of a grayish-black stone.
Ba-shaw'. A Turkish governor or viceroy.
Bas'so-Re-liev'o (*Italian*). Sculpture in which the figures partly stand out from a plane surface.
Be-leag'uer (*be-le'ger*). To besiege; to block up.
Bel-lig'e-rent. Waging war.
Ben-e-fac'tor. One who does good,—who confers a benefit.
Be-nig'ni-ty. Goodness of heart; kindness.

Bick'er-ings. Quarrels; contentions.
Big'o-try. Blind zeal in favor of any particular doctrine or faith.
Bilge. The broadest part of a ship's bottom; to spring a leak.
Biv'ouac (*biv'wak*). Passing the night in the open air, as soldiers.
Bland'ness. Mildness; softness.
Bom-bard'ment. An attack with bombs (large iron shells filled with powder).
Bomb'-proof. Secure against bombs; a place of refuge in a fort, against bombs.
Brig'an-tine. A small brig, or two-masted vessel.
Bull'ion (*bull'yun*). Uncoined silver or gold.
Burgh'er (*burg'er*). An inhabitant of a burgh, or corporate town; a citizen.
Bur-go-mas'ter. A magistrate in a Dutch city.

Can'is-ter. A small box for tea, coffee, powder, etc. Abbreviation of *Canister-shot*; a charge for cannon, consisting of bullets, etc., inclosed in a canister or case.
Can-non-ade'. An assault with cannon.
Ca-pit'u-late. To yield on expressed conditions.
Car-tel'. An agreement for the exchange of prisoners.
Casque (*cask*). A helmet.
Ca-tas'tro-phe. The termination of an event; a calamity.
Cav-al-cade'. A procession on horseback.
Cav-a-lier' (*-leer*). An armed horseman; a knight.
Cer-e-mo'ni-al. Outward form or rite.
Chap-ar-ral' (*shap-*). A thicket of evergreen oaks.
Cha-teau' (*shat-to'*). A castle, or country seat.
Chi-mer'i-cal (*ki-*). Fanciful; imaginary; unreal.
Chiv'al-ry. Knighthood; heroic adventure.
Chron'i-cler. A narrator of events; a historian.
Cir-cu'i-tous. Round about; not direct.
Cir'cum-scribe. To inclose within fixed limits.
Clan'gor (*klang'gor*). A loud, shrill sound; clang.
Clar'i-on. A kind of trumpet, of a shrill, clear tone.
Co-a-li'tion. Union; alliance; confederacy.
Co-er'cion. Compulsion; restraint.
Coin'age. Act of coining; money coined.
Col'league. A partner in the same office; an associate.
Co-los'sal. Huge; gigantic.
Com-mem'o-rate. To celebrate with honor.
Con-cil'i-ate. To gain the favor of; to gain by concession.
Con-fed'er-a-cy. A league, or mutual agreement.
Con-fis-ca'tion. Transferring to the state as a penalty; forfeiture.
Con-fla-gra'tion. An extensive fire.
Con-nu'bi-al. Pertaining to marriage.
Con-san-guin'i-ty. Relationship by blood or birth.
Con-ster-na'tion. Amazement; excessive alarm.
Con-ta'gi-ous. Communicated by contact; infectious.
Con-tem'po-ra-ry. Existing at the same time.
Con'tra-band. Unlawful; forbidden.
Con-ven'tion-al. Agreed on by compact; customary.
Co-op'er-ate. To work with others.
Cop'pice. A wood of small growth.
Cor'po-ral. An inferior military officer, next below a sergeant.
Cru'ci-fix. A representation of our Lord on the cross.
Cuisse (*kwis*). Armor for the thigh.
Cu-pid'i-ty. Intense desire of gain.
Cy-lin'dri-cal. Having the form of a cylinder; long, and uniformly circular.

De-bar'. To bar out; to exclude.
De-bark-a'tion. Act of putting on shore; landing.
De-ci'pher. To explain what is written in cipher; to unfold.
De-ploy'. To unfold; to open out the divisions of an army.
De-pop'u-late. To dispeople; to lay waste.
De-pos'i-to-ry. A place for depositing goods.
Dep-re-da'tion. Robbing; laying waste.
Dep'u-ty. One appointed to act for another.
Des-cant'. To sing; to discourse at large.
Des'po-tism. Absolute power; tyranny.
Des'ul-to-ry. Without method; unconnected.
Di-a-bol'i-cal. Relating to the devil; devilish; wicked.
Di'a-lect. A form of language peculiar to a particular district or locality.
Dight (*dite*). Dressed; adorned.
Di'lem-ma. A choice between two difficulties; perplexity.
Di-plo'ma-tist. One skilled as an ambassador.
Dis-af-fec'tion. Want of affection; dislike.
Dis-ci-plin-a'ri-an. One skilled in discipline,—in training or instruction.
Dis-ser-ta'tion. A discourse; a treatise.
Di-vest'i ture. The surrender of property.
Do-mes'ti-cate. To accommodate to the house; to tame.
Doub'let (*dub'let*). A thing doubled: a man's inner garment.

E-duce'. To draw out; to extract.
Ef-fem'i-nate. Womanish; tender; weak.
E-lab'o-rate. To finish with labor and skill.
El Do-ra'do (*Spanish*). A country rich in gold.
E-lix'ir. A tincture; an extract.
E-man-ci-pa'tion. A setting free from slavery.
Em-bez'zle. To appropriate to one's own use property held in trust.
E-mer'gen-cy. Pressing necessity.
Em'is-sa-ry. One sent on a mission.
E-mol'u-ment. Profit from an office or employment.
En-co'mi-um. Formal praise; panegyric.
En-dow'ment. Gift of a permanent fund; gift of nature; talent.
En-thu'si-asm. Ardent or excessive zeal.
E-nun'ci-ate. To utter distinctly; to declare.
Ep'och. Time of an important event, used for reckoning dates; an era.
E-ques'tri-an. Pertaining to horsemanship.
E-rad'i-cate. To root out; to abolish.
E'ru-dite. Learned; well read.
Es-tu-a'ry. Arm of the sea in which the tide rises.
Es-pouse'. To marry; to assume the defense of.
Et'i-quette (*-ket*). Forms of civility; ceremony.
Eu'cha-rist. The sacrament of the Lord's supper.
Eu'lo-gy. A speech or writing in praise of any person.
E-vac'u-ate. To make empty; to quit.
E-ven tu-al-ly. In the event; finally.
Ex-as'per-ate. To make angry; to provoke.
Ex-com-mu'ni-cate. To exclude from church communion.
Ex'e-crate. To curse.
Ex-ec'u-tor. One who carries a will into effect.
Ex-em'plar. A copy or pattern; a model for imitation.
Ex-i-gen'cy. Pressing necessity.
Ex-ot'ic. Foreign; a foreign plant.
Ex-p.a'ti-ate (*-she-ate*). To enlarge upon in discourse.
Ex-pa-tri-a'tion. Act of quitting; renouncing one's native country.
Ex-pe'di-en-cy. Fitness; propriety.
Ex-ter-mi-na'tion. Utter destruction.
Ex-tor'tion. Unlawful exaction.
Ex'tri-cate. To free from difficulty; to disentangle.
Ex-u'ber-ance. Great abundance.

Fa-nat'i-cism. Religious frenzy.
Fan-tas'ti cal-ly. Whimsically; fancifully.
Fas-cine (*fas-seen'*). A bundle of sticks used in fortification.
Feu de joie (*fuh de jwah*). Firing of guns in token of joy. *Plural, feux.*
Fick'le-ness. Changeableness of opinion or purpose; inconstancy.
Fo-ren'sic. Relating to public assemblies.
For-mal'i-ty. Observance of forms; ceremony.
For'mid-a-ble. Apt to excite fear; dreadful.
For-tu'i-tous. Accidental; happening by chance.
Fran'chise (*fran'chiz*). A political right or privilege.
Free'boot-er. A plunderer.
Frig'ate. A ship of war, next in size to a ship of the line.
Front'ier. The border of a country.
Ful-min-a'tion. Denunciation of censure; explosion.
Fun-da-ment'al. Pertaining to the foundation; essential.
Fu-see'. A firelock, or gun.

Gar'ri-son. A body of soldiers in charge of a fort.
Gaunt'let. An iron glove.
Ge'ni-al. Productive; cheerful or gay.
Guar'an-ty. To warrant; a surety.
Gut'tur-al. Pertaining to the throat.

Hal'low. To make sacred or holy.
Har'bin-ger. That which indicates coming evil; a precursor.
Hawk's-bells. Bells used in falconry, to fasten on the foot of the hawk.
He-red'i-ta-ry. Descending by inheritance.
Her'e-sy. Error in religious faith or doctrine.
Hol'o-caust. A whole animal used in a burnt-offering.
Ho-ri'zon. The circle which bounds our view.
How'it-zer. A short gun mounted on a carriage.
Hus'band-ry. Farming; tillage.

Ignis Fatuus (*Latin*). A meteor seen in the night over marshy ground, and leading travellers astray; anything deceptive.
Ig-no-min'i-ous. Disgraceful
Il-lim-i-ta'ble. Unbounded.
Im-mor'tal-ize. To make enduring or immortal.
Im-mu'ni-ty. Freedom from obligation; special exemption.
Im-pla'ca-ble. Not to be appeased or satisfied.
In-au'gu-rate. To induct into office with appropriate ceremonies.
In-cen'di-a-ry. One who maliciously sets fire to a house; producing sedition.
In-clem'ent. Harsh; severe.
In-com-pat'i-ble. Inconsistent with.
In-cor'por-ate. To unite with; to form into a body.
In-cur'sion. Inroad; invasion.
In-den-ta'tion. A cut; a notch.
In-dom'i-ta-ble. Not to be subdued; unconquerable; untamable.
In-ert'. Without power to move; inactive; sluggish.

In-es'ti-ma-ble. Too valuable for estimation; invaluable.
In-ev'i-ta-ble. Not to be avoided; unavoidable.
In-ex'o-ra-ble. Not to be moved by entreaty; unyielding.
In-ex'tri-ca-ble. Not to be disentangled.
In-fal'li-ble. Incapable of error; unfailing.
In-fat'u-a-ted. Inspired with an extravagant passion.
In-hos'pit-a-ble. Affording no shelter to strangers; repulsive.
In-i'ti-a-tive. Introducing; an introductory step.
In-ter-lace'. To weave or plait together.
In-ter-po-si'tion. Act of placing between.
In-ter-reg'num. The time a throne is vacant between two successive reigns.
In-ter-ven'tion. A coming between; mediation.
In-tol'er-ance. Want of forbearance toward others of different religious views from ourselves; disposition to persecute.
In-trigue' (*in-treeg'*). Plot; secret manœuvre.
In-tu'i-tive-ly. By immediate knowledge; without reasoning.
In-ure'. To habituate; to familiarize.
In-veigh (*in-va'*). To exclaim against; to censure.
In-vig'o-rate. To strengthen.
In-vin'ci-ble. Not to be conquered.
In-vul'ner-a-ble. Incapable of being wounded; secure from injury.
Ir'ri-ta-ble. Easily provoked.

Ju-di'ci-a-ry. Pertaining to courts of justice; body of judges.
Ju-ris-dic'tion. Legal authority.

Le'gend. A fable; myth; an inscription.
Leg is la'tor (*lej-*). A law-giver.
Le-vi'a-than. A large sea-animal.
Lieu-ten'ant (*loo-*). An officer second in rank; a deputy.
Lim-pid'i-ty. Clearness.
Luff. To turn the head of a ship toward the wind.

Mag-na-nim'i-ty. Greatness of mind; generosity.
Mal'con-tent. A dissatisfied person; discontented with the government.
Man-i-fes'to. A public and official declaration.
Ma-nœu'vre. A dexterous movement; a stratagem.
Ma-rau'der. A rover in quest of booty or plunder.
Mar'i-time (*-tim*). Pertaining to or bordering on the sea; marine.
Me-lee' (*ma-la'*). A confused fight or scuffle.
Mem'or-a-ble. Worthy of being remembered or mentioned; illustrious; celebrated.
Me-mo'ri-al. That which preserves the remembrance of anything.
Mer'ce-na-ry. To be obtained or hired for money; venal. *Mercenaries*, hired troops.
Mer-cu'ri-al. Pertaining to quicksilver; easily excited; sprightly.
Me-te-or-o-log'ic-al. Pertaining to meteorology, the science of atmospheric changes.
Mi-gra'tion. Change of residence from one country to another.
Mi'gra-to-ry. Wandering; nomadic.
Mis-de-mean'or. Misbehavior; an offence.
Mo-rass'. A marsh; a swamp.
Mor'tar. A cannon for throwing bombs.
Mulct. To fine; a fine.
Mu-nic'i-pal. Belonging to a corporation or city.
Mu-nif'i-cence. Liberality; generosity.
Mu'ti-ny. A revolt in the navy or army.
Mys'ter-y. Something that cannot be understood or explained.
Myth-ol'o-gy. The fables relating to the heathen deities.

Nar-cot'ic. Producing sleep.
Nat'u-ral-ize. To invest with the privileges of a native citizen.
Nau'ti-cal. Pertaining to ships or sailors.
Ne-go'ti-a-tion. Transaction of business; a treaty.
Non-con-form'ist. One who refuses to conform to the established religion.

Ob-scene'. Offensive; disgusting.
O-dor-if'er-ous. Giving scent; fragrant.
On'er-ous. Burdensome.
Op-por-tune'. Seasonable.
Op'u-lent. Wealthy; rich.
Or-de'al. A formal and severe trial.
Or'gies. (*or'jeez*) Frantic revels.
Os-ten'si-bly. Apparently.
Os-ten ta'tious. Showy; pompous.
O-ver-ween'ing. Vain; conceited.

Pa-cif'i-ca-to-ry. Tending to make peace.
Pal-i-sade'. A defense formed by poles or stakes driven into the ground.
Pan-e-gyr'ic. A laudatory speech; a eulogy.
Pan'ic. A sudden fright; an alarm.
Pan'o-ply. Complete armor for defense.
Par'a-lyze. To deprive of sense and feeling.
Par'lia-ment. The legislature of Great Britain, consisting of Lords and Commons.
Pa-ter'nal. Pertaining to a father.
Pe-cu ni-a-ry. Relating to money.
Pe'nal. Relating to punishment.
Pen'u-ry. Extreme poverty.
Per-e-gri-na'tion. Travelling about; foreign travel.
Per'emp-tor-i-ly. In the manner of a command; positively.
Per'fi-dy. Breach of faith; treachery.

Per-ni'cious. Hurtful.
Per-pe-tu'i-ty. Indefinite duration; stability.
Per'ti-nent-ly. To the purpose; appropriately.
Per-tur-ba'tion. Disturbance; disquiet of mind.
Pha'lanx. A compact body of infantry.
Phan'tom. An apparition; a vision.
Phase. An appearance.
Phe-nom'e-non. An appearance; anything remarkable.
Phi-lan'thro-py. The love of mankind.
Phi-lol'o-gist. One skilled in language, and the science pertaining to it.
Pic-tu-resque' (*-resk*). Like a picture.
Pin'nace. A ship's boat.
Pi-rogue (*pe rōg*). A canoe formed from a tree.
Plac'id. Peaceful; calm.
Pla-toon'. A square body of musketeers.
Plen'i-tude. Fullness.
Plight. To give as surety; to pledge.
Po-lar'i-ty. Tendency to the pole; having poles.
Pol'i-tic. Prudent; artful.
Pos-ter'i-ty. Descendants; succeeding generations.
Pre-ca'ri-ous. Uncertain; depending on another's will.
Pre cip-i-ta'tion. Headlong haste; rashness.
Pre-cip'i-tous. Steep; headlong.
Pre-con-ceived'. Conceived beforehand.
Pre-curs'or. A forerunner; a harbinger.
Pred'a-to-ry. Subsisting on plunder.
Pred-e-cess'or. One who precedes another in an office.
Pre-des'tine. To decree or appoint beforehand.
Pre-dic'tion. A foretelling; a prophecy.
Pre-dom'i-nate. To have superior influence; to prevail.
Pre-em'i-nent. Excellent above others.
Pre-lim'i-na-ry. Introductory.
Pre-pos-ses'sing. Preconceived opinion in favor of anything.
Pre pos'ter-ous. Absurd; perverted.
Pre-rog'a-tive. A peculiar privilege.
Prim'i-tive. First; original.
Pri-va teer'. A private armed ship.
Pro-fic'ien-cy (*-fish-*). Advancement.
Prog'e-ny (*proj-*). Offspring.
Prog-nos'tic. Foreshowing; *Prognostics*, signs.
Prom'on-to-ry. A high and rocky cape.
Pro-mul'gate. To publish.
Prop'a-gate. To extend; to diffuse.
Pro-pri'e-ta-ry. A possessor in his own right; an owner.
Pro-scribe'. To set down as condemned; to outlaw.
Prox-im'i-ty. Nearness; being adjacent.
Pu'er-ile (*-il*). Childish; boyish.
Pu-is'sant. Powerful.
Py-ram'i-dal. Having the form of a pyramid.

Re-cip-ro-ca'tion. Mutual exchange.
Rec-on-noi'tre. To view or survey for military purposes.
Rec-tan'gu-lar. Having right angles.
Re-doubt (*re-dout'*). A fortification.
Re-mon'strate. To exhibit reasons against.
Ren'dez-vous. An appointed meeting.
Ren'e-gade. One who deserts to the enemy.
Re-plen'ish. To fill again.
Re'qui-em. A hymn sung over the dead.
Re-qui'tal. Recompense; return.
Re-tal'i-ate. To return like for like.
Ret'i-nue. A train of attendants.
Ret-ri-bu'tion. Return; recompense; punishment.
Re-veil'le (*re-vāl'ya*). Soldier's morning call.
Re-vul'sion. Turning or drawing back.
Rit'u-al. Relating to church service; a book of religious rites.

Sa'chem. The chief of an Indian tribe.
Salve Regina. A Latin phrase meaning *Hail, Queen!* The first words of a Latin hymn.
Sanc'tion. Confirmation; that part of a law which gives authority to enforce it by a penalty.
San'guin-a-ry. Attended with bloodshed; eager to shed blood.
Schep'en. A Dutch magistrate.
Se'cu-lar. Worldly; not spiritual.
Se-di'tion. Tumult; insurrection.
Se-duct'ive. Enticing; misleading.
Sem'i-na-ry. A place of education; a school.
Se-pul'chral. Relating to a sepulchre or tomb.
Shal'lop. A boat with two masts.
Sham'bles. A flesh-market; a butchery.
Sin'is-ter. On the left hand; unlucky.
So-no'rous. Emitting a loud, clear sound.
Sooth'say-er. A fortune-teller.
Soph'ism. A specious argument; a fallacy.
Soph'is-try. Deceptive reasoning.
Sor'did. Base; mean.
Spec'tre. An apparition: a ghost.
Spin'ster. An unmarried woman.
Squad'ron. A body of troops; a division of a fleet.
Sta'ple. The principal production of a country; chief.
Sta-tis'tics. A collection of facts exactly stated in numbers, generally in relation to the strength and resources of a nation.
Stat-is-ti'cian. One versed in statistics.
Stig'ma-tize. To mark with disgrace or reproach.
Sti'pend. Settled pay; wages.
Stip'u-late. To agree by settled terms.
Sub'al-tern. An officer under the rank of captain.
Sub-si'dence. Sinking down; settlement.

Sub-or-di-na'tion. Subjection; inferiority of rank.
Suf'fix. A syllable annexed to a word.
Su-per-sede'. To make void; to set aside.
Su-per-sti-tion. False religion or worship; belief in things improbable and supernatural.
Su-prem'a-cy. The highest rank and authority.

Tab-leau' (*tab-lo'*). A picture; representation resembling a picture.
Taff'rail. The uppermost rail of a ship's stern.
Tech'ni-cal. Pertaining to a particular art.
Tem'po-ra-ry. For a time; not permanent.
Ten'ure. Manner of holding property.
Te-o-cal'li. House of God; name of a Mexican temple.
Ter-res'tri-al. Pertaining to the earth.
The-o-log'i-cal. Pertaining to theology, or the science which treats of the being and attributes of God.
Tou'rist. One who travels for pleasure.
Tra-di'tion. Oral transmission of facts to posterity.
Tri'um'vir-ate. An association of three men.
Trib'u-ta-ry. Paying tribute.
Tro'phy. Something taken in battle, used as a memorial of victory.
Trop'i-cal. Within the tropics; in the Torrid Zone.
Tur'bid. Thick; muddy.
Tum'bril. A kind of basket.

Un-a'lien-a-ble. Not to be transferred; inalienable.
U-nan'i-mous. Agreeing in opinion.
Un-ap-pro'pri-a-ted. Not assigned to a particular use.
Un-a-vail'ing. Of no avail; ineffectual.
Un-de-filed'. Unstained; uncorrupted.
Un-hal'lowed. Unholy; profane.
Un-lim'ber. To take off the limbers, or shafts.
Un-par'al-leled. Without an equal.
U-sur-pa'tion. Unlawful seizure or possession.
U-ten'sil. An instrument for any use; a vessel.

Ver'dict. The decision of a jury.
Ver-sa-til'i-ty. The faculty of easily turning to new subjects.
Ves'per. The evening star; the evening.
Vet'er-an. One long exercised in any profession or employment.
Vis'ion-a-ry. An enthusiast; a dreamer.

Wear. To change the course of a vessel.
Wig'wam. An Indian hut.

Yacht (*yot*). A pleasure-boat.
Yaw. To deviate from the course.
Yeo'man-ry. The body of yeomen; of owners or freeholders.

BIOGRAPHICAL INDEX OF AUTHORS.

[Embracing the various authors from whose writings selections have been made for the Reader.]

Allen (*Ethan*), celebrated as a patriot general during the first year of the Revolutionary War, was born in Connecticut in 1737. After his bold exploit in the capture of Fort Ticonderoga, in 1775, he was defeated in an attack on Montreal, and was made prisoner, and sent to England in irons. He was never engaged in active military service afterward. He died in Vermont, in 1789. He published a number of controversial pamphlets, and a narrative of his observations during his captivity.

Baillie (*Joanna*), distinguished as a poetess and dramatist, was born in Scotland in 1762. Her dramas have a very high order of merit for the smoothness and regularity of their style, the originality of their plots, and the graphic force with which the characters are brought out. The tragedies of *Count Basil* and *De Montfort* have been especially admired. Miss Baillie died in 1851.

Bancroft (*George*), one of the most eminent of American historians, was born at Worcester, Mass., in the year 1800. He early manifested remarkable talent, graduating at Harvard College with the highest honors at the age of seventeen. The publication of his great work, "The History of the United States," was commenced in 1834, and is still unfinished. Mr. Bancroft has filled several important political offices, having been Secretary of the Navy under President Polk, and having, as Minister-Plenipotentiary to Great Britain, represented the United States from 1846 to 1849. His death occurred in 1891.

Bellows (*Henry Whitney, D.D.*), an eminent American clergyman, was born in Boston in 1814, and graduated at Harvard College in 1832. Six years afterward, he was ordained pastor of the First Congregational (Unitarian) Church, in the city of New York. He was the chief originator of the "Christian Inquirer," a Unitarian newspaper commenced in New York in 1846; and, until 1850, was the principal contributor to its columns. His publications consist chiefly of pamphlets and discourses, all of which show high culture and extensive attainments. Dr. Bellows was a fluent and effective speaker, and a popular lecturer. Up to the time of his death, which occurred in 1882, he was the pastor of the parish over which he was first ordained, his congregation occupying the edifice known as "All Souls' Church."

Brodhead (*John Romeyn*), was born in Philadelphia in 1814; was Secretary of Legation at the Hague in 1839, and subsequently agent of the State of New York to procure historical documents in Europe. In 1846 he was appointed Secretary of Legation, under George Bancroft, at the Court of England. His principal literary work is the "History of the State of New York,"—a performance of great merit and research. He died in the city of New York in 1873.

Bryant (*William Cullen*), the distinguished American poet, was born in Massachusetts in 1794. His poetic genius was very early displayed, his verses written at the age of ten being considered worthy of publication. His poetry is of a very high order, both as to sentiment and expression. As a man he is universally esteemed for his active beneficence, unbending integrity, and kindliness of disposition. He died in 1878.

Campbell (*Charles*), was born at Petersburg, Va., in 1807. His principal publication is the "History of the Colony and Ancient Dominion of Virginia," containing an

outline narrative of the events from the first discovery and settlement of the country down to the surrender of Cornwallis, in 1781. It is a work of faithful accuracy.

Clark (*Louis Gaylord*), was born in Otisco, N. Y., in 1810. He obtained a very high reputation for literary ability by his editorship of the *Knickerbocker Magazine*, which was commenced in 1832. His contributions comprised in the Editor's Table were peculiarly rich in humor and genial fancy. In 1853 he published a collection of these, under the title of "Knick-knacks from an Editor's Table." His twin-brother, *Willis Gaylord Clark*, also occupied a distinguished place in the circle of American writers, and enriched the pages of his brother's magazine with his contributions.

Cooper (*James Fenimore*), the distinguished American novelist, was born in 1789. At the age of sixteen he entered the navy as a midshipman, and followed the life of a sailor for six years. His writings are very numerous, including the "Leather-stocking Tales," and other novels, and the "Naval History of the United States." In his description of the sea, and the various incidents of a sailor's life, as well as of the Indians and their savage manners, no author can claim any comparison with Cooper. His death occurred in 1851.

Duganne (*Augustine J. H.*), born in 1823, in Boston, is the author of many popular compositions, both in prose and verse. The latter are characterized by much energy of expression and fertility of imagination, as well as an intense sympathy with truth, freedom, and humanity. Mr. Duganne is, at present, the editor of the "New York Republican."

Everett (*Edward*), the celebrated orator and statesman, was born in Massachusetts in 1794, and died in 1864. His speeches were remarkable for their elaborate finish, peculiar elegance of style, and justness of sentiment; while his delivery was exceedingly dignified and graceful. Mr. Everett was for ten years a member of Congress, and for four successive years Governor of Massachusetts. He was also Secretary of State, and Minister to the Court of Great Britain.

Garden (*Alexander, M.D.*), born in Edinburgh in 1730, but a resident of Charleston, S. C., from 1750 to 1783; was the author of various medical treatises, and a contributor to scientific and literary journals. He died in 1791.

Grahame (*James*), a Scotch writer of some eminence. His principal work is the "Colonial History of the United States," which was published in 1827. This work has been generally commended, although some of its statements have been called in question. Mr. Grahame died in 1842, at the age of fifty-one. With regard to him Josiah Quincy remarks, "To Americans, in all future times, it cannot fail to be an interesting and gratifying circumstance, that the foreigner who first undertook to write a complete history of their republic, from the earliest period of the colonial settlements, was a Briton, eminently qualified to appreciate the merits of its founders, and at once so able and so willing to do justice to them."

Greeley (*Horace*), one of the most distinguished journalists of this country, was born in New Hampshire in 1811, and commenced life as a printer. The *New York Tribune*, which was commenced by him in 1841, has been for several years one of the leading journals of the United States. Mr. Greeley's style is vigorous and pungent, and his writings abound in useful information, addressed to the practical common-sense of the reader. His most extensive work is the "American Conflict," in which he gives, with considerable fullness, the events of that great struggle between the two sections of the country, together with the political and social causes that led to it. He was an unsuccessful candidate for the Presidency of the United States in 1872, and died less than a month after the election.

Greene (*George Washington*), born in Rhode Island in 1811, a grandson of General Nathaniel Greene, of Revolutionary celebrity, is the author of a "Life of General Greene," first published as a portion of "Sparks's American Biography," subsequently much enlarged. He has also published several historical and geographical works, as well as an edition of Addison's works, and many papers on historical and critical subjects. His death occurred in 1883.

Grimshaw (*William*), a native of Ireland, was born in 1782, emigrated to America in 1815, and lived for many years near Philadelphia. He was the author of the "History of England," the "History of France," and other elementary historical manuals, of considerable value for their general accuracy and judicious selection of material. He died in 1852.

Guizot (*François Pierre Guillaume*), a distinguished French historian and statesman, was born at Nîmes in 1787. His most noted works are the *History of Civilization in France*, the *General History of Civilization in Europe*, and *Lectures on Modern History*. He held several important government offices, among them Minister of Public Instruction, and Minister of the Interior, under Louis Philippe. After the Revolution of 1848, he escaped to England; and subsequently published several works of great interest and merit, among them, "Memoirs to Serve for the History of My Times." In 1837, he was intrusted by the government of the United States with the task of writing a history of Washington; and his work, entitled "The Life, Correspondence, and Writings of Washington," published in Paris in 1839-40, procured him the honor of having his portrait placed in the chamber of the House of Representatives in Washington. His style is characterized by correctness, vigor, and brilliancy.

Hamilton (*Alexander*), was particularly distinguished as a statesman; but his published writings show the same intellectual vigor and fertility as were evinced by his political measures. His essays contained in the *Federalist* are models of reasoning as well as composition. A carefully prepared edition of his works has been published by his son, John C. Hamilton.

Hawthorne (*Nathaniel*), was born at Salem, Massachusetts, in 1804. His numerous writings show fine culture and great originality of genius. *The Scarlet Letter*, as a highly-wrought fiction, composed with the most artistic finish, has no superior in the language. The most noted of his other works are *Mosses from an Old Manse*, the *House of the Seven Gables*, *Twice-told Tales*, and the *Marble Faun*, all of which are compositions of distinguished merit. He also wrote many educational works, in which he displayed a happy facility in adapting the style and treatment to the capacity of young minds. His death occurred in 1864.

Headley (*Rev. Joel Tyler*), one of the most popular writers of the time, was born in Delaware County, New York, in 1814. His principal historical works are *Napoleon and his Marshals*, *Washington and his Generals*, *Life of Oliver Cromwell*, and *History of the Second War between England and the United States*. These works are chiefly distinguished for their melodramatic descriptions and brilliancy of style, but in respect to accuracy of statement have been sharply criticised. Mr. Headley has also published many other works, of considerable literary excellence.

Hemans (*Mrs. Felicia D.*), a celebrated English poetess, was born in Liverpool in 1794, and very early showed remarkable talent for poetical composition, publishing her first volume of poems in her fifteenth year. Her subsequent writings, which are very numerous, are characterized by great beauty, both of sentiment and expression. Her death occurred in Dublin in 1835.

Hildreth (*Richard*), a distinguished American writer and journalist. His chief work is a "History of the United States," which is especially valuable for its accuracy and directness of statement, its dignified but unpretending style, and the fullness of its information in regard to the political history of the country. This work was published between 1849 and 1855. Born in 1807; died in 1865.

Holmes (*Abiel, D.D.*), born in Connecticut in 1763; graduated at Yale College, and subsequently was pastor of a church in Cambridge, Mass., for forty years. As an author he is chiefly known by the "Annals of America," a work of considerable industry and research, first published in 1805. It relates clearly and concisely, in the order of occurrence, the chief events in the history of the country, from its discovery, in 1492, to the year of publication. An enlarged edition was issued in 1826. Dr. Holmes died in 1837.

Holmes (*Oliver Wendell, M.D.*), son of Abiel Holmes, was born at Cambridge, Mass., in 1809, graduated at Harvard University in 1829, and commenced the practice of medicine in Boston in 1836. He has attained a very wide popularity as a poet, on account of the brilliancy of his style, the richness and geniality of his humor, and the shrewdness and sound sense of his observations. His satire is playful, but exceedingly pungent and effective. His contributions to the *Atlantic Monthly* have been characterized, in a remarkable degree, by their raciness, wit, and originality. The medical publications of Dr. Holmes have also been highly commended.

Hooper (*Lucy*), a young poetess of unusual promise, who died in 1841, at the age of 25. She was born in Newburyport, Massachusetts, but for several years before her death resided in Brooklyn, N. Y., where she wrote those compositions by which her literary reputation was attained. In 1842, appeared her *Poetical Remains*, with a memoir by John Keese; and in 1848, her complete *Poetical Works*. It was of her that H. T. Tuckerman wrote,

> "And thou art gone! sweet daughter of the lyre,
> Whose strains we hoped to hear thee waken long;
> Gone—as the stars in morning's light expire,
> Gone—like the rapture of a passing song!"

Hopkinson (*Joseph*), son of Francis Hopkinson, who was one of the signers of the Declaration of Independence, and eminent as a lawyer and politician. Joseph was born in Philadelphia, in 1770, and became distinguished for his legal attainments and eloquence as an advocate. He was a judge of the District Court of the United States; and, at the time of his death, in 1842, was President of the Academy of Fine Arts, as well as Vice-president of the American Philosophical Society. As a writer, he is chiefly known as the author of the popular national song, "Hail, Columbia."

Irving (*Washington*), the illustrious American author, was born in New York City, in 1783. He at first devoted himself to legal studies, which he soon abandoned for the more congenial pursuits of literature. His first writings consisted of contributions to the *Morning Chronicle*, a journal edited by his brother, Peter Irving. "Salmagundi" appeared in 1807, a series of amusing articles, partly written by himself, James K. Paulding, and his brothers, Peter and William. The production which first gave him a decided reputation was the famous "History of New York, by Diedrich Knickerbocker," published in 1809. This is a work of inimitable humor, and was read with the greatest delight on both sides of the Atlantic. Sir Walter Scott enthusiastically admired it. The "Sketch Book" was published in London, and greatly enhanced the author's reputation. It contains some of the most beautiful and touching pieces of composition in the language. He also published "Life and Voyages of Columbus," "The Alhambra," "Bracebridge Hall," "Life of Washington," and many other popular works. Irving's style is remarkable for its elegance and copiousness; while the purity of his sentiments, his sympathy with mankind, his geniality and kindliness, his innocent and playful satire, mixed with the pathetic, make his writings an inexhaustible fountain of intellectual enjoyment. He died at his residence, Sunnyside, a charming spot on the banks of the Hudson, November 28th, 1859, universally loved and esteemed for his artlessness and benevolence of character, and honored, not only for his genius, but for the virtues by which it was adorned.

Jay (*Rev. William*), an eminent dissenting clergyman of the city of Bath, in England, and the author of several religious publications of considerable value and merit. As a preacher, he acquired great celebrity, Sheridan styling him the "most natural orator he had ever heard." He died in 1851, at the advanced age of 85.

Jefferson (*Thomas*), was born in 1743, and died in 1826. He has been styled the "Sage of Monticello," from the place of his residence. As an author, he is chiefly

distinguished for the composition of the Declaration of Independence, which was adopted by Congress nearly as it was presented by him. In relation to this, Mr. Webster, in his great oration of 1826, remarked, "None of the changes made in it by the other members of the committee, or by Congress, altered the tone, the frame, the arrangement, or the general character of the instrument. As a composition, the Declaration is Mr. Jefferson's." Mr. Everett, in this connection, most justly and forcibly remarks, "To have been the instrument of expressing, in one brief, decisive act, the concentrated will and resolution of a whole family of States; of unfolding, in one all-important manifesto, the causes, the motives, and the justification of this great movement in human affairs; to have been permitted to give the impress and peculiarity of his own mind to a charter of public right, destined—or, rather, let me say, already elevated—to an importance, in the estimation of men, equal to anything human, ever borne on parchment, or expressed in the visible signs of thought,- this is the glory of Thomas Jefferson." The "Notes on Virginia," is the best known of Mr. Jefferson's formal publications. It was first published in Paris, in 1782; but numerous editions have been since issued from the American press. It treats of the civil condition, as well as natural characteristics, of the State, with considerable fullness, and in an interesting, instructive, and thoughtful manner.

Key (*Francis Scott*), the son of an officer in the American army during the Revolution, was born in Maryland in 1779. He at first practiced law in that State, but afterward removed to Washington, D. C., where he served as district-attorney. A volume of his poems was published in 1859. His most popular composition is the "Star-Spangled Banner," published in 1814. Many of his other poems, however, possess considerable merit. His death occurred in 1843.

Lee (*Henry*), a native of Virginia, born in 1756, was Lieutenant-Colonel Commandant of the Putnam Legion, during the Revolutionary war. In 1786 and in 1799 he served in Congress; and in 1792 was elected governor of his native State, in every position acquiring an honorable distinction. He died in 1818. His chief writings were an *Oration on George Washington*, and *Memoirs of the War in the Southern Department of the United States*, the latter published in 1812.

Longfellow (*Henry Wadsworth*), one of the most distinguished of the American poets, was born in Portland, Maine, in 1807, and was graduated at Bowdoin College in 1825, in which institution he subsequently performed the duties of Professor of Modern Languages. He afterward held the position of Professor of Belle-Lettres in Harvard College, till 1853. His chief poems are *Evangeline* and *Hiawatha;* but many of his minor pieces are very widely popular, as the *Psalm of Life*, *Excelsior*, *Voices of the Night*, etc., etc. His prose writings are also quite numerous, and have been greatly admired. *Hyperion*, a romance, abounds in picturesque description, and is written in a chaste and beautiful style. Longfellow's peculiar traits are artistic finish in composition, beauty of imagery, and great tenderness of feeling; while his sympathies with every phase of humanity are genuine and heart-felt. Good-sense and justness of sentiment pervade all his writings. His death occurred in 1882.

Lossing (*Benson J.*), an American writer and artist, chiefly distinguished for his efforts to illustrate and popularize the history of the United States. For this purpose his "Field-Book of the Revolution" is a most admirable and valuable work. Mr. Lossing was the author of many other works in American history, of no inconsiderable merit. His death occurred in 1891.

Mackenzie (*Robert*), was born near Dundee, Scotland, in 1823, of which city he is now a resident. He is extensively engaged in the linen manufacture, and has large commercial relations with this country, which he has frequently visited. During the Civil War, he wrote a little book, entitled "America and her Army," regarding which, Mr. Seward, then Secretary of State, thus expressed himself, "The book is so genially written, and yet with so much of truth and reason, that it can well be accepted by our countrymen, as a compensation for the columns of reproach which

have been poured upon us by the enemies of freedom and humanity in England." His chief publication is, however, "The United States of America: A History," which is written in a pleasant, spirited, and picturesque style, and evidently with a most zealous interest in the cause of truth and freedom. The object of the author in its composition was, to dispel the ignorance and correct the inconceivable mistakes which prevail in England, in relation to this country. This work was published in 1870.

Mackintosh (*Sir James*), one of the most distinguished philosophers of modern times, was born near Inverness, Scotland, in 1765. He not only acquired fame for the depth and soundness of his views in political, moral, and mental philosophy, but was deservedly illustrious as an essayist and historian, as well as for his extensive legal attainments. He was the author of *Vindiciæ Gallicæ*, a work written in defense of the French Revolution, in reply to the *Reflections on the French Revolution*, by Edmund Burke; a *History of England*, which he left unfinished; a *Dissertation on the Progress of Ethical Philosophy*, and various miscellaneous essays, contributed principally to the *Edinburgh Review*. During eight years of his life he held the office of Recorder of Bombay, in India. His death occurred in 1832. The *Life of Sir James Mackintosh*, written by his son, is a highly interesting and instructive work.

Mansfield (*Edward D.*) was born in 1801, and graduated at the United States Military Academy, at West Point, in 1819. He is the author of several works, chief among which are the *Life of General Scott*, and the *History of the Mexican War*. He also published, in 1850, a work entitled *American Education*.

Marshall (*John, LL.D.*), Chief-Justice of the United States, from 1801 to the time of his death, in 1835. He was born in 1755, and served as an officer in the Revolutionary War. His claims to authorship rest on his *Life of Washington*, a work valuable for the accuracy of its statements, and the simplicity and perspicuity of its style. It has been, however, superseded by later publications, particularly those of Jared Sparks and Washington Irving, who have given us more interesting details, in order to judge rightly the character of the Father of his Country. Died in 1835.

Mason (*John M., D.D.*), a very eloquent American divine, was born in the city of New York in 1770, and graduated at Columbia College in that city. He commenced pastoral duties in 1792, and continued them with occasional intervals till his death, in 1829. He was greatly esteemed for his piety and erudition, and as a pulpit orator, had very few equals. His writings principally consist of sermons, addresses, and miscellaneous essays.

Maxcy (*Jonathan, D.D.*), born in Massachusetts in 1768, and graduated at Brown University, Providence, of which he was president from 1792 to 1802, and president of Union College, Schenectady, till 1804, when he became president of the College of South Carolina. His writings consist chiefly of sermons and addresses, which display considerable scholarship and literary culture. He died in 1820.

Mirabeau (*Honore G. R., Comte de*), the most influential of the popular leaders in the National Assembly at the commencement of the French Revolution, and greatly distinguished for his eloquence and address. In his early years he manifested an uncontrollable temper, and indulged in every kind of vicious excess. As a punishment for a guilty intrigue, he was closely imprisoned at Vincennes for nearly four years Here he employed himself in literary labors, by which he was enabled to supply his necessities. After his release, he subsisted chiefly by literary labor, and still led a very profligate life. His political pamphlets were peculiarly able and effective. When the States-general were convened, he sought an election by the nobles, but being refused, he purchased a draper's shop, and becoming a candidate to the Third Estate, was triumphantly elected. He died in 1791, in the forty-second year of his age, and was interred with great pomp in the "Pantheon" at Paris.

Nott (*Eliphalet, D.D., LL.D.*), one of the most eloquent of American divines, is particularly distinguished by his labors in behalf of Union College, Schenectady, of which

institution he was elected president in 1804, and continued in that office for over sixty years. His published sermons and addresses are splendid productions, written in a fascinating, brilliant style, adorned with every rhetorical grace. His efforts in behalf of temperance were very earnest and effective. He died in 1866.

Orne (*Miss Caroline F.*), an American poetess, born in Massachusetts. She wrote and published several volumes of poems, many of which have considerable merit.

Palfrey (*John Gorham*), was born in Boston, in 1796, and educated at Harvard University, in which institution he was afterward appointed Professor of Sacred Literature. His lectures on the *Evidences of Christianity* and on the *Hebrew Scriptures*, as well as his numerous literary, historical, and political discourses, have been highly commended. His great work, the "History of New England," the first volume of which was published in 1858, has been universally approved, and admired for its thorough appreciation of the Puritan character, its accuracy of statement, and the purity and dignity of its style. His death occurred in 1881.

Parker (*Rev. Theodore*), was born at Lexington, Mass., in 1810, graduated at the theological school in Cambridge, and settled in Roxbury, as minister of a Unitarian church. He subsequently became distinguished for the fluency and eloquence of his public lectures and addresses, in which he displayed a remarkable pungency of satire, and an intense humanitarian spirit. His anti-slavery efforts were particularly vigorous and persistent. The boldness with which he advanced his peculiar views in religion, gave great offense to very many, and his theological writings have drawn upon him considerable bitter animadversion and censure. He was undoubtedly a man of great intellectual power, and a most kindly and philanthropic spirit. His death occurred at Florence, Italy, in 1860.

Parkman (*Francis*), a native of Boston, where he was born in 1823. After graduating at Harvard, in 1844, he traveled upon the western prairies, in order to obtain a knowledge of the manners and character of the Indians. His *Conspiracy of Pontiac* is, by the testimony of Bancroft, "an uncommonly meritorious work." It is written in a lively style, and abounds in picturesque descriptions, and graphic delineations of Indian life and character. *France and England in North America, a Series of Historical Narratives*, including an account of the Huguenots in Florida, Samuel Champlain, and the Jesuits in North America, has been warmly commended by critics on both sides of the Atlantic. No historical course of reading can be complete that excludes these charming volumes.

Parton (*James*), was born in England, in 1822, but has resided in the U. S. since 1826. He has written several excellent biographies, of *Horace Greeley* (1855), *Aaron Burr* (1857), *Andrew Jackson* (1860), *Benjamin Franklin* (1864), besides *General Butler in New Orleans* (1863). His contributions to various literary periodicals are very numerous. Mr. Parton's style is forcible, and most of his writings, particularly the "Life and Times of Aaron Burr," and the "Life of Franklin," have acquired very considerable popularity. His death occurred in 1891.

Pierpont (*Rev. John*), was born in 1785, at Litchfield, Conn., graduated at Yale College, and settled in Boston as a Unitarian clergyman. He afterwards had the pastoral charge of a congregation in Troy, and subsequently in Medford, Mass., where he died in 1866. His poems are characterized by smoothness and regularity of versification, and considerable spirit and energy. Of these the longest is the *Airs of Palestine*, which, when first published, received considerable praise. Mr. Pierpont also compiled a series of Reading Books, which were formerly in very extensive use.

Pollard (*Edward A.*), was formerly editor of the *Richmond Examiner*. He published various works in relation to the Civil War, written from a Southern standpoint. In 1866, appeared *The Lost Cause; a New Southern History of the War of the Confederates;* and subsequently other works on topics connected with the same general subject. Mr. Pollard's style is copious and vigorous; and the earnestness with which he writes makes his works interesting to all classes of readers.

Prescott (*William H.*), a distinguished American historian, was born in Salem, Mass., in 1796, and was the grandson of Colonel Prescott, of revolutionary fame. His principal works are the "History of Ferdinand and Isabella," "The Conquest of Mexico," "The Conquest of Peru," and the "History of the reign of Philip II." The last-mentioned work he did not live to finish, dying in 1859. These various productions constitute a splendid contribution to English literature. The materials for their composition were collected with the most laborious research, and have been arranged with very great judgment and skill, while their style is a model for elegance and correctness. Though in affluent circumstances, and affected from early manhood with blindness, Mr. Prescott labored in his literary undertakings with indefatigable industry, and accomplished a task beyond the powers of most men in the enjoyment of every faculty. His high moral worth, amiable disposition, and geniality of manners, won for him the esteem of a very large circle of friends.

Ramsay (*David, M.D.*), was born in Lancaster County, Pennsylvania, in 1749. After graduating at the College of New Jersey, he studied medicine, and commenced practice in Charleston, South Carolina, where he resided during the remainder of his life. He was for several years (1782-5) a member of Congress, and during one year its president. His death was caused by a pistol-shot wound, received in the streets of Charleston, in 1815. In 1785, he published his *History of the Revolution in South Carolina;* and five years afterward, the *History of the American Revolution*, which was received with universal commendation. His *Life of Washington* appeared in 1807, and the *History of South Carolina*, in 1809. He was also the author of several other works. As a historian, he was diligent in research, and his narrative is characterized by accuracy and impartiality, and is expressed in a simple and elegant style.

Randall (*Henry S., LL.D.*), is the author of several agricultural works, but best known by his *Life of Thomas Jefferson*, published in 1857. This work is valuable for its conscientious research, and the skillful use which the author has made of the important materials placed in his hands by the descendants of the illustrious subject of the memoir. In other respects, it can claim no unusual credit, either for style or attractiveness. Mr. Randall was Secretary of State and Superintendent of Public Instruction in the State of New York, in 1851. He died in 1881.

Read (*T. Buchanan*), an artist and poet, was born in Pennsylvania, in 1822. He is the author of several volumes of poetry, some of which have been received with decided approbation. His short poem, entitled "Sheridan's Ride," became universally popular throughout the North, immediately after its publication. Mr. Tuckerman remarks of him, "He has an innate sense of beauty and the irrepressible temper of genius, a great command of language, a vivid fancy, and a musical ear."

Ripley (*Roswell S.*), a native of Ohio, graduated at West Point in 1839. He wrote a *History of the War with Mexico*, which was published in 1849. It is the work of a soldier, and describes with impartial accuracy the operations and situations of the opposing armies during each of the campaigns of that conflict.

Robertson (*William*), a celebrated historian, was born in Scotland, in 1721, and educated at the University of Edinburgh. His "History of Scotland" was published in 1759, and received with favor and applause. In 1769, appeared his "History of Charles V.," a work of great interest and value, and, in 1777, the "History of America." In all these works, Robertson displayed great skill in the arrangement and general treatment of his subjects, and impartiality and accuracy in his statements. Their style has a clearness, ease, and dignity, which give to them a peculiar charm. He died in 1793.

Southey (*Robert*), a celebrated English poet, was born in Bristol, in 1774, and died in 1843. One of his first published poems, was "Wat Tyler," a production which, after he had changed his political opinions, he would gladly have suppressed. Its energy,

and bold vindication of liberal sentiments and popular freedom, however, make it perhaps, in England, the most generally popular of his writings. His other productions include "Thalaba," "Joan of Arc," and various other poems, most of which show considerable fluency of expression, refinement of taste, and liveliness of fancy; but are deficient in spirit, vigor of imagination, and power of invention, which are the characteristics of poetic genius. Southey received a pension from the English government in 1807, and subsequently was made Poet-Laureate. His prose writings are also quite numerous.

Sparks (*Jared, LL.D.*), was born in Connecticut, in 1789. His father was a poor farmer. He was apprenticed to a carpenter, but his love of books overcame all obstacles, and through the assistance of friends he was enabled to prepare for admission into Harvard College, from which he graduated in 1815. He subsequently became a Unitarian clergyman, and wrote several works on theological subjects. His fame, however, depends upon his publications in relation to Washington and the history of the Revolution; for which he will ever receive the gratitude of posterity. His *American Biography* includes the life of sixty eminent personages, eight of which were written by the editor himself. Mr. Sparks died at Cambridge in 1866.

Story (*Joseph, LL.D.*), the eminent American jurist, was born in Massachusetts, in 1779. He was admitted to the bar in 1801, served several years as a member of the legislature of his native State, and in 1811 was appointed by President Madison associate-justice of the Supreme Court, which office he continued to fill till his death, in 1845. His legal treatises have had a very high reputation both in this country and England. Lord Brougham pronounced him "the first jurist living." His miscellaneous writings are also quite numerous.

Sumner (*Charles, LL.D.*), the distinguished American orator, statesman, and scholar, was born in Boston, in 1811, and graduated at Harvard College in 1830. He studied law under Judge Story and commenced to practice law in Boston; he was soon highly distinguished for his legal attainments. In 1851, he succeeded Daniel Webster as United States Senator, and occupied that position till his death in 1874. He was, for many years, conspicuous for the courage and eloquence with which he opposed the institution of slavery. His orations and speeches are finished specimens of composition and rhetoric, and abound in illustrations culled from every department of literature. His sentiments, while in many respects quite extreme, were always guided by a high standard of moral principle, and were never relaxed to serve any object of temporary expediency. His legal publications were numerous, gaining for him very high respect as a jurist.

Sweet (*Samuel N.*), the author of several works on elocution, upon which he was an attractive and popular lecturer. His treatise on *Practical Elocution* was published in 1839, and commanded a very extensive sale. He was the author of several other educational works.

Timbs (*John*), a popular writer of Great Britain. His *History of Wonderful Inventions* is an interesting and valuable compilation. He is also the author of the *Year-Book of Facts*, and other works, pertaining to the history of the useful arts and the progress of scientific knowledge.

Webster (*Daniel*), the celebrated American statesman and orator, was born in New Hampshire, in 1782. After graduating from Dartmouth College, he studied law, and was admitted to the bar in 1805. In 1813, he became a representative in Congress, and from that time until his death, in 1852, was almost uninterruptedly in the public service, as a member of Congress or a cabinet officer. In 1842, while Secretary of State, under President Tyler, he negotiated the treaty with England, by which the northeastern boundary question was settled. His great orations may, it has been thought, claim a favorable comparison with even the most brilliant of ancient times.

Webster (*Noah, LL.D.*), the author of the *American Dictionary*, was born in Con-

necticut, in 1758, and graduated with considerable honor at Yale College, in 1778. He was at first a school-teacher, at Goshen, in New York, and while thus engaged, compiled his *Spelling-Book*, which he published at Hartford, in 1783. He soon afterward published an *English Grammar*. The Spelling-Book has probably been the most widely circulated book ever published in this country. In 1784, he published *Sketches of American Policy*, a political work of considerable interest and merit. In 1793, he started a daily paper in New York, which still continues to be published, as the *Commercial Advertiser*. He commenced the Dictionary in 1807, and spent twenty years in its compilation. This work has ever been recognized as a monument of the industry and learning of its compiler: it has undergone numerous additions and improvements, and is now very extensively recognized as affording the best guide to the correct orthography, orthoepy, and etymology of the language. In some respects, the Dictionary of Dr. Worcester differs from this work; and in New England, particularly, the latter is generally preferred and followed as an authority. Dr. Webster died in 1843.

Whittier (*John G.*), the distinguished American poet, was born near Haverhill, in Massachusetts, in 1807. He was quite prominent for his efforts in behalf of anti-slavery, and many of his most energetic poems were composed in this interest. Many of his compositions are remarkable for their bold denunciation of wrong; but others are marked by a pathos, tenderness, and delicacy of sentiment not exceeded by any other American poet. His death occurred in 1892.

Willis (*Nathaniel P.*), an American writer and journalist, was born in Maine, in 1806. He graduated from Yale College, where he had already won considerable reputation as a poet. His most admired writings are "Letters from Under a Bridge," "Inklings of Adventure," and the "Sacred Poems." In connection with George P. Morris he edited for many years the *Home Journal*, a periodical distinguished for its literary merit. He died at Idlewild, a romantic retreat near Newburgh, in 1867.

Winthrop (*Robert C.*), was born in Boston, and graduated at Harvard College, in 1828. He was for many years a member of the House of Representatives in Washington, and Speaker of the House, from December, 1847, to March, 1849. He has attained a very high reputation both as a speaker and a writer.

Wirt (*William*), was born in Maryland, in 1772. He commenced to practice law in Virginia, in 1792, and soon acquired a high reputation for his legal attainments and skill as an advocate. He subsequently entered political life, and filled several offices with credit. In 1816, he was appointed by President Madison, United States Attorney for Virginia, and subsequently, by President Monroe, Attorney-General of the United States. He died in 1834. His chief publications are *The British Spy*, a series of very interesting letters; and the *Life of Patrick Henry*, the longest of his literary productions, published in 1817. He wrote with great accuracy and elegance; and spoke with a power and eloquence that commanded the immediate attention of his audience. As a public and professional man, he deserves to be ranked among the best the country has produced.

MAY 15 1900

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS
0 011 448 404 0